RAMARSINGH COLLEGE

Library

Class No. 516

Book No. A83C

Acc. No. 1190

# A COURSE
OF
# PURE GEOMETRY

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
C. F. CLAY, MANAGER
LONDON : FETTER LANE, E.C. 4

NEW YORK : THE MACMILLAN CO.
BOMBAY
CALCUTTA } MACMILLAN AND CO., LTD.
MADRAS
TORONTO : THE MACMILLAN CO. OF CANADA, LTD.
TOKYO : MARUZEN-KABUSHIKI-KAISHA

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

# A COURSE
OF
# PURE GEOMETRY

## CONTAINING A COMPLETE GEOMETRICAL TREATMENT OF THE PROPERTIES OF THE CONIC SECTIONS

BY

E. H. ASKWITH, D.D.

RECTOR OF DICKLEBURGH, NORFOLK

FORMERLY CHAPLAIN OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

CAMBRIDGE
AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS
1921

16
AH 730 . ed.
acc. no: 3588 1190

*First Edition* 1903
*Reprinted* 1911
*New Edition* 1917
*Reprinted* 1921

# PREFACE

THIS work is a revision and enlargement of my *Course of Pure Geometry* published in 1903. It differs from the former edition in that it does not assume any previous knowledge of the Conic Sections, which are here treated *ab initio*, on the basis of the definition of them as the curves of projection of a circle. This is not the starting point of the subject generally in works on Geometrical Conic Sections. The curves are usually defined by means of their focus and directrix property, and their other properties are evolved therefrom. Here the focus and directrix property is established as one belonging to the projections of a circle and it is freely used, but the fact that the conics are derived by projection from a circle and therefore possess all its projective properties is kept constantly in the mind of the student.

Many of the properties of the Conic Sections which can only be established with great labour from their focus and directrix property are proved quite simply when the curves are derived directly from the circle.

Nor is the method employed here any more difficult than the prevalent one, though it is true that certain ground has to be covered first. But this is not very extensive and I have indicated (p. xii) the few articles which a Student should master before he proceeds to Chapter IX. Without a certain knowledge of cross ratios, harmonic section, involution and the

elementary principles of conical projection no one can follow the argument here adopted. But these things are quite easy, and the advantage gained by the student who from the beginning sees the Conic Sections whole, as he does when they are presented to his mind as the projections of a circle, more than compensates for any delay there may be through the short study of the necessary preliminaries.

I hope that, thanks to the efficiency of the Readers of the Cambridge University Press, there are not many misprints to be found in this book. But if any are found I shall be grateful if I may be informed of them at the address given below.

E. H. A.

DICKLEBURGH RECTORY,
SCOLE,
NORFOLK.

*September* 1917.

# CONTENTS

## CHAPTER I

### SOME PROPERTIES OF THE TRIANGLE


| | PAGE |
|---|---|
| Definitions | 1 |
| Orthocentre | 2 |
| Nine-points circle | 3 |
| Pedal line | 6 |
| Medians | 8 |


## CHAPTER II

### SOME PROPERTIES OF CIRCLES


| | |
|---|---|
| Poles and polars | 13 |
| Conjugate points and lines | 15 |
| Radical axis | 17 |
| Coaxal circles | 20 |
| Common tangents of two circles | 22 |


## CHAPTER III

### THE USE OF SIGNS. CONCURRENCE AND COLLINEARITY


| | |
|---|---|
| Signs of lines, areas, angles | 28 |
| Menelaus' and Ceva's theorems | 31 |
| Isogonal conjugates | 36 |
| Symmedians | 37 |


## CHAPTER IV

### PROJECTION


| | |
|---|---|
| General principles | 41 |
| Projection of angles into angles of given magnitude | 42 |
| One range of three points projective with any other | 45 |

## CHAPTER V

### CROSS-RATIOS


| | PAGE |
|---|---|
| Definition | 47 |
| Twenty-four cross-ratios reducible to six | 48 |
| Projective property of cross-ratios | 50 |
| Equi-cross ranges and pencils mutually projective | 54 |


## CHAPTER VI

### PERSPECTIVE


| | |
|---|---|
| Definition | 58 |
| Ranges and pencils in perspective | 60 |
| Homographic ranges and pencils | 62 |
| Triangles in perspective | 64 |


## CHAPTER VII

### HARMONIC SECTION


| | |
|---|---|
| Definition and properties of harmonic ranges | 71 |
| Harmonic property of pole and polar of circle | 74 |
| Harmonic property of quadrilateral and quadrangle | 75 |


## CHAPTER VIII

### INVOLUTION


| | |
|---|---|
| Definition and criterion of involution range | 80 |
| Involution projective | 83 |
| Involution properties of the circle | 84 |
| Orthogonal involution | 85 |
| Pair of orthogonal rays in every involution pencil | 86 |


## CHAPTER IX

### THE CONIC SECTIONS


| | |
|---|---|
| Definitions | 90 |
| Focus and directrix property | 91 |
| Projective properties | 92 |
| Circle projected into another circle | 93 |
| Focus and directrix as pole and polar | 94 |

PAGE

Parallel chords . . . . . 95
Focus and directrix property established . . . . 96
(1) Parabola . . . . . 97
(2) Ellipse . . . . . 101
(3) Hyperbola . . . . . 102
Diameters and ordinates . . . . . 106

## CHAPTER X

### PROPERTIES COMMON TO ALL CONICS

Intersection of chord and tangent with directrix . . 108
Curves having focus and directrix property are the projections of a circle . . . . . 110
Pair of tangents . . . . . 111
The Normal . . . . . 113
Latus rectum . . . . . 114
Carnot's theorem . . . . . 116
Newton's theorem . . . . . 117
Some applications . . . . . 118
Circle of curvature . . . . . 120
Conic through four points of a quadrangle . . . . 121

## CHAPTER XI

### THE PARABOLA

Elementary properties . . . . . 126
Tangent and normal . . . . . 127
Pair of tangents . . . . . 130
Parabola escribed to a triangle . . . . . 132
Diameters . . . . . 134
Circle of curvature . . . . . 138

## CHAPTER XII

### THE ELLIPSE

Sum of focal distances constant . . . . . 144
Tangent and normal . . . . . 145
Pair of tangents . . . . . 150
Director circle . . . . . 150
Conjugate diameters . . . . . 151
Auxiliary circle . . . . . 153
Equiconjugate diameters . . . . . 156
Circle of curvature . . . . . 158

## CHAPTER XIII

### THE HYPERBOLA


| | PAGE |
|---|---|
| Form of curve | 163 |
| Difference of focal distances constant | 164 |
| Tangent and normal | 164 |
| On the length of the conjugate axis | 166 |
| Pair of tangents | 168 |
| Director circle | 169 |
| The conjugate hyperbola | 170 |
| Asymptotic properties | 171 |
| Conjugate diameters | 174 |
| Circle of curvature | 187 |


## CHAPTER XIV

### THE RECTANGULAR HYPERBOLA


| | |
|---|---|
| Conjugate diameters | 192 |
| Perpendicular diameters | 193 |
| Rectangular hyperbola circumscribing a triangle | 194 |
| Chord and tangent properties | 196 |


## CHAPTER XV

### ORTHOGONAL PROJECTION


| | |
|---|---|
| Principles | 201 |
| Fundamental propositions | 202 |
| The ellipse as orthogonal projection of a circle | 205 |


## CHAPTER XVI

### CROSS-RATIO PROPERTIES OF CONICS


| | |
|---|---|
| $P\,(ABCD)$ constant | 210 |
| Pascal's theorem | 214 |
| Brianchon's theorem | 215 |
| Locus of centres of conics through four points | 215 |
| Involution range on a conic | 216 |


## CHAPTER XVII

### RECIPROCATION


| | |
|---|---|
| Principles | 220 |
| Involution properties of quadrangle and quadrilateral | 224 |
| Desargues' theorem and its reciprocal | 227 |

PAGE

Reciprocation applied to conics . . . . . 228
Special case where the base conic is a circle . . . 231
Coaxal circles reciprocated into confocal conics . . . 234
A pair of self-conjugate triangles . . . . . 236
Reciprocal triangles . . . . . 237

## CHAPTER XVIII

### CIRCULAR POINTS. FOCI OF CONICS

Definition of circular points . . . . . 242
Analytical point of view . . . . . 243
Properties of conics obtained by using circular points . 244
The four foci of a conic . . . . . 246
Two triangles circumscribing a conic . . . . . 248
Generalising by projection . . . . . 249

## CHAPTER XIX

### INVERSION

Inversion of line and circle . . . . . 256
Inversion of sphere . . . . . 258
Inversion of inverse points into inverse points . . . 259
Feuerbach's theorem . . . . . 262

## CHAPTER XX

### SIMILARITY OF FIGURES

Homothetic figures . . . . . 267
Figures directly similar but not homothetic . . 270
Circle of similitude for two circles . . . . . 271
Figures inversely similar . . . . . 272

MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES . . . . . 276
INDEX . . . . . 285

The student who may be using this work as a first text book on Geometrical Conic Sections will be able to proceed to Chapter IX after reading the following paragraphs of the first eight chapters:

13 to 16*a*, 29 to 35, 40 to 45, 48 to 53, 58, 67, 68, 69 to 73, 77 to 87.

# CHAPTER I

## SOME PROPERTIES OF THE TRIANGLE

### 1. Definition of terms.

(*a*) By *lines*, unless otherwise stated, will be meant *straight* lines.

(*b*) The lines joining the vertices of a triangle to the middle points of the opposite sides are called its *medians*.

(*c*) By the *circumcircle* of a triangle is meant the circle passing through its vertices.

The centre of this circle will be called the *circumcentre* of the triangle.

The reader already knows that the circumcentre is the point of intersection of the perpendiculars to the sides of the triangle drawn through their middle points.

(*d*) The *incircle* of a triangle is the circle touching the sides of the triangle and lying within the triangle.

The centre of this circle is the *incentre* of the triangle.

The incentre is the point of intersection of the lines bisecting the angles of the triangle.

(*e*) An *ecircle* of a triangle is a circle touching one side of a triangle and the other two sides produced. There are three ecircles.

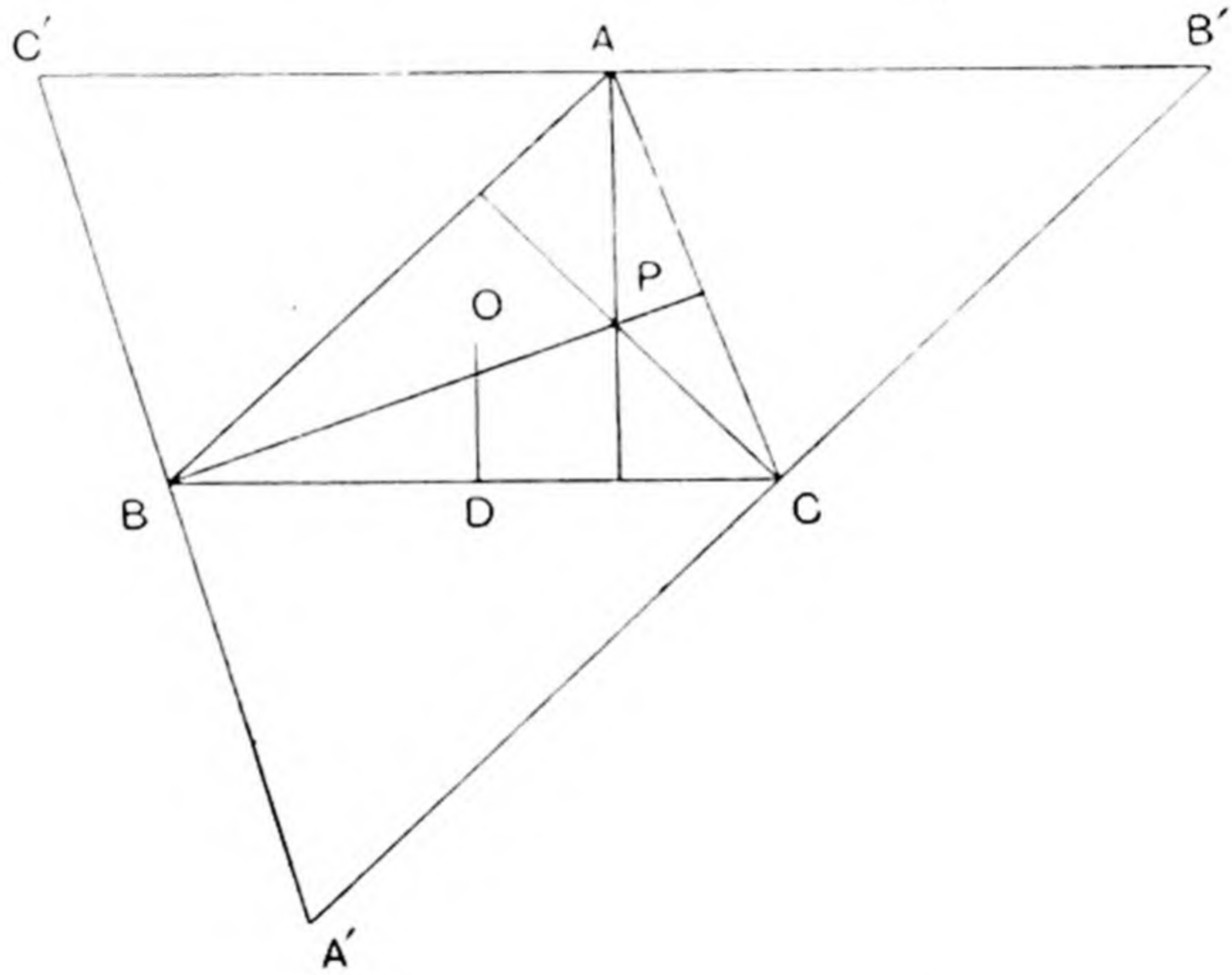
The centre of an ecircle is called an *ecentre*.

An ecentre is the point of intersection of the bisector of one of the angles and of the bisectors of the other two external angles.

(*f*) Two triangles which are such that the sides and angles of the one are equal respectively to the sides and angles of the other will be called *congruent*.

If $ABC$ be congruent with $A'B'C'$, we shall express the fact by the notation: $\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle A'B'C'$.

**2. Proposition.** *The perpendiculars from the vertices of a triangle on to the opposite sides meet in a point* (called the orthocentre); *and the distance of each vertex from the orthocentre is twice the perpendicular distance of the circumcentre from the side opposite to that vertex.*




Through the vertices of the triangle $ABC$ draw lines parallel to the opposite sides. The triangle $A'B'C'$ thus formed will be similar to the triangle $ABC$, and of double its linear dimensions.

Moreover, $A$, $B$, $C$ being the middle points of the sides of $A'B'C'$, the perpendiculars from these points to the sides on which they lie will meet in the circumcentre of $A'B'C'$.

But these perpendiculars are also the perpendiculars from $A$, $B$, $C$ to the opposite sides of the triangle $ABC$.

Hence the first part of our proposition is proved.

Now let $P$ be the orthocentre and $O$ the circumcentre of $ABC$.

Draw $OD$ perpendicular to $BC$.

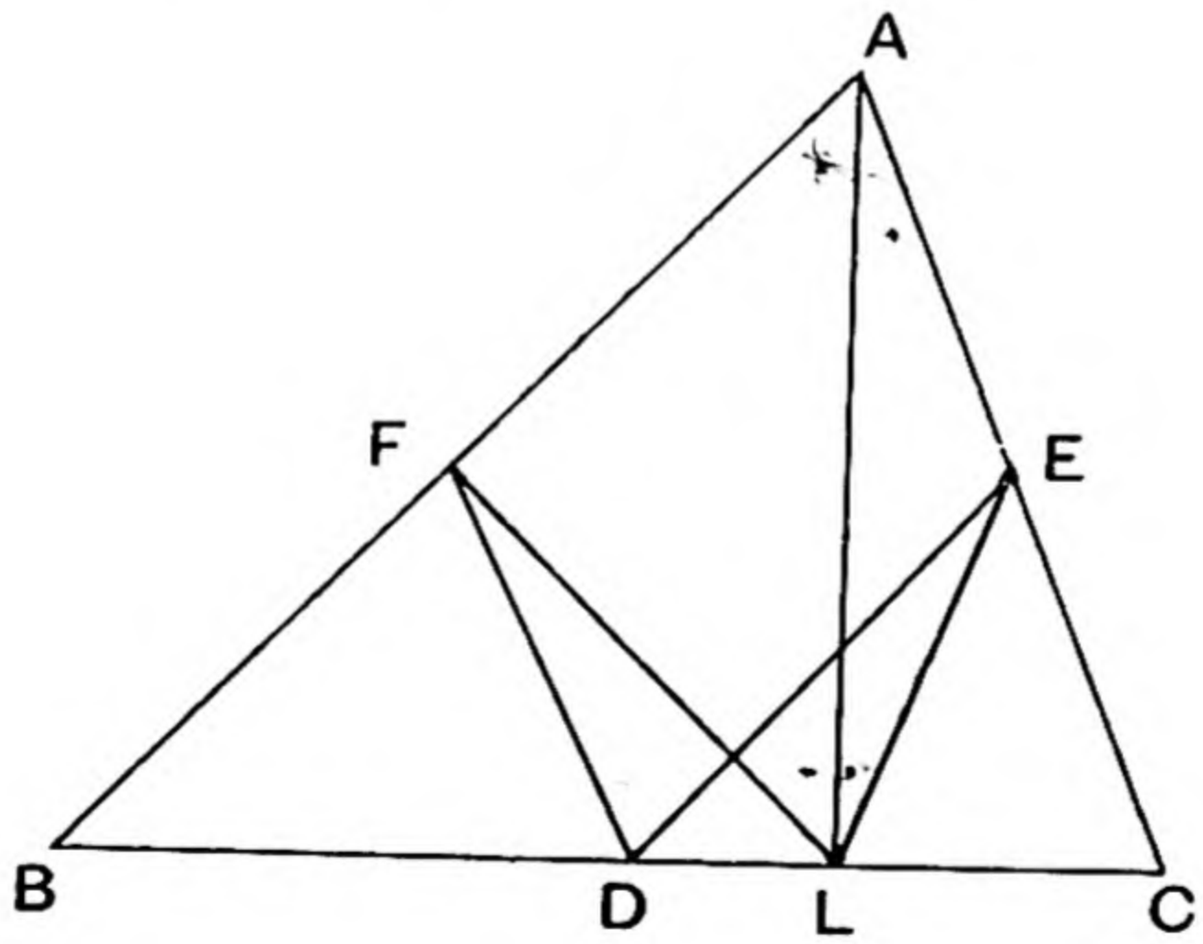
Then since $P$ is also the circumcentre of the triangle $A'B'C'$, $PA$ and $OD$ are corresponding lines in the two similar triangles $A'B'C'$, $ABC$.

Hence $AP$ is twice $OD$.

**3. Definition.** It will be convenient to speak of the perpendiculars from the vertices on to the opposite sides of a triangle as the *perpendiculars of the triangle;* and of the perpendiculars from the circumcentre on to the sides as the *perpendiculars from the circumcentre.*

**4. Prop.** *The circle through the middle points of the sides of a triangle passes also through the feet of the perpendiculars of the triangle and through the middle points of the three lines joining the orthocentre to the vertices of the triangle.*

Let $D, E, F$ be the middle points of the sides of the triangle $ABC$, $L, M, N$ the feet of its perpendiculars, $O$ the circumcentre, $P$ the orthocentre.




Join $FD$, $DE$, $FL$, $LE$.

Then since $E$ is the circumcentre of $ALC$,

$$\angle ELA = \angle EAL.$$

And for a like reason

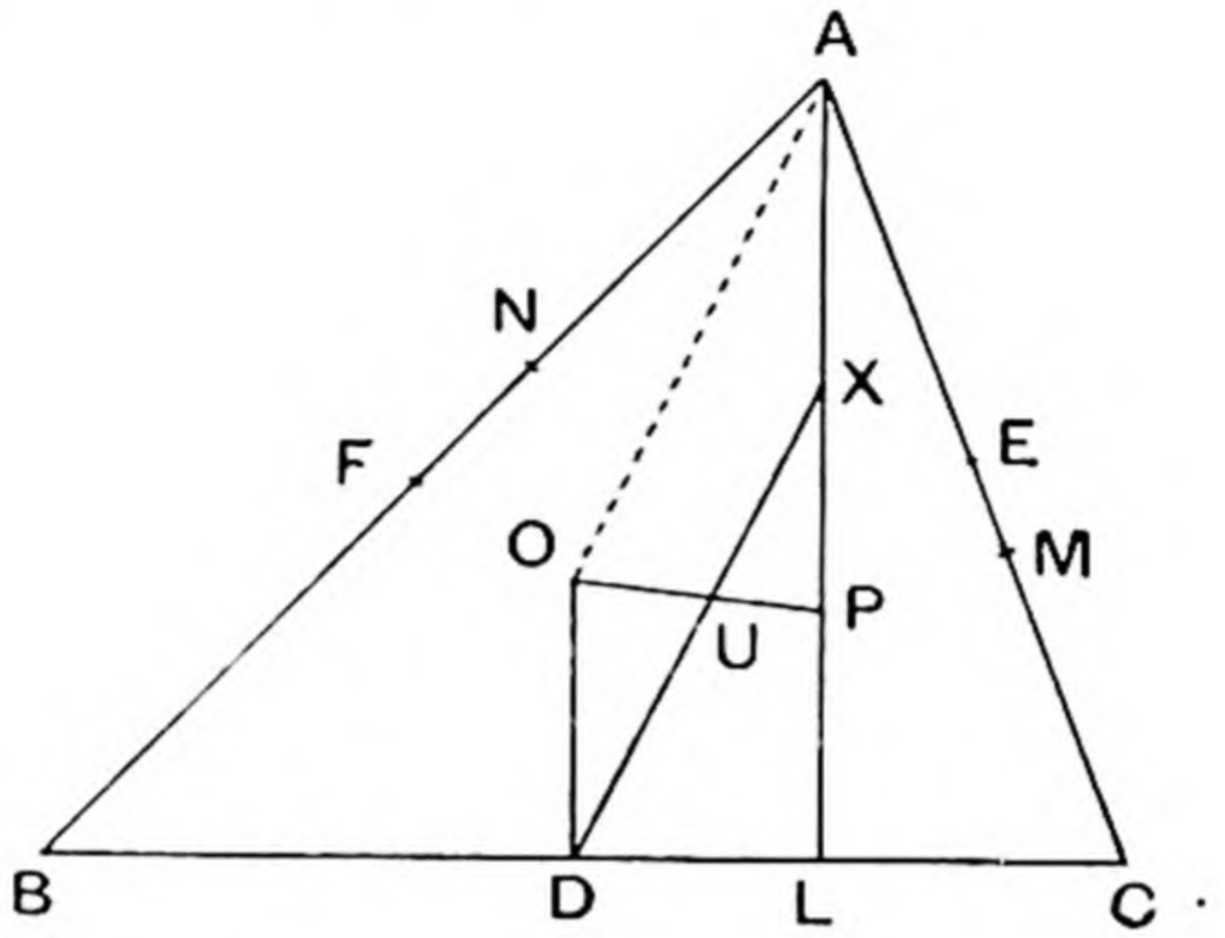
$$\angle FLA = \angle FAL.$$

$\therefore \angle FLE = \angle FAE$

$= \angle FDE$ since $AFDE$ is a parallelogram.

$\therefore L$ is on the circumcircle of $DEF$.

Similarly $M$ and $N$ lie on this circle.




Further the centre of this circle lies on each of the three lines bisecting $DL$, $EM$, $FN$ at right angles.

Therefore the centre of the circle is at $U$ the middle point of $OP$.

Now join $DU$ and produce it to meet $AP$ in $X$.

The two triangles $OUD$, $PUX$ are easily seen to be congruent, so that $UD = UX$ and $XP = OD$.

Hence $X$ lies on the circle through $D$, $E$, $F$, $L$, $M$, $N$.

And since $XP = OD = \frac{1}{2}AP$, $X$ is the middle point of $AP$.

Similarly the circle goes through $Y$ and $Z$, the middle points of $BP$ and $CP$.

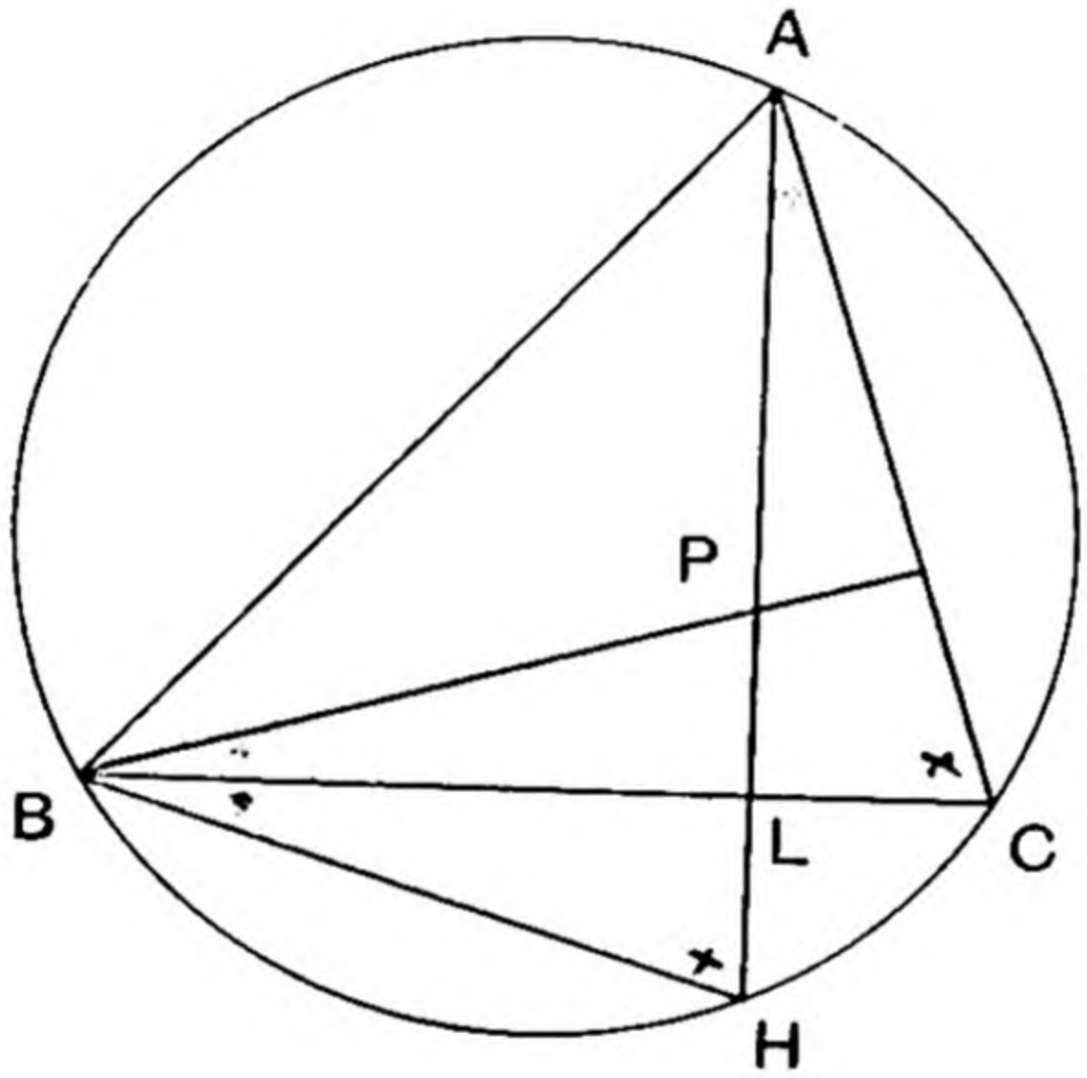
Thus our proposition is proved.

**5.** The circle thus defined is known as the *nine-points circle* of the triangle. Its radius is half that of the circumcircle, as is obvious from the fact that the nine-points circle is the circumcircle of $DEF$, which is similar to $ABC$ and of half its linear

dimensions. Or the same may be seen from our figure wherein $DX = OA$, for $ODXA$ is a parallelogram.

It will be proved in the chapter on Inversion that the nine-points circle touches the incircle and the three ecircles of the triangle.

**6. Prop.** *If the perpendicular $AL$ of a triangle $ABC$ be produced to meet the circumcircle in $H$, then $PL = LH$, $P$ being the orthocentre.*




Join $BH$.

Then $\angle HBL = \angle HAC$ in the same segment

$= \angle LBP$ since each is the complement of $\angle ACB$.

Thus the triangles $PBL, HBL$ have their angles at $B$ equal, also their right angles at $L$ equal, and the side $BL$ common.

$\therefore PL = LH$.

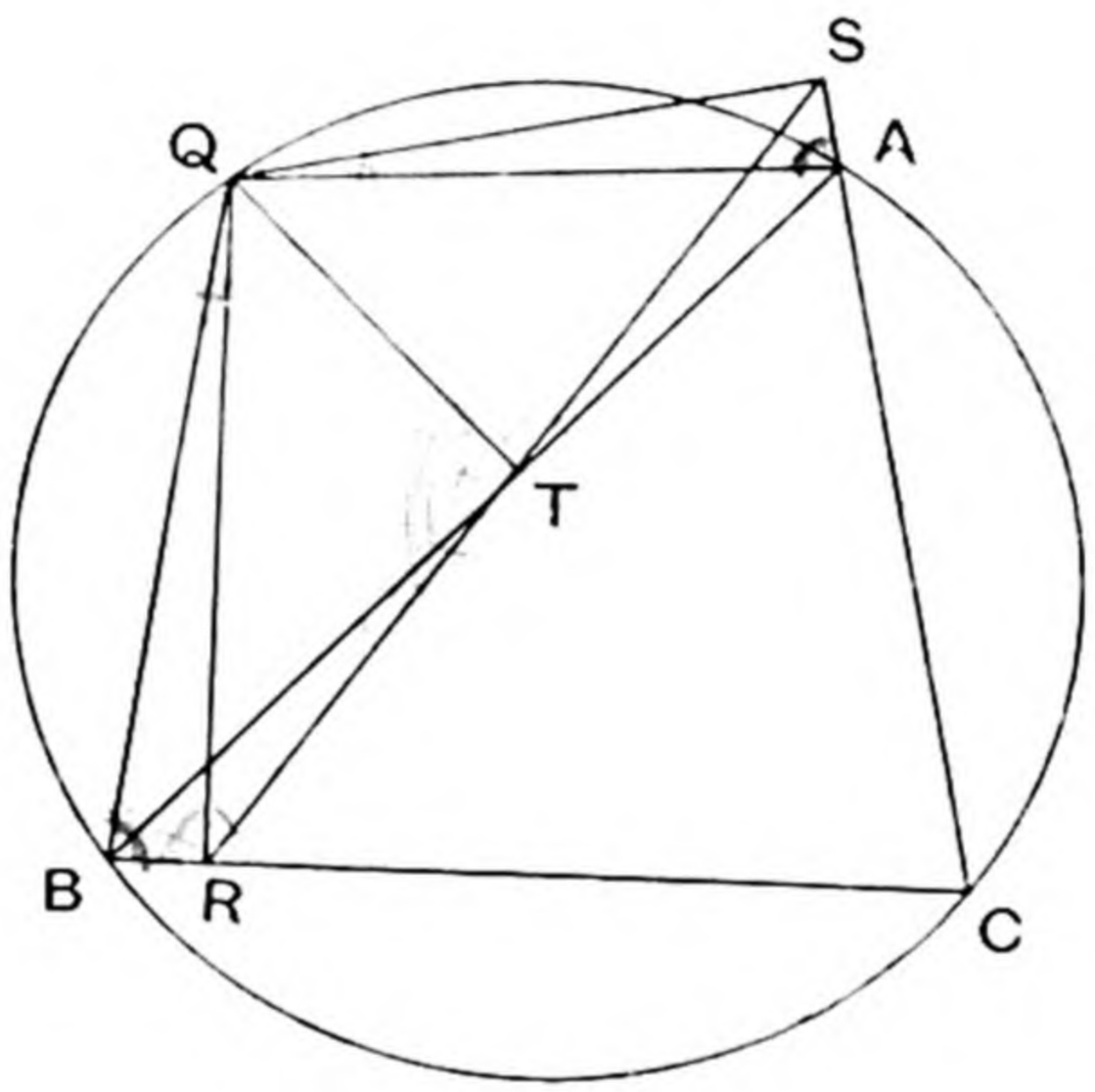
**7. Prop.** *The feet of the perpendiculars from any point $Q$ on the circumcircle of a triangle $ABC$ on to the sides of the triangle are collinear.*

Let $R, S, T$ be the feet of the perpendiculars as in the figure. Join $QA, QB$.

$QTAS$ is a cyclic quadrilateral since $T$ and $S$ are right angles.

$$\therefore \angle ATS = \angle AQS$$
$$= \text{complement of } \angle QAS$$
$$= \text{complement of } \angle QBC \text{ (since } QAC, QBC \text{ are supplementary)}$$
$$= \angle BQR$$
$$= \angle BTR \text{ (since } QBRT \text{ is cyclic).}$$

$\therefore RTS$ is a straight line.




This line $RTS$ is called the *pedal line* of the point $Q$. It is known also as the *Simson* line.

The converse of this proposition also holds good, viz.:

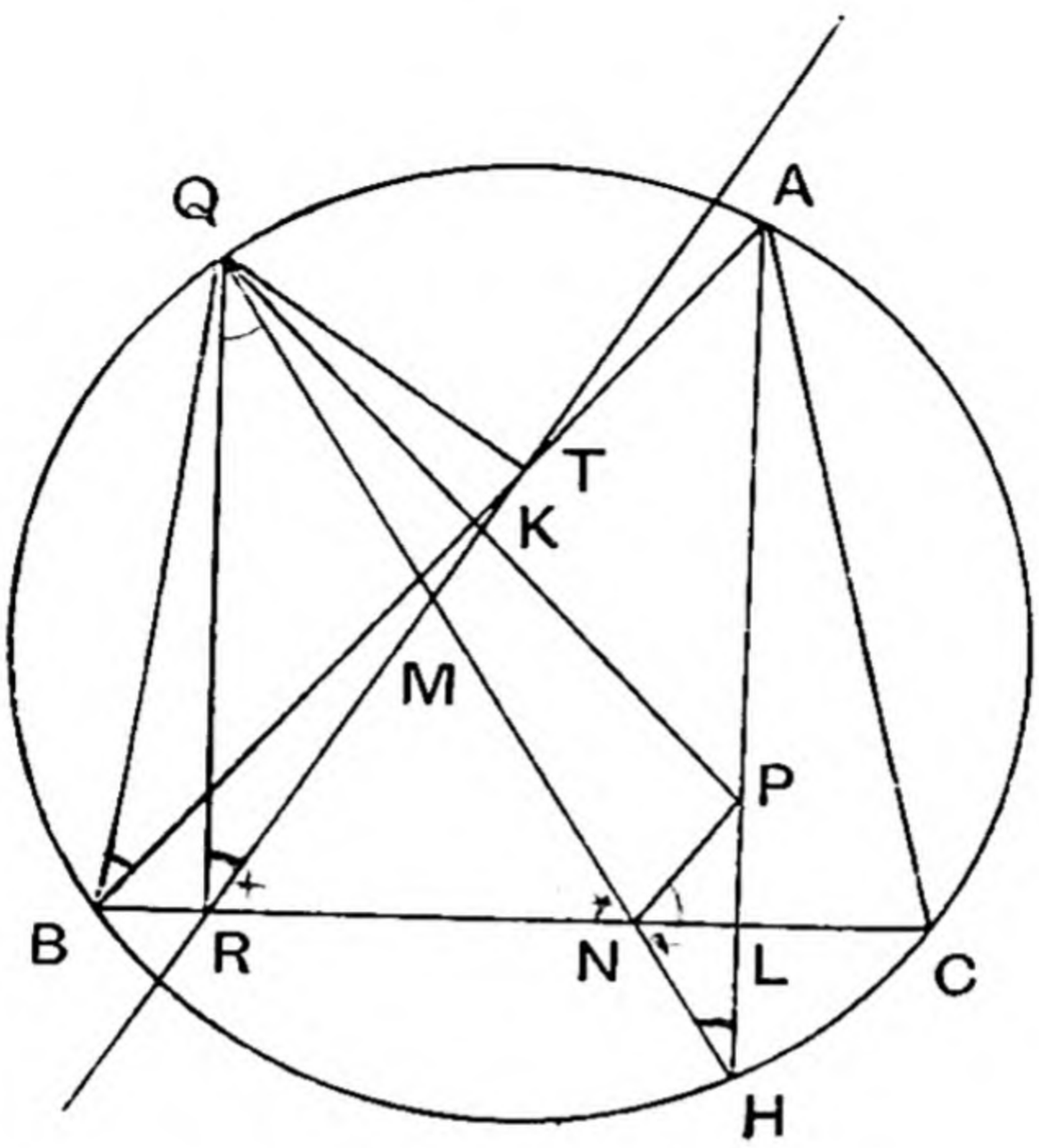
*If the feet of the perpendiculars from a point Q on to the sides of a triangle are collinear, Q lies on the circumcircle of the triangle.*

For since $QBRT$ and $QTAS$ are cyclic,

$$\angle BQR = \angle BTR = \angle ATS = \angle AQS.$$

$\therefore \angle QBR = \angle QAS$, so that $QBCA$ is cyclic.

**8. Prop.** *The pedal line of $Q$ bisects the line joining $Q$ to $P$, the orthocentre of the triangle.*




Join $QP$ cutting the pedal line of $Q$ in $K$.

Let the perpendicular $AL$ meet the circumcircle in $H$.

Join $QH$ cutting the pedal line in $M$ and $BC$ in $N$.

Join $PN$ and $QB$.

Then since $QBRT$ is cyclic,

$$\angle QRT = \angle QBT$$
$$= \angle QHA \text{ in same segment}$$
$$= \angle HQR \text{ since } QR \text{ is parallel to } AH.$$
$$\therefore QM = MR.$$

$\therefore M$ is the middle point of $QN$.

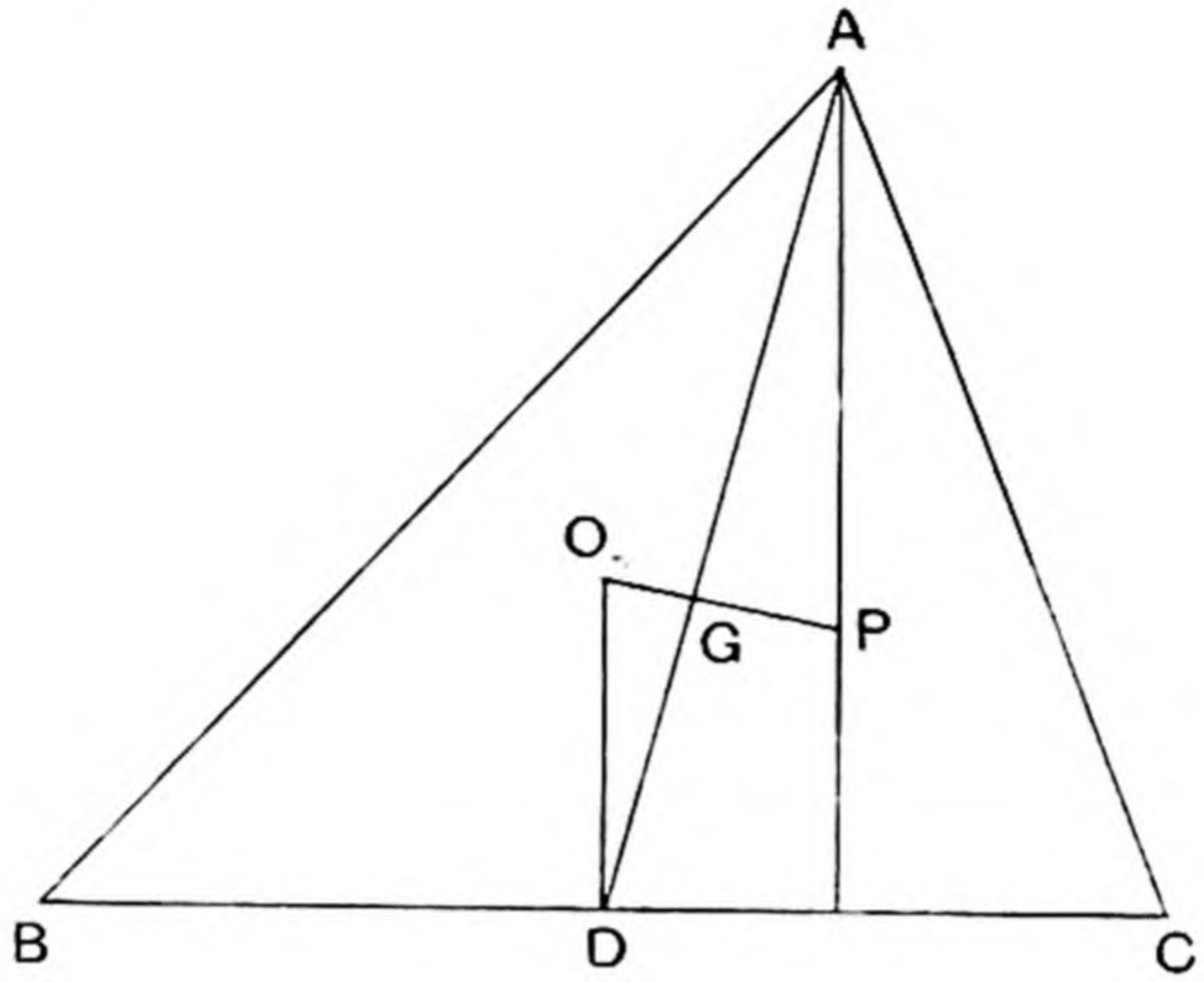
But $\angle PNL = \angle LNH$ since $\triangle PNL \equiv \triangle HNL$ (Page 5) Art. 6.
$$= \angle RNM$$
$$= \angle MRN.$$

$\therefore PN$ is parallel to $RT$.

$\therefore QK : KP = QM : MN.$

$\therefore QK = KP.$

9. **Prop.** *The three medians of a triangle meet in a point, and this point is a point of trisection of each median, and also of the line joining the circumcentre $O$ and the orthocentre $P$.*




Let the median $AD$ of the triangle $ABC$ cut $OP$ in $G$.

Then from the similarity of the triangles $GAP$, $GDO$, we deduce, since $AP = 2OD$, that $AG = 2GD$ and $PG = 2GO$.

Thus the median $AD$ cuts $OP$ in $G$ which is a point of trisection of both lines.

Similarly the other medians cut $OP$ in the same point $G$, which will be a point of trisection of them also.

This point $G$ is called the *median point* of the triangle. The reader is probably already familiar with this point as the centroid of the triangle.

10. **Prop.** *If $AD$ be a median of the triangle $ABC$, then*

$$AB^2 + AC^2 = 2AD^2 + 2BD^2.$$

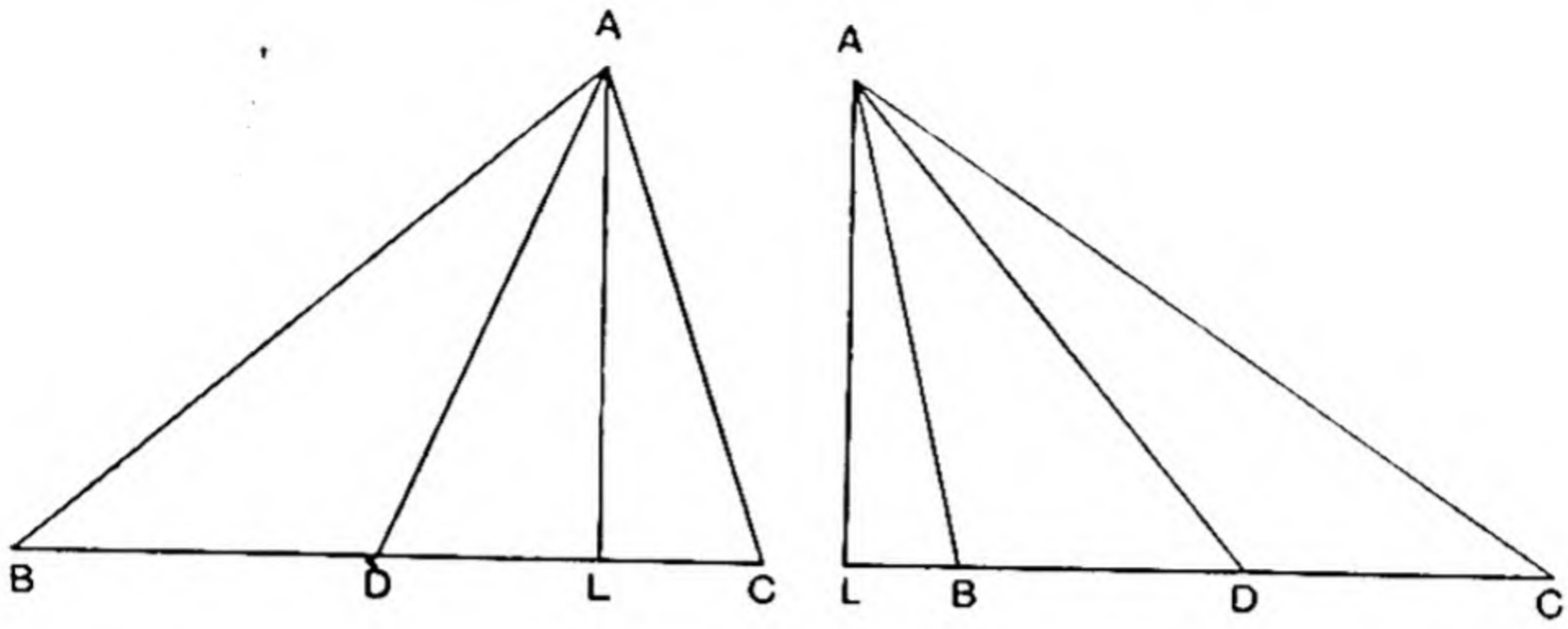
Draw $AL$ perpendicular to $BC$.

Then $$AC^2 = AB^2 + BC^2 - 2BC \,.\, BL$$

and $$AD^2 = AB^2 + BD^2 - 2BD \,.\, BL.$$

These equalities include the cases where both the angles $B$ and $C$ are acute, and where one of them, $B$, is obtuse, provided

that $BC$ and $BL$ be considered to have the same or opposite signs according as they are in the same or opposite directions.




Multiply the second equation by 2 and subtract from the first, then

$$AC^2 - 2AD^2 = BC^2 - AB^2 - 2BD^2.$$

$$\therefore AB^2 + AC^2 = 2AD^2 + BC^2 - 2BD^2$$

$$= 2AD^2 + 2BD^2, \text{ since } BC = 2BD.$$

**11.** The proposition proved in the last article is only a special case of the following general one:

*If $D$ be a point in the side $BC$ of a triangle $ABC$ such that $BD = \frac{1}{n} BC$, then*

$$(n-1)\,AB^2 + AC^2 = n \,.\, AD^2 + \left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right) BC^2.$$

For proceeding as before, if we now multiply the second of the equations by $n$ and subtract from the first we get

$$AC^2 - n \,.\, AD^2 = (1-n)\,AB^2 + BC^2 - n \,.\, BD^2.$$

$$\therefore (n-1)\,AB^2 + AC^2 = n \,.\, AD^2 + BC^2 - n\left(\frac{1}{n} BC\right)^2$$

$$= n \,.\, AD^2 + \left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right) BC^2.$$

**12. Prop.** *The distances of the points of contact of the incircle of a triangle $ABC$ with the sides from the vertices $A, B, C$ are $s-a, s-b, s-c$ respectively; and the distances of the points of contact of the ecircle opposite to $A$ are $s, s-c,$*

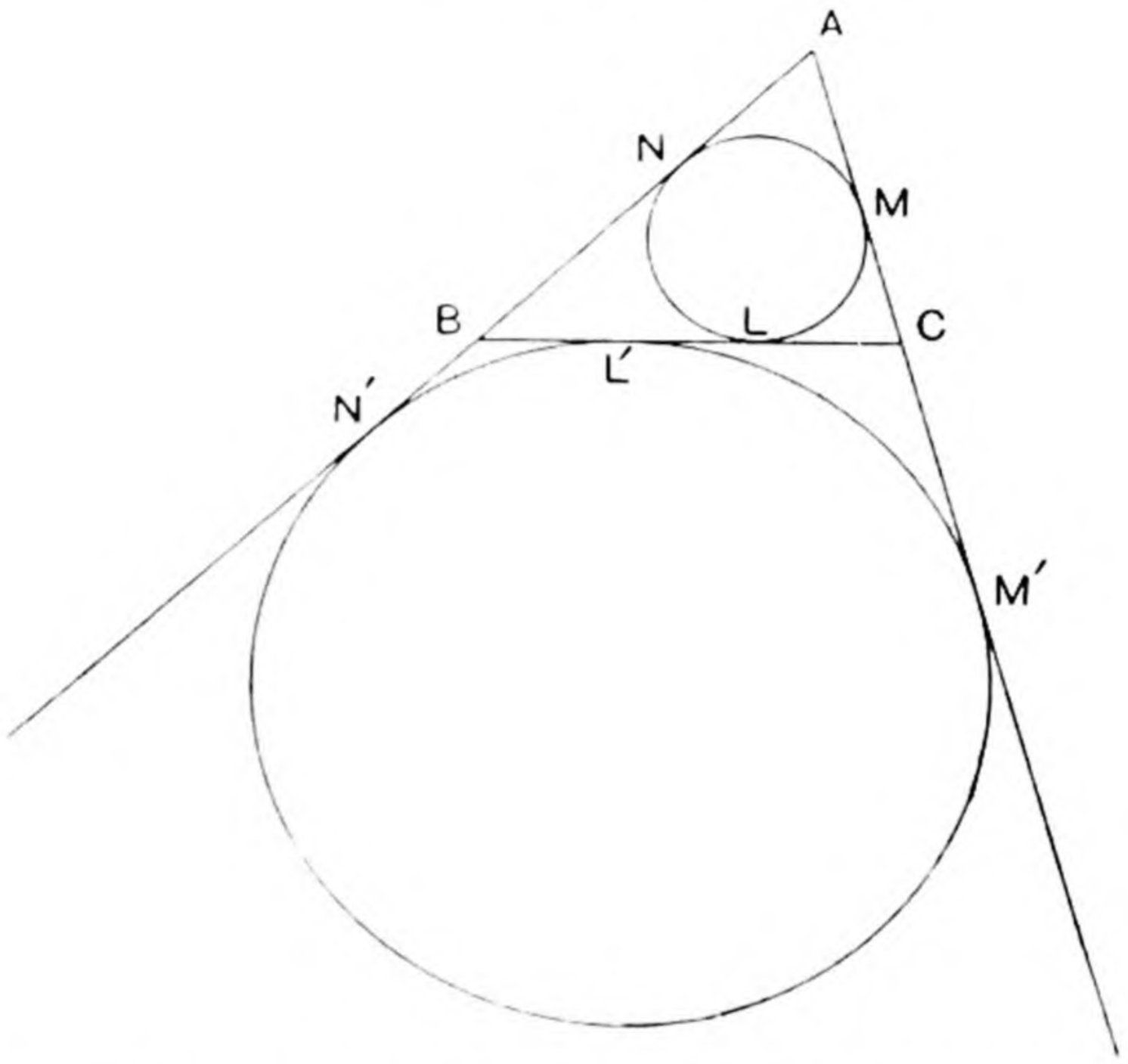
*$s-b$ respectively; $a, b, c$ being the lengths of the sides opposite to $A, B, C$ and $s$ half the sum of them.*

Let the points of contact of the incircle be $L$, $M$, $N$.

Then since $AM = AN$, $CL = CM$ and $BL = BN$,

$$\therefore AM + BC = \text{half the sum of the sides} = s,$$

$$\therefore AM = s - a.$$




Similarly $BL = BN = s - b$, and $CL = CM = s - c$.

Next let $L'$, $M'$, $N'$ be the points of contact of the ecircle opposite to $A$.

Then $$AN' = AB + BN' = AB + BL'$$

and $$AM' = AC + CM' = AC + CL'.$$

$$\therefore \text{since } AM' = AN',$$

$$2AN' = AB + AC + BC = 2s.$$

$$\therefore AN' = s,$$

and $$BL' = BN' = s - c, \text{ and } CL' = CM' = s - b.$$

Cor. $BL' = CL$, and thus $LL'$ and $BC$ have the same middle point.

## EXERCISES

1. Defining the pedal triangle as that formed by joining the feet of the perpendiculars of a triangle, shew that the pedal triangle has for its incentre the orthocentre of the original triangle, and that its angles are the supplements of twice the angles of the triangle.

2. A straight line $PQ$ is drawn parallel to $AB$ to meet the circumcircle of the triangle $ABC$ in the points $P$ and $Q$, shew that the pedal lines of $P$ and $Q$ intersect on the perpendicular from $C$ on $AB$.

3. Shew that the pedal lines of three points on the circumcircle of a triangle form a triangle similar to that formed by the three points.

4. The pedal lines of the extremities of a chord of the circumcircle of a triangle intersect at a constant angle. Find the locus of the middle point of the chord.

5. Given the circumcircle of a triangle and two of its vertices, prove that the loci of its orthocentre, centroid and nine-points centre are circles.

6. The locus of a point which is such that the sum of the squares of its distances from two given points is constant is a sphere.

7. $A'$, $B'$, $C'$ are three points on the sides $BC$, $CA$, $AB$ of a triangle $ABC$. Prove that the circumcentres of the triangles $AB'C'$, $BC'A'$, $CA'B'$ are the angular points of a triangle which is similar to $ABC$.

8. A circle is described concentric with the circumcircle of the triangle $ABC$, and it intercepts chords $A_1A_2$, $B_1B_2$, $C_1C_2$ on $BC$, $CA$, $AB$ respectively; from $A_1$ perpendiculars $A_1b_1$, $A_1c_1$ are drawn to $CA$, $AB$ respectively, and from $A_2$, $B_1$, $B_2$, $C_1$, $C_2$ similar perpendiculars are drawn. Shew that the circumcentres of the six triangles, of which $Ab_1c_1$ is a typical one, lie on a circle concentric with the nine-points circle, and of radius one-half that of the original circle.

9. A plane quadrilateral is divided into four triangles by its internal diagonals; shew that the quadrilaterals having for angular points (i) the orthocentres and (ii) the circumcentres of the four

triangles are similar parallelograms: and if their areas be $\Delta_1$ and $\Delta_2$, and $\Delta$ be that of the quadrilateral, then $2\Delta + \Delta_1 = 4\Delta_2$.

10. Prove that the line joining the vertex of a triangle to that point of the inscribed circle which is farthest from the base passes through the point of contact of the escribed circle with the base.

11. Given in magnitude and position the lines joining the vertex of a triangle to the points in which the inscribed circle and the circle escribed to the base touch the base, construct the triangle.

12. Prove that when four points $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$ lie on a circle, the orthocentres of the triangles $BCD$, $CDA$, $DAB$, $ABC$ lie on an equal circle.

13. Prove that the pedal lines of the extremities of a diameter of the circumcircle of a triangle intersect at right angles on the nine-points circle.

14. $ABC$ is a triangle, $O$ its circumcentre; $OD$ perpendicular to $BC$ meets the circumcircle in $K$. Prove that the line through $D$ perpendicular to $AK$ will bisect $KP$, $P$ being the orthocentre.

15. Having given the circumcircle and one angular point of a triangle and also the lengths of the lines joining this point to the orthocentre and centre of gravity, construct the triangle.

16. If $AB$ be divided at $O$ in such a manner that

$$l \,.\, AO = m \,.\, OB,$$

and if $P$ be any point, prove

$$l \,.\, AP^2 + m \,.\, BP^2 = (l + m)\, OP^2 + l \,.\, AO^2 + m \,.\, BO^2.$$

If $a$, $b$, $c$ be the lengths of the sides of a triangle $ABC$, find the locus of a point $P$ such that $a \,.\, PA^2 + b \,.\, PB^2 + c \,.\, PC^2$ is constant.

# CHAPTER II

## SOME PROPERTIES OF CIRCLES

**13. Definition.** When two points $P$ and $P'$ lie on the same radius of a circle whose centre is $O$ and are on the same side of $O$ and their distances from $O$ are such that $OP \,.\, OP' =$ square of the radius, they are called *inverse points* with respect to the circle.

The reader can already prove for himself that if a pair of tangents be drawn from an external point $P$ to a circle, centre $O$, the chord joining the points of contact of these tangents is at right angles to $OP$, and cuts $OP$ in a point which is the inverse of $P$.

**14.** The following proposition will give the definition of the *polar* of a point with respect to a circle:

**Prop.** *The locus of the points of intersection of pairs of tangents drawn at the extremities of chords of a circle, which pass through a fixed point, is a straight line, called the* polar *of that point, and the point is called the* pole *of the line.*

Let $A$ be a fixed point in the plane of a circle, centre $O$.

Draw any chord $QR$ of the circle to pass through $A$.

Let the tangents at $Q$ and $R$ meet in $P$.

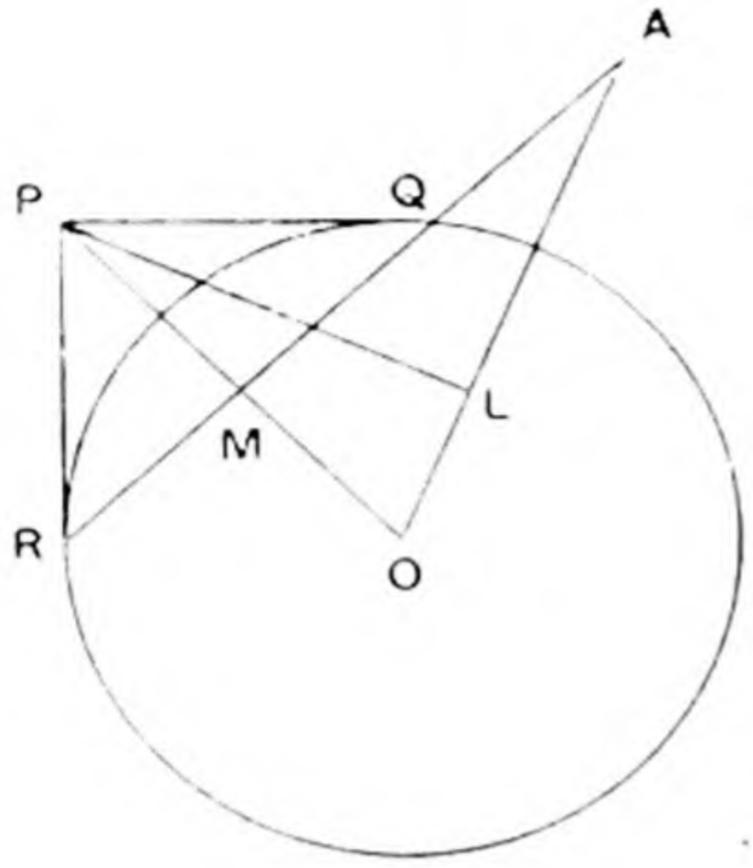
Draw $PL$ perpendicular to $OA$.

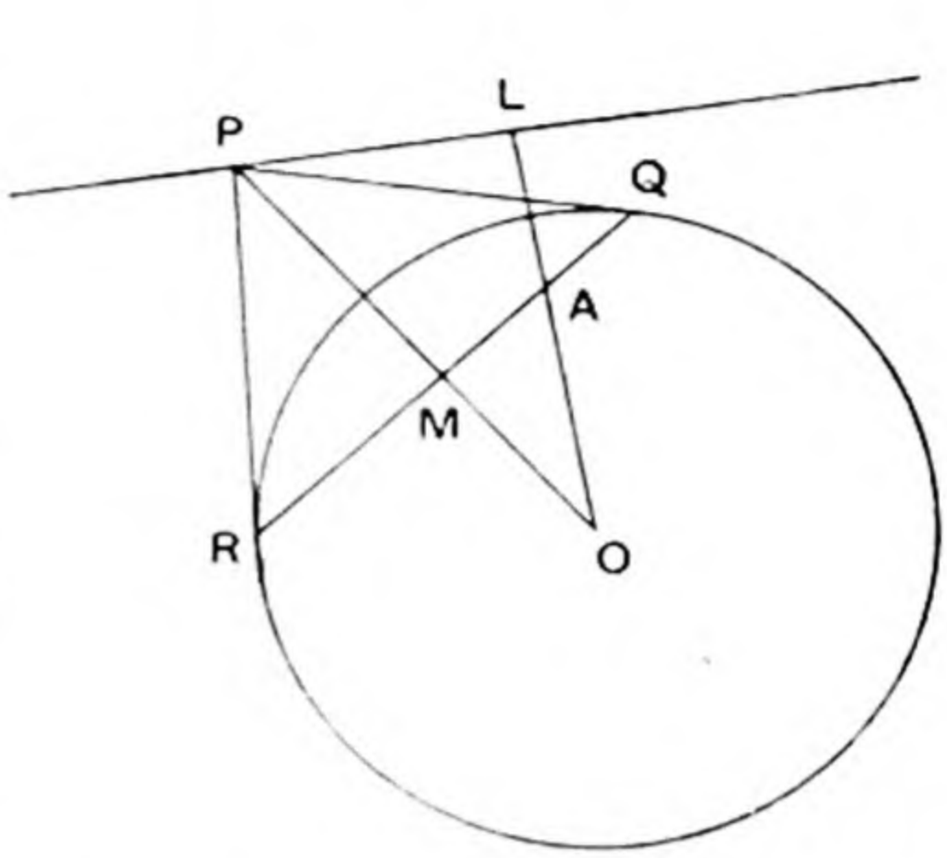
Let $OP$ cut $QR$ at right angles in $M$.

Then $PMLA$ is cyclic.

$\therefore OL \,.\, OA = OM \,.\, OP =$ square of radius.

$\therefore L$ is a fixed point, viz. the inverse of $A$.




Thus the locus of $P$ is a straight line perpendicular to $OA$, and cutting it in the inverse point of $A$.

**15.** It is clear from the above that the polar of an external point coincides with the chord of contact of the tangents from that point. And if we introduce the notion of imaginary lines, with which Analytical Geometry has furnished us, we may say that the polar of a point coincides with the chord of contact of tangents real or imaginary from that point.

We may remark here that the polar of a point on the circle is the tangent at that point.

Some writers *define* the polar of a point as the chord of contact of the tangents drawn from that point; others again define it by means of its harmonic property, which will be given in a later chapter. It is unfortunate that this difference of treatment prevails. The present writer is of opinion that the method he has here adopted is the best.

**16. Prop.** *If the polar of $A$ goes through $B$, then the polar of $B$ goes through $A$.*

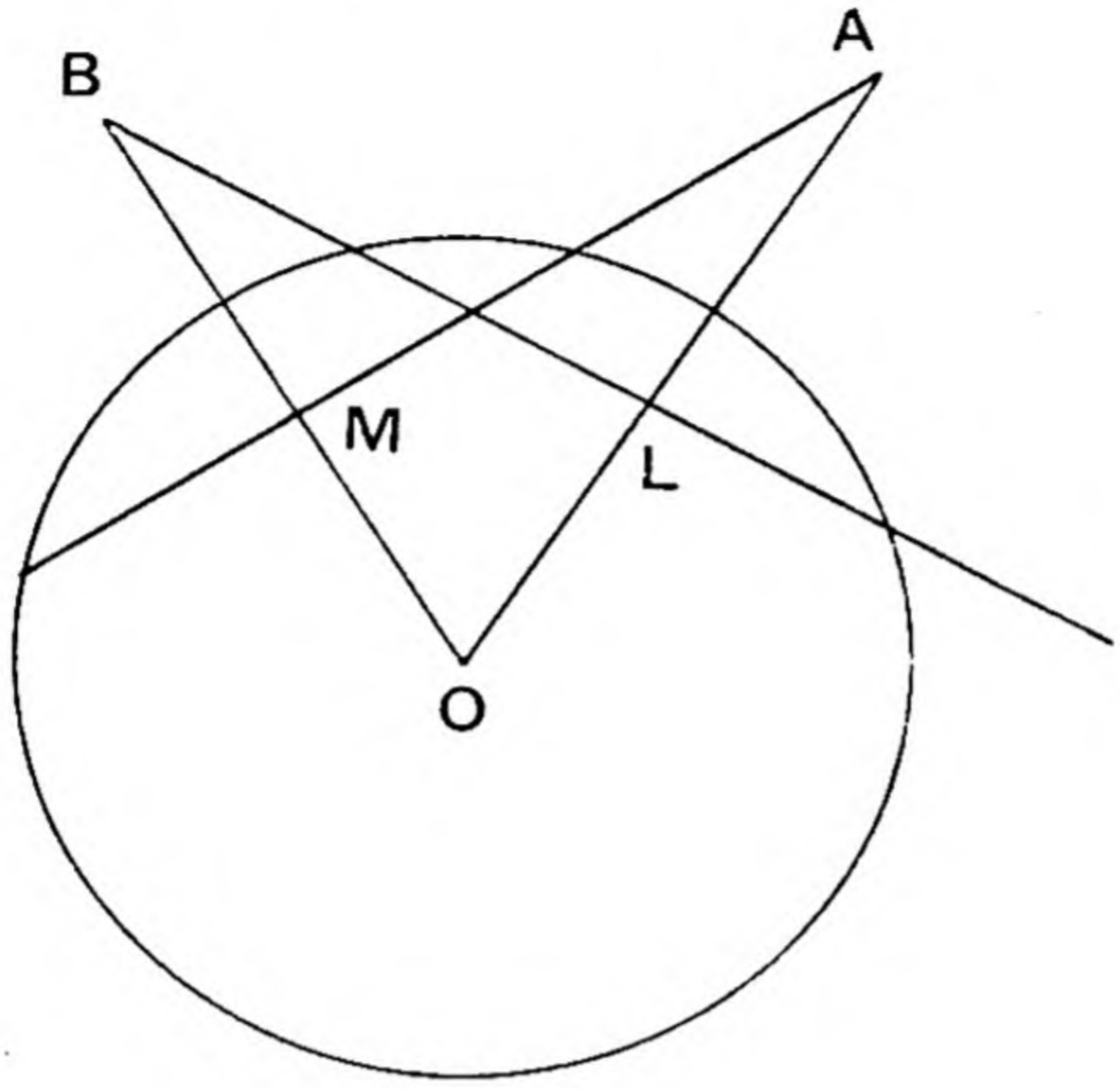
Let $BL$ be the polar of $A$ cutting $OA$ at right angles in $L$.

Draw $AM$ at right angles to $OB$.

Then $OM \cdot OB = OL \cdot OA =$ sq. of radius,

$\therefore AM$ is the polar of $B$,

that is, $A$ lies on the polar of $B$.




Two points such that the polar of each goes through the other are called *conjugate points.*

The reader will see for himself that inverse points with respect to a circle are a special case of conjugate points.

We leave it as an exercise for the student to prove that if $l, m$ be two lines such that the pole of $l$ lies on $m$, then the pole of $m$ will lie on $l$.

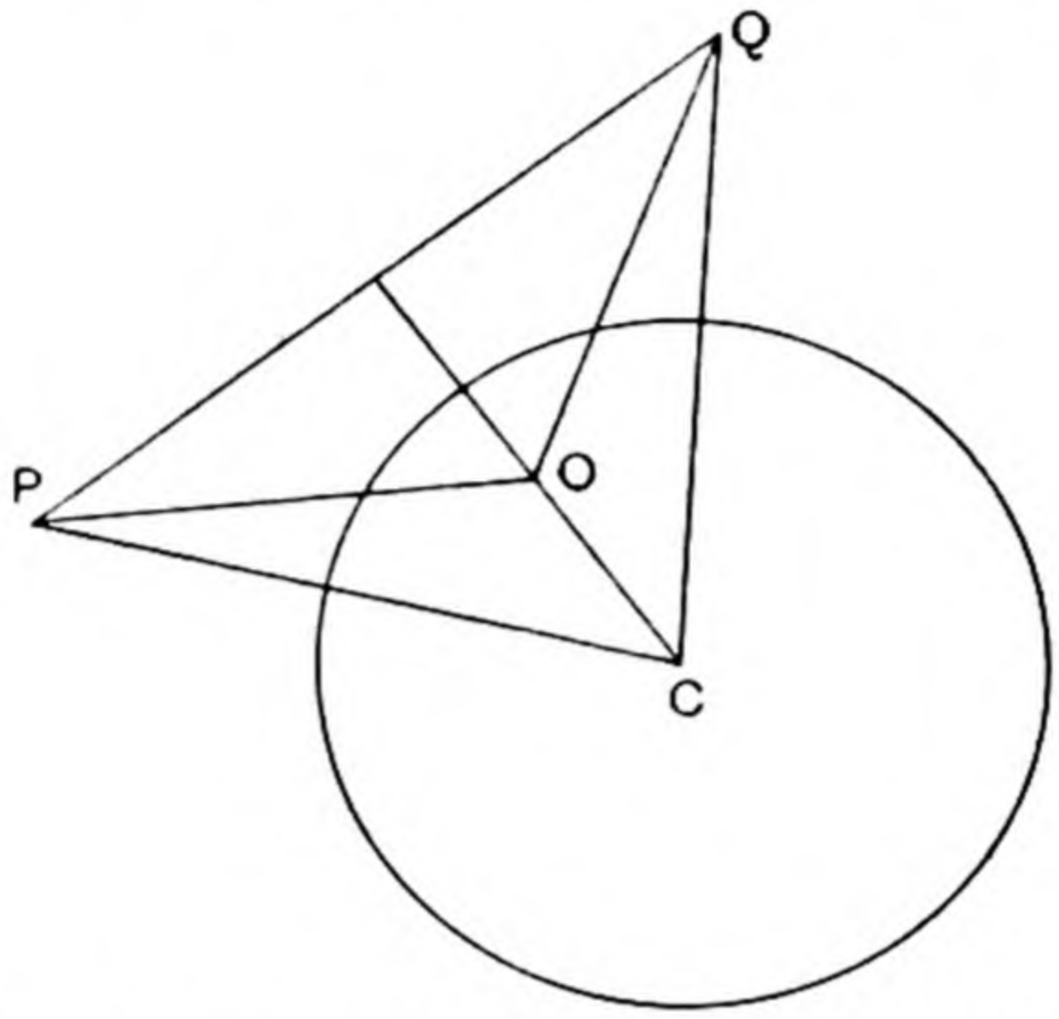
Two such lines are called *conjugate lines.*

From the above property for conjugate points we see that the polars of a number of collinear points all pass through a common point, viz. the pole of the line on which they lie. For if $A, B, C, D$, &c., be points on a line $p$ whose pole is $P$; since the polar of $P$ goes through $A, B, C$, &c., $\therefore$ the polars of $A, B, C$, &c., go through $P$.

We observe that the intersection of the polars of two points is the pole of the line joining them.

**16a. Prop.** *If $OP$ and $OQ$ be a pair of conjugate lines of a circle which meet the polar of $O$ in $P$ and $Q$, then the triangle $OPQ$ is such that each vertex is the pole of the opposite side, and the centre of the circle is the orthocentre of the triangle.*

For the pole of $OQ$ must lie on the polar of $O$, and it also lies on $OP$, since $OP$ and $OQ$ are conjugate lines. Thus $OQ$ is the polar of $P$. Similarly $OP$ is the polar of $Q$.




Also the lines joining $C$ the centre to $O$, $P$, $Q$ are perpendicular respectively to the polars of those points, and therefore $C$ is the orthocentre of the triangle.

**17. Prop.** *If $P$ and $Q$ be any two points in the plane of a circle whose centre is $O$, then*

$$OP : OQ = \text{perp. from } P \text{ on polar of } Q : \text{perp. from } Q \text{ on polar of } P.$$

Let $P'$ and $Q'$ be the inverse points of $P$ and $Q$, through which the polars of $P$ and $Q$ pass.

Let the perpendiculars on the polars be $PM$ and $QN$; draw $PT$ and $QR$ perp. to $OQ$ and $OP$ respectively.

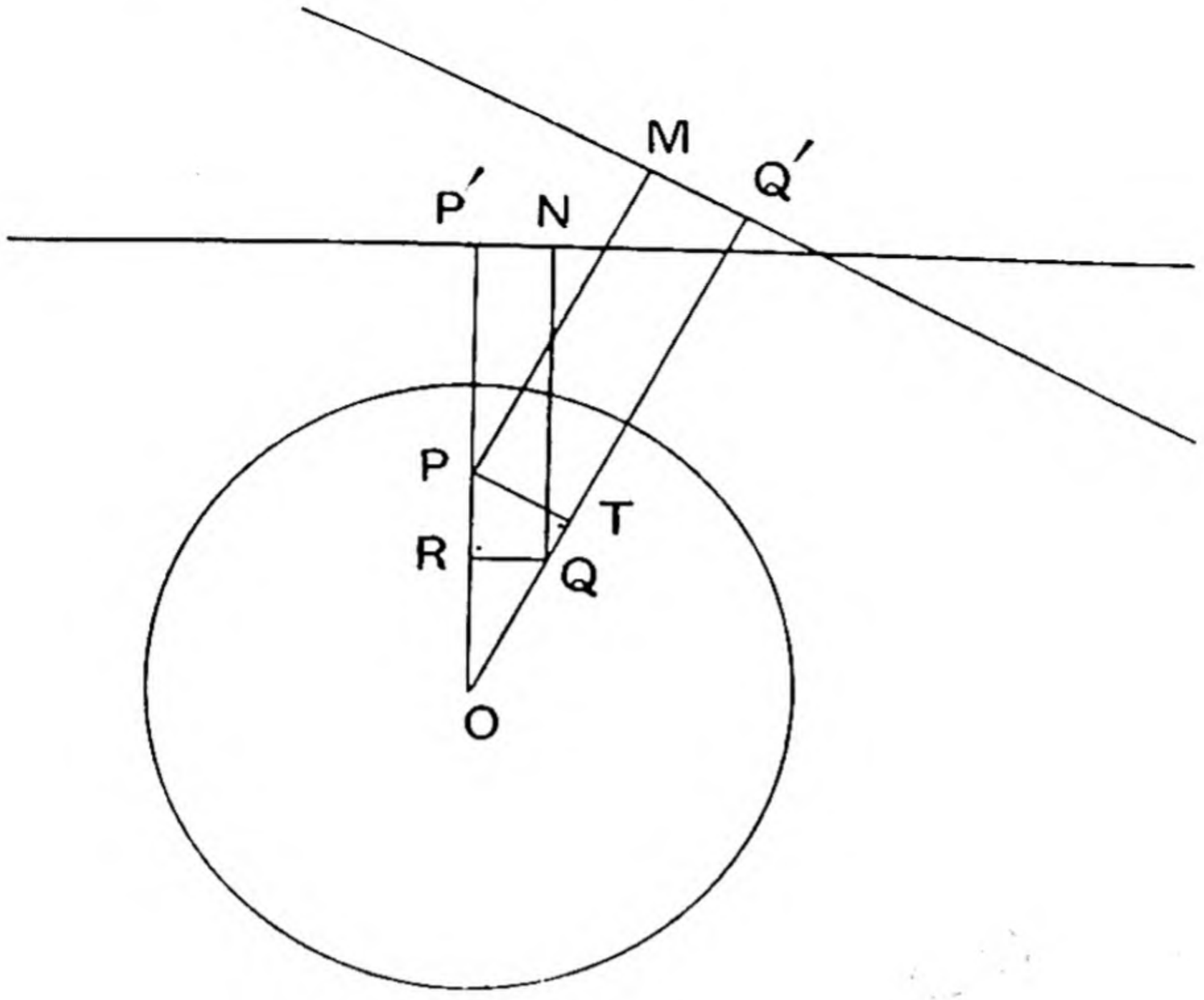
Then we have $OP \,.\, OP' = OQ \,.\, OQ'$,

since each is the square of the radius, and

$OR \,.\, OP = OT \,.\, OQ$ since $PRQT'$ is cyclic,

$$\therefore \frac{OQ'}{OP'} = \frac{OP}{OQ} = \frac{OT}{OR} = \frac{OQ' - OT}{OP' - OR} = \frac{PM}{QN}.$$

Thus the proposition is proved.




This is known as *Salmon's theorem.*

**18. Prop.** *The locus of points from which the tangents to two given coplanar circles are equal is a line* (*called the* radical axis *of the circles*) *perpendicular to the line of centres.*

Let $PK$, $PF$ be equal tangents to two circles, centres $A$ and $B$.

Draw $PL$ perp. to $AB$. Join $PA$, $PB$, $AK$ and $BF$.

Then $PK^2 = AP^2 - AK^2 = PL^2 + AL^2 - AK^2$,

and $PF^2 = PB^2 - BF^2 = PL^2 + LB^2 - BF^2$,

$\therefore AL^2 - AK^2 = LB^2 - BF^2$,

$\therefore AL^2 - LB^2 = AK^2 - BF^2$,

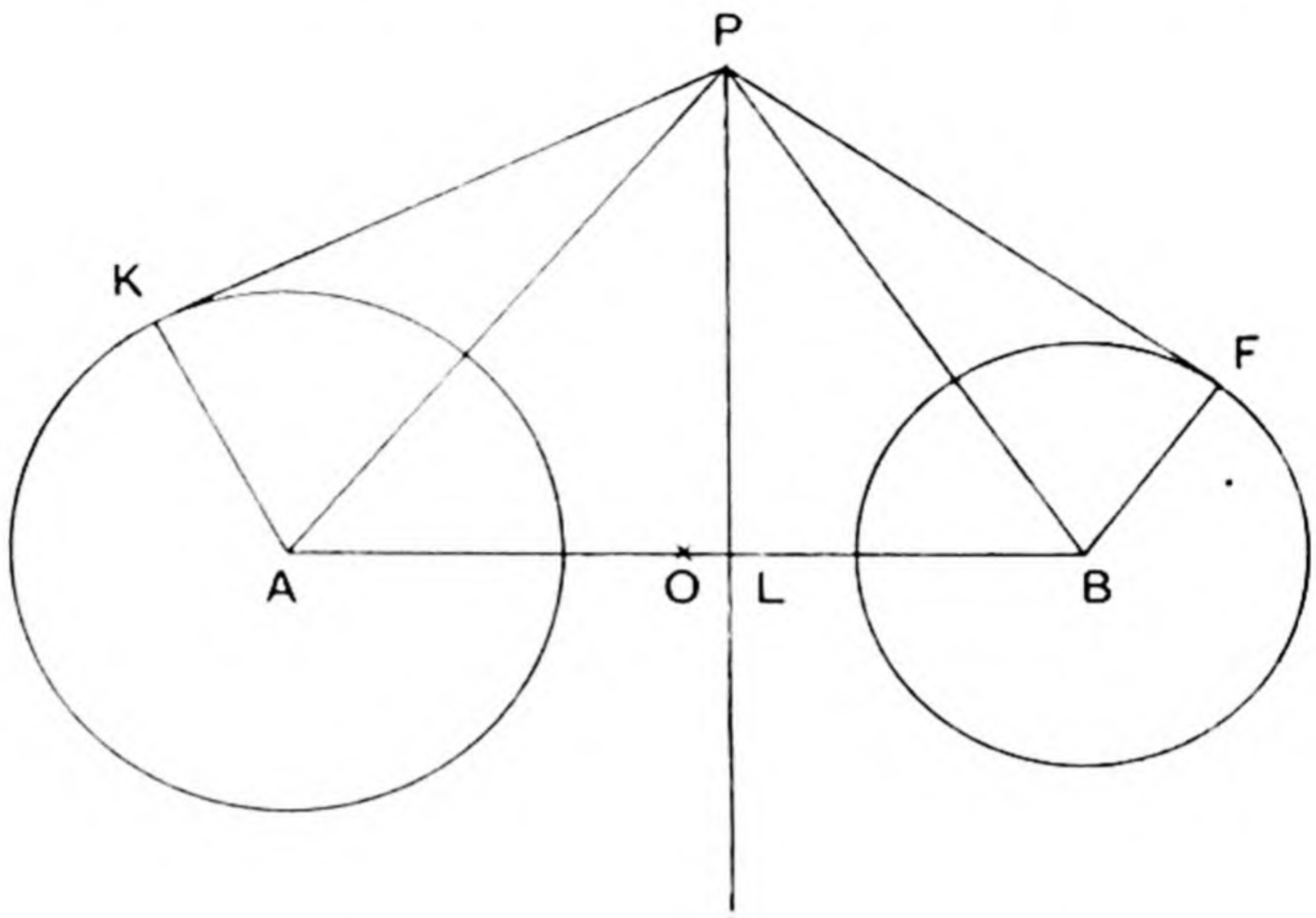
$\therefore (AL - LB)(AL + LB) = AK^2 - BF^2$.

Thus if $O$ be the middle point of $AB$, we have

$2OL \,.\, AB =$ difference of sqq. of the radii,

$\therefore L$ is a fixed point, and the locus of $P$ is a line perp. to $AB$.

Since points on the common chord produced of two intersecting circles are such that tangents from them to the two circles are equal, we see that the radical axis of two intersecting circles goes through their common points. And introducing




the notion of imaginary points, we may say that the radical axis of two circles goes through their common points, real or imaginary.

**19.** *The difference of the squares of the tangents to two coplanar circles, from any point $P$ in their plane, varies as the perpendicular from $P$ on their radical axis.*

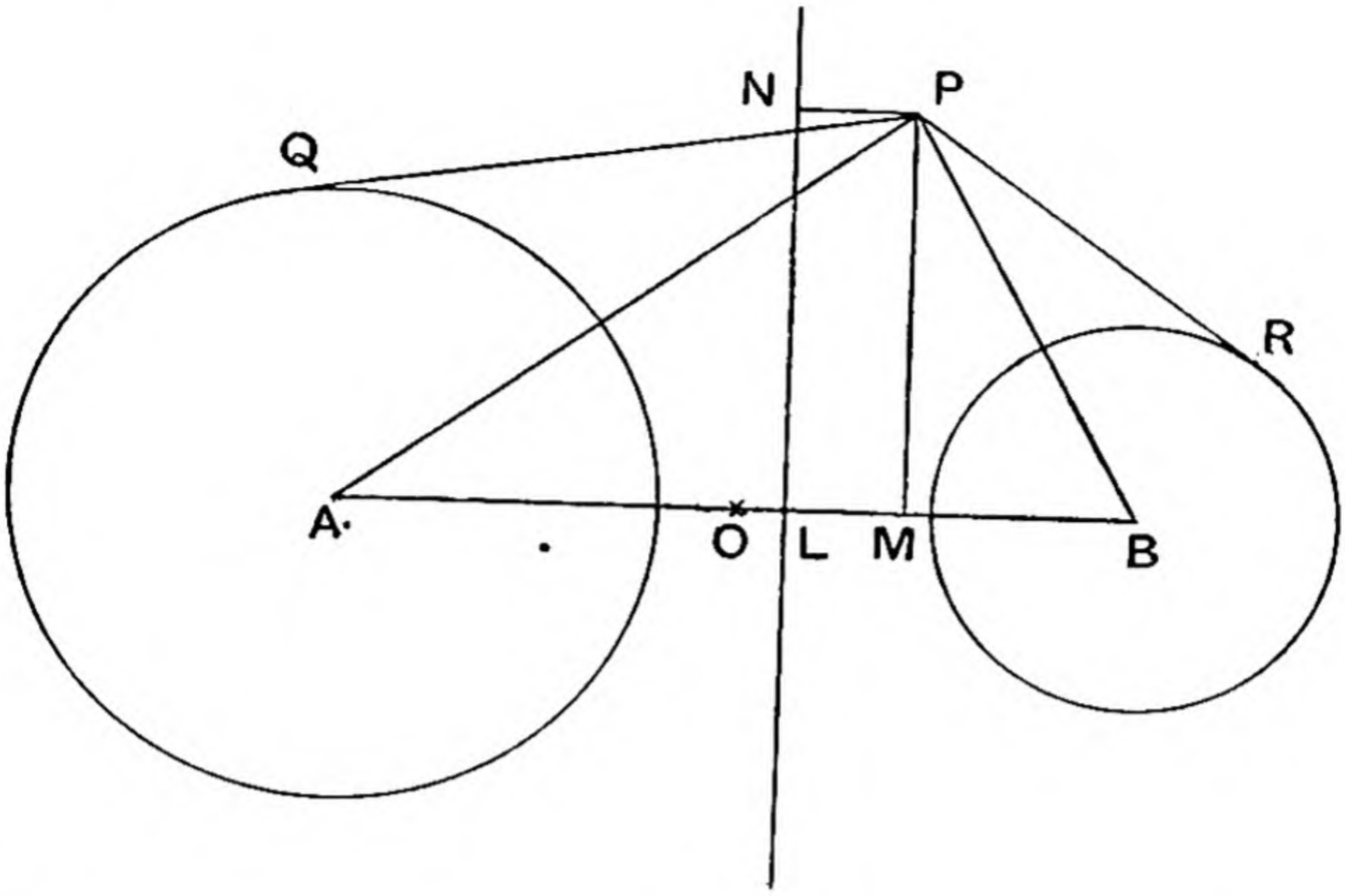
Let $PQ$ and $PR$ be the tangents from $P$ to the circles, centres $A$ and $B$.

Let $PN$ be perp. to radical axis $NL$, and $PM$ to $AB$; let $O$ be the middle point of $AB$. Join $PA$, $PB$.

Then

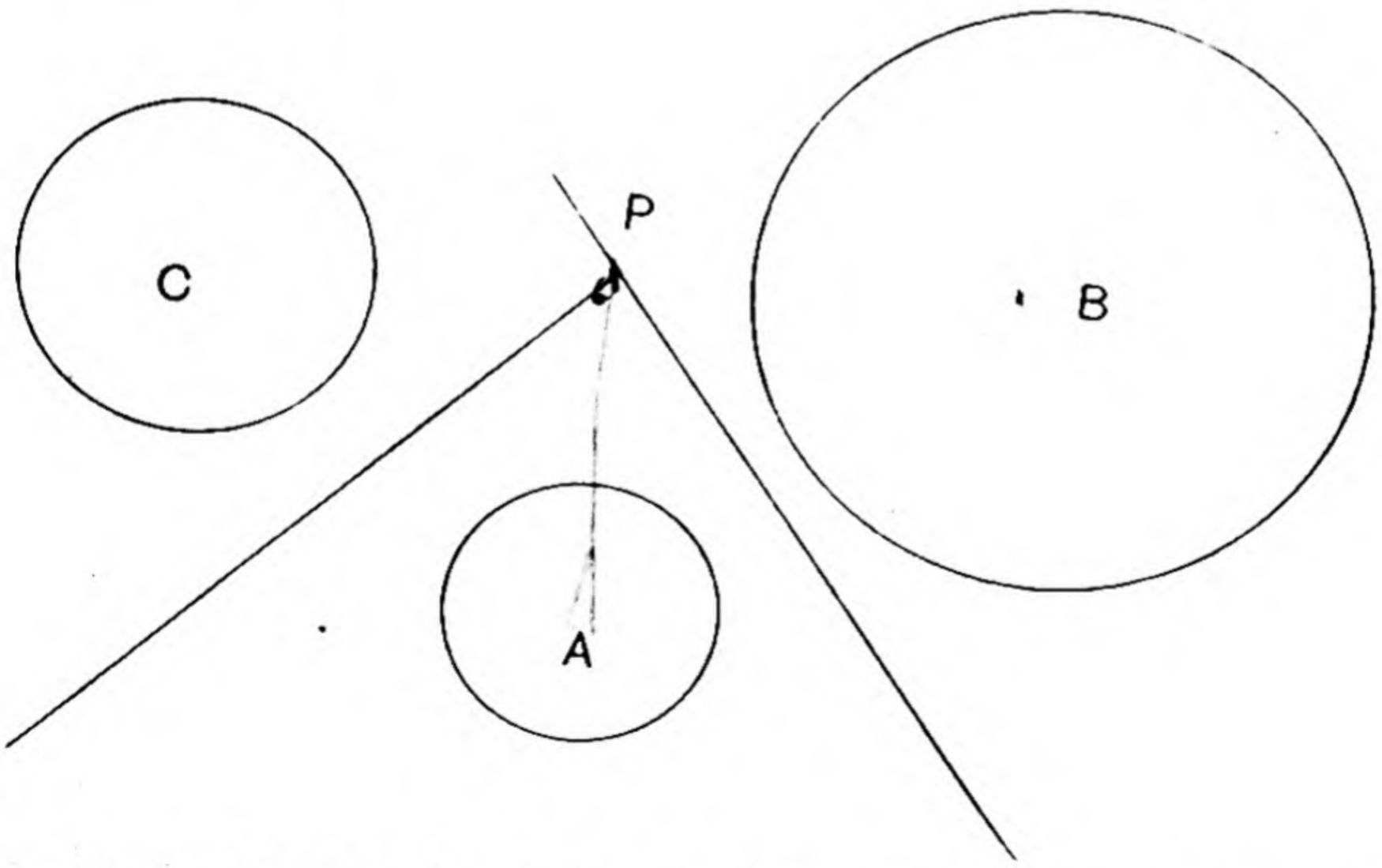
$$\begin{aligned} PQ^2 - PR^2 &= PA^2 - AQ^2 - (PB^2 - BR^2) \\ &= PA^2 - PB^2 - AQ^2 + BR^2 \\ &= AM^2 - MB^2 - AQ^2 + BR^2 \\ &= 2OM \,.\, AB - 2OL \,.\, AB \quad \text{(see § 18)} \\ &= 2AB \,.\, LM = 2AB \,.\, NP. \end{aligned}$$

This proves the proposition.




We may mention here that some writers use the term "power of a point" with respect to a circle to mean the square of the tangent from the point to the circle.

**20. Prop.** *The radical axes of three coplanar circles taken in pairs meet in a point.*



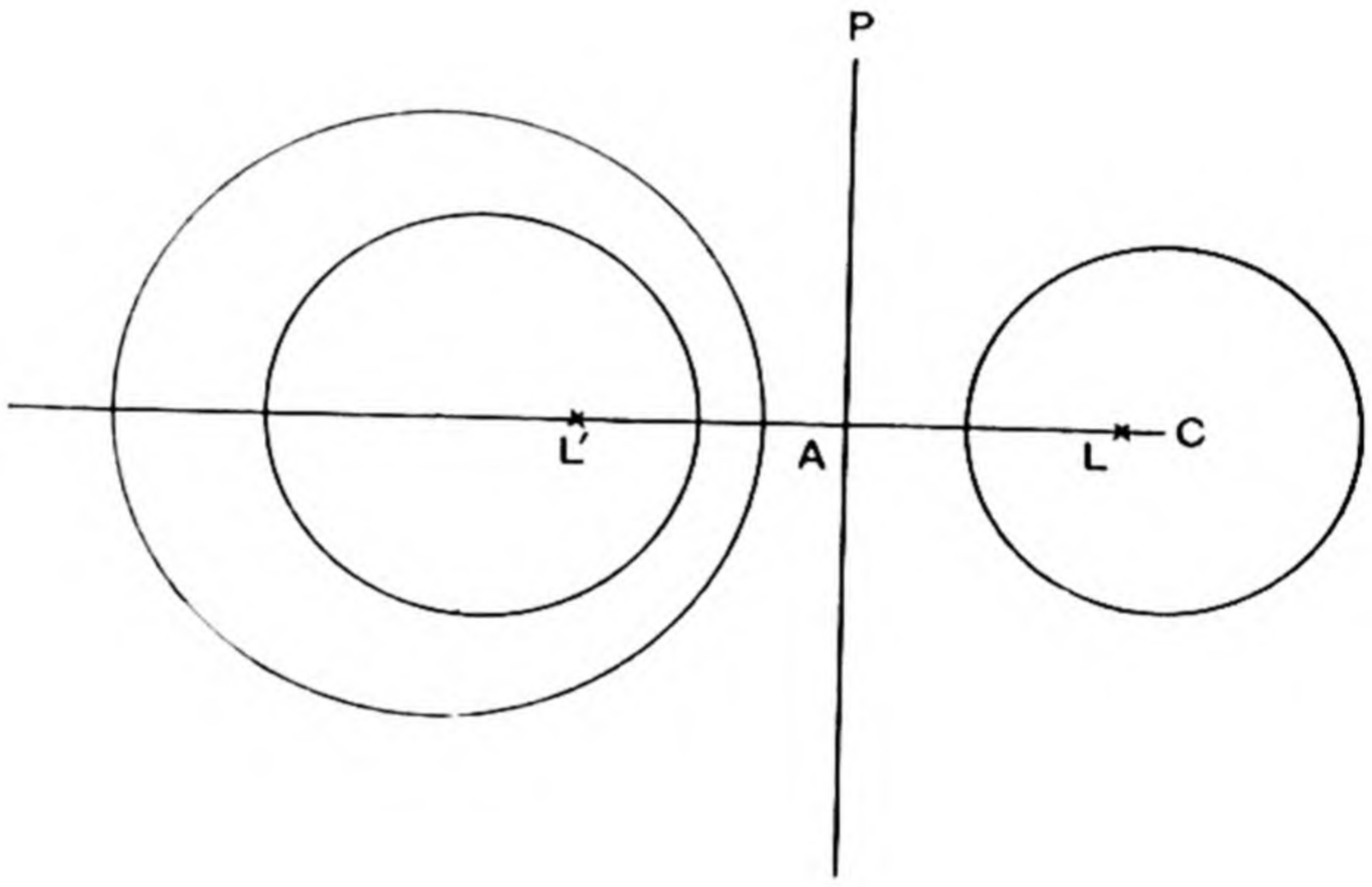

Let the radical axis of the circles $A$ and $B$ meet that of the circles $A$ and $C$ in $P$.

LAL SINGH COLLEGE
Acc. No:

Then the tangent from $P$ to circle $C$
$=$ tangent from $P$ to circle $A$
$=$ tangent from $P$ to circle $B$.
$\therefore$ $P$ is on the radical axis of $B$ and $C$.

**21. Coaxal circles.** A system of coplanar circles such that the radical axis for any pair of them is the same is called *coaxal*.

Clearly such circles will all have their centres along the same straight line.




Let the common radical axis of a system of coaxal circles cut their line of centres in $A$.

Then the tangents from $A$ to all the circles will be equal.

Let $L$, $L'$ be two points on the line of centres on opposite sides of $A$, such that $AL$, $AL'$ are equal in length to the tangents from $A$ to the circles; $L$ and $L'$ are called the *limiting points* of the system.

They are such that the distance of any point $P$ on the radical axis from either of them is equal to the length of the tangent from $P$ to the system of circles.

For if $C$ be the centre of one of the circles which is of radius $r$,

$$PL^2 = PA^2 + AL^2 = PA^2 + AC^2 - r^2 = PC^2 - r^2$$

= square of tangent, from $P$ to circle $C$.

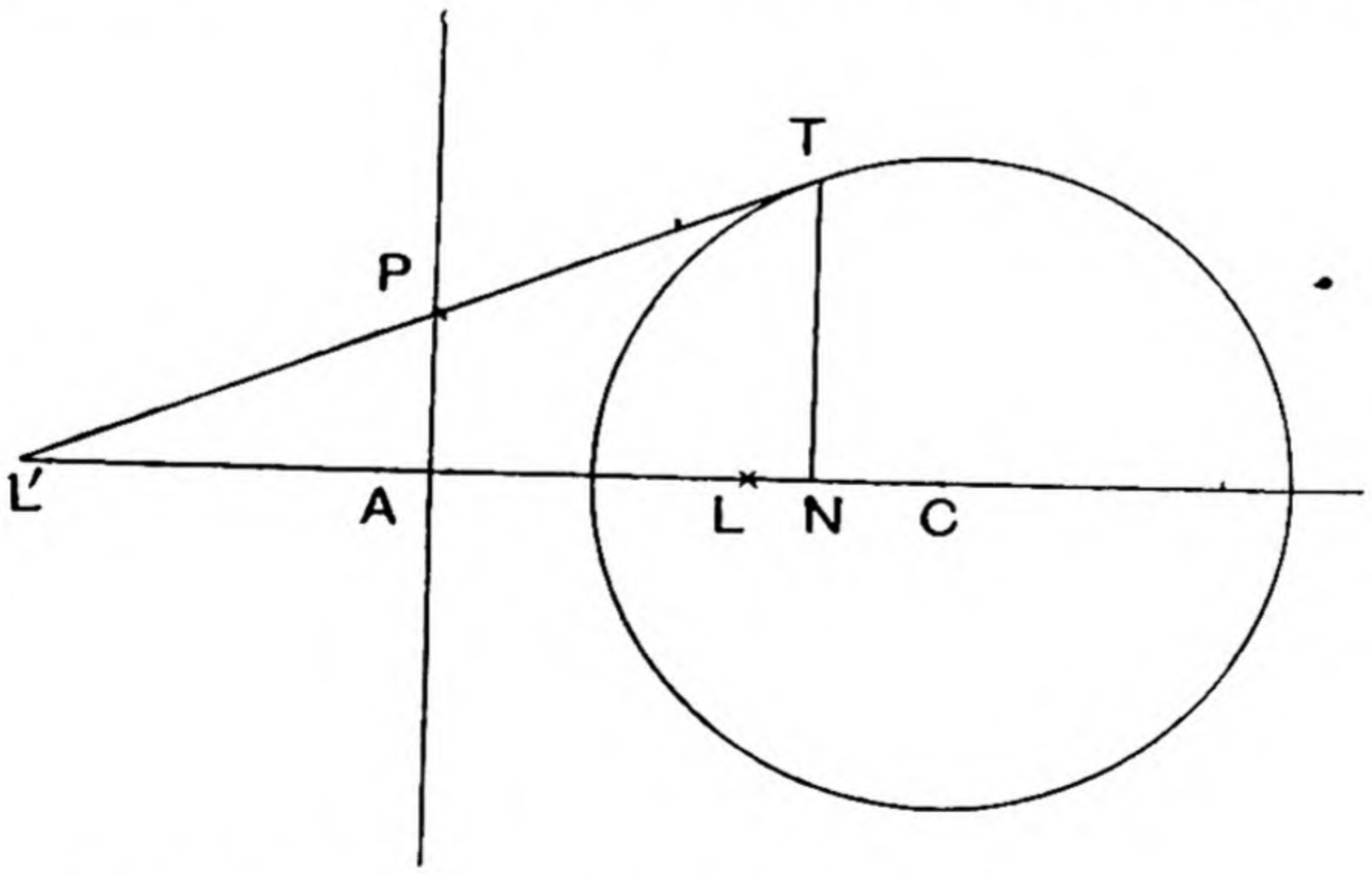
The two points $L$ and $L'$ may be regarded as the centres of circles of infinitely small radius, which belong to the coaxal system. They are sometimes called the *point circles* of the system.

The student will have no difficulty in satisfying himself that of the two limiting points one is within and the other without each circle of the system.

It must be observed that the limiting points are real only in the case where the system of coaxal circles do not intersect in real points. For if the circles intersect, $A$ will lie within them all and thus the tangents from $A$ will be imaginary.

Let it be noticed that if two circles of a coaxal system intersect in points $P$ and $Q$, then all the circles of the system pass through $P$ and $Q$.

**22. Prop.** *The limiting points of a system of coaxal circles are inverse points with respect to every circle of the system.*




Let $C$ be the centre of one of the circles of the system. Let $L$ and $L'$ be the limiting points of which $L'$ is without the circle $C$.

Draw tangent $L'T$ to circle $C$; this will be bisected by the radical axis in $P$.

Draw $TN$ perpendicular to line of centres.

Then $$L'A : AN = L'P : PT,$$

$$\therefore L'A = AN,$$

$\therefore N$ coincides with $L$.

Thus the chord of contact of tangents from $L'$ cuts the line of centres at right angles in $L$.

Therefore $L$ and $L'$ are inverse points.

**23.** The student will find it quite easy to establish the two following propositions:

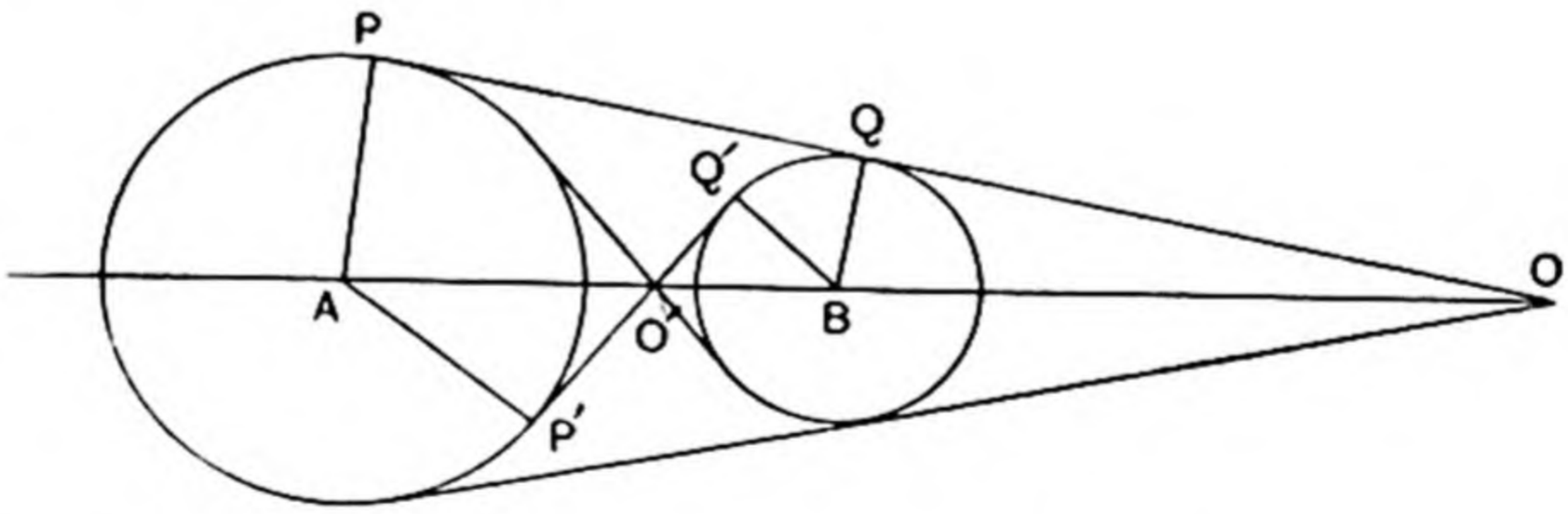
*Every circle passing through the limiting points cuts all the circles of the system orthogonally.*

*A common tangent to two circles of a coaxal system subtends a right angle at either limiting point.*

### 24. Common tangents to two circles.

In general four common tangents can be drawn to two coplanar circles.

Of these two will cut the line joining their centres externally; these are called *direct* common tangents. And two will cut the line joining the centres internally; these are called *transverse* common tangents.




We shall now prove that *the common tangents of two circles cut the line joining their centres in two points which divide that line internally and externally in the ratio of the radii.*

Let a direct common tangent $PQ$ cut the line joining the centres $A$ and $B$ in $O$. Join $AP$, $BQ$.

Then since $P$ and $Q$ are right angles, the triangles $APO$, $BQO$ are similar,

$$\therefore AO : BO = AP : BQ.$$

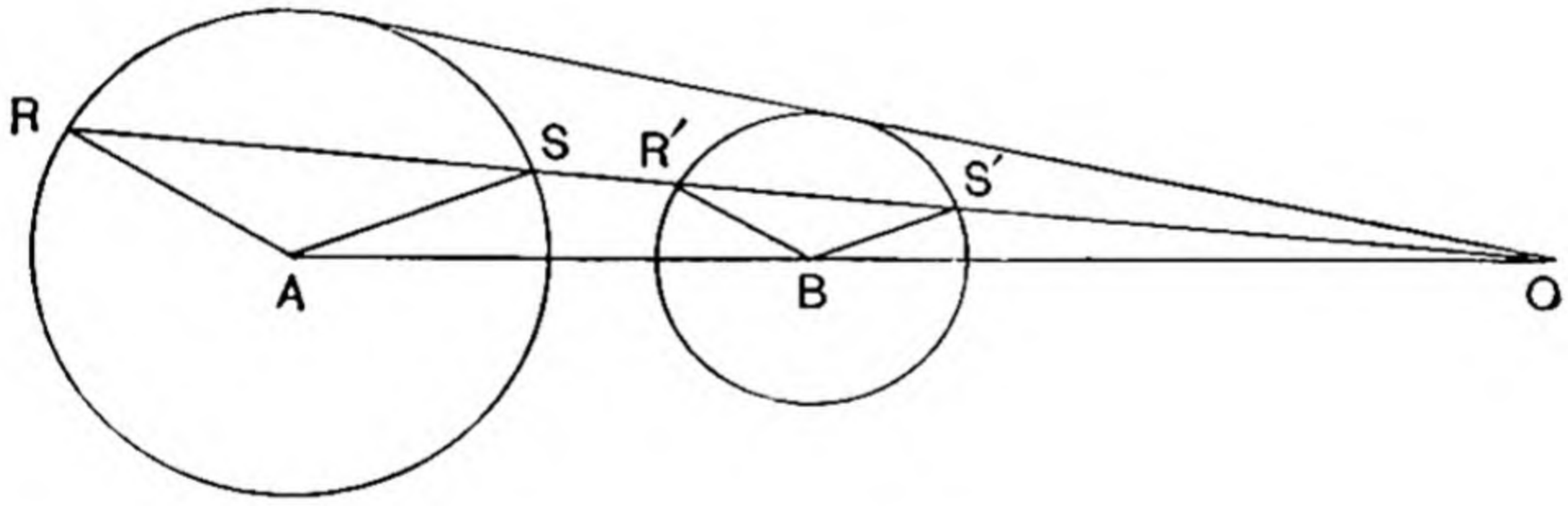
Similarly, if $P'Q'$ be a transverse common tangent cutting $AB$ in $O'$, we can prove $AO' : O'B =$ ratio of the radii.

We have thus a simple construction for drawing the common tangents, viz. to divide $AB$ internally and externally at $O'$ and $O$ in the ratio of the radii, and then from $O$ and $O'$ to draw a tangent to either circle; this will be also a tangent to the other circle.

If the circles intersect in real points, the tangents from $O'$ will be imaginary.

If one circle lie wholly within the other, the tangents from both $O$ and $O'$ will be imaginary.

**25.** Through the point $O$, as defined at the end of the last paragraph, let a line be drawn cutting the circles in $RS$ and $R'S'$ as in the figure.




Consider the triangles $OAR$, $OBR'$.

We have $$OA : OB = AR : BR',$$

also the angle at $O$ is common to both, and each of the remaining angles at $R$ and $R'$ is less than a right angle.

Thus the triangles are similar, and

$$OR : OR' = AR : BR',$$

the ratio of the radii.

In like manner, by considering the triangles $OAS$, $OBS'$, in which each of the angles $S$ and $S'$ is greater than a right angle, we can prove that $OS : OS' =$ ratio of radii.

We thus see that the circle $B$ could be constructed from the circle $A$ by means of the point $O$ by taking the radii vectores from $O$ of all the points on the circle $A$ and dividing these in the ratio of the radii.

On account of this property $O$ is called a *centre of similitude* of the two circles, and the point $R'$ is said to correspond to the point $R$.

The student can prove for himself in like manner that $O'$ is a centre of similitude.

**26.** In order to prove that the locus of a point obeying some given law is a circle, it is often convenient to make use of the ideas of the last paragraph.

If we can prove that our point $P$ is such as to divide the line joining a fixed point $O$ to a varying point $Q$, which describes a circle, in a given ratio, then we know that the locus of $P$ must be a circle, which with the circle on which $Q$ lies has $O$ for a centre of similitude.

For example, suppose we have given the circumcircle of a triangle and two of its vertices, and we require the locus of the nine-points centre. It is quite easy to prove that the locus of the orthocentre is a circle, and from this it follows that the locus of the nine-points centre is a circle, since, if $O$ be the circumcentre (which is given) and $P$ the orthocentre (which describes a circle) and $U$ the nine-points centre, $U$ lies on $OP$ and $OU = \frac{1}{2}OP$; therefore the locus of $U$ is a circle, having its centre in the line joining $O$ to the centre of the circle on which $P$ lies.

**27. Prop.** *The locus of a point which moves in a plane so that its distances from two fixed points in that plane are in a constant ratio is a circle.*

Let $A$ and $B$ be the two given points. Divide $AB$ internally and externally at $C$ and $D$ in the given ratio, so that $C$ and $D$ are two points on the locus.

Let $P$ be any other point on the locus.

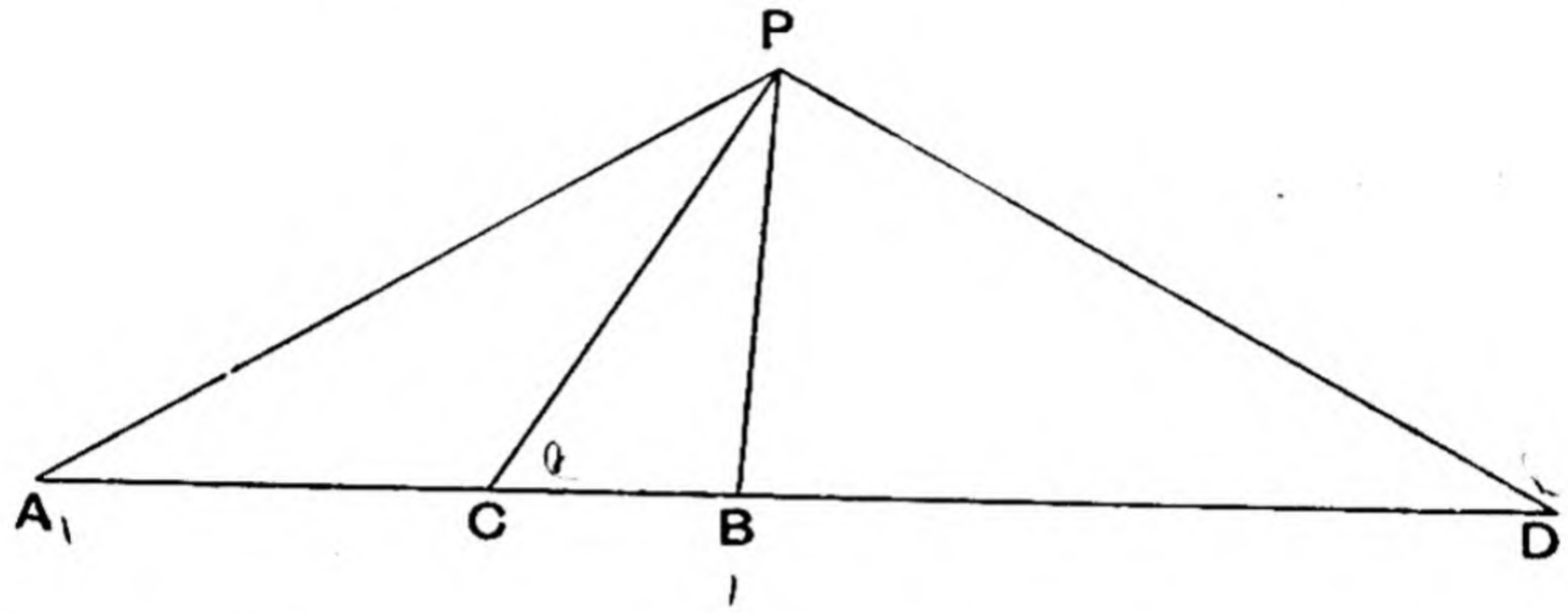
Then since

$$AP : PB = AC : CB = AD : BD,$$

$\therefore$ $PC$ and $PD$ are the internal and external bisectors of the $\angle APB$.

$\therefore$ $CPD$ is a right angle.

$\therefore$ the locus of $P$ is a circle on $CD$ as diameter.




Cor. 1. If the point $P$ be not confined to a plane, its locus is the sphere on $CD$ as diameter.

Cor. 2. If the line $AB$ be divided internally and externally at $C$ and $D$ in the same ratio, and $P$ be any point at which $CD$ subtends a right angle, then $PC$ and $PD$ are the internal and external bisectors of $\angle APB$.

**28.** If on the line $OO'$ joining the two centres of similitude of circles, centres $A$ and $B$, as defined in § 25, a circle be described, it follows from § 27 that if $C$ be any point on this circle,

$$CA : CB = \text{radius of } A \text{ circle} : \text{radius of } B \text{ circle}.$$

The circle on $OO'$ as diameter is called the *circle of similitude*. Its use will be explained in the last chapter, when we treat of the similarity of figures.

## EXERCISES

1. If $P$ be any point on a given circle $A$, the square of the tangent from $P$ to another given circle $B$ varies as the perpendicular distance of $P$ from the radical axis of $A$ and $B$.

2. If $A$, $B$, $C$ be three coaxal circles, the tangents drawn from any point of $C$ to $A$ and $B$ are in a constant ratio.

3. If tangents drawn from a point $P$ to two given circles $A$ and $B$ are in a given ratio, the locus of $P$ is a circle coaxal with $A$ and $B$.

4. If $A$, $B$, $C$ &c. be a system of coaxal circles and $X$ be any other circle, then the radical axes of $A$, $X$; $B$, $X$; $C$, $X$ &c. meet in a point.

5. The square of the line joining one of the limiting points of a coaxal system of circles to a point $P$ on any one of the circles varies as the distance of $P$ from the radical axis.

6. If two circles cut two others orthogonally, the radical axis of either pair is the line joining the centres of the other pair, and passes through their limiting points.

7. If from any point on the circle of similitude (§ 28) of two given circles, pairs of tangents be drawn to both circles, the angle between one pair is equal to the angle between the other pair.

8. The three circles of similitude of three given circles taken in pairs are coaxal.

9. Find a pair of points on a given circle concyclic with each of two given pairs of points.

10. If any line cut two given circles in $P$, $Q$ and $P'$, $Q'$ respectively, prove that the four points in which the tangents at $P$ and $Q$ cut the tangents at $P'$ and $Q'$ lie on a circle coaxal with the given circles.

11. A line $PQ$ is drawn touching at $P$ a circle of a coaxal system of which the limiting points are $K$, $K'$, and $Q$ is a point on the line on the opposite side of the radical axis to $P$. Shew that if $T$, $T'$ be the lengths of the tangents drawn from $P$ to the two concentric circles of which the common centre is $Q$, and whose radii are respectively $QK$, $QK'$, then

$$T : T' = PK : PK'.$$

12. $O$ is a fixed point on the circumference of a circle $C$, $P$ any other point on $C$: the inverse point $Q$ of $P$ is taken with respect to a fixed circle whose centre is at $O$, prove that the locus of $Q$ is a straight line.

13. Three circles $C_1$, $C_2$, $C_3$ are such that the chord of intersection of $C_2$ and $C_3$ passes through the centre of $C_1$, and the chord of intersection of $C_3$ and $C_1$ through the centre of $C_2$: shew that the chord of intersection of $C_1$ and $C_2$ passes through the centre of $C_3$.

14. Three circles $A$, $B$, $C$ are touched externally by a circle whose centre is $P$ and internally by a circle whose centre is $Q$. Shew that $PQ$ passes through the point of concurrence of the radical axes of $A$, $B$, $C$ taken in pairs.

15. $AB$ is a diameter of a circle $S$, $O$ any point on $AB$ or $AB$ produced, $C$ a circle whose centre is at $O$. $A'$ and $B'$ are the inverse points of $A$ and $B$ with respect to $C$. Prove that the pole with respect to $C$ of the polar with respect to $S$ of the point $O$ is the middle point of $A'B'$.

16. A system of spheres touch a plane at the same point $O$, prove that any plane, not through $O$, will cut them in a system of coaxal circles.

17. A point and its polar with respect to a variable circle being given, prove that the polar of any other point $A$ passes through a fixed point $B$.

18. $A$ is a given point in the plane of a system of coaxal circles; prove that the polars of $A$ with respect to the circles of the system all pass through a fixed point.

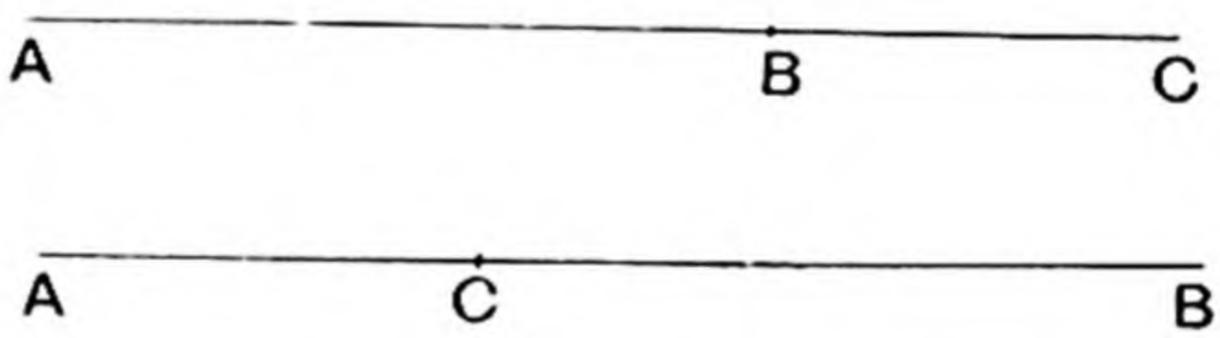
# CHAPTER III

## THE USE OF SIGNS. CONCURRENCE AND COLLINEARITY

**29.** The reader is already familiar with the convention of signs adopted in Trigonometry and Analytical Geometry in the measurement of straight lines. According to this convention lengths measured along a line from a point are counted positive or negative according as they proceed in the one or the other direction.

With this convention we see that, if $A, B, C$ be three points in a line, then, *in whatever order the points occur in the line*,

$$AB + BC = AC.$$




If $C$ lie between $A$ and $B$, $BC$ is of opposite sign to $AB$, and in this case $AB + BC$ does not give the actual distance travelled in passing from $A$ to $B$, and then from $B$ to $C$, but gives the final distance reached from $A$.

From the above equation we get

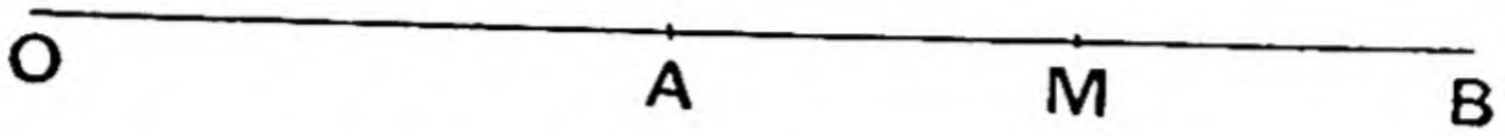
$$BC = AC - AB.$$

This is an important identity. By means of it we can reduce all our lengths to depend on lengths measured from a fixed point in the line. This process it will be convenient to speak of as *inserting an origin*. Thus, if we insert the origin $O$,

$$AB = OB - OA.$$

**30. Prop.** *If $M$ be the middle point of the line $AB$, and $O$ be any other point in the line, then*

$$2OM = OA + OB.$$

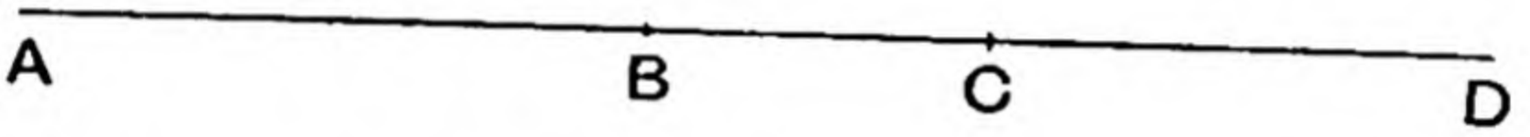



For since
$$AM = MB,$$
by inserting the origin $O$ we have
$$OM - OA = OB - OM,$$
$$\therefore\ 2OM = OA + OB.$$

**31.** A number of collinear points are said to form a *range.*

**Prop.** *If $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$ be a range of four points, then*

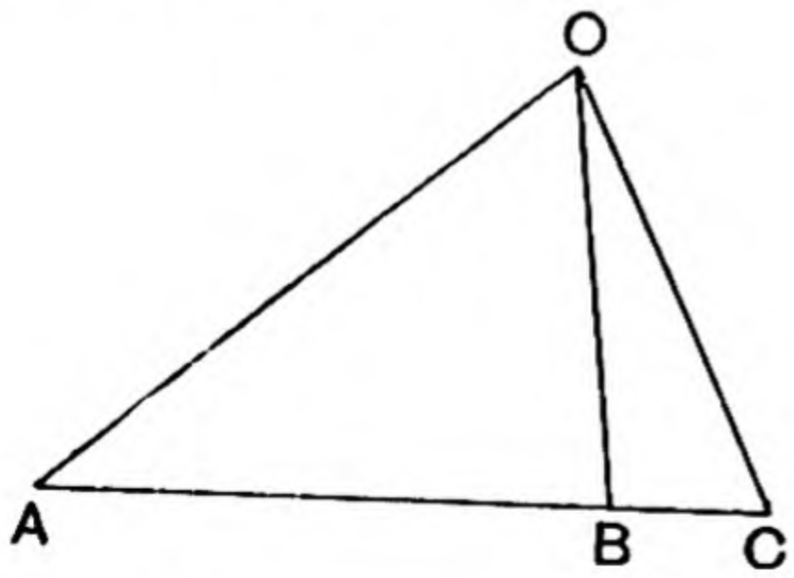
$$AB \,.\, CD + BC \,.\, AD + CA \,.\, BD = 0.$$

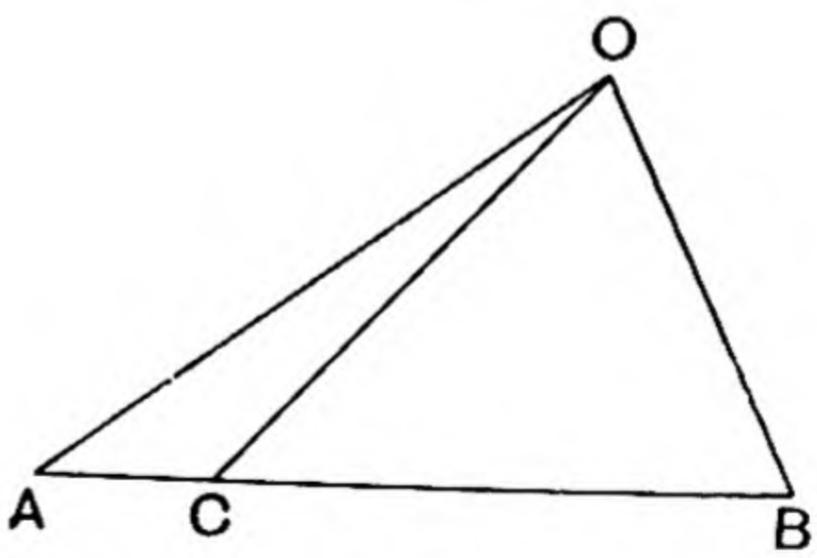



For, inserting the origin $A$, we see that the above
$$= AB\,(AD - AC) + (AC - AB)\,AD - AC\,(AD - AB),$$
and this is zero.

This is an important identity, which we shall use later on.

**32.** If $A$, $B$, $C$ be a range of points, and $O$ any point outside their line, we know that the area of the triangle $OAB$ is to the area of the triangle $OBC$ in the ratio of the lengths of the bases $AB$, $BC$.




Now if we are taking account of the signs of our lengths $AB$, $BC$ and the ratio $AB : BC$ occurs, we cannot substitute for this ratio $\triangle OAB : \triangle OBC$ unless we have some convention respecting

the signs of our areas, whereby the proper sign of $AB : BC$ will be retained when the ratio of the areas is substituted for it.

The obvious convention is that the area of a triangle $PQR$ shall be accounted positive or negative according as the triangle is to the one or the other side as the contour $PQR$ is described.

Thus if the triangle is to our left hand as we describe the contour $PQR$, we shall consider $\triangle PQR$ to be a positive magnitude, while $\triangle PRQ$ will be a negative magnitude, for in describing the contour $PRQ$ the area is on our right hand.

With this convention we see that in whatever order the points $A$, $B$, $C$ occur in the line on which they lie,

$$AB : BC = \triangle OAB : \triangle OBC,$$

or

$$= \triangle AOB : \triangle BOC.$$

It is further clear that with our convention we may say

$$\triangle OAB + \triangle OBC = \triangle OAC,$$

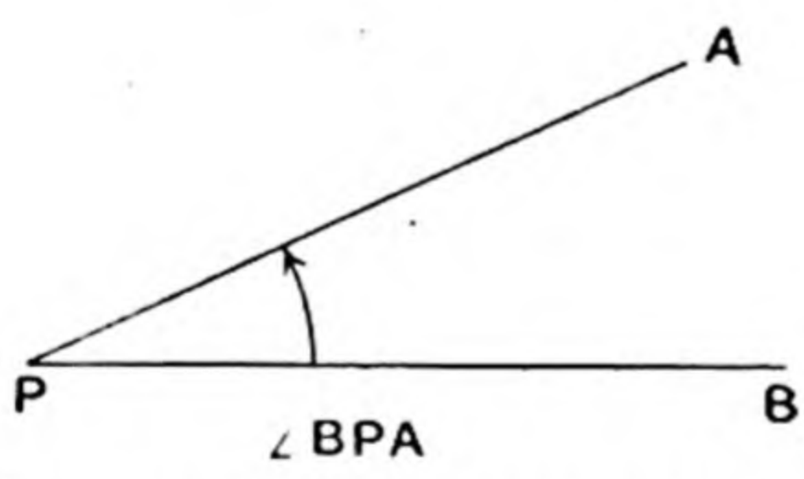
and

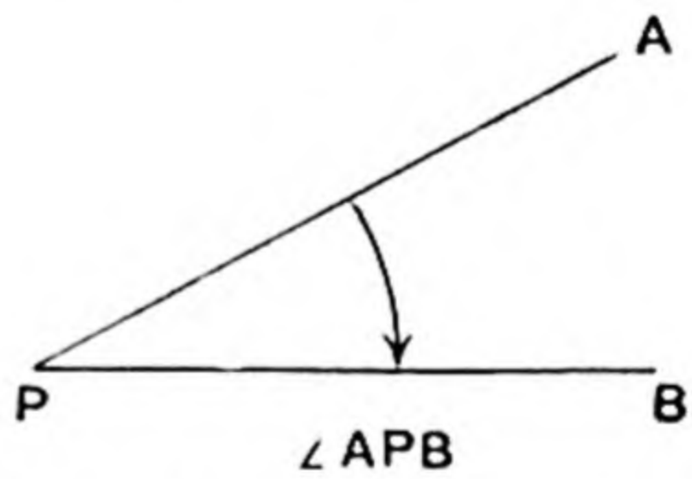
$$\triangle OAB - \triangle OAC = \triangle OCB,$$

remembering always that $A$, $B$, $C$ are collinear.

**33.** Again, we know that the magnitude of the area of a triangle $OAB$ is $\frac{1}{2} OA \,.\, OB \sin AOB$, and it is sometimes convenient to make use of this value. But if we are comparing the areas $OAB$, $OBC$ by means of a ratio we cannot substitute

$$\tfrac{1}{2} OA \,.\, OB \sin AOB \text{ and } \tfrac{1}{2} OB \,.\, OC \sin BOC$$




for them unless we have a further convention of signs whereby the sign and not merely the magnitude of our ratio will be retained.

The obvious convention here again will be to consider angles positive if described in one sense and negative in the opposite sense; this being effective for our purpose, since $\sin(-x) = -\sin x$.

In this case $\angle APB = -\angle BPA$. The angle $APB$ is to be regarded as obtained by the revolution of $PB$ round $P$ from the position $PA$, and the angle $BPA$ as the revolution of $PA$ round $P$ from the position $PB$; these are in opposite senses and so of opposite signs.

With this convention as to the signs of our angles we may argue from the figures of § 32,

$$\frac{AB}{BC} = \frac{\triangle AOB}{\triangle BOC} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}OA \,.\, OB \sin \angle AOB}{\frac{1}{2}OB \,.\, OC \sin \angle BOC}$$

(the lines $OA$, $OB$, $OC$ being all regarded as positive)

$$= \frac{OA}{OC} \cdot \frac{\sin \angle AOB}{\sin \angle BOC}.$$

In this way the sign of the ratio $\frac{AB}{BC}$ is retained in the process of transformation, since

$$\sin \angle AOB \text{ and } \sin \angle BOC$$

are of the same or opposite sign according as $AB$ and $BC$ are of the same or opposite sign.

The student will see that our convention would have been useless had the area depended directly on the cosine of the angle instead of on the sine, since

$$\cos(-A) = +\cos(A).$$

**34. Test for collinearity of three points on the sides of a triangle.**

The following proposition, known as Menelaus' theorem, is of great importance.

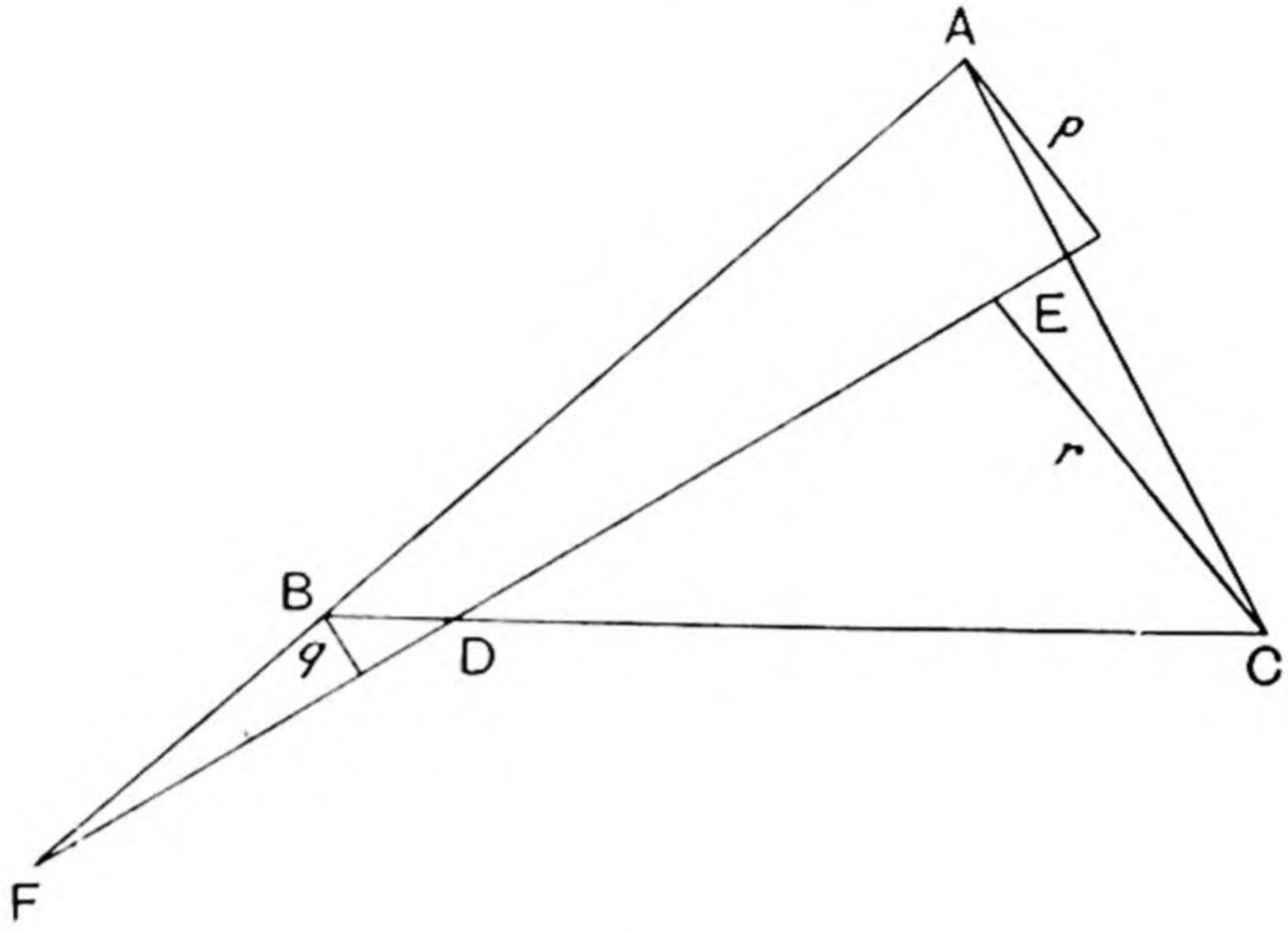
*The necessary and sufficient condition that the points $D$, $E$, $F$ on the sides of a triangle $ABC$ opposite to the vertices $A$, $B$, $C$ respectively should be collinear is*

$$AF \,.\, BD \,.\, CE = AE \,.\, CD \,.\, BF,$$

*regard being had to the signs of these lines.*

All these lines are along the sides of the triangle. We shall consider any one of them to be positive or negative according as the triangle is to our left or right respectively as we travel along it.

We will first prove that the above condition is necessary, if $D$, $E$, $F$ are collinear.




Let $p$, $q$, $r$ be the perpendiculars from $A$, $B$, $C$ on to the line $DEF$, and let these be accounted positive or negative according as they are on the one or the other side of the line $DEF$.

With this convention we have

$$\frac{AF}{BF}=\frac{p}{q},\quad \frac{BD}{CD}=\frac{q}{r},\quad \frac{CE}{AE}=\frac{r}{p}.$$

Hence
$$\frac{AF.BD.CE}{BF.CD.AE}=1,$$

that is,
$$AF.BD.CE=AE.CD.BF.$$

Next let $D$, $E$, $F$ be three points on the sides such that

$$AF.BD.CE=AE.CD.BF,$$

then shall $D$, $E$, $F$ be collinear.

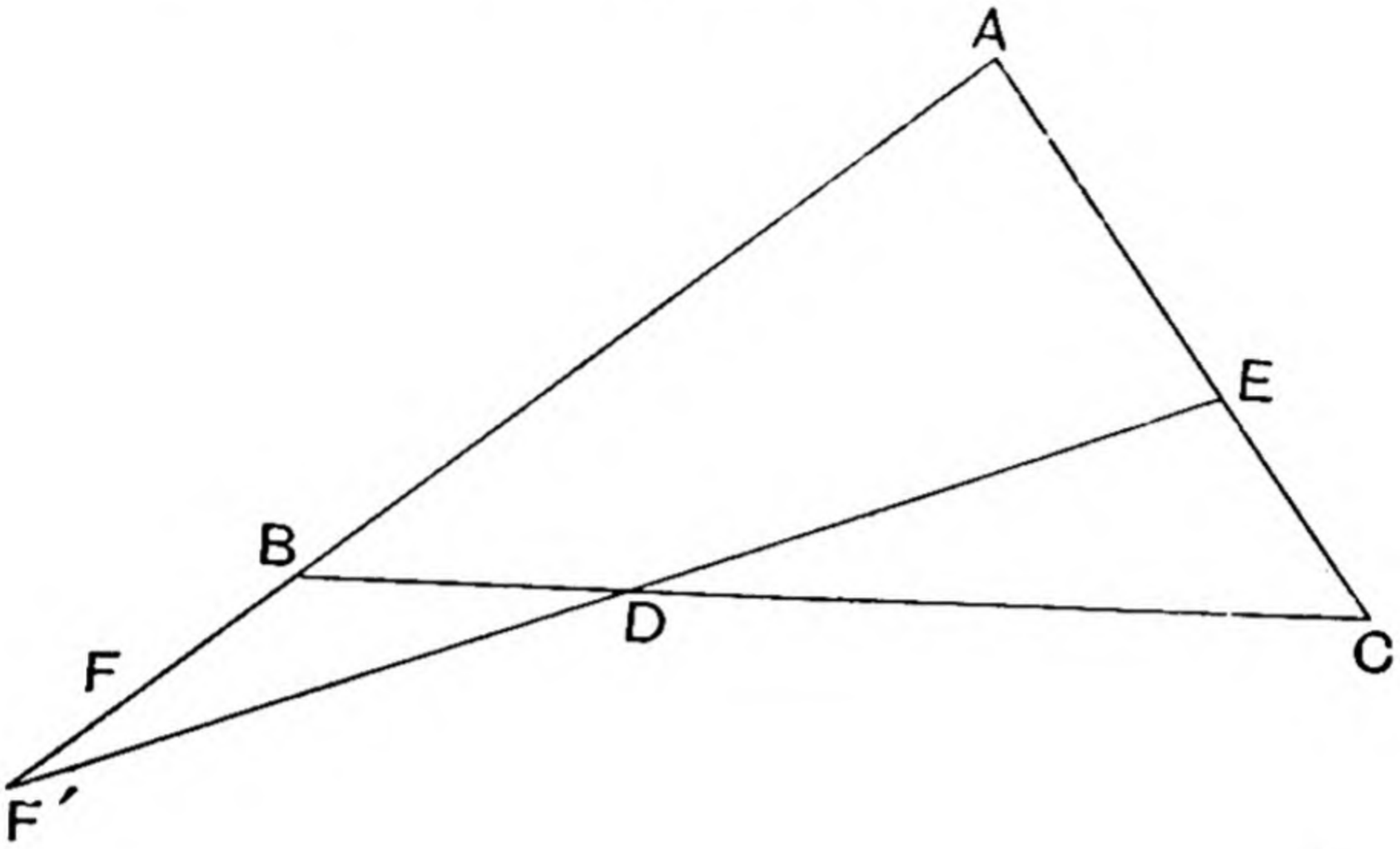
Let the line $DE$ cut $AB$ in $F'$,

$$\therefore AF'.BD.CE=AE.CD.BF',$$

$$\therefore \frac{AF'}{BF'}=\frac{AF}{BF},$$

$$\therefore (AF + FF')\,BF = AF(BF + FF'),$$
$$\therefore FF'(BF - AF) = 0,$$
$$\therefore FF' = 0,$$
$$\therefore F \text{ coincides with } F'.$$

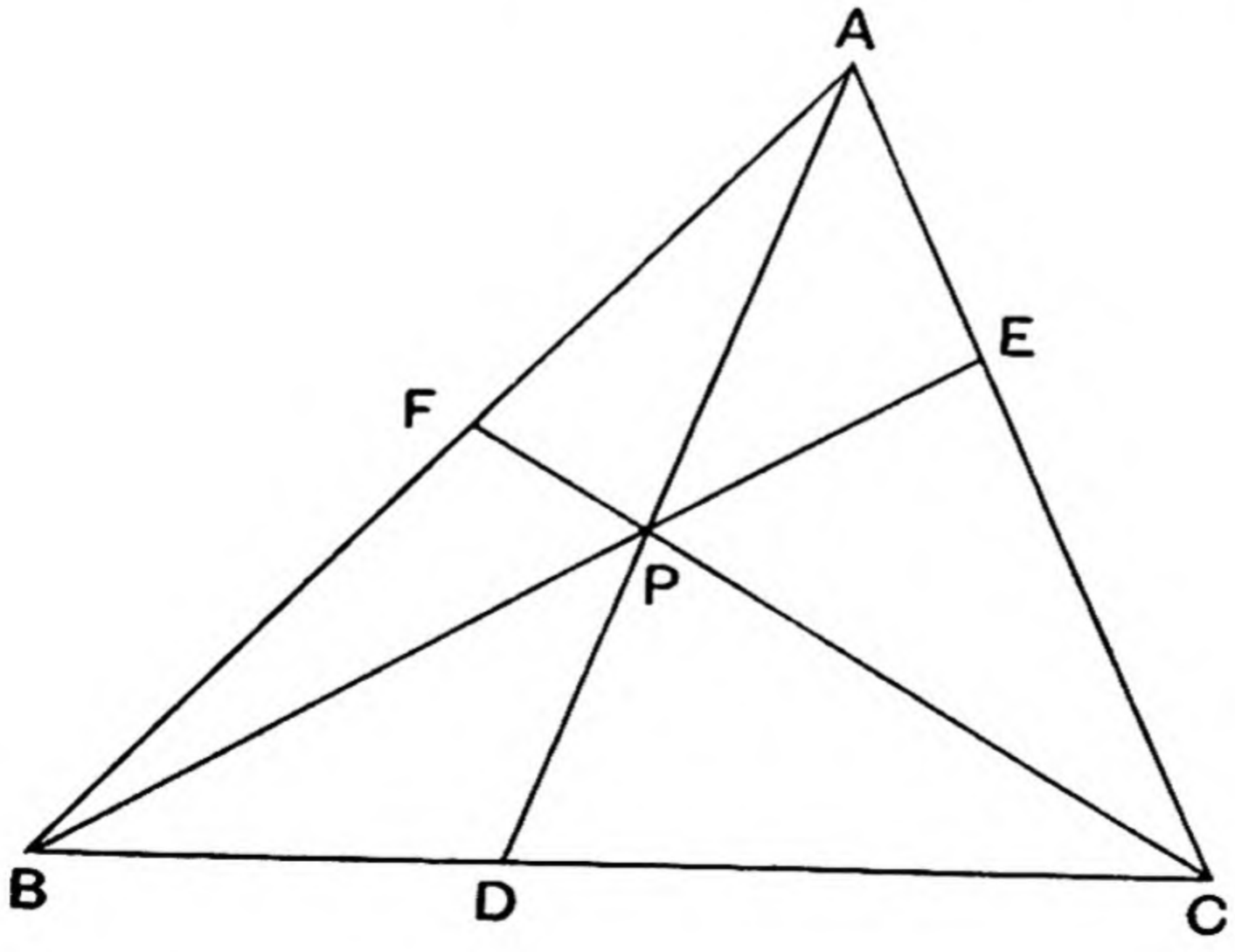
Thus our proposition is completely proved.




**35. Test for concurrency of lines through the vertices of a triangle.**

The following proposition, known as Ceva's theorem, is fundamental.

*The necessary and sufficient condition that the lines AD, BE,*



*CF drawn through the vertices of a triangle ABC to meet the opposite sides in D, E, F should be concurrent is*

$$AF \,.\, BD \,.\, CE = - AE \,.\, CD \,.\, BF,$$

*the same convention of signs being adopted as in the last proposition.*

First let the lines $AD$, $BE$, $CF$ meet in $P$.

Then, regard being had to the signs of the areas,

$$\frac{AF}{BF} = \frac{\triangle AFC}{\triangle BFC} = \frac{\triangle AFP}{\triangle BFP} = \frac{\triangle AFC - \triangle AFP}{\triangle BFC - \triangle BFP} = \frac{\triangle APC}{\triangle BPC},$$

$$\frac{BD}{CD} = \frac{\triangle BDA}{\triangle CDA} = \frac{\triangle BDP}{\triangle CDP} = \frac{\triangle BDA - \triangle BDP}{\triangle CDA - \triangle CDP} = \frac{\triangle BPA}{\triangle CPA},$$

$$\frac{CE}{AE} = \frac{\triangle CEB}{\triangle AEB} = \frac{\triangle CEP}{\triangle AEP} = \frac{\triangle CEB - \triangle CEP}{\triangle AEB - \triangle AEP} = \frac{\triangle CPB}{\triangle APB}.$$

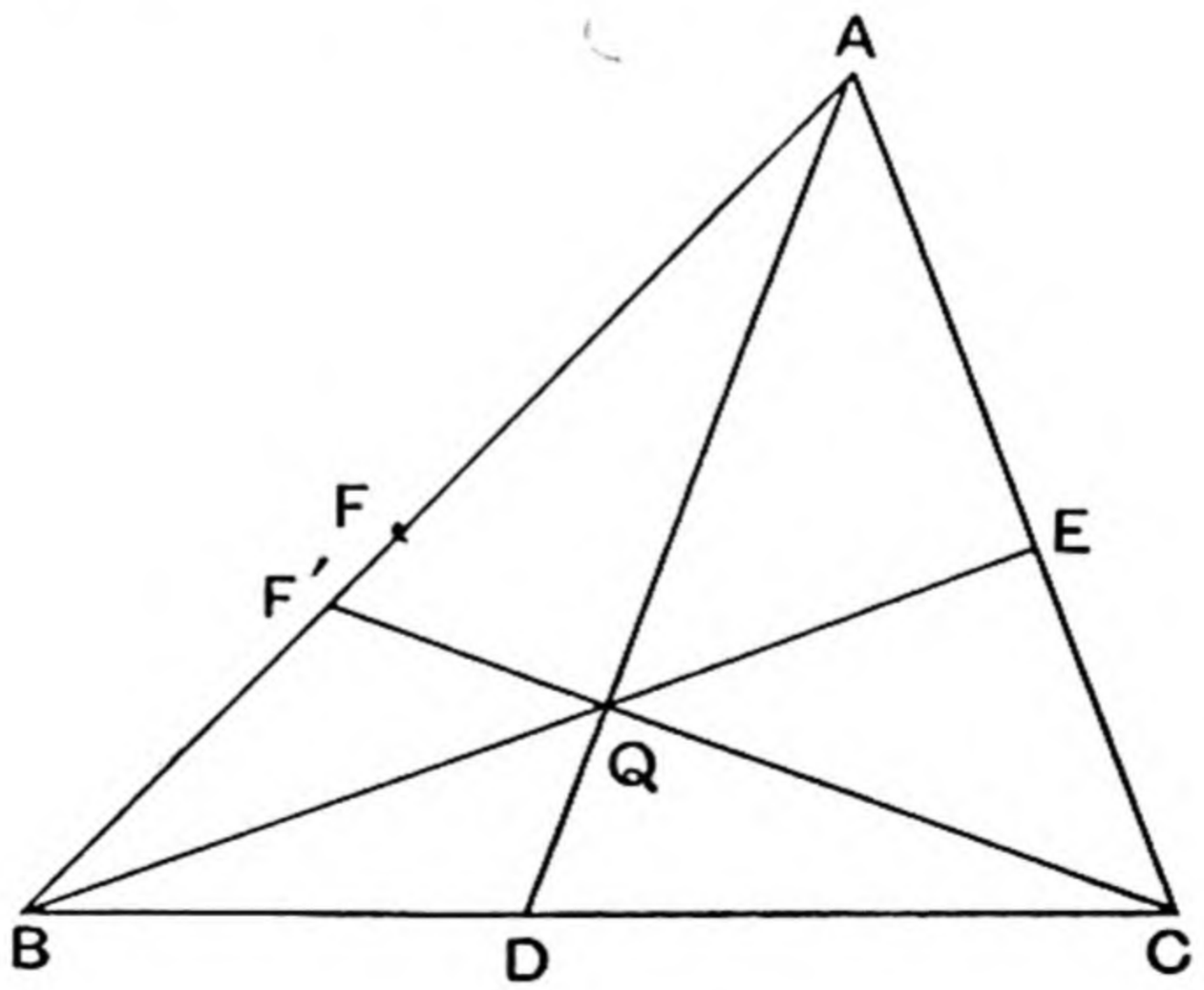
$$\therefore \frac{AF \,.\, BD \,.\, CE}{AE \,.\, CD \,.\, BF} = \frac{\triangle APC}{\triangle CPA} \cdot \frac{\triangle BPA}{\triangle APB} \cdot \frac{\triangle CPB}{\triangle BPC}$$

$$= (-1)(-1)(-1) = -1.$$

Next let $D$, $E$, $F$ be points on the sides of a triangle $ABC$ such that

$$AF \,.\, BD \,.\, CE = - AE \,.\, CD \,.\, BF,$$

then will $AD$, $BE$, $CF$ be concurrent.




Let $AD$, $BE$ meet in $Q$, and let $CQ$ meet $AB$ in $F'$.

$$\therefore AF' . BD . CE = - AE . CD . BF'.$$

$$\therefore \frac{AF'}{BF'} = \frac{AF}{BF}.$$

$$\therefore (AF + FF')\, BF = (BF + FF')\, AF.$$

$$\therefore FF' (BF - AF) = 0.$$

$$\therefore FF' = 0.$$

$\therefore F'$ and $F$ coincide.

Hence our proposition is completely proved.

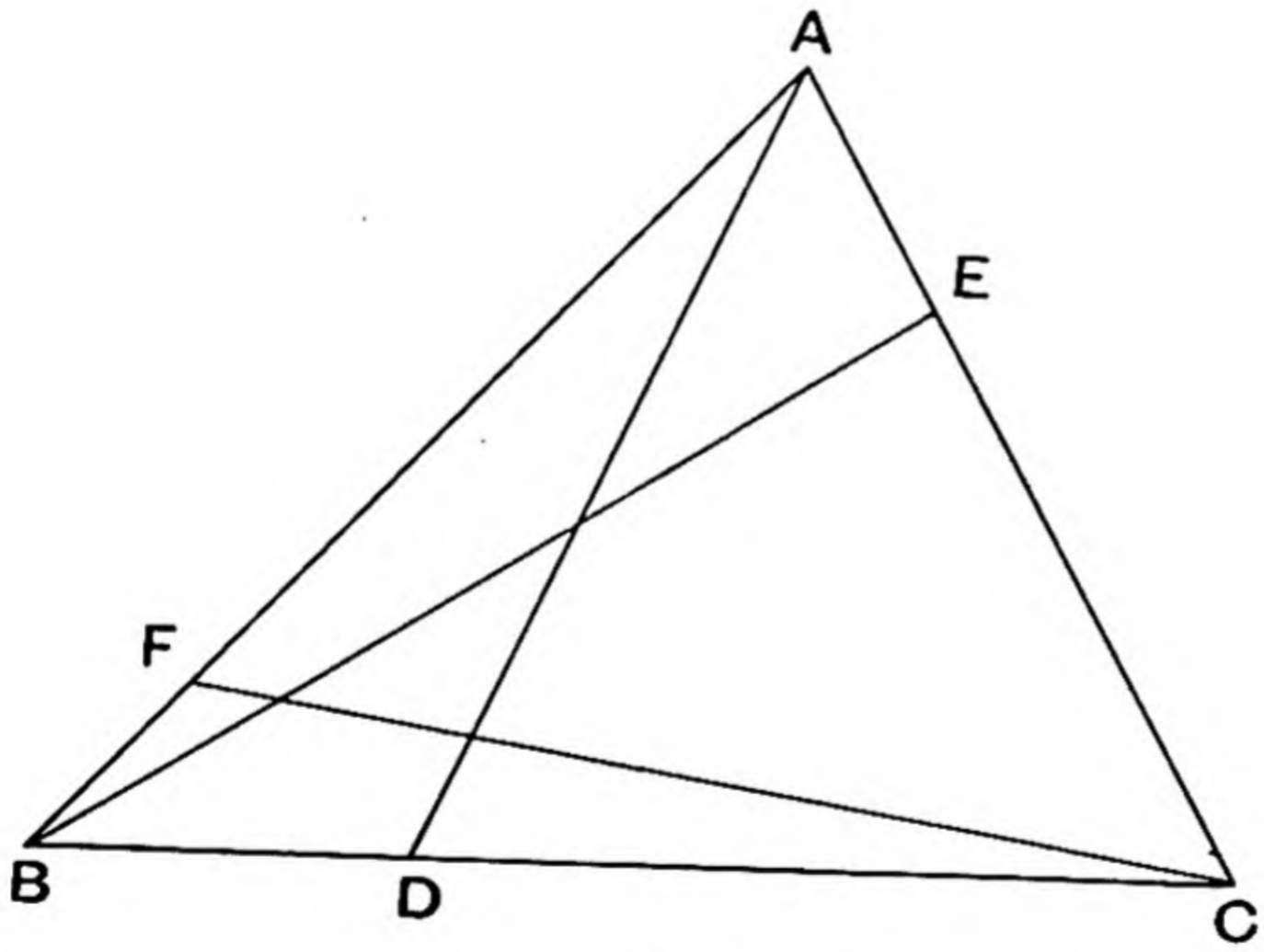
**36. Prop.** *If $D$, $E$, $F$ be three points on the sides of a triangle $ABC$ opposite to $A$, $B$, $C$ respectively.*

$$\frac{AF . BD . CE}{AE . CD . BF} = \frac{\sin ACF \sin BAD \sin CBE}{\sin ABE \sin CAD \sin BCF}.$$

For

$$\frac{BD}{CD} = \frac{\triangle BAD}{\triangle CAD} = \frac{\frac{1}{2} AB . AD \sin BAD}{\frac{1}{2} AC . AD \sin CAD} = \frac{AB}{AC} \cdot \frac{\sin BAD}{\sin CAD},$$

with our convention as to sign, and $AB$, $AC$ being counted positive.



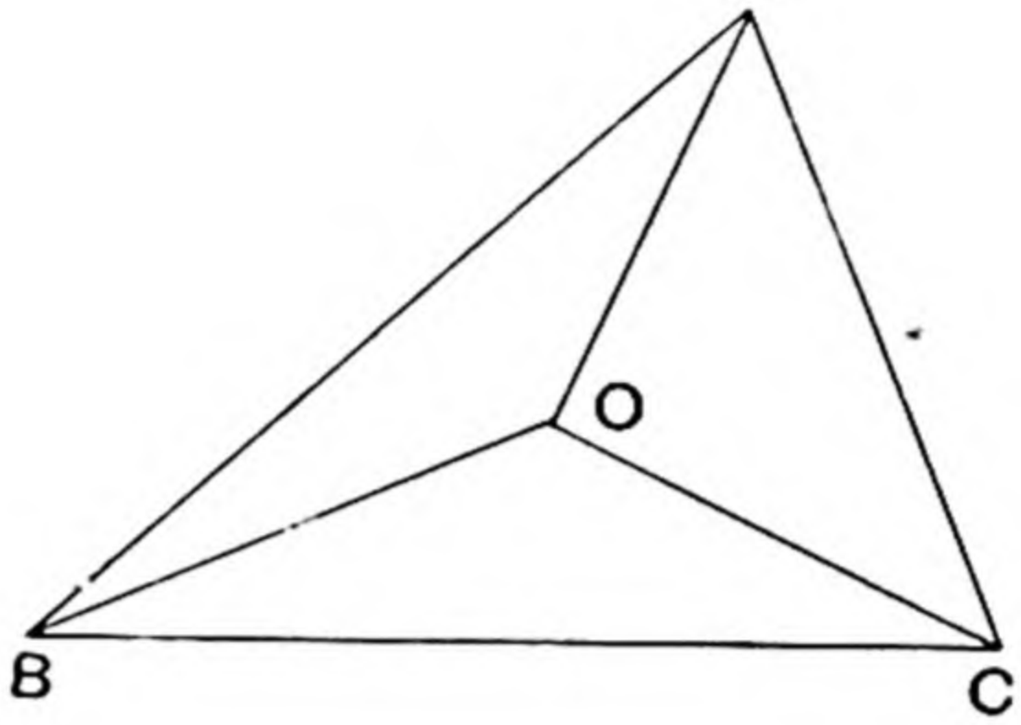

Similarly
$$\frac{AF}{BF} = \frac{AC}{BC} \cdot \frac{\sin ACF}{\sin BCF}$$

and
$$\frac{CE}{AE} = \frac{BC}{AB} \cdot \frac{\sin CBE}{\sin ABE}.$$

$$\therefore \frac{AF . BD . CE}{AE . CD . BF} = \frac{\sin ACF \sin BAD \sin CBE}{\sin ABE \sin CAD \sin BCF}.$$

Cor. The necessary and sufficient condition that $AD$, $BE$, $CF$ should be concurrent is

$$\frac{\sin ACF \sin BAD \sin CBE}{\sin ABE \sin CAD \sin BCF} = -1.$$




If $O$ be the point of concurrence this relation can be written in the form

$$\frac{\sin ABO \sin BCO \sin CAO}{\sin ACO \sin CBO \sin BAO} = -1,$$

this being easy to remember.

**37. Isogonal conjugates.** Two lines $AD$, $AD'$ through the vertex $A$ of a triangle which are such that

$$\angle BAD = \angle D'AC \text{ (not } \angle CAD')$$

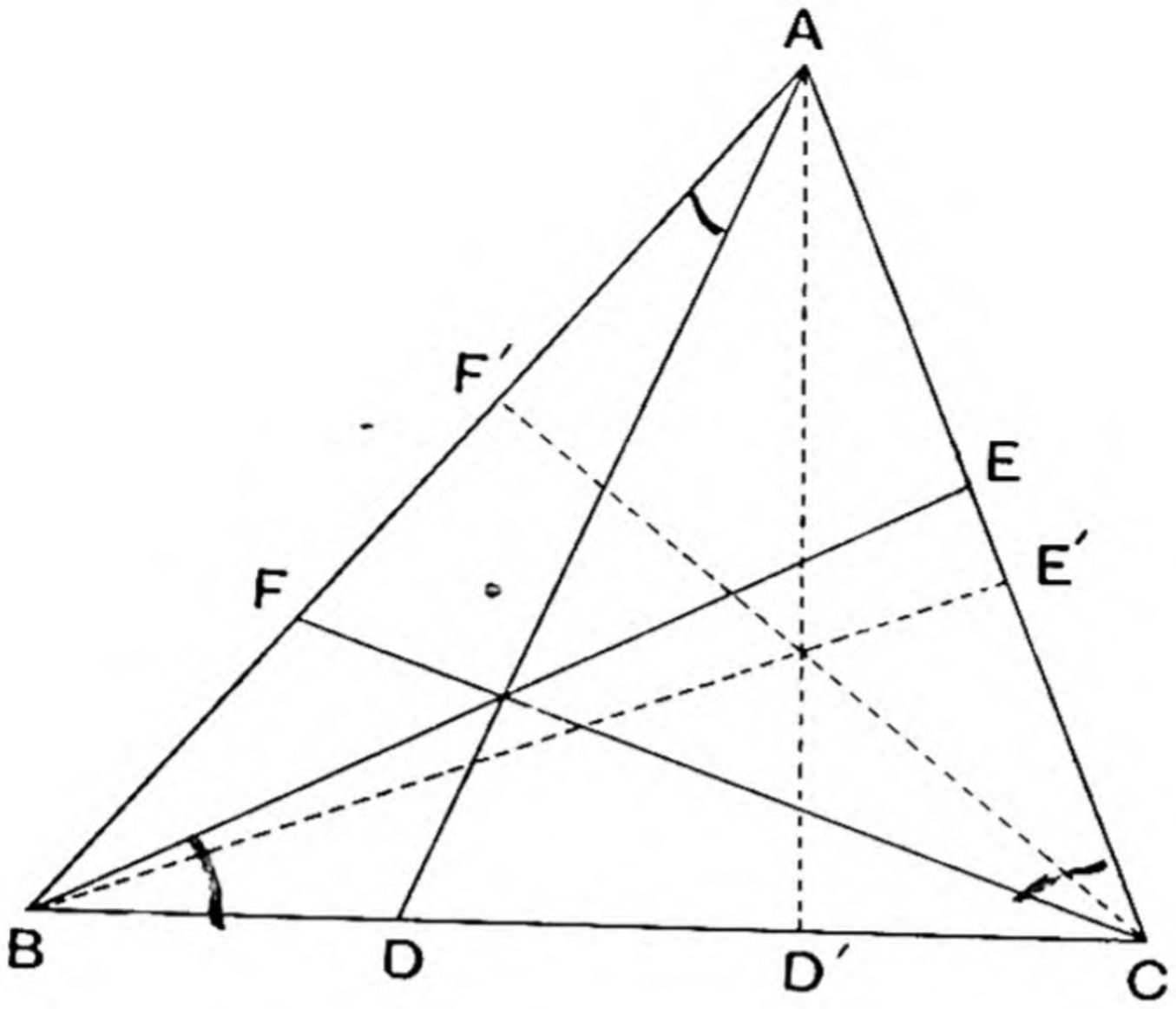
are called *isogonal conjugates.*

**Prop.** *If $AD$, $BE$, $CF$ be three concurrent lines through the vertices of a triangle $ABC$, their isogonal conjugates $AD'$, $BE'$, $CF'$ will also be concurrent.*

For
$$\frac{\sin BAD}{\sin CAD} = \frac{\sin D'AC}{\sin D'AB} = \frac{\sin CAD'}{\sin BAD'}.$$

Similarly
$$\frac{\sin CBE}{\sin ABE} = \frac{\sin ABE'}{\sin CBE'}$$

and
$$\frac{\sin ACF}{\sin BCF} = \frac{\sin BCF'}{\sin ACF'}.$$




$$\therefore \frac{\sin CAD' \sin ABE' \sin BCF'}{\sin BAD' \sin CBE' \sin ACF'}$$

$$= \frac{\sin BAD \sin CBE \sin ACF}{\sin CAD \sin ABE \sin BCF} = -1.$$

$\therefore AD', BE', CF'$ are concurrent.

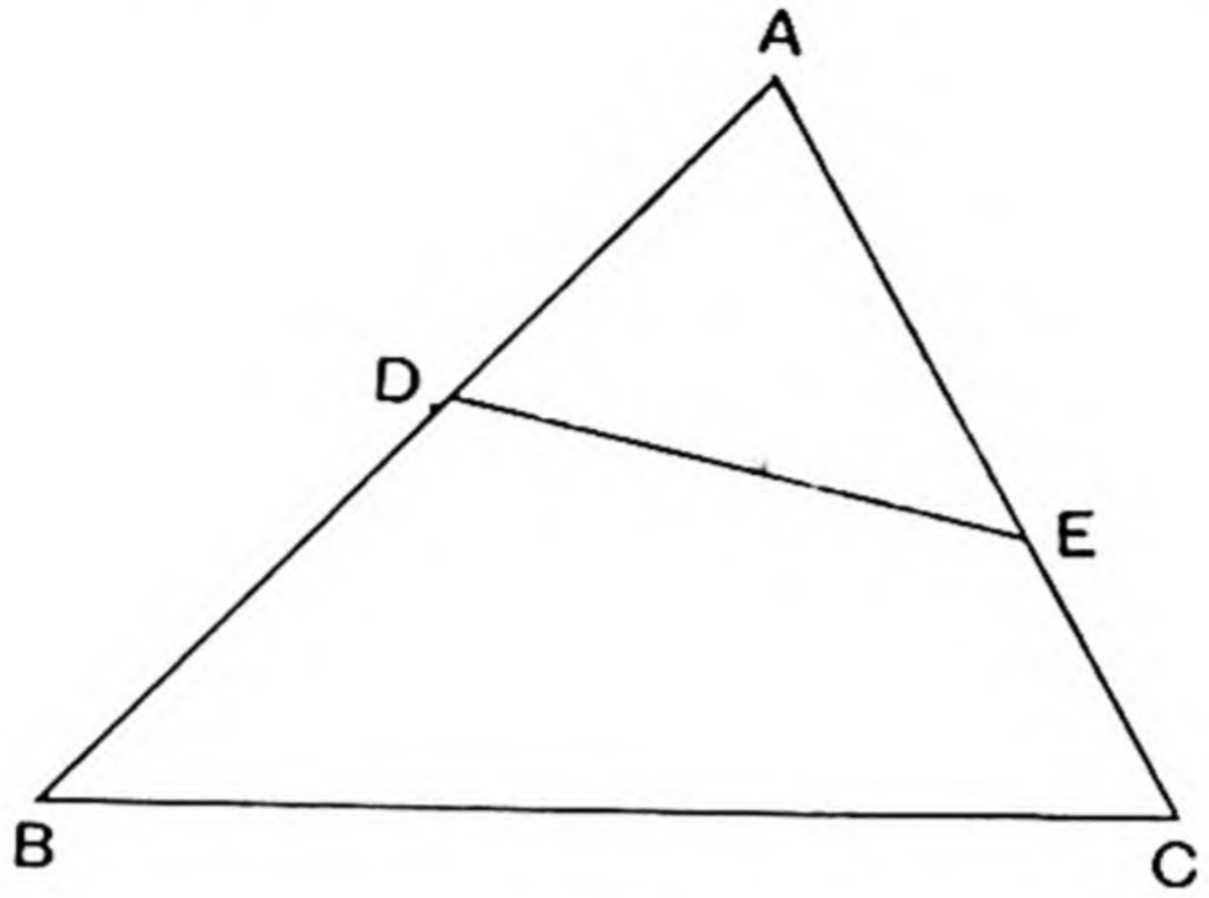
**38.** The isogonal conjugates of the medians of a triangle are called its *symmedians*. Since the medians are concurrent, the symmedians are concurrent also. The point where the symmedians intersect is called the *symmedian point* of the triangle.

The student will see that the concurrence of the medians and perpendiculars of a triangle follows at once by the tests of this chapter (§§ 35 and 36). It was thought better to prove them by independent methods in the first chapter in order to bring out other properties of the orthocentre and the median point.

**39.** We will conclude this chapter by introducing the student to certain lines in the plane of a triangle which are called by some writers *antiparallel* to the sides.

Let $ABC$ be a triangle, $D$ and $E$ points in the sides

$AB$ and $AC$ such that $\angle ADE = \angle BCA$ and therefore also $\angle AED = \angle CBA$. The line $DE$ is said to be antiparallel to $BC$.




It will be seen at once that $DBCE$ is cyclic, and that all lines antiparallel to $BC$ are parallel to one another.

It may be left as an exercise to the student to prove that the symmedian line through $A$ of the triangle $ABC$ bisects all lines antiparallel to $BC$.

## EXERCISES

1. The lines joining the vertices of a triangle to its circumcentre are isogonal conjugates with the perpendiculars of the triangle.

2. The lines joining the vertices of a triangle to the points of contact with the opposite sides of the incircle and ecircles are respectively concurrent.

3. $ABC$ is a triangle; $AD$, $BE$, $CF$ the perpendiculars on the opposite sides. If $AG$, $BH$ and $CK$ be drawn perpendicular to $EF$, $FD$, $DE$ respectively, then $AG$, $BH$ and $CK$ will be concurrent.

4. The midpoints of the sides $BC$ and $CA$ of the triangle $ABC$ are $D$ and $E$: the trisecting points nearest $B$ of the sides $BC$ and $BA$ respectively are $H$ and $K$. $CK$ intersects $AD$ in $L$, and $BL$ intersects $AH$ in $M$, and $CM$ intersects $BE$ in $N$. Prove that $N$ is a trisecting point of $BE$.

5. If perpendiculars are drawn from the orthocentre of a triangle $ABC$ on the bisectors of the angle $A$, shew that their feet are collinear with the middle point of $BC$.

6. The points of contact of the ecircles with the sides $BC$, $CA$, $AB$ of a triangle are respectively denoted by the letters $D$, $E$, $F$ with suffixes 1, 2, 3 according as they belong to the ecircle opposite $A$, $B$, or $C$. $BE_2$, $CF_3$ intersect at $P$; $BE_1$, $CF_1$ at $Q$; $E_2F_3$ and $BC$ at $X$; $F_3D_1$ and $CA$ at $Y$; $D_1E_2$ and $AB$ at $Z$. Prove that the groups of points $A$, $P$, $D_1$, $Q$; and $X$, $Y$, $Z$ are respectively collinear.

7. Parallel tangents to a circle at $A$ and $B$ are cut in the points $C$ and $D$ respectively by a tangent to the circle at $E$. Prove that $AD$, $BC$ and the line joining the middle points of $AE$ and $BE$ are concurrent.

8. From the angular points of any triangle $ABC$ lines $AD$, $BE$, $CF$ are drawn cutting the opposite sides in $D$, $E$, $F$, and making equal angles with the opposite sides measured round the triangle in the same direction. The lines $AD$, $BE$, $CF$ form a triangle $A'B'C'$. Prove that

$$\frac{A'B \cdot B'C \cdot C'A}{AE \cdot BF \cdot CD} = \frac{A'C \cdot B'A \cdot C'B}{AF \cdot BD \cdot CE} = \frac{BC \cdot CA \cdot AB}{AD \cdot BE \cdot CF}.$$

9. Through the symmedian point of a triangle lines are drawn antiparallel to each of the sides, cutting the other two sides. Prove that the six points so obtained are equidistant from the symmedian point.

[The circle through these six points has been called the *cosine circle*, from the property, which the student can verify, that the intercepts it makes on the sides are proportional to the cosines of the opposite angles.]

10. Through the symmedian point of a triangle lines are drawn parallel to each of the sides, cutting the other sides. Prove that the six points so obtained are equidistant from the middle point of the line joining the symmedian point to the circumcentre.

[The circle through these six points is called the *Lemoine circle*. See Lachlan's *Modern Pure Geometry*, § 131.]

11. $AD$, $BE$, $CF$ are three concurrent lines through the vertices of a triangle $ABC$, meeting the opposite sides in $D$, $E$, $F$. The circle circumscribing $DEF$ intersects the sides of $ABC$ again in $D'$, $E'$, $F'$. Prove that $AD'$, $BE'$, $CF'$ are concurrent.

12. Prove that the tangents to the circumcircle at the vertices of a triangle meet the opposite sides in three points which are collinear.

13. If $AD$, $BE$, $CF$ through the vertices of a triangle $ABC$ meeting the opposite sides in $D$, $E$, $F$ are concurrent, and points $D'$, $E'$, $F'$ be taken in the sides opposite to $A$, $B$, $C$ so that $DD'$ and $BC$, $EE'$ and $CA$, $FF'$ and $AB$ have respectively the same middle point, then $AD'$, $BE'$, $CF'$ are concurrent.

14. If from the symmedian point $S$ of a triangle $ABC$, perpendiculars $SD$, $SE$, $SF$ be drawn to the sides of the triangle, then $S$ will be the median point of the triangle $DEF$.

15. Prove that the triangles formed by joining the symmedian point to the vertices of a triangle are in the duplicate ratio of the sides of the triangle.

16. The sides $BC$, $CA$, $AB$ of a triangle $ABC$ are divided internally by points $A'$, $B'$, $C'$ so that

$$BA' : A'C = CB' : B'A = AC' : C'B.$$

Also $B'C'$ produced cuts $BC$ externally in $A''$. Prove that

$$BA'' : CA'' = CA'^2 : A'B^2.$$

# CHAPTER IV

## PROJECTION

**40.** If $V$ be any point in space, and $A$ any other point, then if $VA$, produced if necessary, meet a given plane $\pi$ in $A'$, $A'$ is called the projection of $A$ on the plane $\pi$ by means of the vertex $V$.

It is clear at once that the projection of a straight line on a plane $\pi$ is a straight line, namely the intersection of the plane $\pi$ with the plane containing $V$ and the line.

If the plane, through $V$ and a certain line, be parallel to the $\pi$ plane, then that line will be projected to infinity on the $\pi$ plane. The line thus obtained on the $\pi$ plane is called *the line at infinity* in that plane.

**41.** Suppose now we are projecting points in a plane $p$ by means of a vertex $V$ on to another plane $\pi$.

Let a plane through $V$ parallel to the plane $\pi$ cut the plane $p$ in the line $AB$.

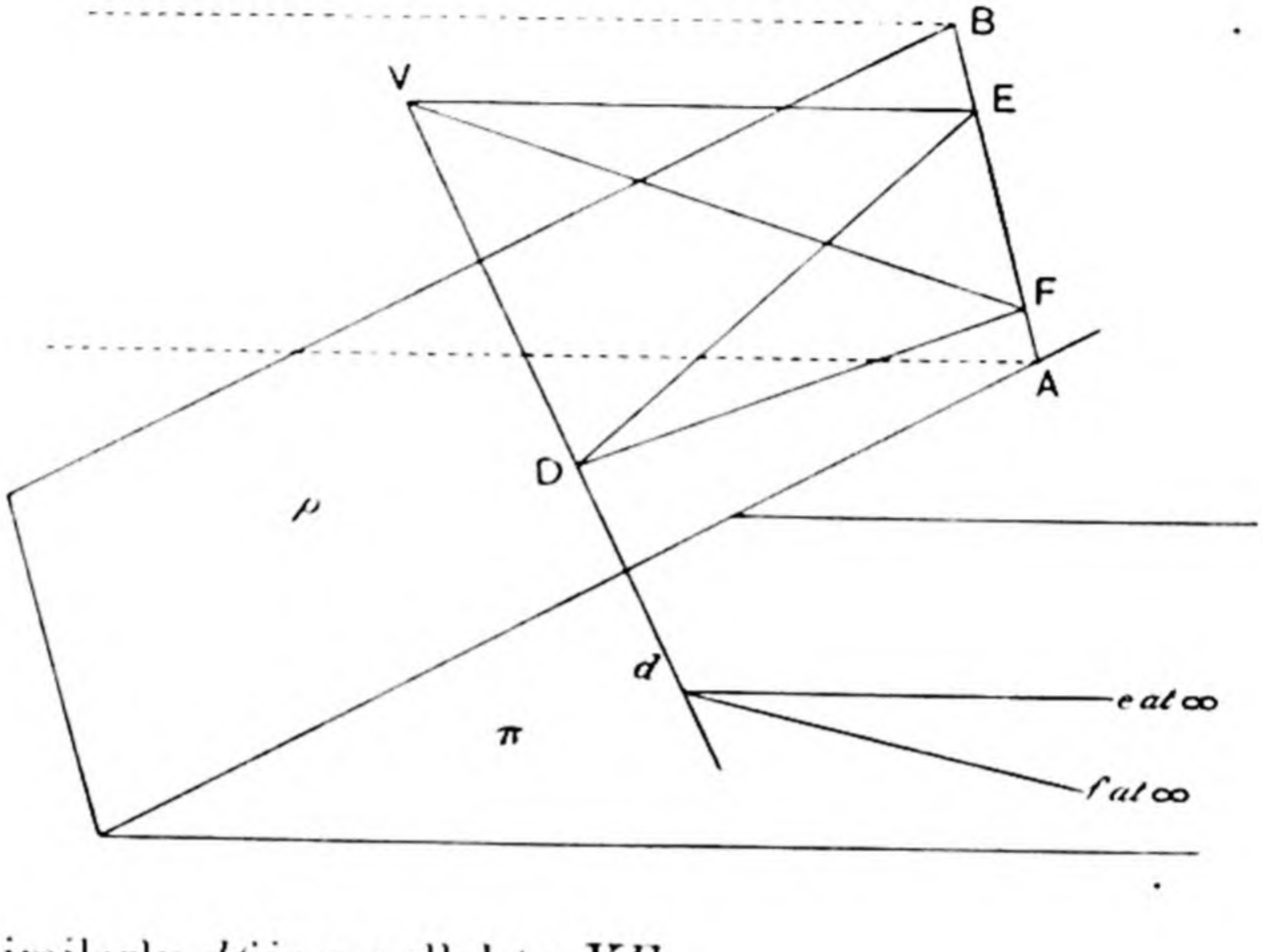
This line $AB$ will project to infinity on the plane $\pi$, and for this reason $AB$ is called the *vanishing line* on the plane $p$.

The vanishing line is clearly parallel to the line of intersection of the planes $p$ and $\pi$, which is called *the axis of projection*.

**42.** Now let $EDF$ be an angle in the plane $p$ and let its lines $DE$ and $DF$ cut the vanishing line $AB$ in $E$ and $F$, then the angle $EDF$ will project on to the $\pi$ plane into an angle of magnitude $EVF$.

For let the plane $VDE$ intersect the plane $\pi$ in the line $de$.

Then since the plane $VEF$ is parallel to the plane $\pi$, the intersections of these planes with the plane $VDE$ are parallel; that is, $de$ is parallel to $VE$.




Similarly $df$ is parallel to $VF$.

Therefore $\angle edf = \angle EVF$.

Hence we see that *any angle in the plane p projects on to the* $\pi$ *plane into an angle of magnitude equal to that subtended at V by the portion of the vanishing line intercepted by the lines containing the angle.*

**43. Prop.** *By a proper choice of the vertex V of projection, any given line on a plane p can be projected to infinity, while two given angles in the plane p are projected into angles of given magnitude on to a plane* $\pi$ *properly chosen.*

Let $AB$ be the given line. Through $AB$ draw any plane $p'$.

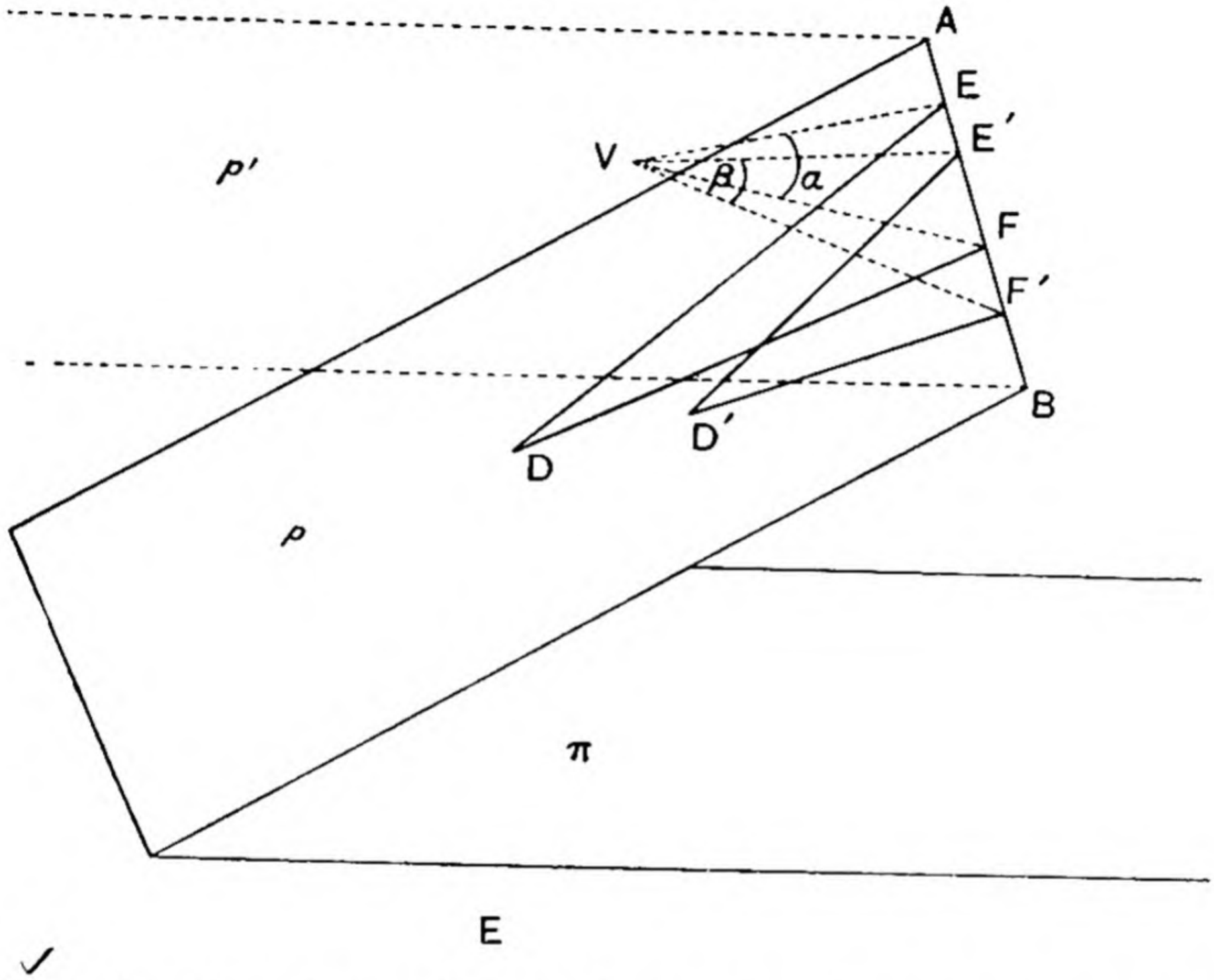
Let the plane $\pi$ be taken parallel to the plane $p'$.

Let $EDF$, $E'D'F'$ be the angles in the plane $p$ which are to be projected into angles of magnitude $\alpha$ and $\beta$ respectively.

Let $E$, $F$, $E'$, $F'$ be on $AB$.

On $EF$, $E'F'$ in the plane $p'$ describe segments of circles containing angles equal to $\alpha$ and $\beta$ respectively. Let these segments intersect in $V$.

Then if $V$ be taken as the vertex of projection, $AB$ will project to infinity, and $EDF$, $E'D'F'$ into angles of magnitude $\alpha$ and $\beta$ respectively (§ 42).




Cor. 1. *Any triangle can be projected into an equilateral triangle.*

For if we project two of its angles into angles of 60° the third angle will project into 60° also, since the sum of the three angles of the triangle in projection is equal to two right angles.

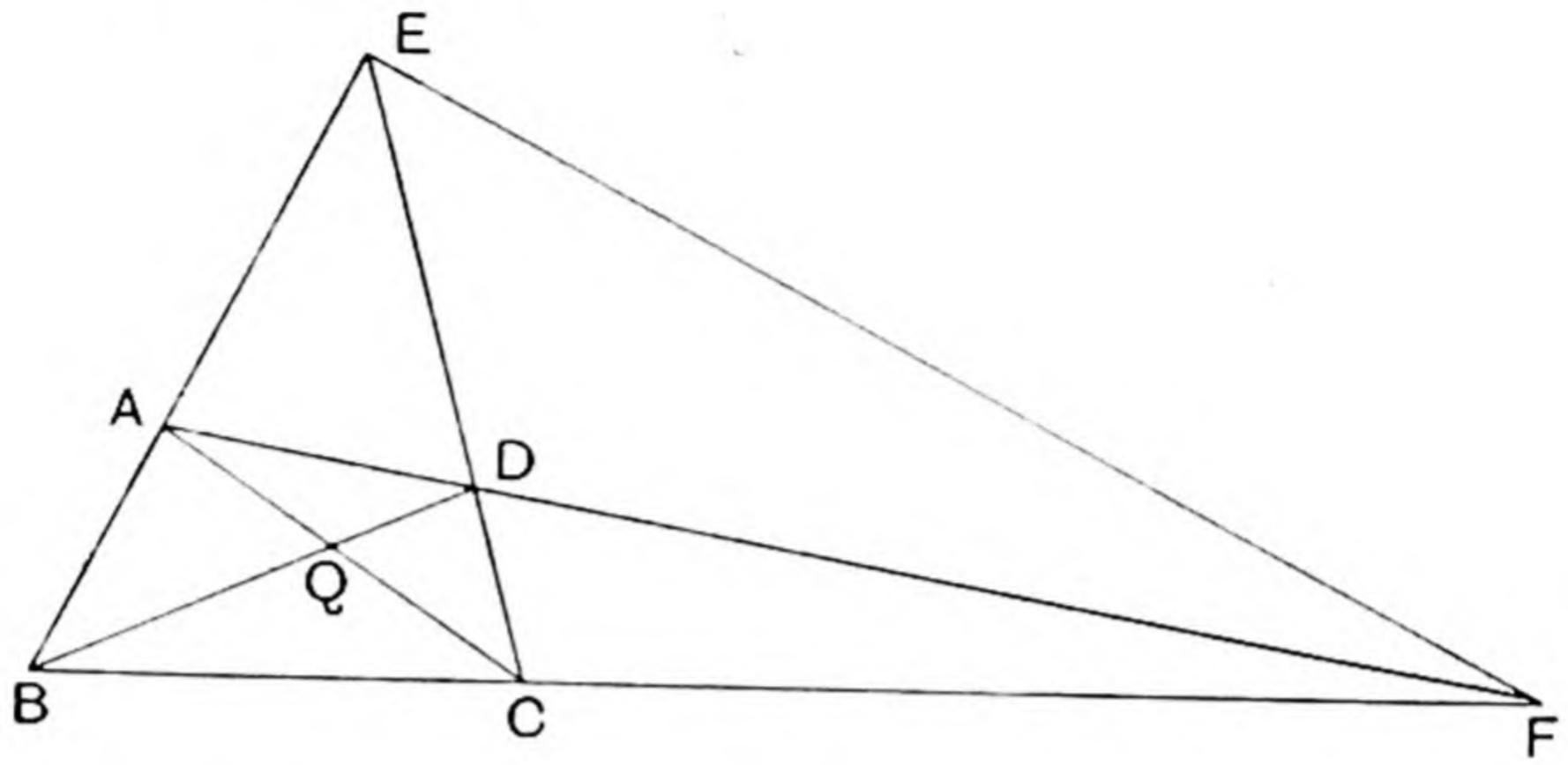
Cor. 2. *A quadrilateral can be projected into a square.*

Let $ABCD$ be the quadrilateral. Let $EF$ be its third diagonal, that is the line joining the intersections of opposite pairs of sides.

Let $AC$ and $BD$ intersect in $Q$.

Now if we project $EF$ to infinity and at the same time

project $\angle$s $BAD$ and $BQA$ into right angles, the quadrilateral will be projected into a square.



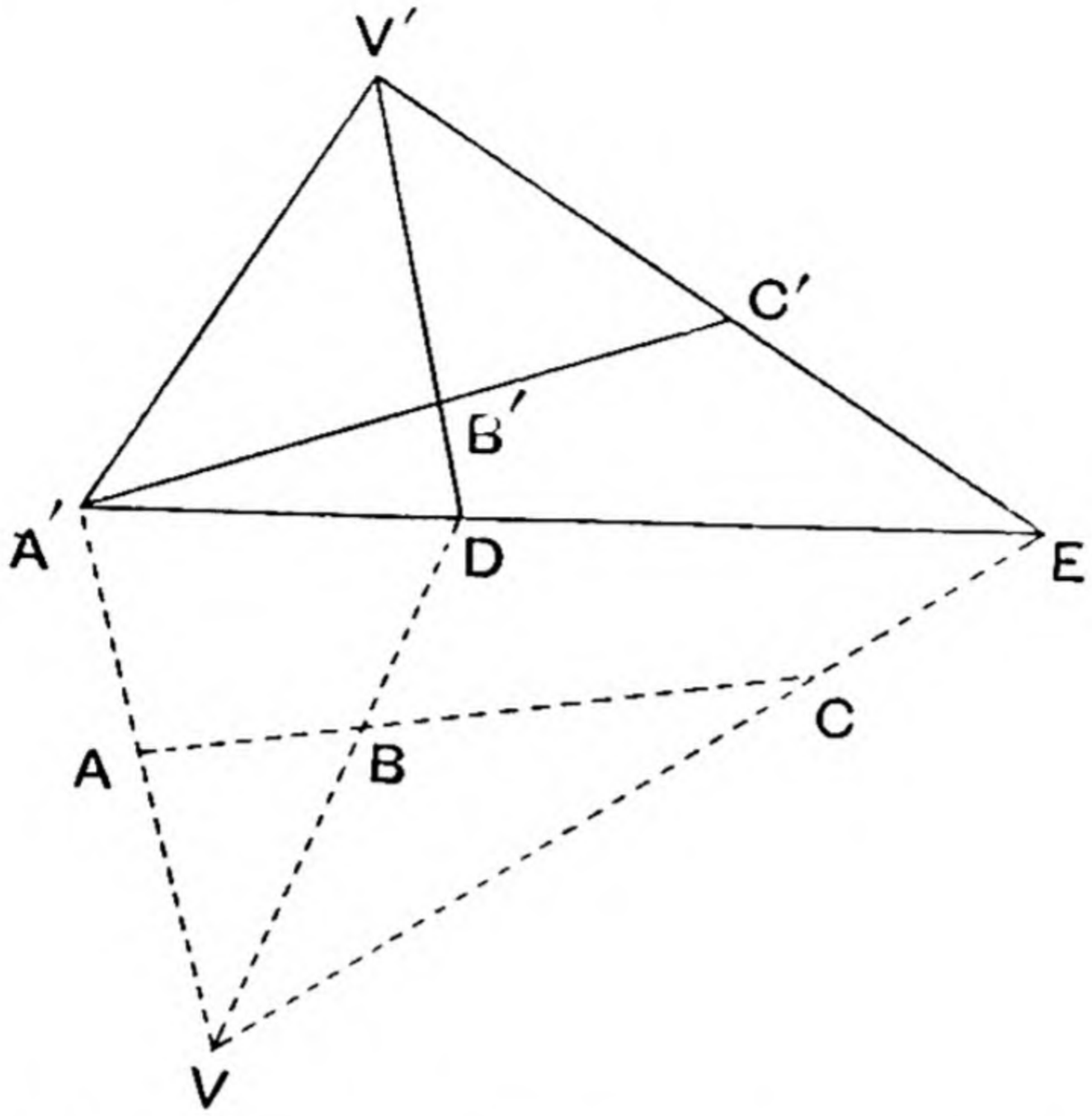

For the projection of $EF$ to infinity, secures that the projection shall be a parallelogram; the projection of $\angle BAD$ into a right angle makes this parallelogram rectangular; and the projection of $\angle AQB$ into a right angle makes the rectangle a square.

**44.** It may happen that one of the lines $DE$, $D'E'$ in the preceding paragraph is parallel to the line $AB$ which is to be projected to infinity. Suppose that $DE$ is parallel to $AB$. In this case we must draw a line $FV$ in the plane $p'$ so that the angle $EFV$ is the supplement of $\alpha$. The vertex of projection $V$ will be the intersection of the line $FV$ with the segment of the circle on $E'F'$.

If $D'E'$ is also parallel to $AB$, then the vertex $V$ will be the intersection of the line $FV$ just now obtained and another line $F'V$ so drawn that the angle $E'F'V$ is the supplement of $\beta$.

**45.** Again the segments of circles described on $EF$, $E'F'$ in the proposition of § 43 may not intersect in any real point. In this case $V$ is an imaginary point, that is to say it is a point algebraically significant, but not capable of being presented to the eye in the figure. The notion of imaginary points and lines which we take over from Analytical Geometry into our present subject will be of considerable use.

**46. Prop.** *A range of three points is projective with any other range of three points in space.*




Let $A$, $B$, $C$ be three collinear points, and $A'$, $B'$, $C'$ three others not necessarily in the same plane with the first three.

Join $AA'$.

Take any point $V$ in $AA'$.

Join $VB$, $VC$ and let them meet a line $A'DE$ drawn through $A'$ in the plane $VAC$ in $D$ and $E$.

Join $DB'$, $EC'$. These are in one plane, viz. the plane containing the lines $A'C'$ and $A'E$.

Let $DB'$, $EC'$ meet in $V'$. Join $V'A'$.

Then by means of the vertex $V$, $A$, $B$, $C$ can be projected into $A'$, $D$, $E$; and these by means of the vertex $V'$ can be projected into $A'$, $B'$, $C'$.

Thus our proposition is proved.

**47.** The student must understand that when we speak of one range being projective with another, we do not mean necessarily that the one can be projected into the other by a single projection, but that we can pass from one range to the other by successive projections.

A range of *four* points is not *in general* projective with any other range of four points in space. We shall in the next chapter set forth the condition that must be satisfied to render the one projective with the other.

## EXERCISES

1. Prove that a system of parallel lines in a plane $p$ will project on to another plane into a system of lines through the same point.

2. Two angles such that the lines containing them meet the vanishing line in the same points are projected into angles which are equal to one another.

3. Shew that in general three angles can be projected into angles of the same magnitude $a$.

4. Shew that a triangle can be so projected that any line in its plane is projected to infinity while three given concurrent lines through its vertices become the perpendiculars of the triangle in the projection.

5. Explain, illustrating by a figure, how it is that a point $R$ lying on a line $PQ$, and *outside* the portion $PQ$ of it, can be projected into a point $r$ lying between $p$ and $q$, which are the projections of $P$ and $Q$.

6. Any three points $A_1$, $B_1$, $C_1$ are taken respectively in the sides $BC$, $CA$, $AB$ of the triangle $ABC$; $B_1C_1$ and $BC$ intersect in $F$; $C_1A_1$ and $CA$ in $G$; and $A_1B_1$ and $AB$ in $H$. Also $FH$ and $BB_1$ intersect in $M$, and $FG$ and $CC_1$ in $N$. Prove that $MG$, $NH$ and $BC$ are concurrent.

7. Prove that a triangle can be so projected that three given concurrent lines through its vertices become the medians of the triangle in the projection.

8. If $AA_1$, $BB_1$, $CC_1$ be three concurrent lines drawn through the vertices of a triangle $ABC$ to meet the opposite sides in $A_1B_1C_1$; and if $B_1C_1$ meet $BC$ in $A_2$, $C_1A_1$ meet $CA$ in $B_2$, and $A_1B_1$ meet $AB$ in $C_2$; then $A_2$, $B_2$, $C_2$ will be collinear.

[Project the concurrent lines into medians.]

9. If a triangle be projected from one plane on to another the three points of intersection of corresponding sides are collinear.

# CHAPTER V

## CROSS-RATIOS

**48. Definition.** If $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$ be a range of points, the ratio $\dfrac{AB.CD}{AD.CB}$ is called a *cross-ratio* of the four points, and is conveniently represented by $(ABCD)$, in which the order of the letters is the same as their order in the numerator of the cross-ratio.

Some writers call cross-ratios 'anharmonic ratios.' This is however not a fortunate term to use, and it will be best to avoid it. For the term 'anharmonic' means not harmonic, so that an anharmonic ratio should be one that is not harmonic, whereas a cross-ratio may be harmonic, that is to say may be the cross-ratio of what is called a harmonic range. The student will better appreciate this point when he comes to Chapter VII.

**49.** The essentials of a cross-ratio of a range of four points are: (1) that each letter occurs once in both numerator and denominator; (2) that the elements of the denominator are obtained by associating the first and last letters of the numerator together, and the third and second, and *in this particular order.*

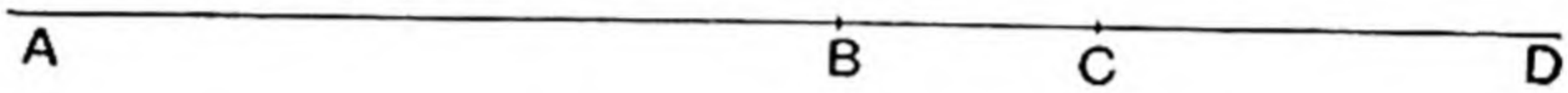
$\dfrac{AB.CD}{AD.BC}$ is not a cross-ratio but the negative of one, for it $= -\dfrac{AB.CD}{AD.CB} = -(ABCD)$.

$\dfrac{BA.CD}{AC.DB}$, though not appearing to be a cross-ratio as it stands, becomes one on rearrangement, for it $= \dfrac{BA.CD}{BD.CA}$, that is $(BACD)$.

Since there are twenty-four permutations of four letters taken all together, we see that there are twenty-four cross-ratios which can be formed with a range of four points.

**50. Prop.** *The twenty-four cross-ratios of a range of four points are equivalent to six, all of which can be expressed in terms of any one of them.*

Let $$(ABCD) = \lambda.$$




First we observe that if the letters of a cross-ratio be interchanged in pairs simultaneously, the cross-ratio is unchanged.

For $$(BADC) = \frac{BA \,.\, DC}{BC \,.\, DA} = \frac{AB \,.\, CD}{AD \,.\, CB} = (ABCD),$$

$$(CDAB) = \frac{CD \,.\, AB}{CB \,.\, AD} = \frac{AB \,.\, CD}{AD \,.\, CB} = (ABCD),$$

$$(DCBA) = \frac{DC \,.\, BA}{DA \,.\, BC} = \frac{AB \,.\, CD}{AD \,.\, CB} = (ABCD).$$

Hence we get

$$(ABCD) = (BADC) = (CDAB) = (DCBA) = \lambda \ldots (1).$$

Secondly we observe that a cross-ratio is inverted if we interchange *either* the first and third letters, *or* the second and fourth.

$$\therefore (ADCB) = (BCDA) = (CBAD) = (DABC) = \frac{1}{\lambda} \ldots (2).$$

These we have obtained from (1) by interchange of second and fourth letters; the same result is obtained by interchanging the first and third.

Thirdly, since by § 31

$$AB \,.\, CD + BC \,.\, AD + CA \,.\, BD = 0,$$

$$\therefore \frac{AB \,.\, CD}{AD \,.\, CB} - 1 + \frac{CA \,.\, BD}{AD \,.\, CB} = 0.$$

$$\therefore 1 - \lambda = \frac{CA \,.\, BD}{AD \,.\, CB} = \frac{AC \,.\, BD}{AD \,.\, BC} = (ACBD).$$

Thus the interchange of the second and third letters changes $\lambda$ into $1-\lambda$. We may remark that the same result is obtained by interchanging the first and fourth.

Thus from (1)

$$(ACBD)=(BDAC)=(CADB)=(DBCA)=1-\lambda \quad \ldots(3),$$

and from this again by interchange of second and fourth letters,

$$(ADBC)=(BCAD)=(CBDA)=(DACB)=\frac{1}{1-\lambda} \quad \ldots(4).$$

In these we interchange the second and third letters, and get

$$(ABDC)=(BACD)=(CDBA)=(DCAB)$$
$$=1-\frac{1}{1-\lambda}=\frac{\lambda}{\lambda-1} \quad \ldots(5).$$

And now interchanging the second and fourth we get

$$(ACDB)=(BDCA)=(CABD)=(DBAC)=\frac{\lambda-1}{\lambda} \quad \ldots(6).$$

We have thus expressed all the cross-ratios in terms of $\lambda$. And we see that if one cross-ratio of four collinear points be equal to one cross-ratio of four other collinear points, then each of the cross-ratios of the first range is equal to the corresponding cross-ratio of the second.

Two such ranges may be called *equi-cross.*

**51. Prop.** *If $A$, $B$, $C$ be three separate collinear points, and $D$, $E$ other points in their line such that*

$$(ABCD)=(ABCE),$$

*then $D$ must coincide with $E$.*

For since $$\frac{AB.CD}{AD.CB}=\frac{AB.CE}{AE.CB},$$

$$\therefore AE.CD=AD.CE.$$
$$\therefore (AD+DE)CD=AD(CD+DE).$$
$$\therefore DE(AD-CD)=0.$$
$$\therefore DE.AC=0.$$
$$\therefore DE=0 \text{ for } AC\neq 0,$$

that is, $D$ and $E$ coincide.

**52. Prop.** *A range of four points is equi-cross with its projection on any plane.*

Let the range $ABCD$ be projected by means of the vertex $V$ into $A'B'C'D'$.

Then

$$\frac{AB.CD}{AD.CB} = \frac{\triangle AVB}{\triangle AVD} \cdot \frac{\triangle CVD}{\triangle CVB},$$ regard being had to the signs of the areas,

$$= \frac{\frac{1}{2} VA.VB \sin AVB}{\frac{1}{2} VA.VD \sin AVD} \cdot \frac{\frac{1}{2} VC.VD \sin CVD}{\frac{1}{2} VC.VB \sin CVB},$$

regard being had to the signs of the angles,

$$= \frac{\sin AVB \sin CVD}{\sin AVD \sin CVB}.$$

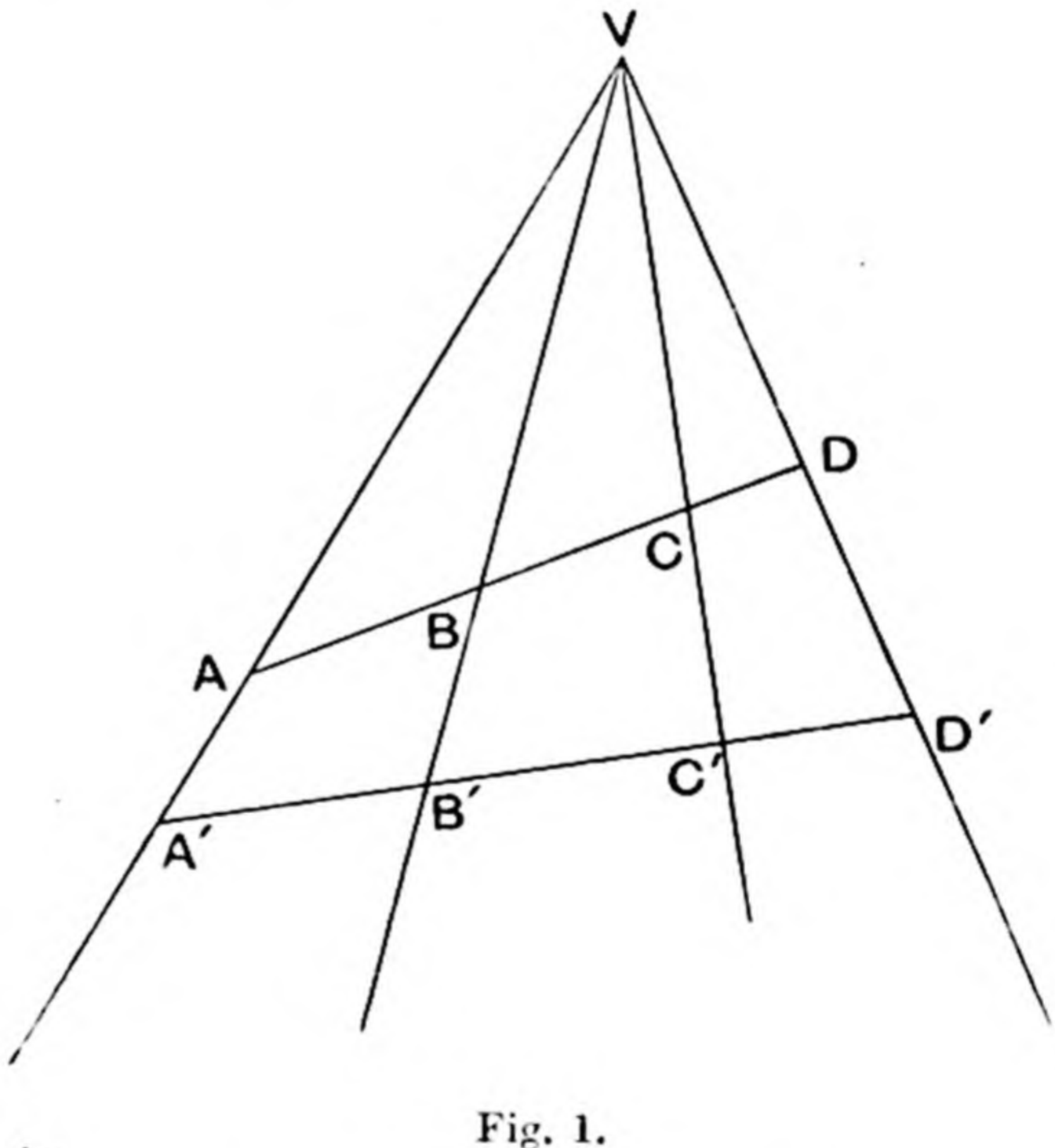



Fig. 1.

Similarly

$$\frac{A'B'.C'D'}{A'D'.C'B'} = \frac{\sin A'VB' \sin C'VD'}{\sin A'VD' \sin C'VB'}.$$

Now in all the cases that arise

$$\frac{\sin A'VB' \sin C'VD'}{\sin A'VD' \sin C'VB'} = \frac{\sin AVB \sin CVD}{\sin AVD \sin CVB}.$$

This is obvious in fig. 1.

In fig. 2

$$\sin A'VB' = \quad \sin B'VA, \text{ these angles being supplementary,}$$
$$= -\sin AVB,$$

and
$$\sin A'VD' = \sin D'VA = -\sin AVD.$$

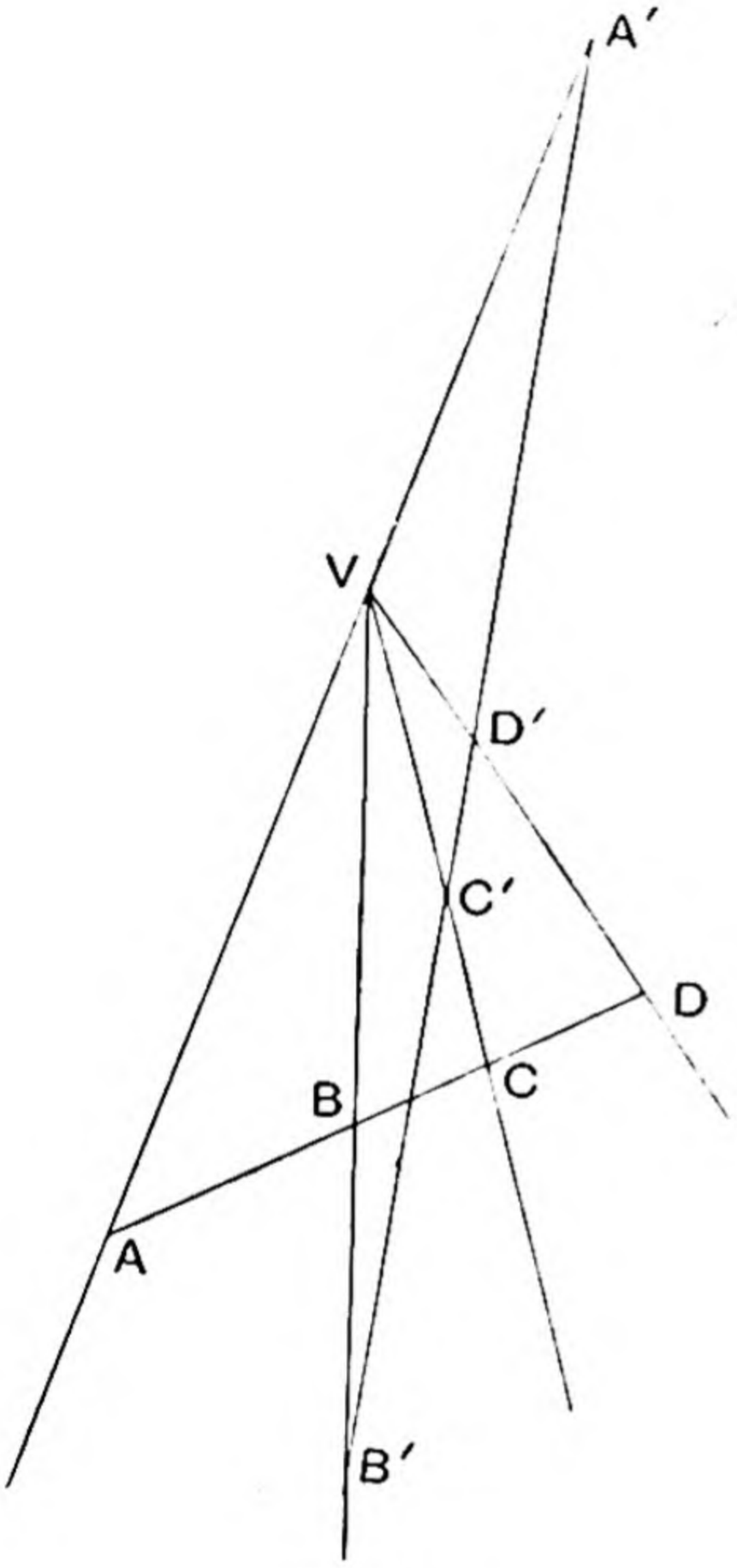



Fig. 2.

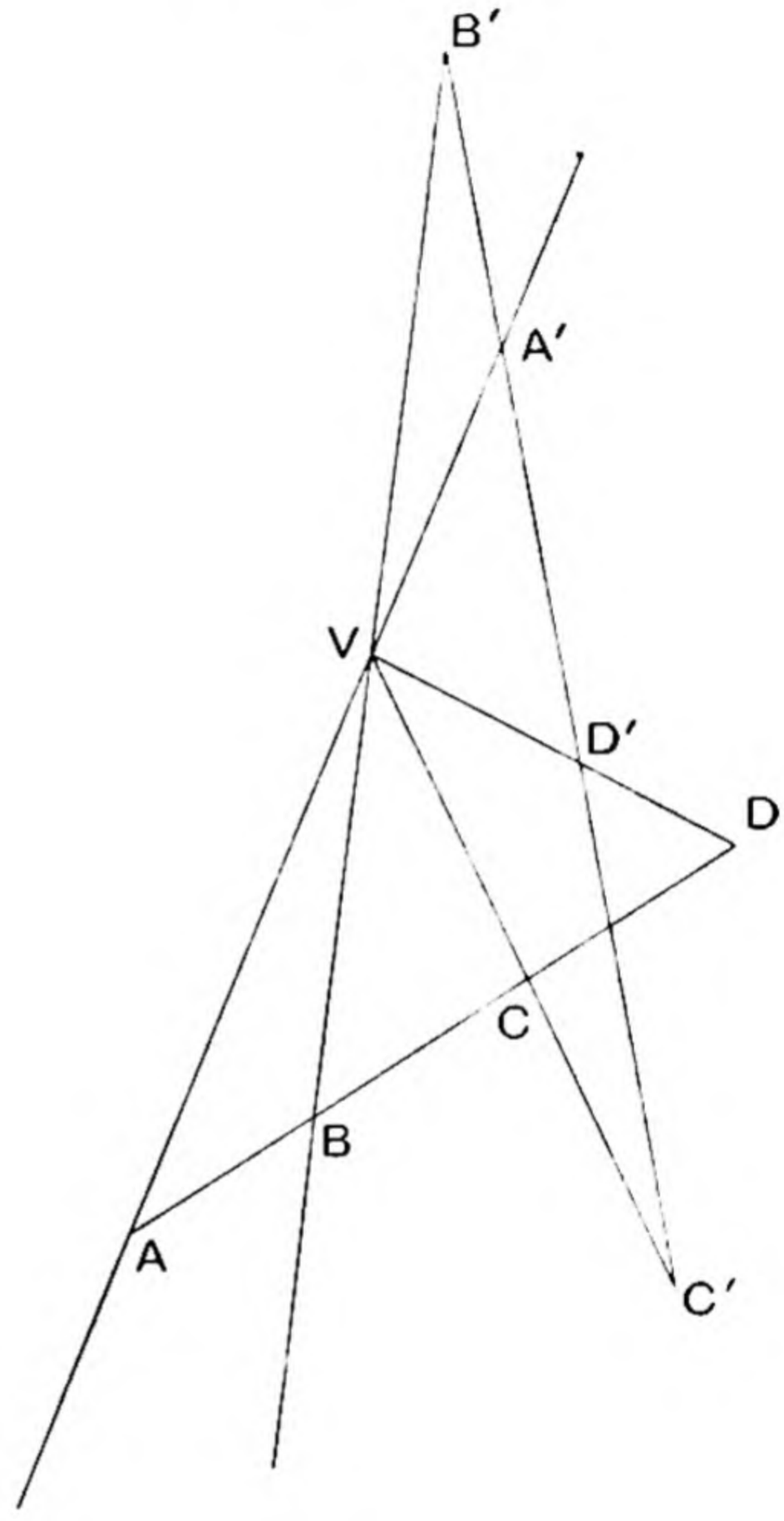



Fig. 3.

Further
$$\sin C''VD' = \sin CVD,$$
and
$$\sin C'VB' = \sin CVB.$$

In fig. 3

$$\sin A'VB' = \sin AVB,$$
$$\sin C'VD' = \sin CVD,$$
$$\sin A'VD' = \sin D'VA = -\sin AVD,$$
$$\sin C'VB' = \sin BVC = -\sin CVB.$$

Thus in each case

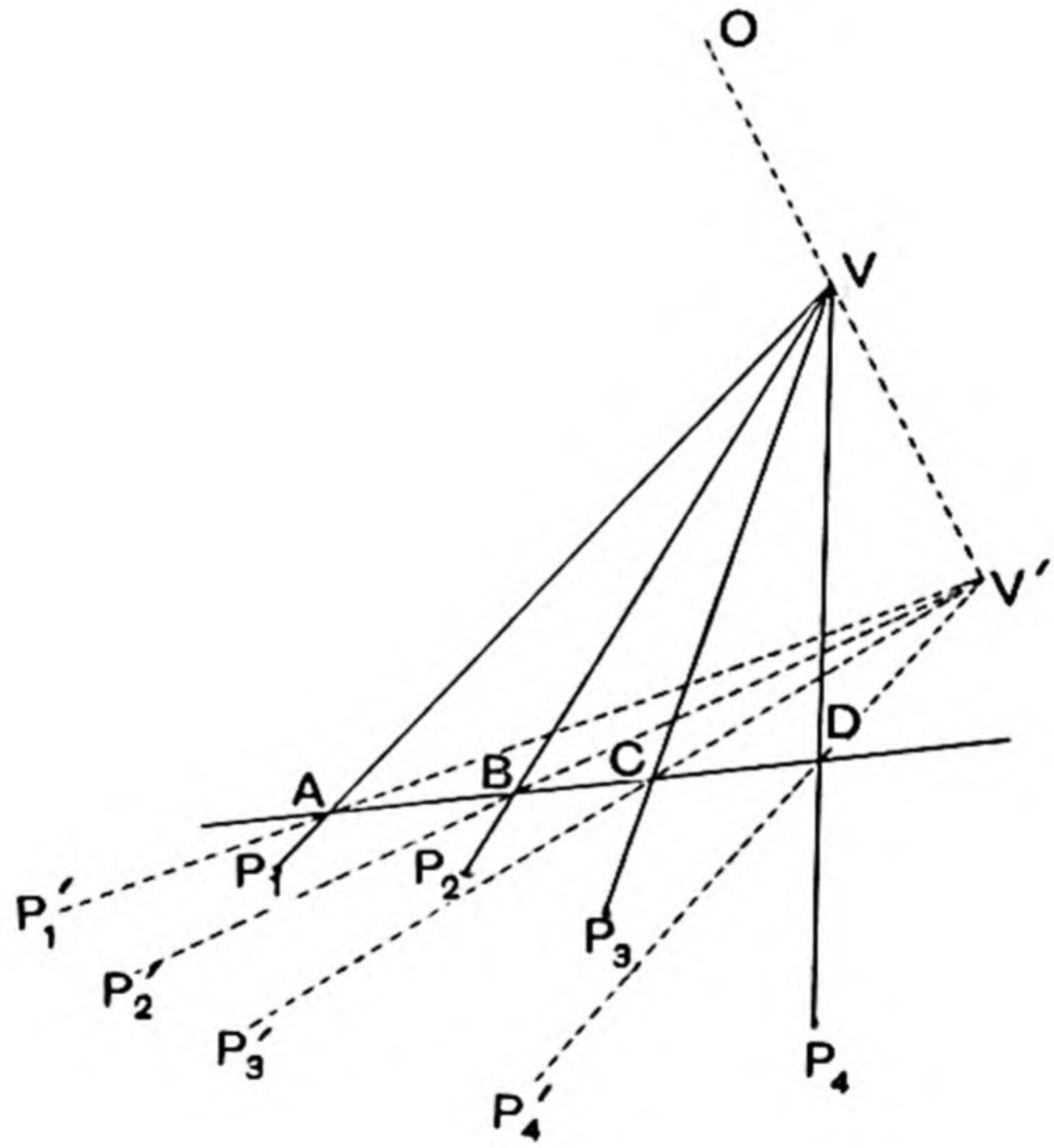
$$(A'B'C'D') = (ABCD).$$

**53.** A number of lines in a plane which meet in a point $V$ are said to form a *pencil*, and each constituent line of the pencil is called a *ray*. $V$ is called the *vertex* of the pencil.

Any straight line in the plane cutting the rays of the pencil is called a *transversal* of the pencil.

From the last article we see that if $VP_1$, $VP_2$, $VP_3$, $VP_4$ form a pencil and any transversal cut the rays of the pencil in $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$, then $(ABCD)$ is constant for that particular pencil; that is to say it is independent of the particular transversal.

It will be convenient to express this constant cross-ratio by the notation $V\,(P_1P_2P_3P_4)$.




We easily see that a cross-ratio of the projection of a pencil on to another plane is equal to the cross-ratio of the original pencil.

For let $V\,(P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4)$ be the pencil, $O$ the vertex of projection.

Let the line of intersection of the $p$ and $\pi$ planes cut the rays of the pencil in $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$, and let $V'$ be the projection of $V$, $V'P_1'$, of $VP_1$, and so on.

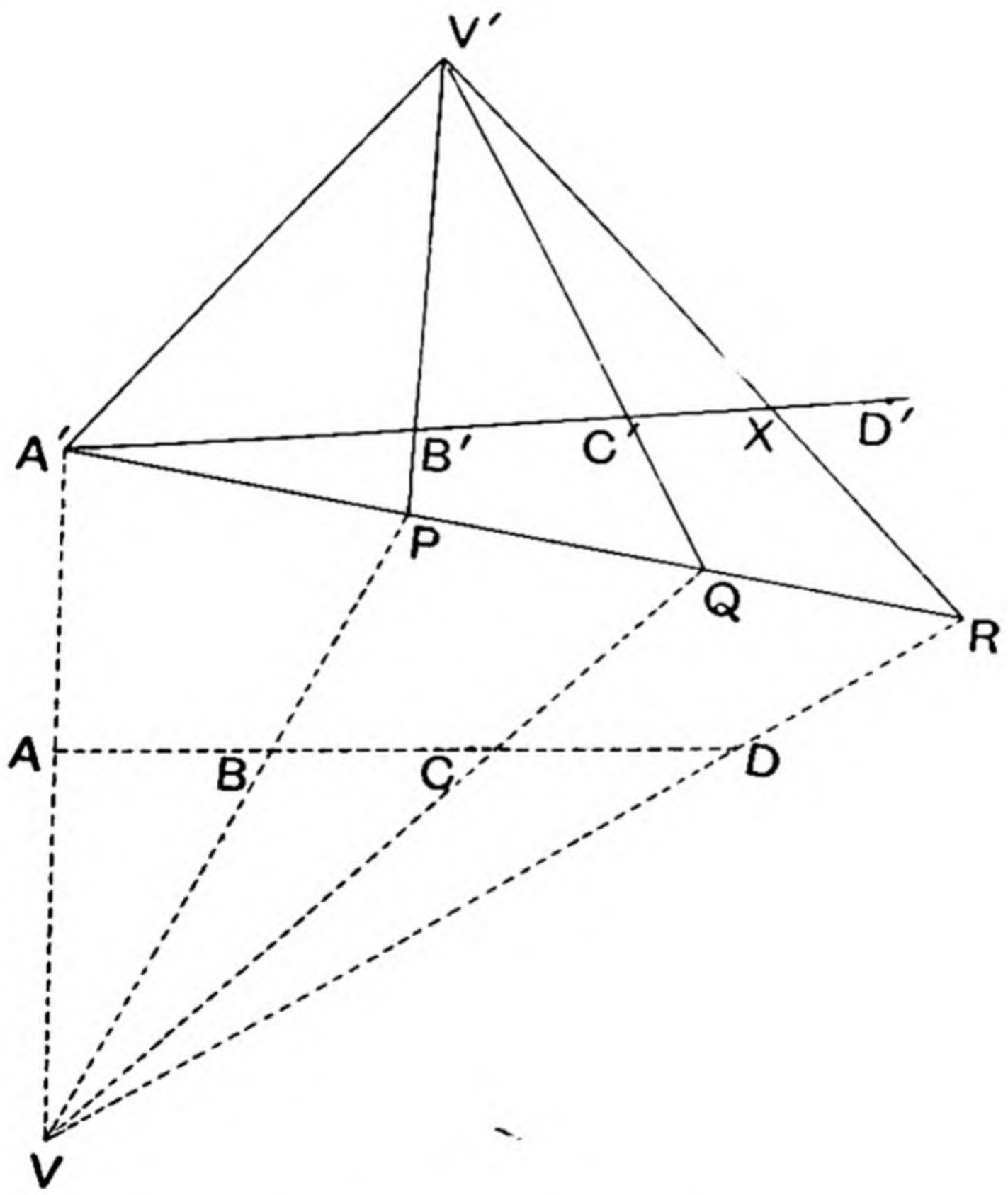
Then $ABCD$ is a transversal also of

$$V'(P_1', P_2', P_3', P_4').$$

$$\therefore V(P_1P_2P_3P_4) = (ABCD) = V'(P_1'P_2'P_3'P_4').$$

**54.** We are now in a position to set forth the condition that two ranges of four points should be mutually projective.

**Prop.** *If $ABCD$ be a range, and $A'B'C'D'$ another range such that $(A'B'C'D') = (ABCD)$, then the two ranges are projective.*




Join $AA'$ and take any point $V$ upon it.

Join $VB$, $VC$, $VD$ and let these lines meet a line through $A'$ in the plane $VAD$ in $P$, $Q$, $R$ respectively.

Join $PB'$, $QC'$ and let these meet in $V'$. Join $V'A'$, and $V'R$, the latter cutting $A'D'$ in $X$.

Then $(\underline{ABCD}) = (A'PQR) = (\underline{A'B'C'X})$.

But $(ABCD) = (\underline{A'B'C'D'})$ by hypothesis.

$\therefore (\underline{A'B'C'X}) = (A'B'C'D')$.

$\therefore X$ coincides with $D'$ (§ 51).

Thus, by means of the vertex $V$, $ABCD$ can be projected into $A'PQR$, and these again by the vertex $V'$ into $A'B'C'D'$

Thus our proposition is proved.

**55. Def.** Two ranges $ABCDE\ldots$ and $A'B'C'D'E'\ldots$ are said to be *homographic* when a cross-ratio of *any* four points of the one is equal to the corresponding cross-ratio of the four corresponding points of the other. This is conveniently expressed by the notation

$$(ABCDE\ldots) = (A'B'C'D'E'\ldots).$$

The student will have no difficulty in proving by means of § 54 that two homographic ranges are mutually projective.

Two pencils

$V\,(P, Q, R, S, T\ldots)$ and $V'\,(P', Q', R', S', T'\ldots)$

are said to be homographic when a cross-ratio of the pencil formed by any four lines of rays of the one is equal to the corresponding cross-ratio of the pencil formed by the four corresponding lines or rays of the other.

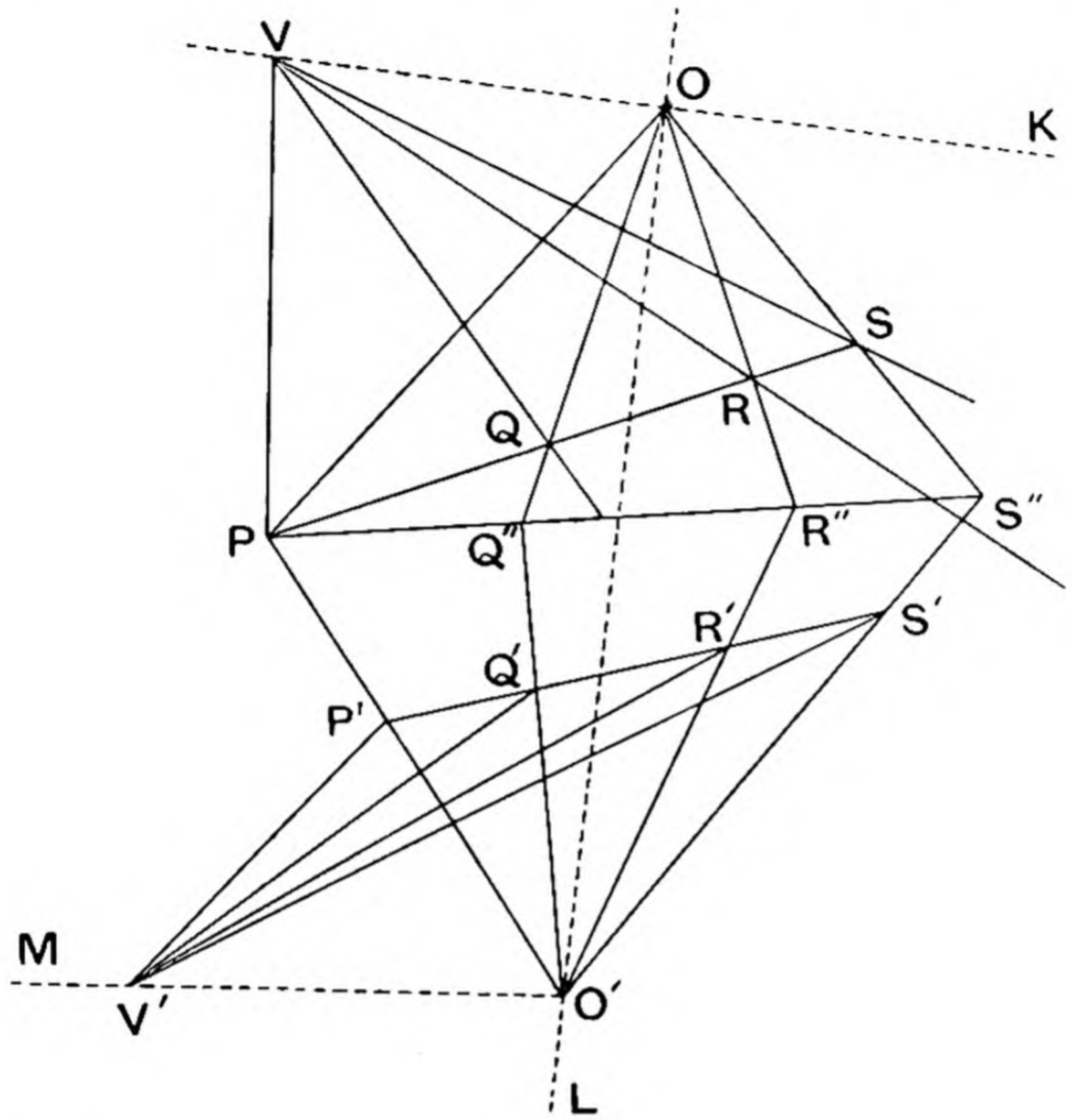
**56. Prop.** *Two homographic pencils are mutually projective.* (K.U. '53)

For let $PQRS\ldots, P'Q'R'S'\ldots$ be any two transversals of the two pencils, $V$ and $V'$ the vertices of the pencils.

Let $PQ''R''S''\ldots$ be the common range into which these can be projected by vertices $O$ and $O'$.

Then by means of a vertex $K$ on $OV$ the pencil $V\,(P, Q, R, S\ldots)$ can be projected into $O\,(P, Q'', R'', S''\ldots)$; and this last pencil can, by a vertex $L$ on $OO'$, be projected into $O'\,(P, Q'', R'', S''\ldots)$,

that is, $O'(P', Q', R', S' \ldots)$; and this again by means of a vertex $M$ on $O'V'$ can be projected into $V'(P', Q', R', S' \ldots)$.




**57.** We will conclude this chapter with a construction for drawing through a given point in the plane of two given parallel lines a line parallel to them, *the construction being effected by means of the ruler only.*

Let $A\omega$, $A_1\omega'$ be the two given lines, $\omega$ and $\omega'$ being the point at infinity upon them, at which they meet.

Let $P$ be the given point in the plane of these lines.

Draw any line $AC$ to cut the given lines in $A$ and $C$, and take any point $B$ upon it.

Join $PA$ cutting $A_1\omega'$ in $A_1$.

Join $PB$ cutting $A_1\omega'$ in $B_1$ and $A\omega$ in $B_2$.

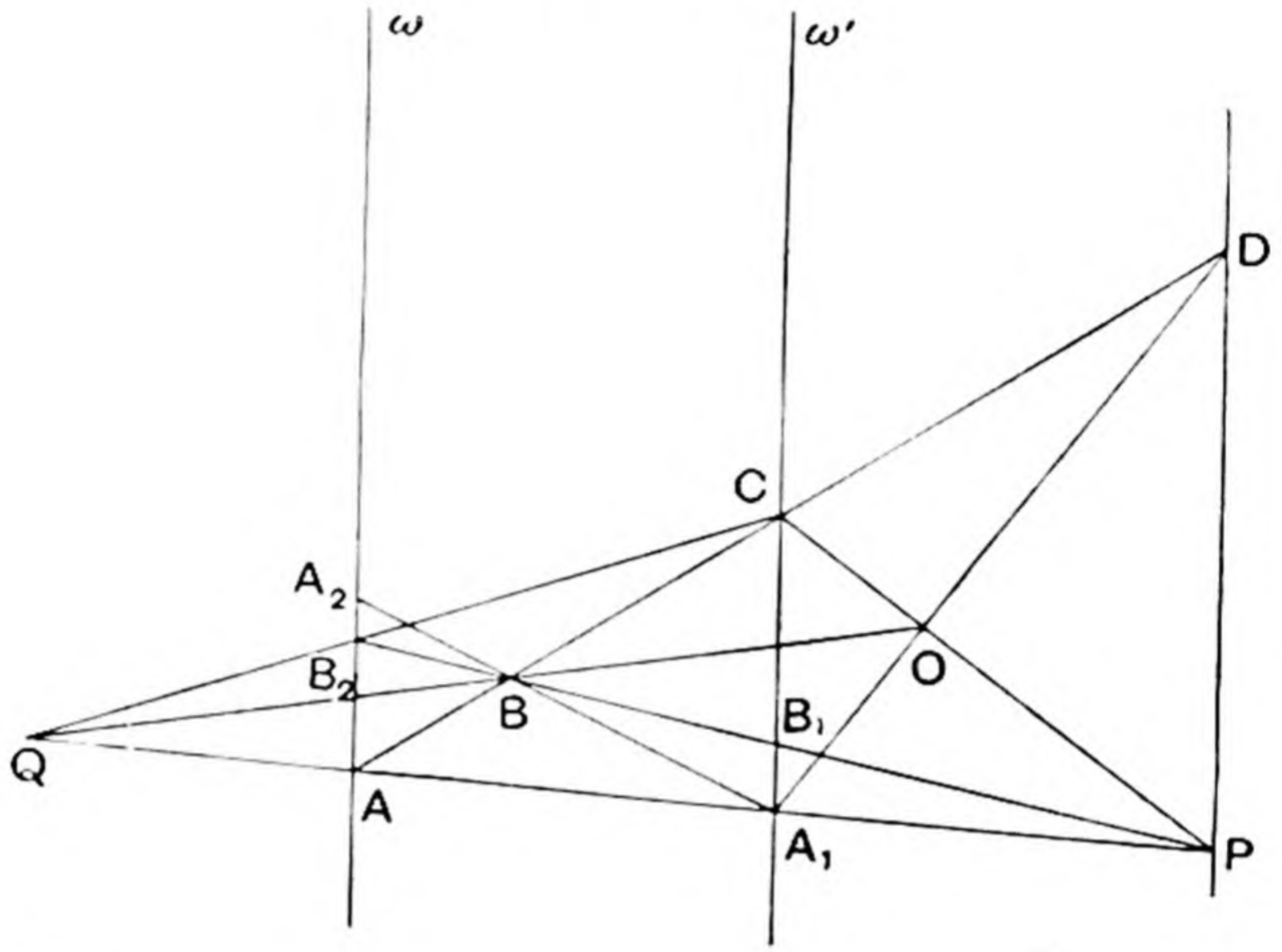
Join $PC$.

Let $A_1A$ and $B_2C$ meet in $Q$.

Let $QB$ meet $CP$ in $O$.

Let $A_1O$ and $AC$ meet in $D$.

$PD$ shall be the line required.




For

$$(A_1B_1C\omega') = B\,(A_1B_1C\omega') = (A_2B_2A\omega) = A_1\,(A_2B_2A\omega)$$
$$= (BB_2PB_1) = C\,(BB_2PB_1) = (AQPA_1) = O\,(AQPA_1)$$
$$= (ABCD).$$

$$\therefore P\,(A_1B_1C\omega') = P\,(ABCD).$$

$\therefore PD$ and $P\omega'$ are in the same line,

that is, $PD$ is parallel to the given lines.

## EXERCISES

1. If $(ABCD) = -\frac{1}{3}$ and $B$ be the point of trisection of $AD$ towards $A$, then $C$ is the other point of trisection of $AD$.

2. Given a range of three points $A$, $B$, $C$, find a fourth point $D$ on their line such that $(ABCD)$ shall have a given value.

3. If the transversal $ABC$ be parallel to $OD$, one of the rays of a pencil $O\,(A,\ B,\ C,\ D)$, then

$$O\,(ABCD) = \frac{AB}{CB}.$$

4. If $(ABCD) = (ABC'D')$, then $(ABCC') = (ABDD')$.

5. If $A,\ B,\ C,\ D$ be a range of four separate points and

$$(ABCD) = (ADCB),$$

then each of these ratios $= -1$.

6. Of the cross-ratios of the range formed by the circumcentre, median point, nine-points centre and orthocentre of a triangle, eight are equal to $-1$, eight to 2, and eight to $\frac{1}{2}$.

7. Any plane will cut four given planes all of which meet in a common line in four lines which are concurrent, and the cross-ratio of the pencil formed by these lines is constant.

8. Taking $a,\ b,\ c,\ d$ to be the distances from $O$ to the points $A,\ B,\ C,\ D$ all in a line with $O$, and

$$\lambda \equiv (a-d)(b-c), \quad \mu \equiv (b-d)(c-a), \quad \nu \equiv (c-d)(a-b),$$

shew that the six possible cross-ratios of the ranges that can be made up of the points $A,\ B,\ C,\ D$ are

$$-\frac{\mu}{\nu}, \quad -\frac{\nu}{\mu}, \quad -\frac{\nu}{\lambda}, \quad -\frac{\lambda}{\nu}, \quad -\frac{\lambda}{\mu}, \quad -\frac{\mu}{\lambda}.$$

# CHAPTER VI

## PERSPECTIVE

**58. Def.** A figure consisting of an assemblage of points $P$, $Q$, $R$, $S$, &c. is said to be in *perspective* with another figure consisting of an assemblage of points $P'$, $Q'$, $R'$, $S'$, &c., if the lines joining corresponding points, viz. $PP'$, $QQ'$, $RR'$, &c. are concurrent in a point $O$. The point $O$ is called the *centre of perspective*.

It is clear from this definition that a figure when projected on to a plane or surface is in perspective with its projection, the vertex of projection being the centre of perspective.

It seems perhaps at first sight that in introducing the notion of perspective we have arrived at nothing further than what we already had in projection. So it may be well to compare the two things, with a view to making this point clear.

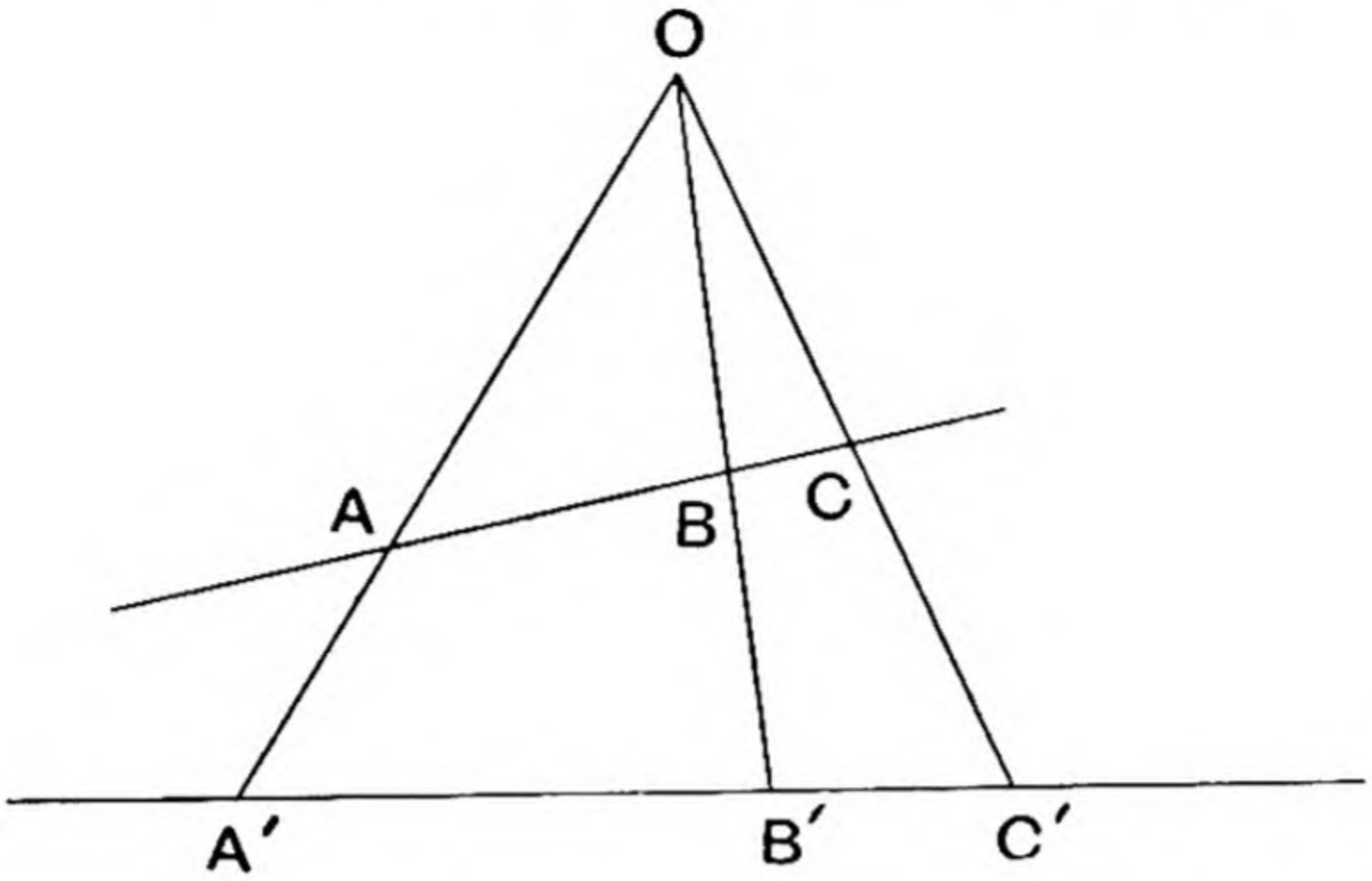
Let it then be noticed that two figures *which are in the same plane* may be in perspective, whereas we should not in this case speak of one figure as the projection of the other.

In projection we have a figure on one plane or surface and project it by means of a vertex of projection on to another plane or surface, whereas in perspective the thought of the planes or surfaces on which the two figures lie is absent, and all that is necessary is that the lines joining corresponding points should be concurrent.

So then while two figures each of which is the projection of the other are in perspective, it is not necessarily the case that of two figures in perspective each is the projection of the other.

**59.** It is clear from our definition of perspective that if two ranges of points be in perspective, then the two lines of the ranges must be coplanar.

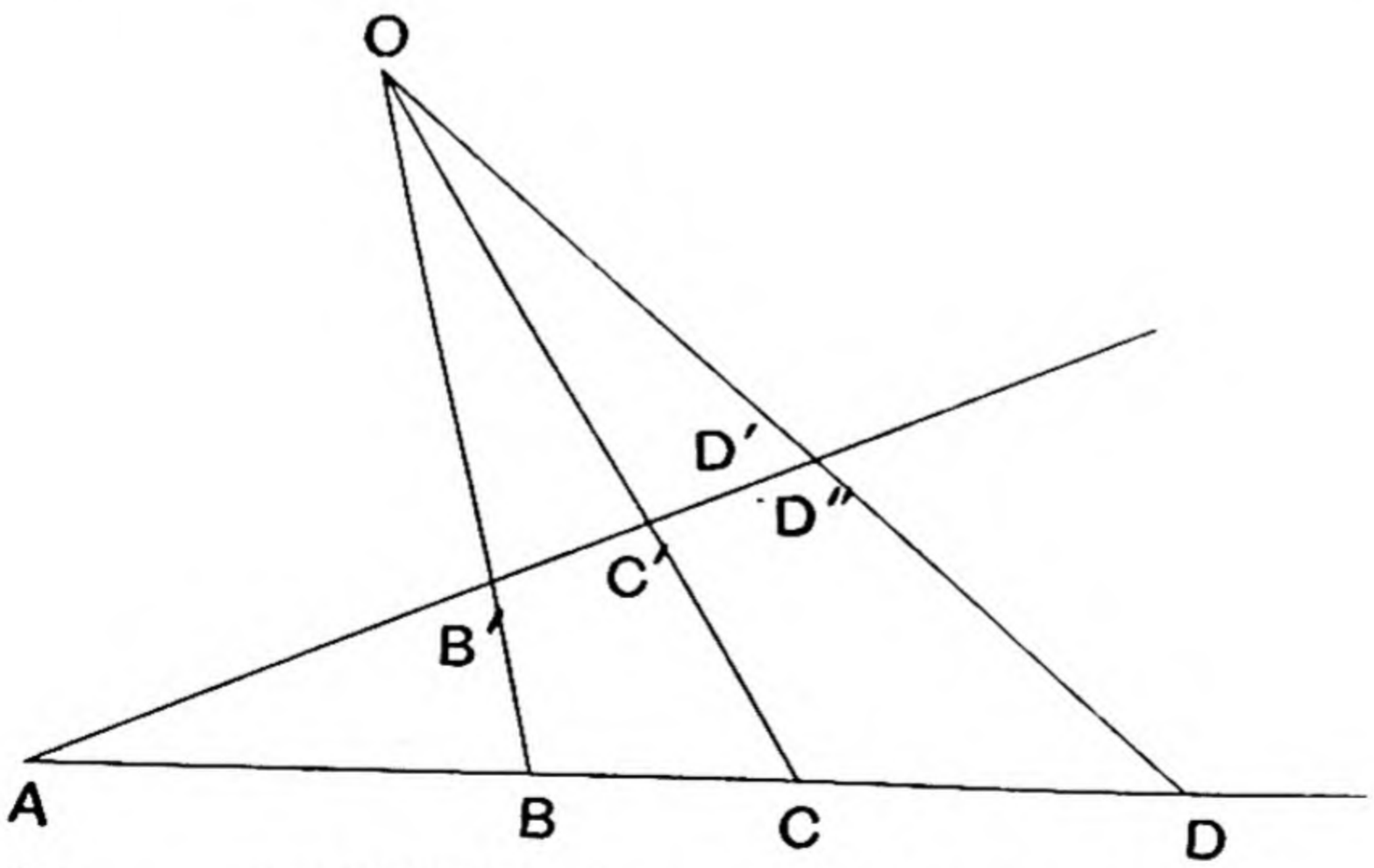
For if $A$, $B$, $C$, &c. are in perspective with $A'$, $B'$, $C'$, &c., and $O$ be the centre of perspective, $A'B'$ and $AB$ are in the same plane, viz. the plane containing the lines $OA$, $OB$.




It is also clear that ranges in perspective are homographic.

But it is not necessarily the case that two homographic ranges in the same plane are in perspective. The following proposition will shew under what condition this is the case.

**60. Prop.** *If two homographic ranges in the same plane be such that the point of intersection of their lines is a point corresponding to itself in the two ranges, then the ranges are in perspective.*




For let $(ABCDE\ldots) = (AB'C'D'E'\ldots)$

Let $BB'$, $CC'$ meet in $O$.

Acc. No:

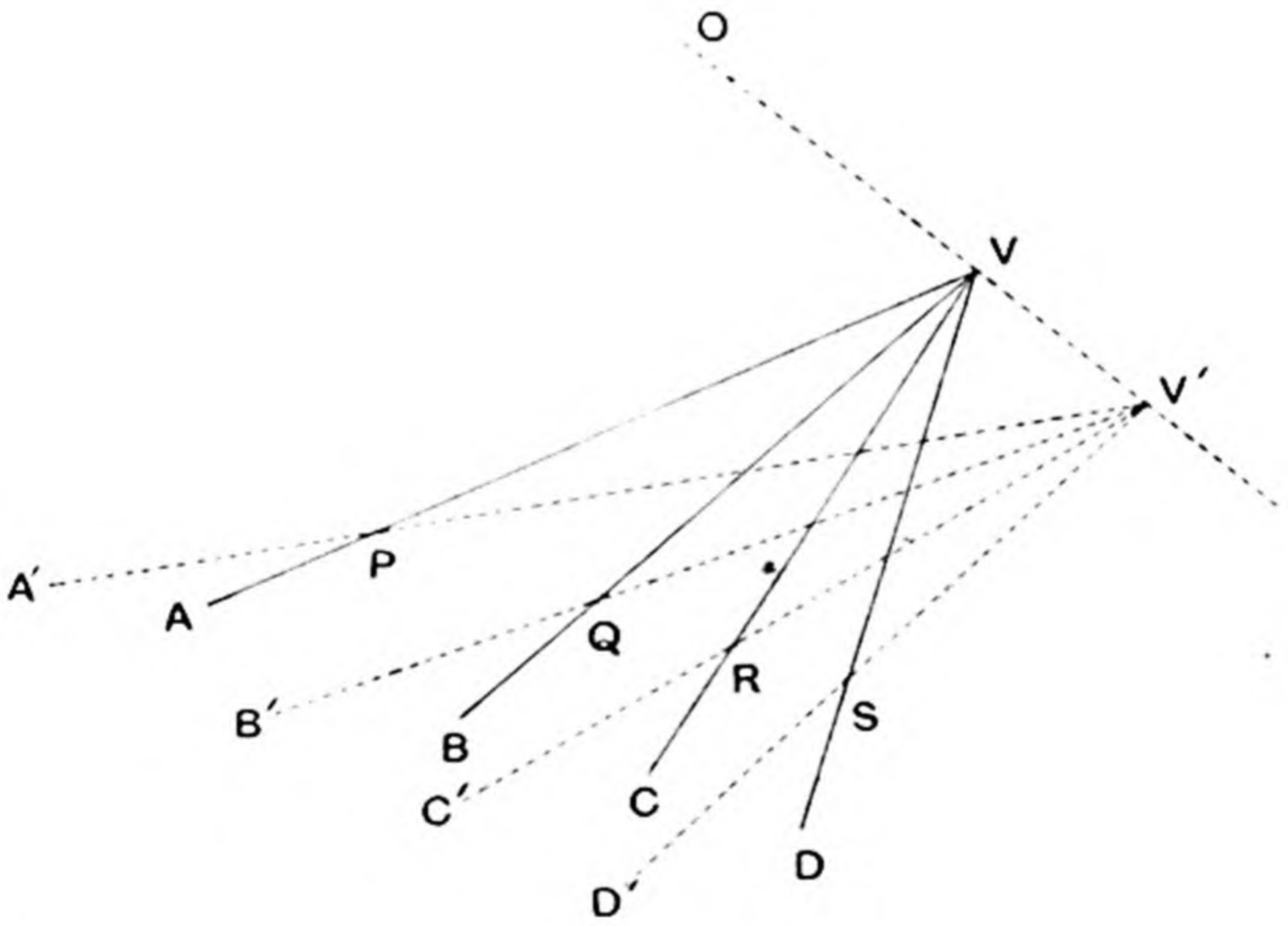
Join $OD$ to cut $AB'$ in $D''$.

Then $$(AB'C'D') = (ABCD)$$
$$= (AB'C'D'').$$

$\therefore$ $D'$ and $D''$ coincide. (§ 51.)

Thus the line joining any two corresponding points in the two homographic ranges passes through $O$; therefore they are in perspective.

**61.** Two pencils $V(A, B, C, D\ldots)$ and $V'(A', B', C', D'\ldots)$ will according to our definition be in perspective when $V$ and $V'$ are in perspective, points in $VA$ in perspective with points in $V'A'$, points in $VB$ in perspective with points in $V'B'$ and so on.




We can at once prove the following proposition:

*If two pencils in different planes be in perspective they have a common transversal and are homographic.*

Let the pencils be $V(A, B, C, D\ldots)$ and $V'(A', B', C', D'\ldots)$.

Let the point of intersection of $VA$ and $V'A'$, which are coplanar (§ 59), be $P$; let that of $VB$, $V'B'$ be $Q$; and so on

The points $P$, $Q$, $R$, $S$, &c. each lie in both of the planes of the pencils, that is, they lie in the line of intersection of these planes.

Thus the points are collinear, and since

$$V(ABCD\ldots) = (PQRS\ldots) = V'(A'B'C'D'\ldots),$$

the two pencils are homographic.

The line $PQRS\ldots$ containing the points of intersection of corresponding rays is called *the axis of perspective.*

**62.** According to the definition of perspective given at the beginning of this chapter, two pencils *in the same plane* are always in perspective, with any point on the line joining their vertices as centre.

Let the points of intersection of corresponding rays be, as in the last paragraph, $P$, $Q$, $R$, $S$, &c.

We cannot now prove $P, Q, R, S\ldots$ to be collinear, for indeed they are not so necessarily.

But if the points $P$, $Q$, &c. are collinear, then we say that the pencils are *coaxal.*

If the pencils are coaxal they are at once seen to be homographic.

**63.** It is usual with writers on this subject to define two pencils as in perspective if their corresponding rays intersect in collinear points.

The objection to this method is that you have a different definition of perspective for different purposes.

We shall find it conducive to clearness to keep rigidly to the definition we have already given, and we shall speak of two pencils as *coaxally in perspective* if the intersections of their corresponding rays are collinear.

As we have seen, two non-coplanar pencils in perspective are always coaxal; but not so two coplanar pencils.

Writers, when they speak of two pencils as in perspective, mean what we here call 'coaxally in perspective.'

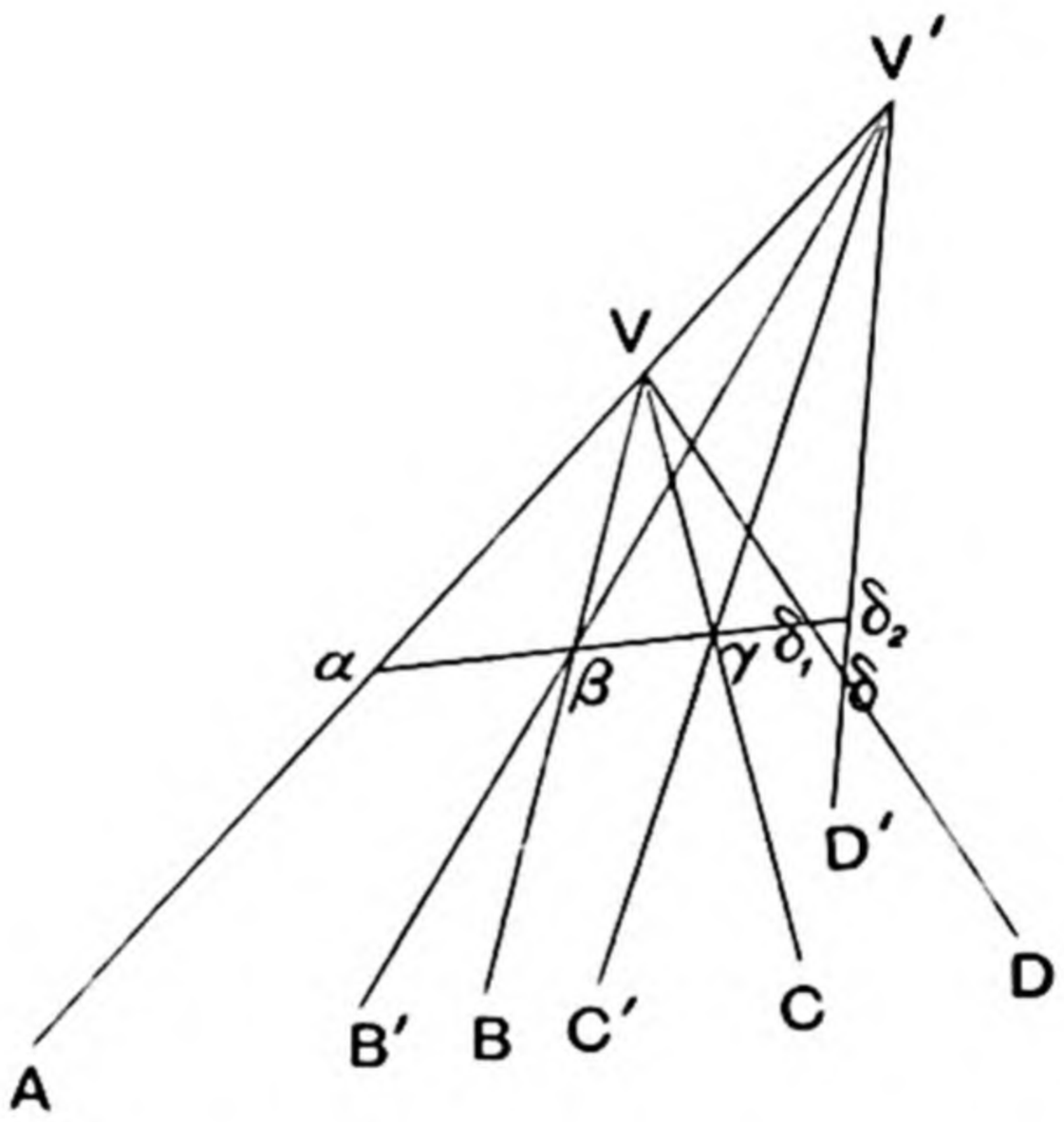
**64. Prop.** *If two homographic pencils in the same plane have a corresponding ray the same in both, they are coaxally in perspective.*

Let the pencils be

$V\,(A, B, C, D, \&c.)$ and $V'\,(A, B', C', D', \&c.)$

with the common ray $V'VA$.

Let $VB$ and $V'B'$ intersect in $\beta$, $VC$ and $V'C'$ in $\gamma$, $VD$ and $V'D'$ in $\delta$, and so on.




Let $\gamma\beta$ meet $V'VA$ in $\alpha$, and let it cut the rays $VD$ and $V'D'$ in $\delta_1$ and $\delta_2$ respectively.

Then since the pencils are homographic,

$$V\,(ABCD) = V'\,(AB'C'D').$$

$$\therefore\ (a\beta\gamma\delta_1) = (a\beta\gamma\delta_2).$$

Therefore $\delta_1$ and $\delta_2$ coincide with $\delta$.

Thus the intersection of the corresponding rays $VD$ and $V'D'$ lies on the line $\beta\gamma$.

Similarly the intersection of any two other corresponding rays lies on this same line.

Therefore the pencils are coaxally in perspective.

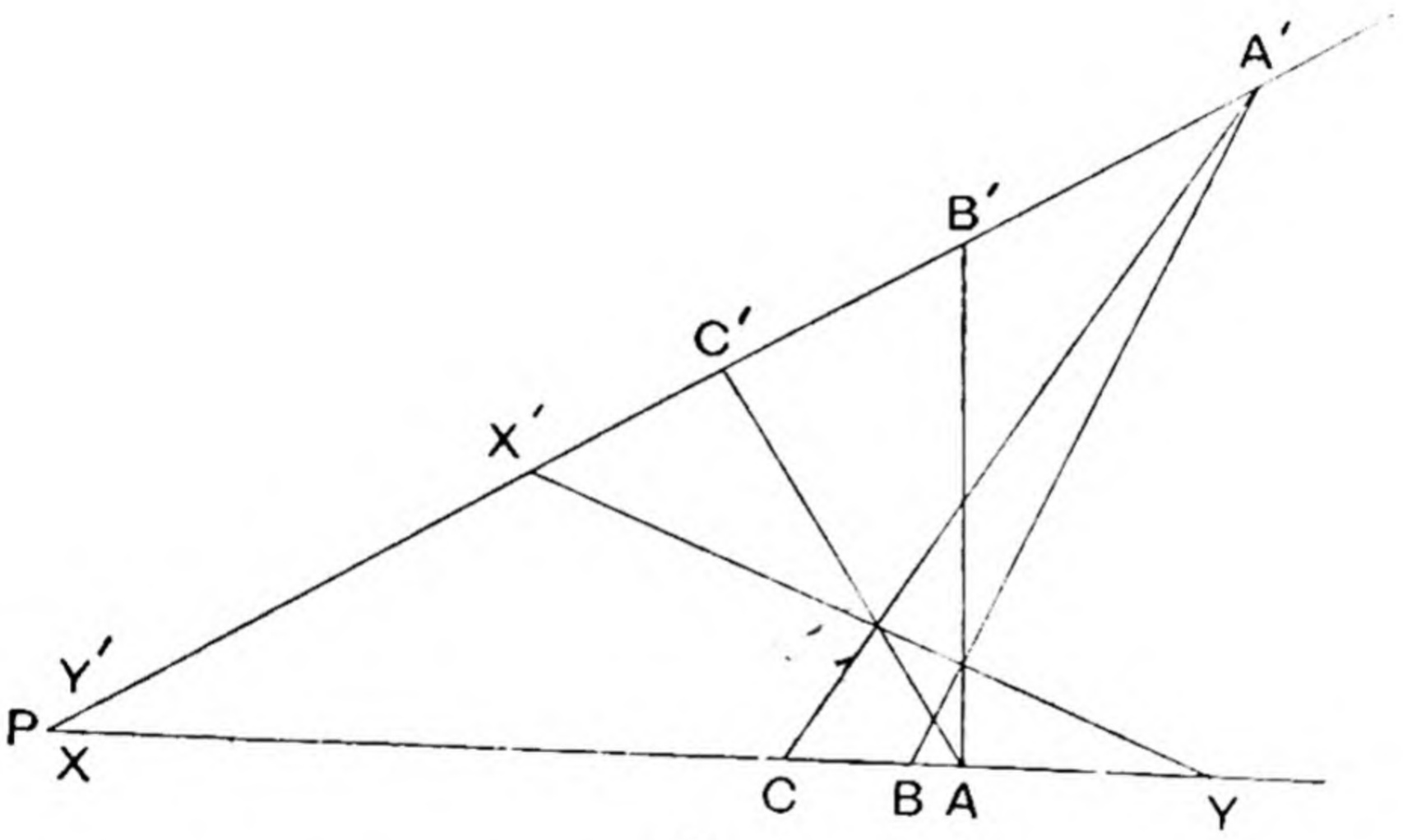
ie; the pts of intersection of the corresponding rays are collinear.

**65. Prop.** *If $ABC\ldots$, $A'B'C'\ldots$ be two coplanar homographic ranges not having a common corresponding point, then if two pairs of corresponding points be cross-joined (e.g. $AB'$ and $A'B$) all the points of intersection so obtained are collinear.*

Let the lines of the ranges intersect in $P$.

Now according to our hypothesis $P$ is not a corresponding point in the two ranges.

It will be convenient to denote $P$ by two different letters, $X$ and $Y'$, according as we consider it to belong to the $ABC\ldots$ or to the $A'B'C'\ldots$ range.




Let $X'$ be the point of the $A'B'C'\ldots$ range corresponding to $X$ in the other, and let $Y$ be the point of the $ABC\ldots$ range corresponding to $Y'$ in the other.

Then $$(ABCXY\ldots) = (A'B'C'X'Y'\ldots).$$

$$\therefore A'\,(ABCXY\ldots) = A\,(A'B'C'X'Y'\ldots).$$

These two pencils have a common ray, viz. $AA'$, therefore by the last proposition the intersections of their corresponding rays are collinear, viz.

$$A'B,\ AB';\ A'C,\ AC';\ A'X,\ AX';\ A'Y,\ AY';$$

and so on.

From this it will be seen that the locus of the intersections of the cross-joins of $A$ and $A'$ with $B$ and $B'$, $C$ and $C'$ and so on is the line $X'Y$.

Similarly the cross-joins of any two pairs of corresponding points will lie on $X'Y$.

This line $X'Y$ is called the *homographic axis* of the two ranges.

This proposition is also true if the two ranges have a common corresponding point. The proof of this may be left to the student.

**66.** The student may obtain practice in the methods of this chapter by proving that if

$$V\,(A,\ B,\ C\ldots) \text{ and } V'\,(A',\ B',\ C'\ldots)$$

be two homographic coplanar pencils not having a common corresponding ray, then if we take the intersections of $VP$ and $V'Q'$, and of $VQ$ and $V'P'$ ($VP$, $V'P'$; and $VQ$, $V'Q'$ being any two pairs of corresponding lines) and join these, all the lines thus obtained are concurrent.

It will be seen when we come to Reciprocation that this proposition follows at once from that of § 65.

## TRIANGLES IN PERSPECTIVE

**67. Prop.** *If the vertices of two triangles are in perspective, the intersections of their corresponding sides are collinear, and conversely.*

(1) Let the triangles be in different planes.

Let $O$ be the centre of perspective of the triangles $ABC$, $A'B'C'$.

Since $BC$, $B'C'$ are in a plane, viz. the plane containing $OB$ and $OC$, they will meet. Let $X$ be their point of intersection.

Similarly $CA$ and $C'A'$ will meet (in $Y$) and $AB$ and $A'B'$ (in $Z$).

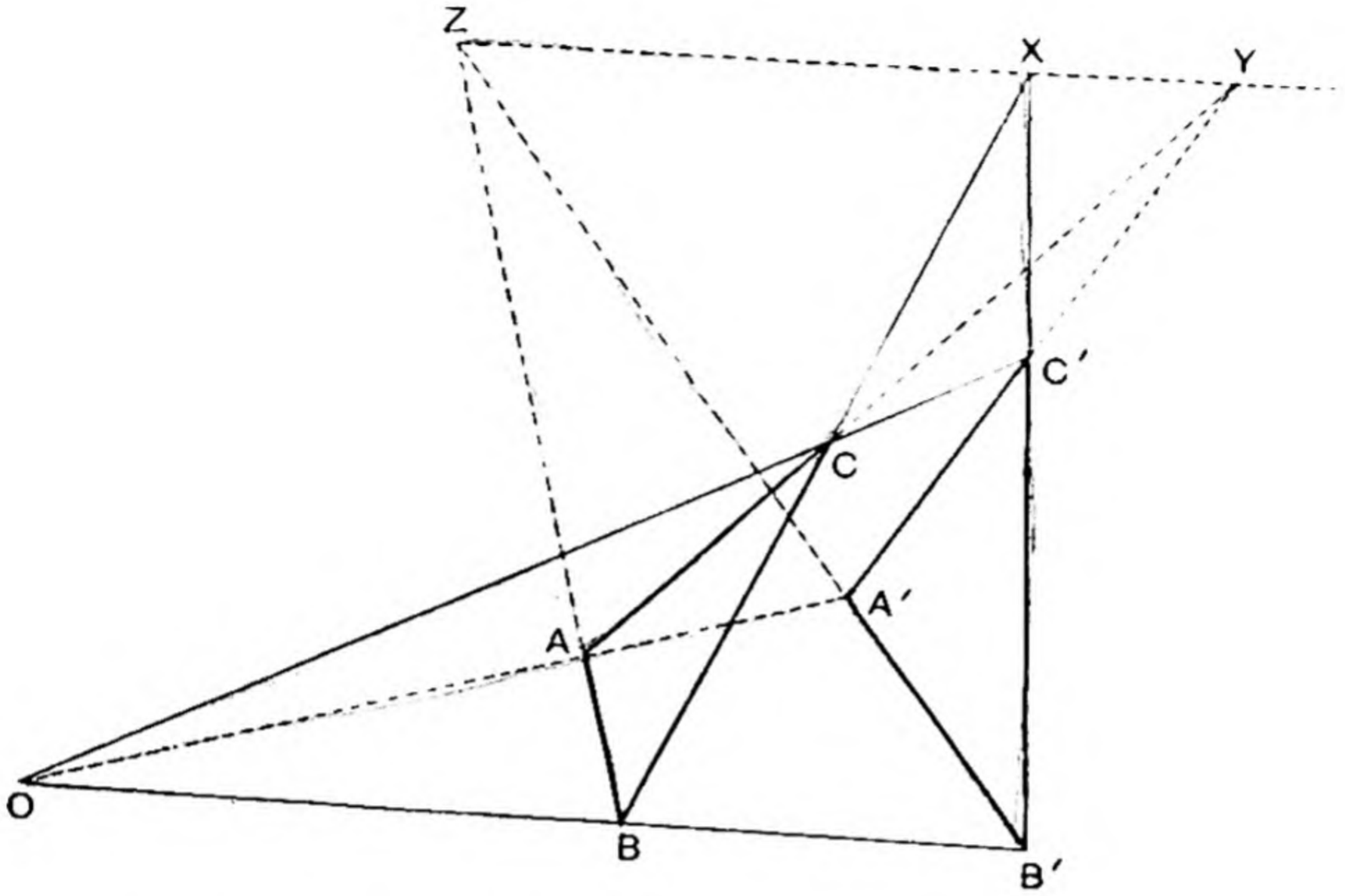
Now $X$, $Y$, $Z$ are in the planes of both the triangles $ABC$, $A'B'C'$.

Therefore they lie on the line of intersection of these planes.

Thus the first part of our proposition is proved.

Next let the triangles $ABC$, $A'B'C'$ be such that the intersections of corresponding sides ($X$, $Y$, $Z$) are collinear.

Since $BC$ and $B'C'$ meet they are coplanar, and similarly for the other pairs of sides.



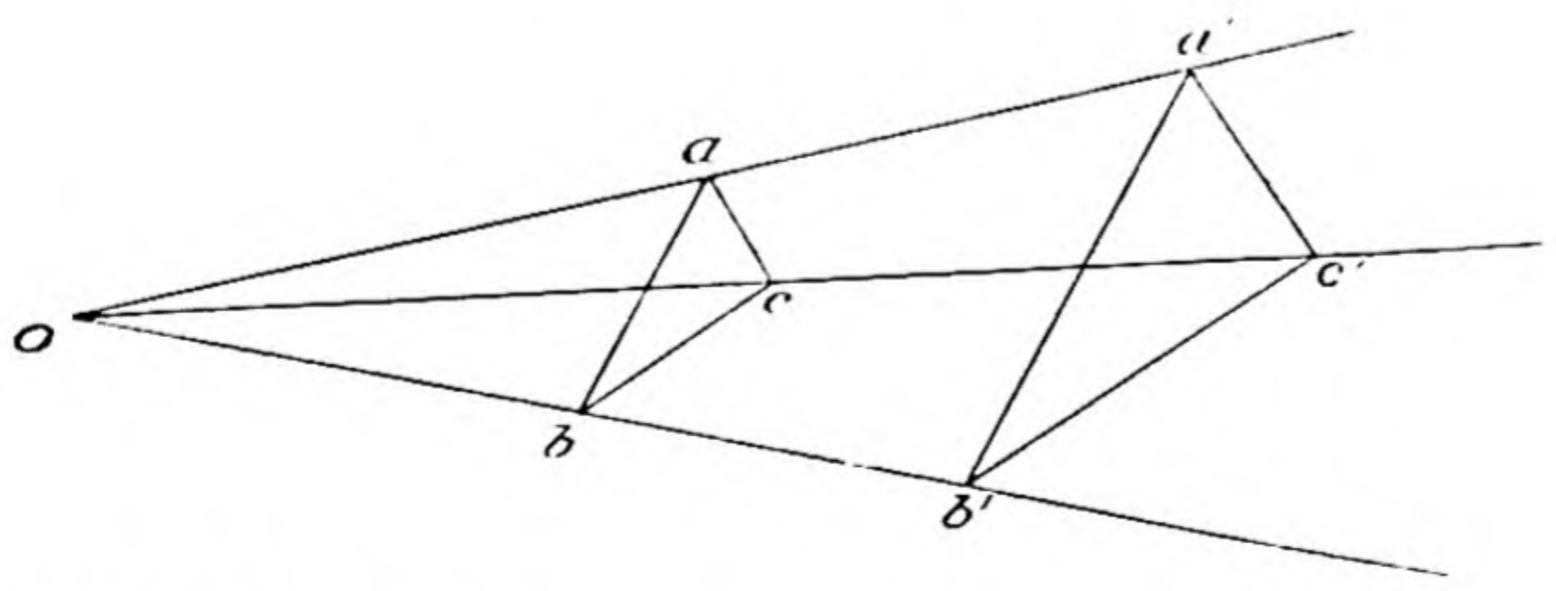

Thus we have three planes $BCC'B'$, $CAA'C'$, $ABB'A'$, of which $AA'$, $BB'$, $CC'$ are the lines of intersection.

But three planes meet in a point.

Therefore $AA'$, $BB'$, $CC'$ are concurrent, that is, the triangles are in perspective.

(2) Let the triangles be in the same plane.

First let them be in perspective, centre $O$.




Let $X$, $Y$, $Z$ be the intersections of the corresponding sides as before.

Project the figure so that $XY$ is projected to infinity.

Denote the projections of the different points by corresponding small letters.

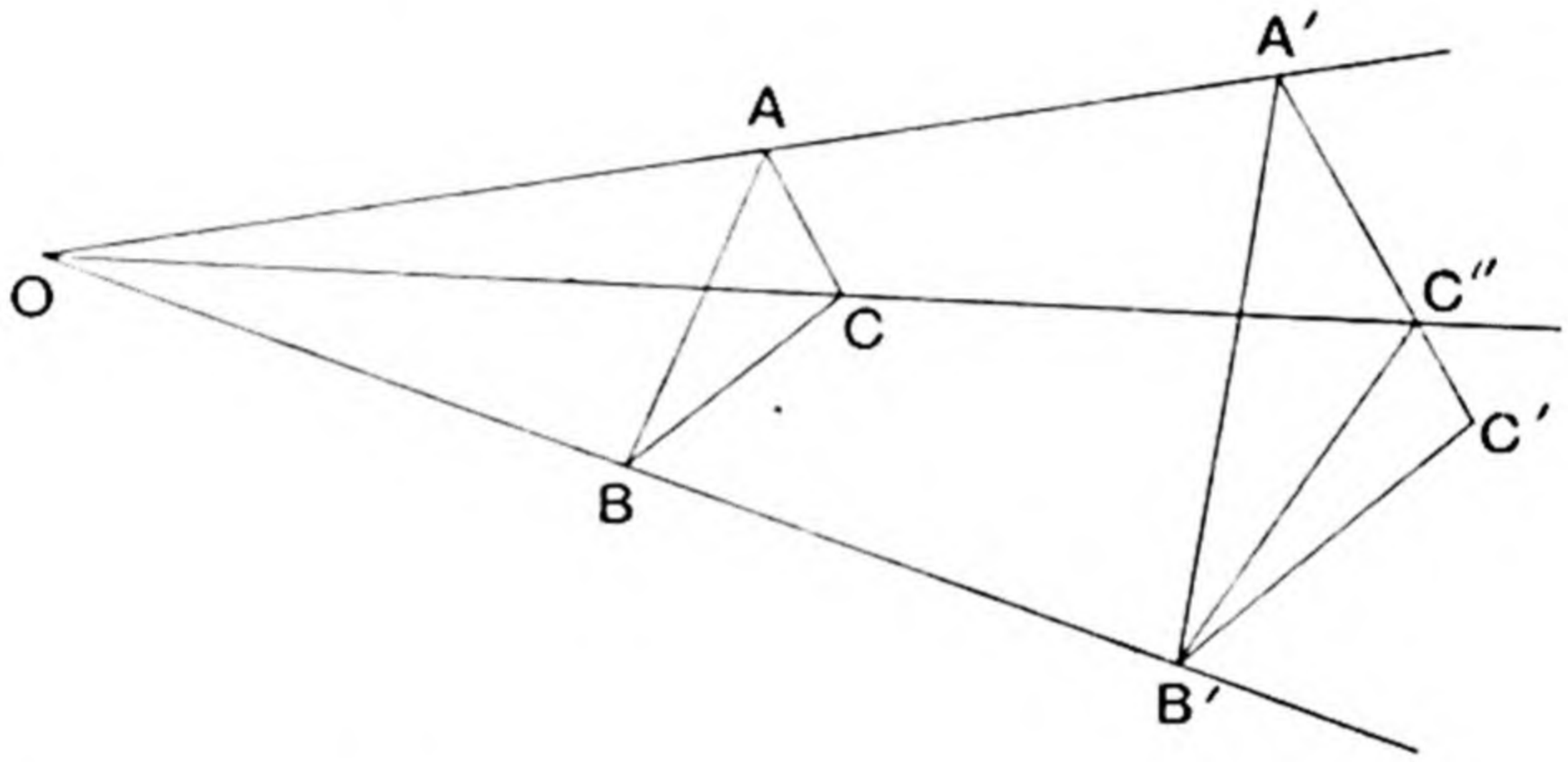
We have now

$$ob : ob' = oc : oc' \text{ since } bc \text{ is parallel to } b'c'$$
$$= oa : oa' \text{ since } ca \text{ is parallel to } c'a'.$$
$$\therefore ab \text{ is parallel to } a'b'.$$
$$\therefore z \text{ is at infinity also,}$$

that is, $x$, $y$, $z$ are collinear.

$$\therefore X, Y, Z \text{ are collinear.}$$

Next let $X, Y, Z$ be collinear; we will prove that the triangles are in perspective.




Let $AA'$ and $BB'$ meet in $O$.
Join $OC$ and let it meet $A'C'$ in $C'''$.
Then $ABC$ and $A'B'C'''$ are in perspective.
$\therefore$ the intersection of $BC$ and $B'C'''$ lies on the line $YZ$.
But $BC$ and $B'C'$ meet the line $YZ$ in $X$ by hypothesis.

$$\therefore B'C''' \text{ and } B'C' \text{ are in the same line,}$$

i.e. $C'''$ coincides with $C'$.

Thus $ABC$ and $A'B'C'$ are in perspective.

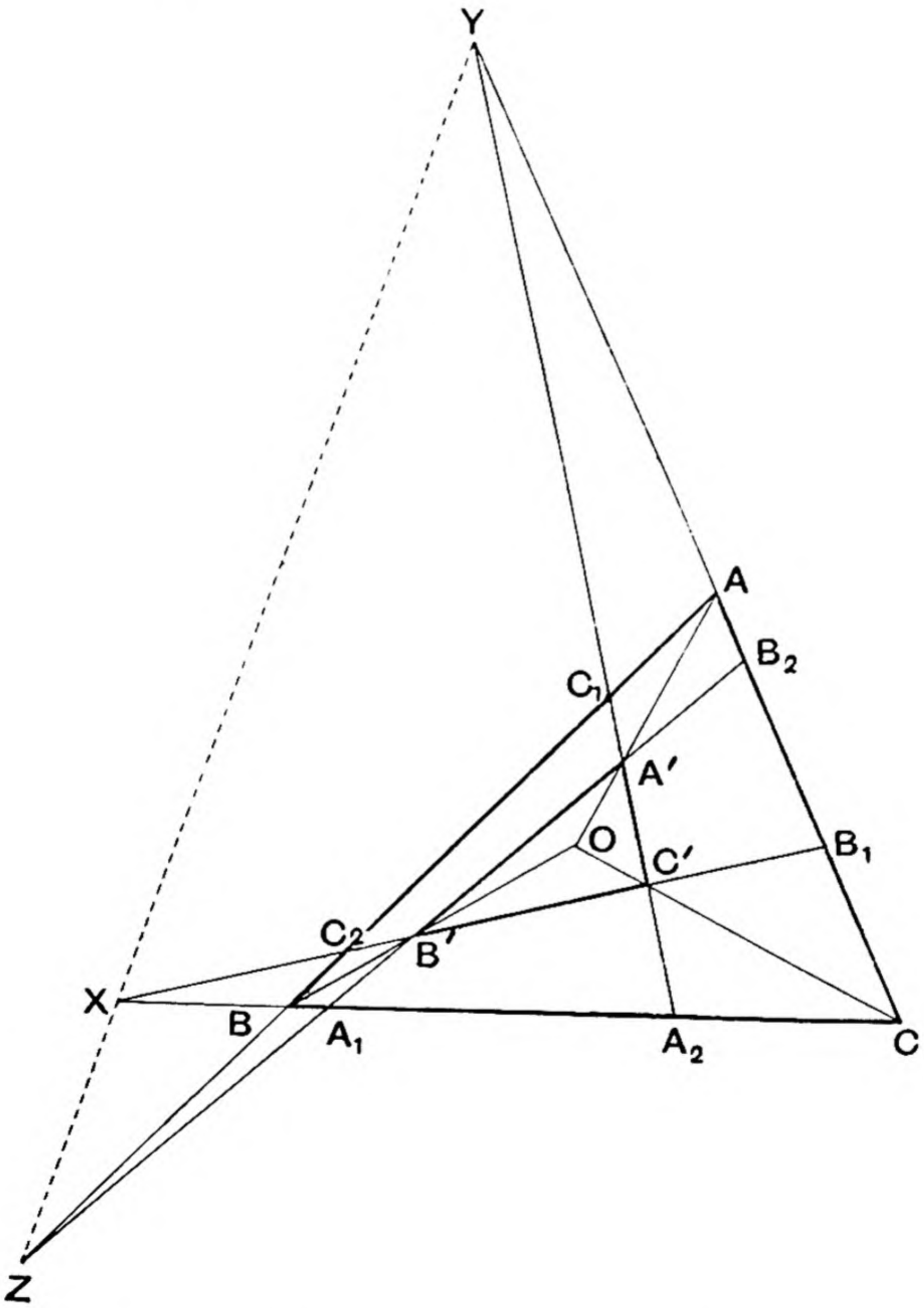
**68. Prop.** *The necessary and sufficient condition that the coplanar triangles $ABC$, $A'B'C'$ should be in perspective is*

$$AB_1 . AB_2 . CA_1 . CA_2 . BC_1 . BC_2$$
$$= AC_1 . AC_2 . BA_1 . BA_2 . CB_1 . CB_2,$$

$A_1$, $A_2$ *being the points in which* $A'B$ *and* $A'C'$ *meet the non-corresponding side* $BC$,

$B_1$, $B_2$ *being the points in which* $B'C'$ *and* $B'A'$ *meet the non-corresponding side* $CA$,

$C_1$, $C_2$ *being the points in which* $C'A'$ *and* $C'B'$ *meet the non-corresponding side* $AB$.




First let the triangles be in perspective; let $XYZ$ be the axis of perspective.

Then since $X$, $B_1$, $C_2$ are collinear,

$$\therefore \frac{AB_1 . CX . BC_2}{AC_2 . BX . CB_1} = 1.$$

Since $Y$, $C_1$, $A_2$ are collinear,

$$\therefore \frac{AY . CA_2 . BC_1}{AC_1 . BA_2 . CY} = 1.$$

Since $Z$, $A_1$, $B_2$ are collinear,

$$\therefore \frac{AB_2 . CA_1 . BZ}{AZ . BA_1 . CB_2} = 1.$$

Taking the product of these we have

$$\frac{AB_1 . AB_2 . CA_1 . CA_2 . BC_1 . BC_2 . AY . CX . BZ}{AC_1 . AC_2 . BA_1 . BA_2 . CB_1 . CB_2 . AZ . BX . CY} = 1.$$

But $X$, $Y$, $Z$ are collinear,

$$\therefore \frac{AY . CX . BZ}{AZ . BX . CY} = 1.$$

$$\therefore AB_1 . AB_2 . CA_1 . CA_2 . BC_1 . BC_2 = AC_1 . AC_2 . BA_1 . BA_2 . CB_1 . CB_2.$$

Next we can shew that this condition is sufficient.

For it renders necessary that

$$\frac{AY . CX . BZ}{AZ . BX . CY} = 1.$$

$\therefore$ $X$, $Y$, $Z$ are collinear and the triangles are in perspective.

Cor. If the triangle $ABC$ be in perspective with $A'B'C'$, and the points $A_1$, $A_2$, $B_1$, $B_2$, $C_1$, $C_2$ be as defined in the above proposition, it is clear that the three following triangles must also be in perspective with $ABC$, *viz.*

(1) the triangle formed by the lines $A_1B_2$, $B_1C_1$, $C_2A_2$,
(2) „ „ „ „ $A_1B_1$, $B_2C_2$, $C_1A_2$,
(3) „ „ „ „ $A_1B_1$, $B_2C_1$, $C_2A_2$.

## EXERCISES

1. $ABC$, $A'B'C'$ are two ranges of three points in the same plane; $BC'$ and $B'C$ intersect in $A_1$, $CA'$ and $C'A$ in $B_1$, and $AB'$ and $A'B$ in $C_1$; prove that $A_1$, $B_1$, $C_1$ are collinear.

2. $ABC$ and $A'B'C'$ are two coplanar triangles in perspective, centre $O$, through $O$ any line is drawn not in the plane of the triangle; $S$ and $S'$ are any two points on this line. Prove that the triangle $ABC$ by means of the centre $S$, and the triangle $A'B'C'$ by means of the centre $S'$, are in perspective with a common triangle.

3. Assuming that two non-coplanar triangles in perspective are coaxal, prove by means of Ex. 2 that two coplanar triangles in perspective are coaxal also.

4. If $ABC$, $A'B'C'$ be two triangles in perspective, and if $BC'$ and $B'C$ intersect in $A_1$, $CA'$ and $C'A$ in $B_1$, $AB'$ and $A'B$ in $C_1$, then the triangle $A_1B_1C_1$ will be in perspective with each of the given triangles, and the three triangles will have a common axis of perspective.

5. When three triangles are in perspective two by two and have the same axis of perspective, their three centres of perspective are collinear.

6. The points $Q$ and $R$ lie on the straight line $AC$, and the point $V$ on the straight line $AD$; $VQ$ meets the straight line $AB$ in $Z$, and $VR$ meets $AB$ in $Y$; $X$ is another point on $AB$; $XQ$ meets $AD$ in $U$, and $XR$ meets $AD$ in $W$, prove that $YU$, $ZW$, $AC$ are concurrent.

7. The necessary and sufficient condition that the coplanar triangles $ABC$, $A'B'C'$ should be in perspective is

$$Ab' \,.\, Bc' \,.\, Ca' = Ac' \,.\, Ba' \,.\, Cb',$$

where $a'$, $b'$, $c'$ denote the sides of the triangle $A'B'C'$ opposite to $A'$, $B'$, $C'$ respectively, and $Ab'$ denotes the perpendicular from $A$ on to $b'$.

[Let $B'C'$ and $BC$ meet in $X$; $C'A'$ and $CA$ in $Y$; $A'B'$ and $AB$ in $Z$. The condition given ensures that $X$, $Y$, $Z$ are collinear.]

8. Prove that the necessary and sufficient condition that the coplanar triangles $ABC$, $A'B'C'$ should be in perspective is

$$\frac{\sin ABC' \sin ABA' \sin BCA' \sin BCB' \sin CAB' \sin CAC'}{\sin ACB' \sin ACA' \sin CBA' \sin CBC' \sin BAC' \sin BAB'} = 1.$$

[This is proved in Lachlan's *Modern Pure Geometry*. The student has enough resources at his command to establish the test for himself. Let him turn to § 36 Cor., and take in turn $O$ at $A'$, $B'$, $C'$ and at the centre of perspective. The result is easily obtained. Nor is it difficult to remember if the student grasps the principle, by which all these formulae relating to points on the sides of a triangle are best kept in mind—the principle, that is, of travelling round the triangle in the two opposite directions, (1) $AB$, $BC$, $CA$, (2) $AC$, $CB$, $BA$.]

9. Two triangles in plane perspective can be projected into equilateral triangles.

10. $ABC$ is a triangle, $I_1$, $I_2$, $I_3$ its ecentres opposite to $A$, $B$, $C$ respectively. $I_2I_3$ meets $BC$ in $A_1$, $I_3I_1$ meets $CA$ in $B_1$ and $I_1I_2$ meets $AB$ in $C_1$, prove that $A_1$, $B_1$, $C_1$ are collinear.

11. If $AD$, $BE$, $CF$ and $AD'$, $BE'$, $CF'$ be two sets of concurrent lines drawn through the vertices of a triangle $ABC$ and meeting the opposite sides in $D$, $E$, $F$ and $D'$, $E'$, $F'$, and if $EF$ and $E'F'$ intersect in $X$, $FD$ and $F'D'$ in $Y$, and $DE$ and $D'E'$ in $Z$, then the triangle $XYZ$ is in perspective with each of the triangles $ABC$, $DEF$, $D'E'F'$.

[Project the triangle so that $AD$, $BE$, $CF$ become the perpendiculars in the projection and $AD'$, $BE'$, $CF'$ the medians, and then use Ex. 7.]

# CHAPTER VII

## HARMONIC SECTION

**69. Def.** Four collinear points $A, B, C, D$ are said to form a *harmonic range* if

$$(ABCD) = -1.$$

We have in this case

$$\frac{AB \,.\, CD}{AD \,.\, CB} = -1.$$

$$\therefore \frac{AB}{AD} = -\frac{AB - AC}{AD - AC} = \frac{AB - AC}{AC - AD},$$

thus $AC$ is a harmonic mean between $AB$ and $AD$.

Now reverting to the table of the twenty-four cross-ratios of a range of four points (§ 50), we see that if $(ABCD) = -1$, then all the following cross-ratios $= -1$:

$$(ABCD),\ (BADC),\ (CDAB),\ (DCBA),$$
$$(ADCB),\ (BCDA),\ (CBAD),\ (DABC).$$

Hence not only is $AC$ a harmonic mean between $AB$ and $AD$, but also

$BD$ is a harmonic mean between $BA$ and $BC$,
$DB$ " " " $DC$ and $DA$,
$CA$ " " " $CB$ and $CD$.

We shall then speak of $A$ and $C$ as harmonic conjugates to $B$ and $D$, and express the fact symbolically thus:

$$(AC, BD) = -1.$$

By this we mean that all the eight cross-ratios given above, and in which, it will be observed, $A$ and $C$ are alternate members, and $B$ and $D$ alternate, are equal to $-1$.

When $(AC, BD) = -1$ we sometimes speak of $D$ as the fourth harmonic of $A$, $B$ and $C$; or again we say that $AC$ is divided harmonically at $B$ and $D$, and that $BD$ is so divided at $A$ and $C$. Or again we may say that $C$ is harmonically conjugate with $A$ with respect to $B$ and $D$.

A pencil $P(A, B, C, D)$ of four rays is called harmonic when the points of intersection of its rays with a transversal form a harmonic range.

The student can easily prove for himself that the internal and external bisectors of any angle form with the lines containing it a harmonic pencil.

**70. Prop.** *If* $(AC, BD) = -1$, *and* $O$ *be the middle point of* $AC$, *then*

$$OB \,.\, OD = OC^2 = OA^2.$$

For since $(ABCD) = -1$,

$$\therefore AB \,.\, CD = -AD \,.\, CB.$$

Insert the original $O$,

$$\therefore (OB - OA)(OD - OC) = -(OD - OA)(OB - OC).$$

But $$OA = -OC.$$

$$\therefore (OB + OC)(OD - OC) = -(OD + OC)(OB - OC).$$

$$\therefore OB \,.\, OD + OC \,.\, OD - OB \,.\, OC - OC^2$$
$$= -OD \,.\, OB + OC \,.\, OD - OB \,.\, OC + OC^2.$$

$$\therefore 2OB \,.\, OD = 2OC^2.$$

$$\therefore OB \,.\, OD = OC^2 = AO^2 = OA^2.$$

Similarly if $O'$ be the middle point of $BD$,

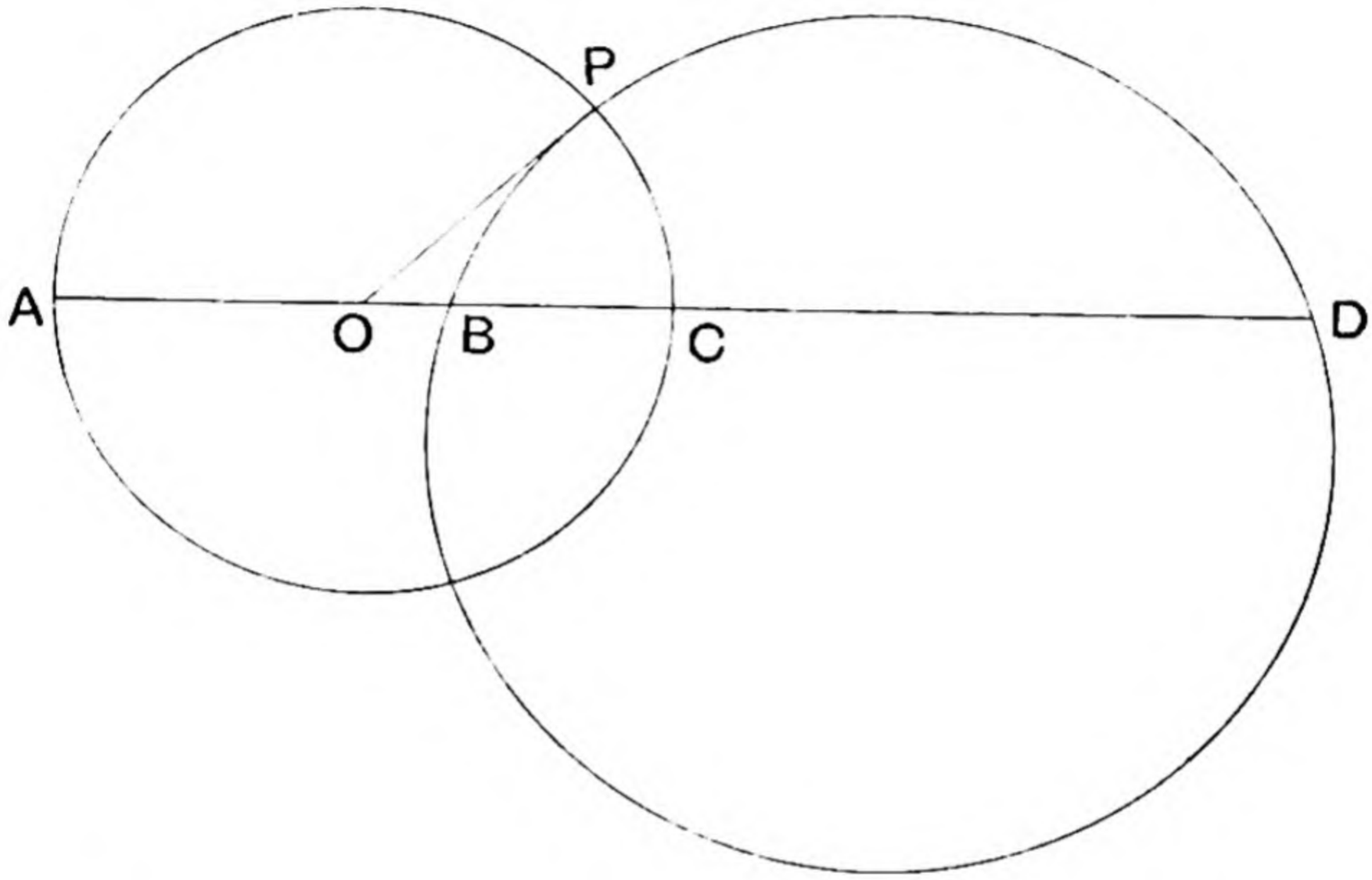
$$O'C \,.\, O'A = O'B^2 = O'D^2.$$

Cor. 1. The converse of the above proposition is true, *viz.* that if $ABCD$ be a range and $O$ the middle point of $AC$ and $OC^2 = OB \,.\, OD$, then $(AC, BD) = -1$.

This follows by working the algebra backwards.

COR. 2. Given three points $A, B, C$ in a line, to find a point $D$ in the line such that $(AB, CD) = -1$ we describe a circle on $AB$ as diameter, then $D$ is the inverse point of $C$.

**71. Prop.** *If* $(AC, BD) = -1$, *the circle on* $AC$ *as diameter will cut orthogonally every circle through* $B$ *and* $D$.




Let $O$ be the middle point of $AC$ and therefore the centre of the circle on $AC$.

Let this circle cut any circle through $B$ and $D$ in $P$; then

$$OB \,.\, OD = OC^2 = OP^2.$$

Therefore $OP$ is a tangent to the circle $BPD$: thus the circles cut orthogonally.

Similarly, of course, the circle on $BD$ will cut orthogonally every circle through $A$ and $C$.

COR. 1. *If* $ABCD$ *be a range, and if the circle on* $AC$ *as diameter cut orthogonally some one circle passing through* $B$ *and* $D$, *then* $(AC, BD) = -1$.

For using the same figure as before, we have

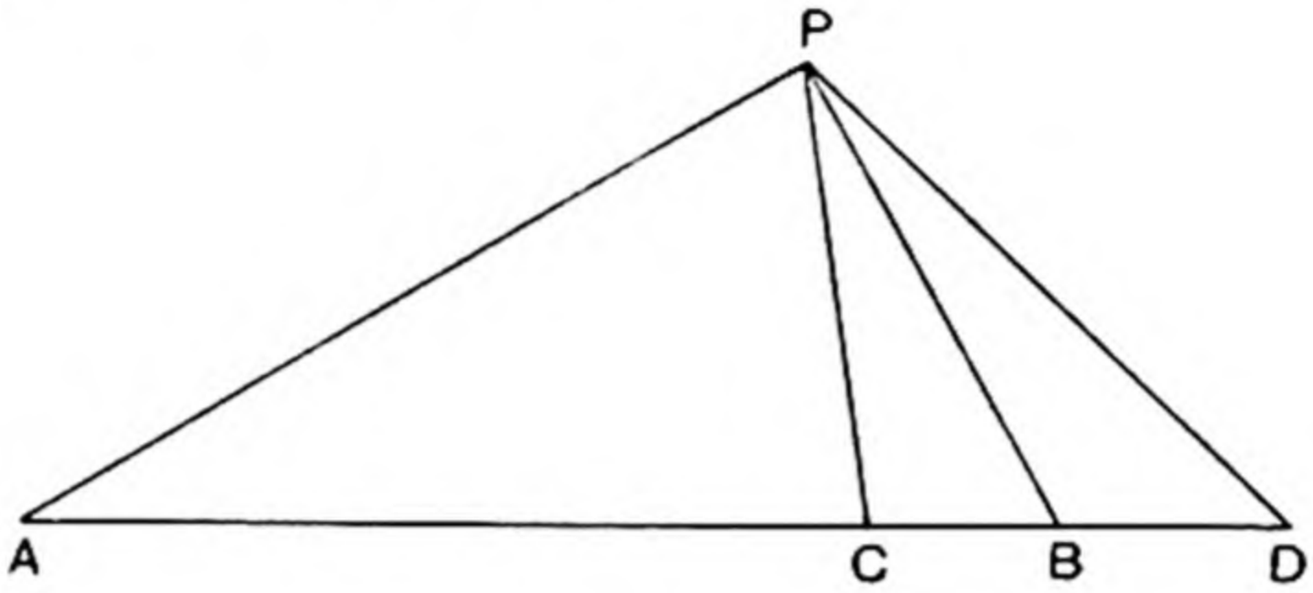
$$OB \,.\, OD = OP^2 = OC^2.$$

$$\therefore (AC, BD) = -1.$$

COR. 2. *If two circles cut orthogonally, any diameter of one is divided harmonically by the other.*

**72. Prop.** *If* $P(AB, CD) = -1$ *and* $APB$ *be a right angle, then* $PA$ *and* $PB$ *are the bisectors of the angles between* $PC$ *and* $PD$.

Let any transversal cut the rays $PA$, $PB$, $PC$, $PD$ of the harmonic pencil in $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$.




Then $$(AB, CD) = -1.$$

$$\therefore \frac{AC \,.\, BD}{AD \,.\, BC} = -1.$$

$$\therefore AC : AD = CB : BD.$$

$\therefore$ as $P$ lies on the circle on $AB$ as diameter we have by § 27

$$PC : PD = CB : BD = AC : AD.$$

$\therefore$ $PA$ and $PB$ are the bisectors of the angle $CPD$.

**73. Prop.** *If on a chord* $PQ$ *of a circle two conjugate points* $A$, $A'$ *with respect to the circle be taken, then*

$$(PQ, AA') = -1.$$

Draw the diameter $CD$ through $A$ to cut the polar of $A$, on which $A'$ lies, in $L$.

Let $O$ be the centre.

Then by the property of the polar,

$$OL \,.\, OA = OC^2.$$

$$\therefore (CD, LA) = -1.$$

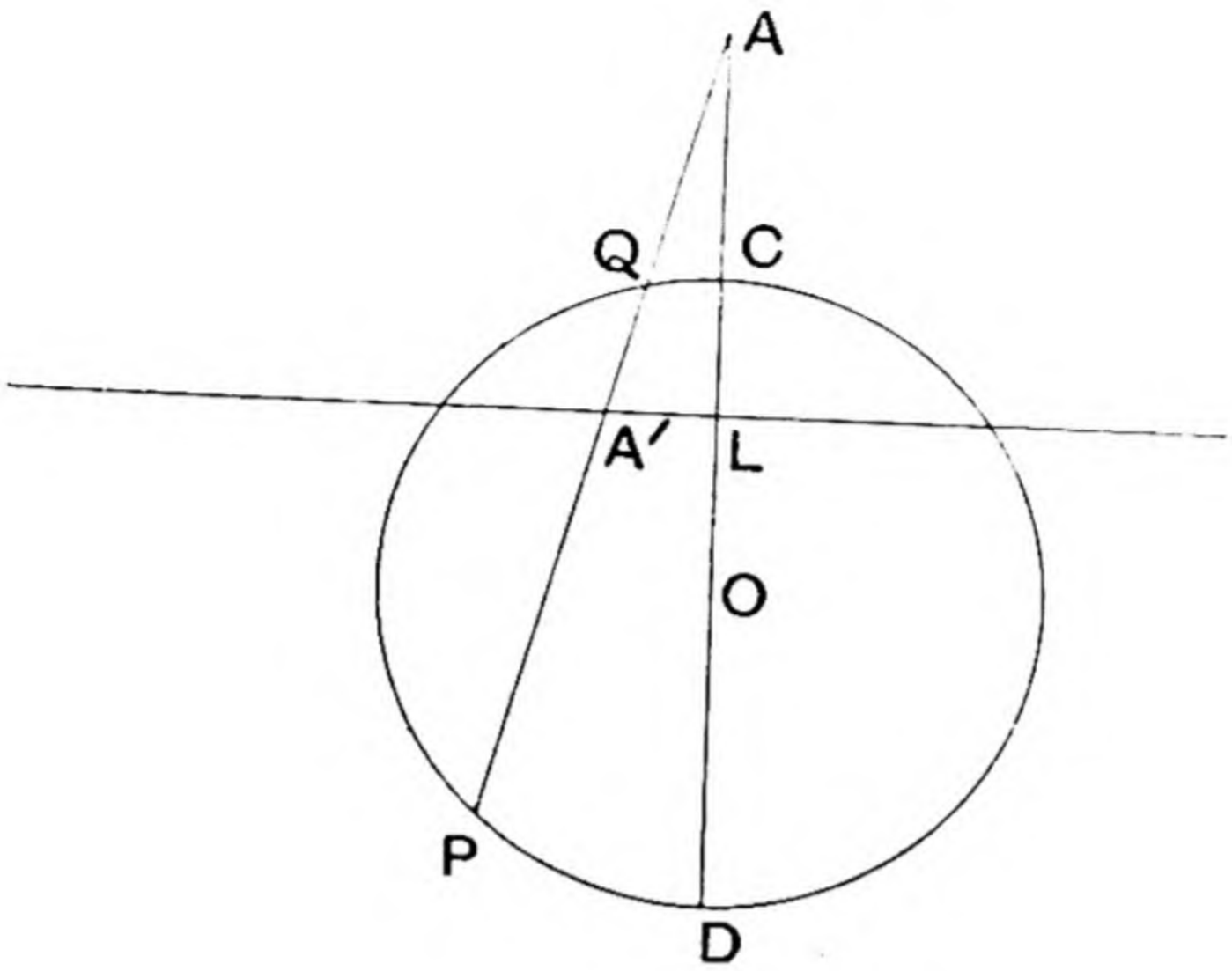
Therefore the circle on $CD$ as diameter (i.e. the given circle) will cut orthogonally every circle through $A$ and $L$ (§ 71).

But the circle on $AA'$ as diameter passes through $A$ and $L$.

Therefore the given circle cuts orthogonally the circle on $AA'$ as diameter.

But the given circle passes through $P$ and $Q$.

$$\therefore (PQ, AA') = -1.$$




This harmonic property of the circle is of great importance and usefulness. It may be otherwise stated thus:

*Chords of a circle through a point A are harmonically divided at A and at the point of intersection of the chord with the polar of A.*

**74. Prop.** *Each of the three diagonals of a plane quadrilateral is divided harmonically by the other two.*

Let $AB$, $BC$, $CD$, $DA$ be the four lines of the quadrilateral; $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$, $E$, $F$ its six vertices, that is, the intersections of its lines taken in pairs.

Then $AC$, $BD$, $EF$ are its diagonals.

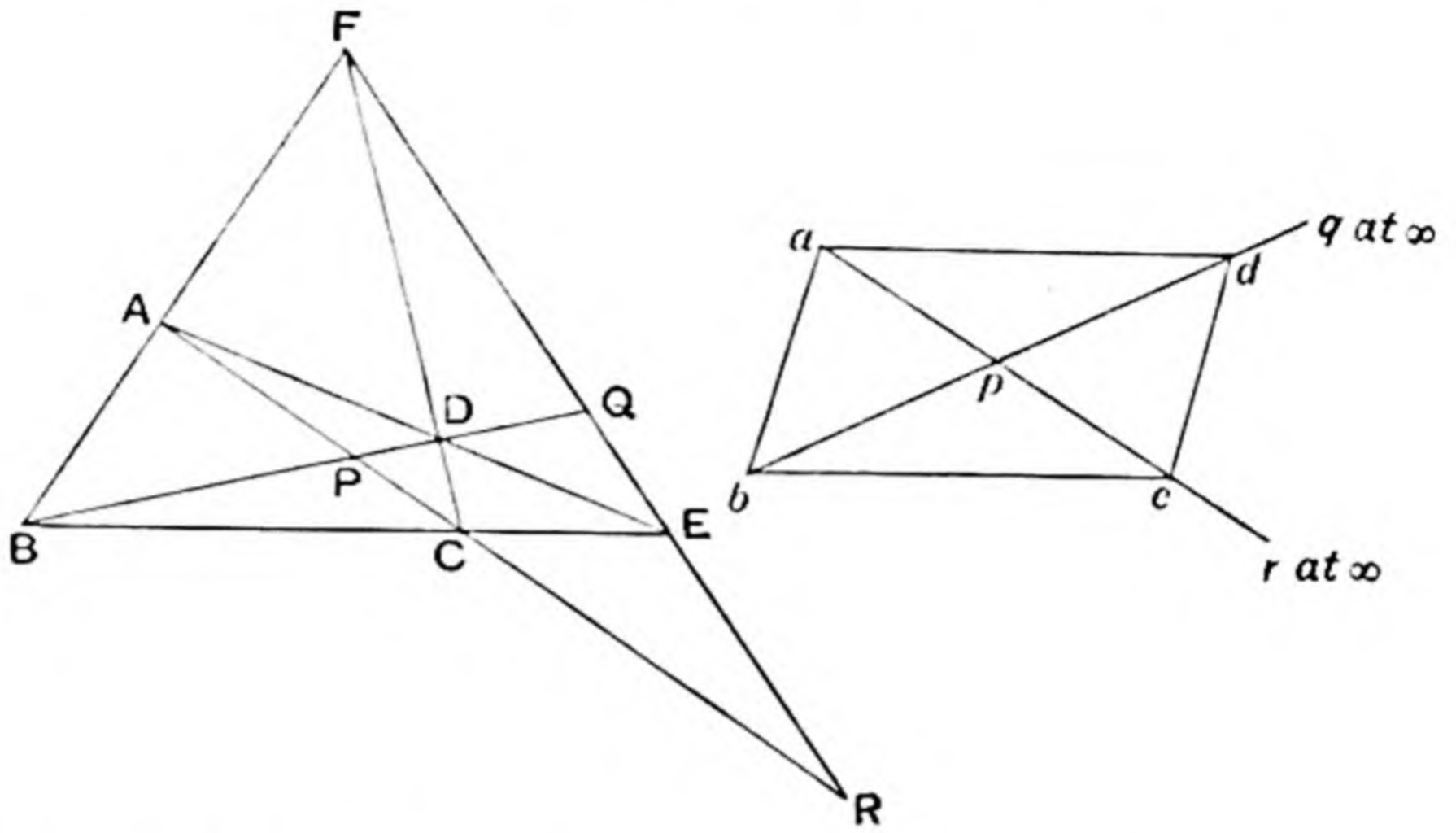
Let $PQR$ be the triangle formed by its diagonals.

Project $EF$ to infinity. Denote the points in the projection by corresponding small letters.

Then
$$(BPDQ) = (bpdq) = \frac{bp \,.\, dq}{bq \,.\, dp} = \frac{bp}{dp}$$
$$\left(\text{since } \frac{dq}{bq} = 1,\ q \text{ being at } \infty\right)$$
$$= -1.$$

Similarly $(APCR) = -1.$

Also $(FQER) = B(FQER) = (APCR) = -1.$




Thus we have proved

$(AC, PR) = -1, \quad (BD, PQ) = -1, \quad (EF, QR) = -1.$

Cor. The circumcircle of $PQR$ will cut orthogonally the three circles described on the three diagonals as diameters.

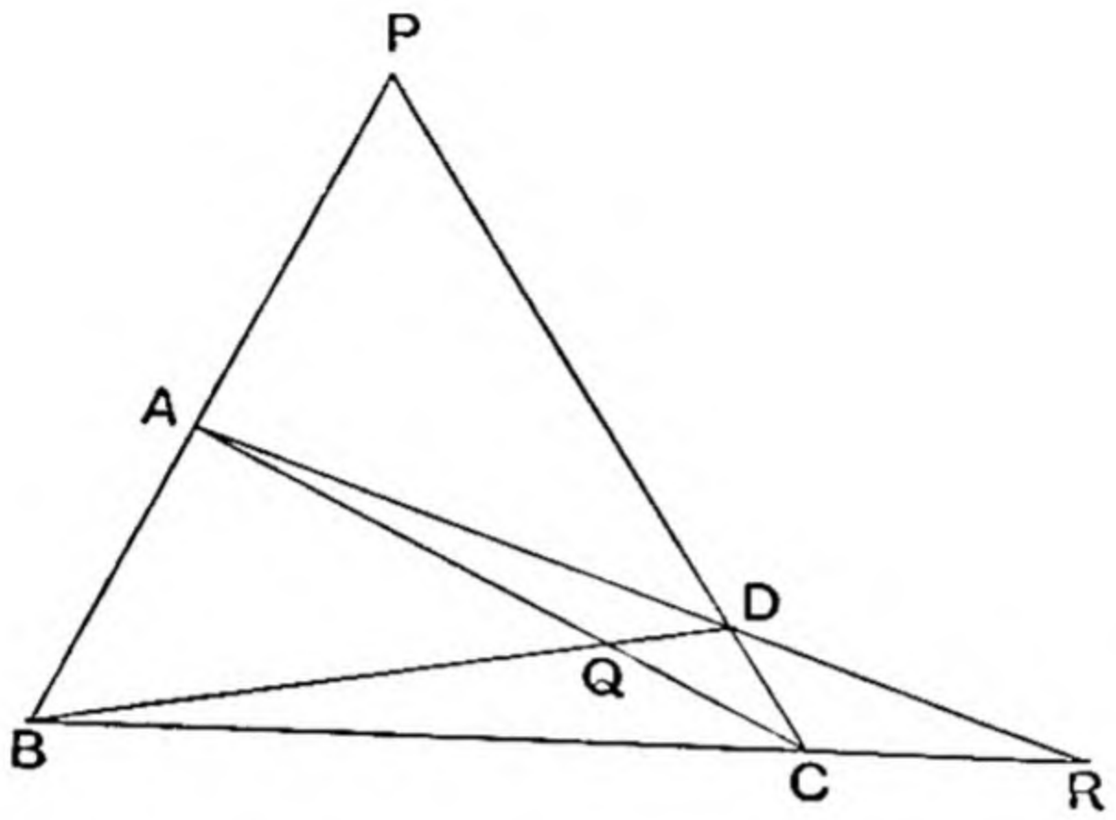
Note. It has been incidentally shewn in the above proof that if $M$ be the middle point of $AB$, $\omega$ the point at infinity on the line, $(AB, M\omega) = -1.$

**75.** The harmonic property of the quadrilateral, proved in the last article, is of very great importance. It is important too that at this stage of the subject the student should learn to take the 'descriptive' view of the quadrilateral; for in 'descriptive geometry,' the quadrilateral is not thought of as a closed figure containing an area; but as an assemblage of four lines in a plane, which meet in pairs in six points called the *vertices*; and the three lines joining such of the vertices as are not already joined by the lines of the quadrilateral are called diagonals. By *opposite vertices* we mean two that are not joined by a line of the quadrilateral.

**76.** A quadrilateral is to be distinguished from a *quadrangle*. A quadrangle is to be thought of as an assemblage of four points in a plane which can be joined in pairs by six straight

lines, called its sides or lines; two of these sides which do not meet in a point of the quadrangle are called *opposite sides*. And the intersection of two opposite sides is called a *diagonal point*. This name is not altogether a good one, but it is suggested by the analogy of the quadrilateral.

Let us illustrate the leading features of a quadrangle by the accompanying figure.




$ABCD$ is the quadrangle. Its sides are $AB$, $BC$, $CD$, $DA$, $AC$ and $BD$.

$AB$ and $CD$, $AC$ and $BD$, $AD$ and $BC$ are pairs of opposite sides and the points $P$, $Q$, $R$ where these intersect are the diagonal points.

The triangle $PQR$ may be called the diagonal triangle.

The harmonic property of the quadrangle is *that the two sides of the diagonal triangle at each diagonal point are harmonic conjugates with respect to the two sides of the quadrangle meeting in that point.*

The student will have no difficulty in seeing that this can be deduced from the harmonic property of the quadrilateral proved in § 74.

On account of the harmonic property, the diagonal triangle associated with a quadrangle has been called the *harmonic triangle*.

## EXERCISES

1. If $M$ and $N$ be points in two coplanar lines $AB$, $CD$, shew that it is possible to project so that $M$ and $N$ project into the middle points of the projections of $AB$ and $CD$.

2. $AA_1$, $BB_1$, $CC_1$ are concurrent lines through the vertices of a triangle meeting the opposite sides in $A_1$, $B_1$, $C_1$. $B_1C_1$ meets $BC$ in $A_2$; $C_1A_1$ meets $CA$ in $B_2$; $A_1B_1$ meets $AB$ in $C_2$; prove that

$$(BC,\ A_1A_2) = -1, \quad (CA,\ B_1B_2) = -1, \quad (AB,\ C_1C_2) = -1.$$

3. Prove that the circles described on the lines $A_1A_2$, $B_1B_2$, $C_1C_2$ (as defined in Ex. 2) as diameters are coaxal.

[Take $P$ a point of intersection of circles on $A_1A_2$, $B_1B_2$, and shew that $C_1C_2$ subtends a right angle at $P$. Use Ex. 2 and § 27.]

4. The collinear points $A$, $D$, $C$ are given: $CE$ is any other fixed line through $C$, $E$ is a fixed point, and $B$ is any moving point on $CE$. The lines $AE$ and $BD$ intersect in $Q$, the lines $CQ$ and $DE$ in $R$, and the lines $BR$ and $AC$ in $P$. Prove that $P$ is a fixed point as $B$ moves along $CE$.

5. From any point $M$ in the side $BC$ of a triangle $ABC$ lines $MB'$ and $MC'$ are drawn parallel to $AC$ and $AB$ respectively, and meeting $AB$ and $AC$ in $B'$ and $C'$. The lines $BC'$ and $CB'$ intersect in $P$, and $AP$ intersects $B'C'$ in $M'$. Prove that $M'B' : M'C' = MB : MC$.

6. Pairs of harmonic conjugates $(DD')$, $(EE')$, $(FF')$ are respectively taken on the sides $BC$, $CA$, $AB$ of a triangle $ABC$ with respect to the pairs of points $(BC)$, $(CA)$, $(AB)$. Prove that the corresponding sides of the triangles $DEF$ and $D'E'F'$ intersect on the sides of the triangle $ABC$, namely $EF$ and $E'F'$ on $BC$, and so on.

7. The lines $VA'$, $VB'$, $VC'$ bisect the internal angles formed by the lines joining any point $V$ to the angular points of the triangle $ABC$; and $A'$ lies on $BC$, $B'$ on $CA$, $C'$ on $AB$. Also $A''$, $B''$, $C''$ are harmonic conjugates of $A'$, $B'$, $C'$ with respect to $B$ and $C$, $C$ and $A$, $A$ and $B$. Prove that $A''$, $B''$, $C''$ are collinear.

8. $AA_1$, $BB_1$, $CC_1$ are the perpendiculars of a triangle $ABC$; $A_1B_1$ meets $AB$ in $C_2$; $X$ is the middle point of line joining $A$ to the orthocentre; $C_1X$ and $BB_1$ meet in $T$. Prove that $C_2T$ is perpendicular to $BC$.

9. $A$ is a fixed point without a given circle and $P$ a variable point on the circumference. The line $AF$ at right angles to $AP$ meets in $F$ the tangent at $P$. If the rectangle $FAPQ$ be completed the locus of $Q$ is a straight line.

10. A line is drawn cutting two non-intersecting circles; find a construction determining two points on this line such that each is the point of intersection of the polars of the other point with respect to the two circles.

11. $A_1$, $B_1$, $C_1$ are points on the sides of a triangle $ABC$ opposite to $A$, $B$, $C$. $A_2$, $B_2$, $C_2$ are points on the sides such that $A_1$, $A_2$ are harmonic conjugates with $B$ and $C$; $B_1$, $B_2$ with $C$ and $A$; $C_1$, $C_2$ with $A$ and $B$. If $A_2$, $B_2$, $C_2$ are collinear, then must $AA_1$, $BB_1$, $CC_1$ be concurrent.

12. $AA_1$, $BB_1$, $CC_1$ are concurrent lines through the vertices of a triangle $ABC$. $B_1C_1$ meets $BC$ in $A_2$, $C_1A_1$ meets $CA$ in $B_2$, $A_1B_1$ meets $AB$ in $C_2$. Prove that the circles on $A_1A_2$, $B_1B_2$, $C_1C_2$ as diameters all cut the circumcircle of $ABC$ orthogonally, and have their centres in the same straight line.

[Compare Ex. 3.]

13. If $A$ and $B$ be conjugate points of a circle and $M$ the middle point of $AB$, the tangents from $M$ to the circle are of length $MA$.

14. If a system of circles have the same pair of points conjugate for each circle of the system, then the radical axes of the circles, taken in pairs, are concurrent.

15. If a system of circles have a common pair of inverse points the system must be a coaxal one.

16. $O$ and $O'$ are the limiting points of a system of coaxal circles, and $A$ is any point in their plane; shew that the chord of contact of tangents drawn from $A$ to any one of the circles will pass through the other extremity of the diameter through $A$ of the circle $AOO'$.

# CHAPTER VIII

## INVOLUTION

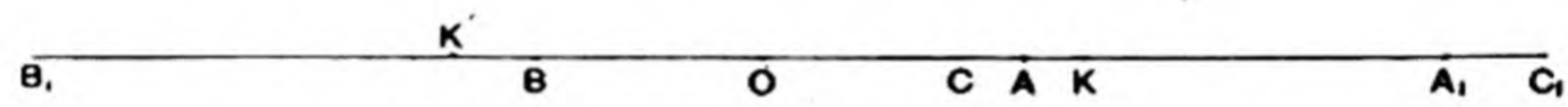
**77. Definition.**

If $O$ be a point on a line on which lie pairs of points $A$, $A_1$; $B$, $B_1$; $C$, $C_1$; &c. such that

$$OA \,.\, OA_1 = OB \,.\, OB_1 = OC \,.\, OC_1 = \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots = k,$$

the pairs of points are said to be in *Involution*. Two associated points, such as $A$ and $A_1$, are called *conjugates*; and sometimes each of two conjugates is called the 'mate' of the other.

The point $O$ is called the *Centre* of the involution.




If $k$, the constant of the involution, be positive, then two conjugate points lie on the same side of $O$, and there will be two real points $K$, $K'$ on the line on opposite sides of $O$ such that each is its own mate in the involution; that is $OK^2 = OK'^2 = k$. These points $K$ and $K'$ are called the *double points* of the involution.

It is important to observe that $K$ is not the mate of $K'$; that is why we write $K'$ and not $K_1$.

It is clear that $(AA_1, KK') = -1$, and so for all the pairs of points.

If $k$ be negative, two conjugate points will lie on opposite sides of $O$, and the double points are now imaginary.

If circles be described on $AA_1$, $BB_1$, $CC_1$, &c. as diameters they will form a coaxal system, whose axis cuts the line on which the points lie in $O$.

$K$ and $K'$ are the limiting points of this coaxal system.

Note also that for every pair of points, each point is inverse to the other with respect to the circle on $KK'$ as diameter.

It is clear that an involution is completely determined when two pairs of points are known, or, what is equivalent, one pair of points and one double point, or the two double points.

We must now proceed to establish the criterion that three pairs of points on the same line may belong to the same involution.

**78. Prop.** *The necessary and sufficient condition that a pair of points $C$, $C_1$ should belong to the involution determined by $A$, $A_1$; $B$, $B_1$ is*

$$(ABCA_1) = (A_1B_1C_1A).$$

First we will shew that this condition is necessary.

Suppose $C$ and $C_1$ do belong to the involution. Let $O$ be its centre and $k$ its constant.

$$\therefore OA \,.\, OA_1 = OB \,.\, OB_1 = OC \,.\, OC_1 = k.$$

$$\therefore (ABCA_1) = \frac{AB \,.\, CA_1}{AA_1 \,.\, CB} = \frac{(OB - OA)\,(OA_1 - OC)}{(OA_1 - OA)\,(OB - OC)}$$

$$= \frac{\left(\frac{k}{OB_1} - \frac{k}{OA_1}\right)\left(\frac{k}{OA} - \frac{k}{OC_1}\right)}{\left(\frac{k}{OA} - \frac{k}{OA_1}\right)\left(\frac{k}{OB_1} - \frac{k}{OC_1}\right)}$$

$$= \frac{(OB_1 - OA_1)\,(OA - OC_1)}{(OA - OA_1)\,(OB_1 - OC_1)} = \frac{A_1B_1 \,.\, C_1A}{A_1A \,.\, C_1B_1} = (A_1B_1C_1A).$$

Thus the condition is necessary.

[A more purely geometrical proof of this theorem will be given in the next paragraph.]

Next the above condition is sufficient.

For let $$(ABCA_1) = (A_1B_1C_1A)$$

and let $C'$ be the mate of $C$ in the involution determined by $A$, $A_1$; $B$, $B_1$.

$$\therefore (ABCA_1) = (A_1B_1C'A).$$
$$\therefore (A_1B_1C_1A) = (A_1B_1C'A).$$
$$\therefore C_1 \text{ and } C' \text{ coincide.}$$

Hence the proposition is established.

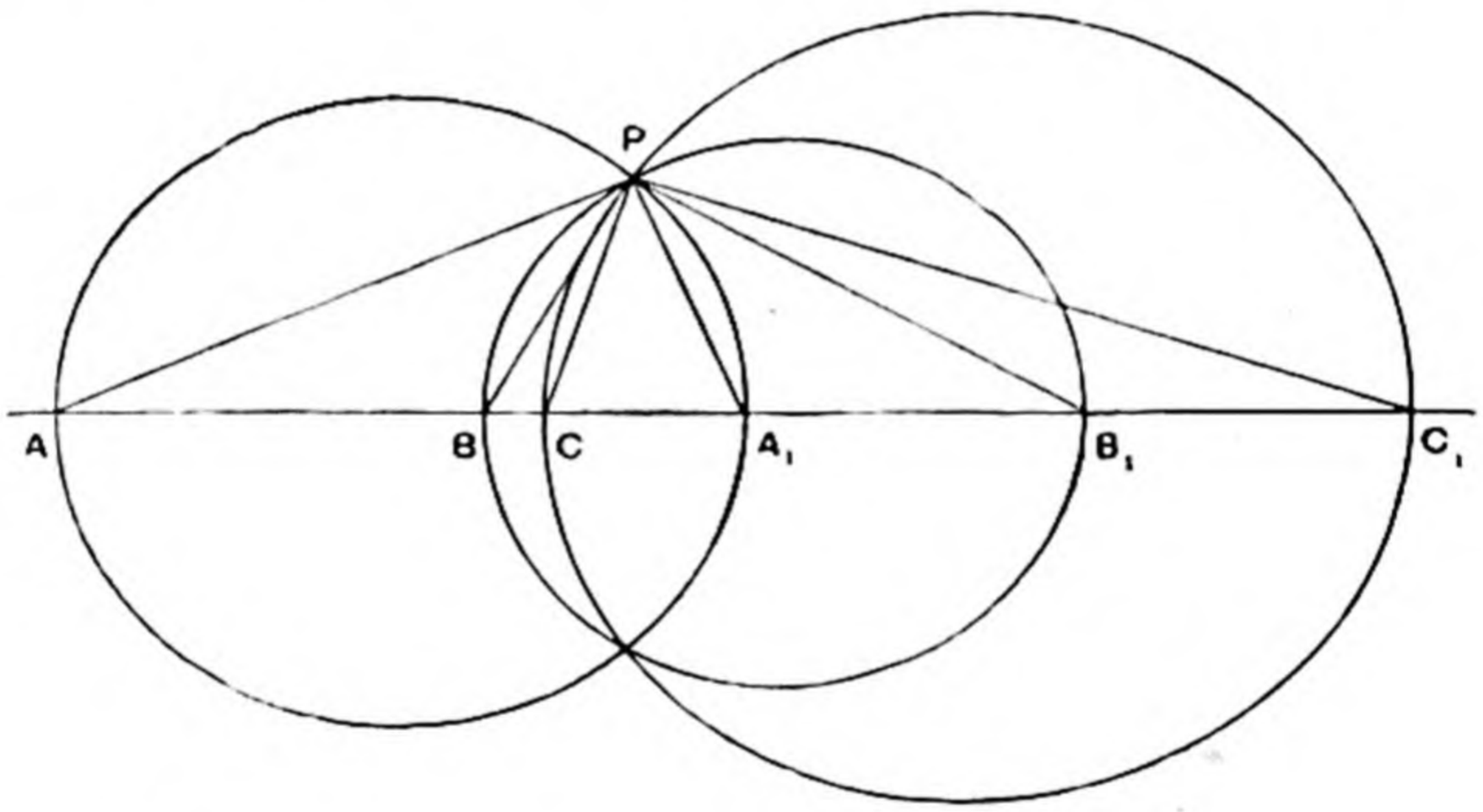
COR. 1. If $A$, $A_1$; $B$, $B_1$; $C$, $C_1$; $D$, $D_1$ belong to the same involution

$$(ABCD) = (A_1B_1C_1D_1).$$

COR. 2. If $K$, $K'$ be the double points of the involution $(AA_1KK') = (A_1AKK')$ and $(ABKA_1) = (A_1B_1KA)$.

**79.** We may prove the first part of the above theorem as follows.

If the three pairs of points belong to the same involution, the circles on $AA_1$, $BB_1$, $CC_1$ as diameters will be coaxal (§ 77).




Let $P$ be a point of intersection of these circles.

Then the angles $APA_1$, $BPB_1$, $CPC_1$ are right angles and therefore

$$P\ (ABCA_1) = P\ (A_1B_1C_1A).$$
$$\therefore (ABCA_1) = (A_1B_1C_1A).$$

The circles may not cut in real points. But the proposition still holds on the principle of continuity adopted from Analysis.

**80.** The proposition we have just proved is of the very greatest importance.

*The criterion that three pairs of points belong to the same involution is that a cross-ratio formed with three of the points, one taken from each pair, and the mate of any one of the three should be equal to the corresponding cross-ratio formed by the mates of these four points.*

It does not of course matter in what order we write the letters provided that they correspond in the cross-ratios. We could have had

$$(AA_1CB) = (A_1AC_1B_1)$$

or

$$(AA_1C_1B) = (A_1ACB_1).$$

All that is essential is that of the four letters used in the cross-ratio, three should form one letter of each pair.

**81. Prop.** *A range of points in involution projects into a range in involution.*

For let $A, A_1$; $B, B_1$; $C, C_1$ be an involution and let the projections be denoted by corresponding small letters.

Then $$(ABCA_1) = (A_1B_1C_1A).$$

But $$(ABCA_1) = (abca_1)$$

and $$(A_1B_1C_1A) = (a_1b_1c_1a).$$

$$\therefore (abca_1) = (a_1b_1c_1a).$$

$\therefore a, a_1$; $b, b_1$; $c, c_1$ form an involution.

NOTE. The centre of an involution does not project into the centre of the involution obtained by projection; but the double points do project into double points.

**82. Involution Pencil.**

We now see that if we have a pencil consisting of pairs of rays

$$VP, VP'; VQ, VQ'; VR, VR' \text{ \&c.}$$

such that any transversal cuts these in pairs of points

$$A, A_1; B, B_1; C, C_1 \text{ \&c.}$$

forming an involution, then *every* transversal will cut the pencil so.

Such a pencil will be called a *Pencil in Involution* or simply an *Involution Pencil.*

The *double lines* of the involution pencil are the lines through $V$ on which the double points of the involutions formed by different transversals lie.

Note that the double lines are harmonic conjugates with any pair of conjugate rays.

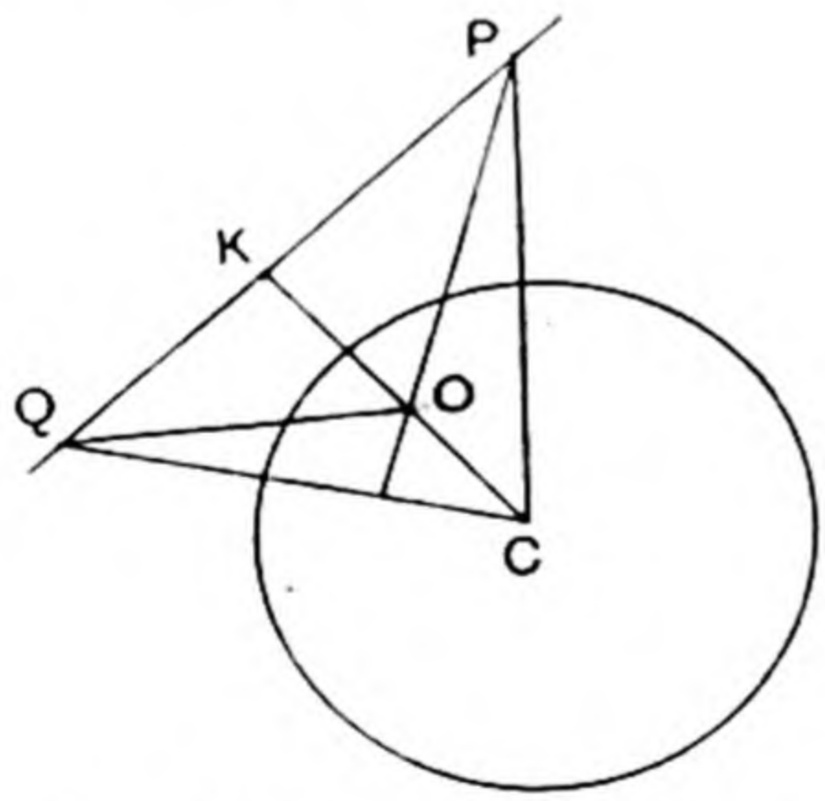
From this fact it results that *if $VD$ and $VD'$ be the double lines of an involution to which $VA$, $VA_1$ belong, then $VD$ and $VD'$ are a pair of conjugate lines for the involution whose double lines are $VA$, $VA_1$.*

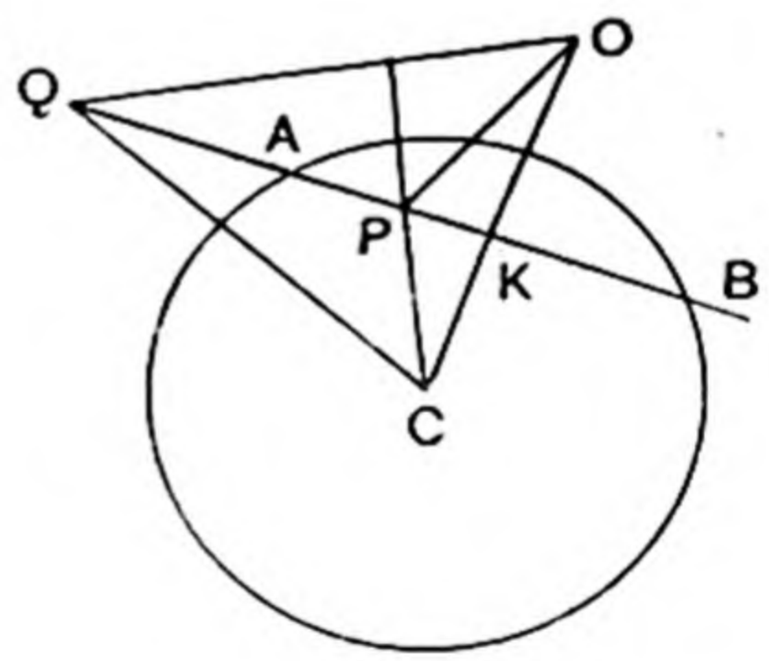
83. We shall postpone until a later chapter, when we come to deal with Reciprocation, the involution properties of the quadrangle and quadrilateral, and pass now to those of the circle which are of great importance. We shall make considerable use of them when we come to treat of the Conic Sections.

### 84. Involution properties of the circle.

**Prop.** *Pairs of points conjugate for a circle which lie along a line form a range in involution of which the double points are the points of intersection of the line with the circle.*

Let $P$ and $Q$ be a pair of conjugate points on the line $l$. Let $O$ be the pole of $l$.




Thus $OPQ$ is a self-conjugate triangle, and its orthocentre is at $C$, the centre of the circle (§ 16 *a*).

Let $CK$ be the perpendicular from $C$ on $l$.

Then $$PK \,.\, KQ = KO \,.\, KC.$$

$$\therefore KP \,.\, KQ = OK \,.\, KC.$$

Thus $P$ and $Q$ belong to an involution whose centre is $K$, and whose constant is $OK \,.\, KC$. Its double points are thus real or imaginary according as $PQ$ does or does not cut the circle.

If $PQ$ cut the circle in $A$ and $B$, then $OK \,.\, KC = KA^2 = KB^2$, thus we see that $A$ and $B$ are the double points of the involution.

It is obvious too that $A$ and $B$ must be the double points since each is its own conjugate.

The following proposition, which is the reciprocal of the foregoing, is easily deduced from it.

**Prop.** *Pairs of conjugate lines for a circle, which pass through a point form an involution pencil of which the double lines are the tangents from the point.*

For pairs of conjugate lines through a point $O$ will meet the polar of $O$ in pairs of conjugate points, which form an involution range, the double points of which are the points in which the polar of $O$ cuts the circle.

Hence the pairs of conjugate lines through $O$ form an involution pencil, the double lines of which are the lines joining $O$ to the points in which its polar cuts the circle, that is the tangents from $O$.

If $O$ be within the circle the double lines are not real.

## 85. Orthogonal pencil in Involution.

A special case of an involution pencil is that in which each of the pairs of lines contains a right angle.

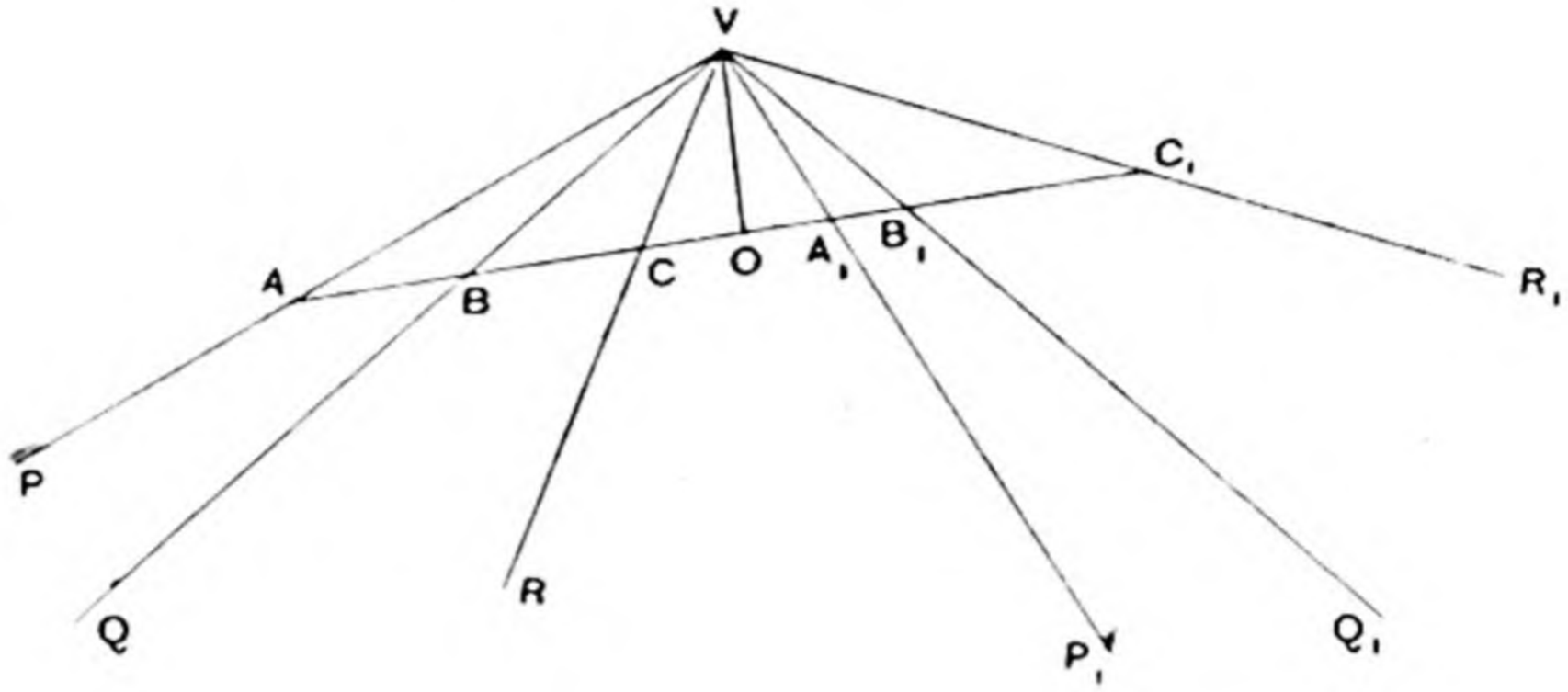
That such a pencil is in involution is clear from the second theorem of § 84, for pairs of lines at right angles at a point are conjugate diameters for any circle having its centre at that point.

But we can also see that pairs of orthogonal lines $VP$, $VP_1$; $VQ$, $VQ_1$ &c. are in involution, by taking any transversal $t$ to cut these in $A$, $A_1$; $B$, $B_1$ &c. and drawing the perpendicular $VO$ on to $t$; then

$$OA \,.\, OA_1 = -\, OV^2 = OB \,.\, OB_1.$$

Thus the pairs of points belong to an involution with imaginary double points.

Hence pairs of orthogonal lines at a point form a pencil in involution with imaginary double lines.




Such an involution is called an *orthogonal involution.*

Note that this property may give us a test whether three pairs of lines through a point form an involution. If they can be projected so that the angles contained by each pair become right angles, they must be in involution.

**86. Prop.** *In every involution pencil there is one pair of rays mutually at right angles, nor can there be more than one such pair unless the involution pencil be an orthogonal one.*

Let $P$ be the vertex of the pencil in involution.

Take any transversal $l$, and let $O$ be the centre of the involution range which the pencil makes on it, and let $k$ be the constant of this involution.

Join $OP$, and take a point $P'$ in $OP$ such that $OP \,.\, OP' = k$.

Thus $P$ and $P'$ will be on the same or opposite sides of $O$ according as $k$ is positive or negative.

Bisect $PP'$ in $M$ and draw $MC$ at right angles to $PP'$ to meet the line $l$ in $C$.

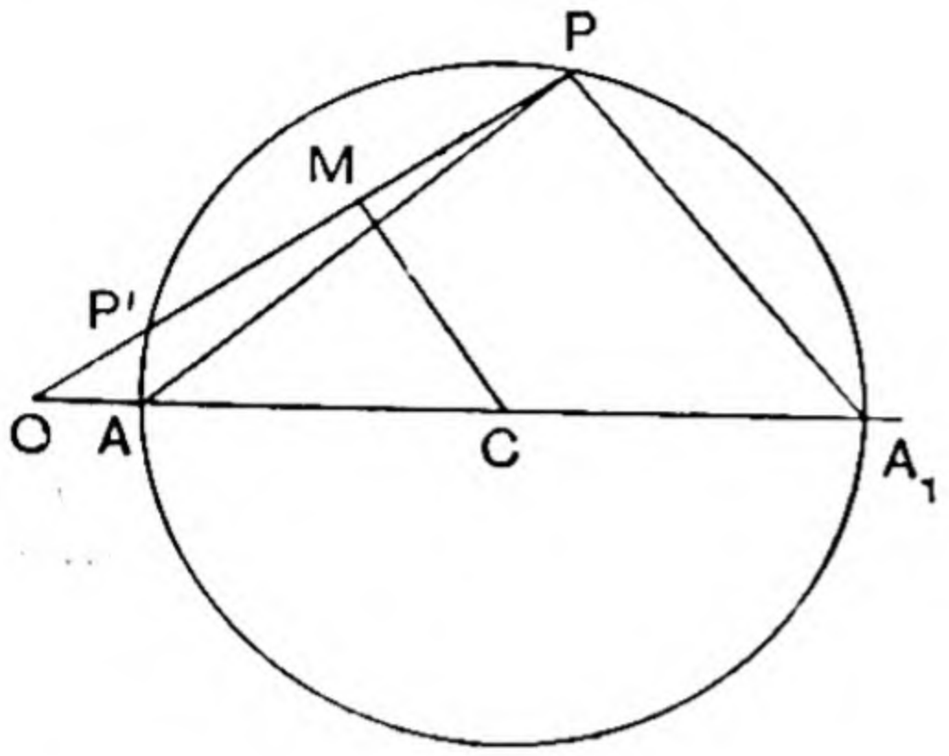
Describe a circle with centre $C$ and radius $CP$ or $CP'$ to cut $l$ in $A$ and $A_1$.

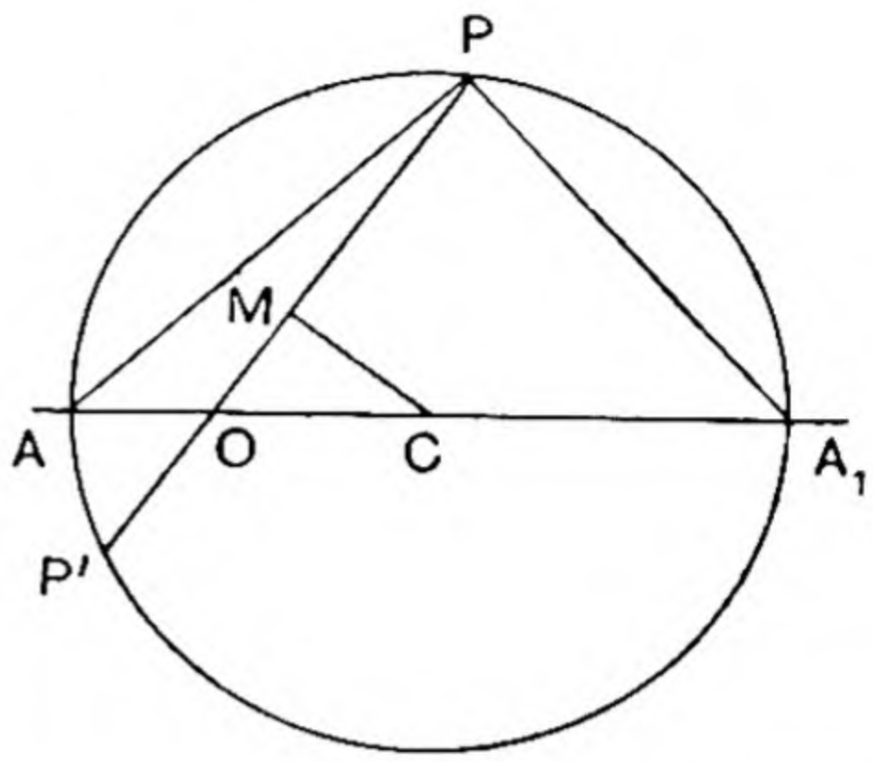
The points $A$ and $A_1$ are mates in the involution on $l$ for

$$OA \,.\, OA_1 = OP \,.\, OP' = k.$$

Also the angle $APA_1$ being in a semicircle is a right angle.

Hence the involution pencil has the pair of rays $PA$ and $PA_1$ mutually at right angles.




In the special case where $O$ is the middle point of $PP'$, $C$ and $O$ coincide.

In the case where $PO$ is perpendicular to $l$, the line through $M$, the middle point of $PP'$, perpendicular to $PP'$ is parallel to $L$, and the point $C$ is at infinity. In this case it is $PO$ and the line through $P$ parallel to $l$ which are the pair of orthogonal rays, for $O$ and the point at infinity along $l$ are mates of the involution range on $l$.

Thus every involution pencil has one pair of orthogonal rays. If the pencil have more than one pair of rays at right angles, then all the pairs must be at right angles, since two pairs of rays completely determine an involution pencil.

87. **Prop.** *An involution pencil projects into a pencil in involution, and any involution can be projected into an orthogonal involution.*

For let the pairs of rays of an involution pencil at $O$ in the $p$ plane meet the line of intersection of the $p$ and $\pi$ planes in $A, A_1; B, B_1; C, C_1$ &c. and let $O'$ be the projection of $O$.

Then $A, A_1; B, B_1; C, C_1$ &c. is an involution range.

$\therefore O'$ ($A, A_1; B, B_1; C, C_1$ &c.) is an involution.

Again, as we can project two angles in the $p$ plane into right angles, we may choose two angles between two pairs of

rays of an involution to be so projected. Then the pencil in the projection must be an orthogonal one.

It may be remarked too that at the same time that we project the involution pencil into an orthogonal one we can project any line to infinity (§ 43).

NOTE. As an orthogonal involution has no real double lines, it is clear that if an involution pencil is to be projected into an orthogonal one, then the pencil thus projected should not have real double lines, if the projection is to be a real one.

An involution pencil with real double lines can only be projected into an orthogonal one by means of an imaginary vertex of projection.

The reader will understand by comparing what is here stated with § 43 that the two circles determining $V$ in that article do not intersect in real points, if the double points of the involution range which the involution pencil in the $p$ plane intercepts on the vanishing line be real, as they are if the involution pencil have real double lines.

## EXERCISES

1. Any transversal is cut by a system of coaxal circles in pairs of points which are in involution, and the double points of the involution are concyclic with the limiting points of the system of circles.

2. If $K$, $K'$ be the double points of an involution to which $A$, $A_1$; $B$, $B_1$ belong; then $A$, $B_1$; $A_1$, $B$; $K$, $K'$ are in involution.

3. If the double lines of a pencil in involution be at right angles, they must be the bisectors of the angles between each pair of conjugate rays.

4. The corresponding sides $BC$, $B'C'$ &c. of two triangles $ABC$, $A'B'C'$ in plane perspective intersect in $P$, $Q$, $R$ respectively; and $AA'$, $BB'$, $CC'$ respectively intersect the line $PQR$ in $P'$, $Q'$, $R'$. Prove that the range $(PP', QQ', RR')$ forms an involution.

5. The centre of the circumcircle of the triangle formed by the three diagonals of a quadrilateral lies on the radical axis of the system of circles on the three diagonals.

6. Shew that if each of two pairs of opposite vertices of a quadrilateral is conjugate with regard to a circle, the third pair is also; and that the circle is one of a coaxal system of which the line of collinearity of the middle points of the diagonals is the radical axis.

7. The two pairs of tangents drawn from a point to two circles, and the two lines joining the point to their centres of similitude, form an involution.

8. Prove that there are two points in the plane of a given triangle such that the distances of each from the vertices of the triangle are in a given ratio. Prove also that the line joining these points passes through the circumcentre of the triangle.

# CHAPTER IX

## THE CONIC SECTIONS

**88. Definitions.** The *Conic Sections* (or *Conics*, as they are frequently called) are the curves of conical, or vertical, projection of a circle on to a plane other than its own. They are then the plane sections of a cone having a circular base. It is not necessary that the cone should be a right circular one, that is, that its vertex should lie on the line through the centre of the circular base and at right angles to it. So long as the cone has a circular base (and consequently too all its sections parallel to the base are circles), the sections of it are called *conic sections*.

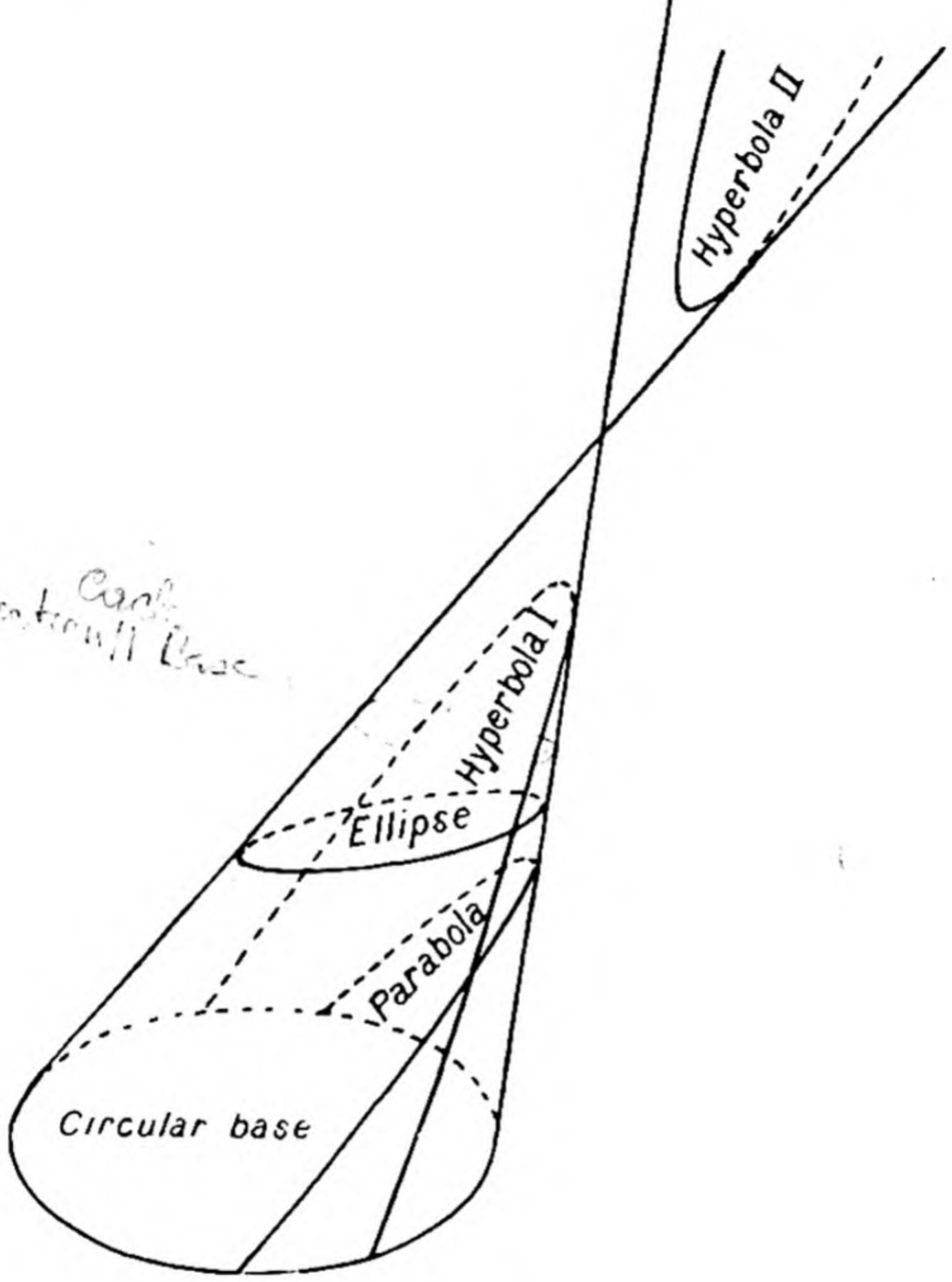
**89.** The conic sections are classified according to the relation of the vanishing line to the projected circle. If the vanishing line touches the circle, the curve of projection is called a *parabola*; if the vanishing line does not meet the circle, the curve is called an *ellipse*; and if the vanishing line cuts the circle the curve of projection is called a *hyperbola*.

In other words a *parabola* is the section of a cone, having a circular base, by a plane parallel to a generating line of the cone. By a 'generating line' is meant a line joining the vertex of the cone to a point on the circumference of the circle which forms its base.

An *ellipse* is a section of the cone by a plane such that the plane parallel to it through the vertex cuts the plane of the base in a line external to it.

A *hyperbola* is a section of the cone by a plane such that the parallel plane through the vertex cuts the base of the cone.

The curves are illustrated by the following figure and it should be observed that the hyperbola consists of two branches, and that to obtain both these branches the cone must be prolonged on both sides of its vertex.




### 90. Focus and directrix property.

Every conic section, or projection of a circle, possesses, as we shall presently shew, this property, namely that it is the locus of a point in a plane such that its distance from a fixed point in the plane bears to its distance from a fixed line, also in the plane, a constant ratio. The fixed point is called the *focus* of the conic, the fixed line is called the *directrix*, and the constant ratio the *eccentricity*. It will be proved later that the eccentricity is unity, less than unity, or greater than unity, according as the conic is a parabola, an ellipse, or a hyperbola.

**91.** Text books on Geometrical Conic Sections usually take the focus and directrix property of the curves as the *definition* of them, and develop their properties therefrom, ignoring for the purpose of this development the fact that every conic section, even when defined by its focus and directrix property, is all the while the projection of some circle. This is to be regretted. For many of the properties which can only be evolved with great labour from the focus and directrix property are proved with great ease when the conics are regarded as the projections of a circle. We shall in the next chapter shew how easy it is to prove that plane curves having the focus and directrix property are the projections of a circle.

### 92. Projective properties.

The conic sections, being the projections of a circle must possess all the projective properties of the circle.

(1) They will be such that no straight line in their plane can meet them in more than two points, and from points which are the projections of such points in the plane of the circle as lie without the circle, two and only two tangents can be drawn, which will be the projection of the tangents to the circle.

(2) The conic sections will clearly have the 'pole and polar property' of the circle. That is, the locus of the intersections of tangents at the extremities of chords through a given point will be a line, the point and line being called in relation to one another *pole* and *polar*. The polar of a point from which tangents can be drawn to the curve will be the same as the line through the points of contact of the tangents. This line is often called 'the chord of contact,' but strictly speaking the chord is only that portion of the line intercepted by the curve. The polar is unlimited in length.

(3) If the polar of a point $A$ for a conic goes through $B$, then the polar of $B$ must go through $A$. Two such points are called *conjugate points.*

(4) Also if the pole of a line $l$ lie on another line $l'$, the pole of $l'$ will lie on $l$, two such lines being called *conjugate lines.*

(5) The harmonic property of the pole and polar which obtains for the circle must hold also for the conic sections since cross-ratios are unaltered by projection.

(6) As an involution range projects into a range also in involution, pairs of conjugate points for a conic which lie along a line will form an involution range whose double points will be the points (if any) in which the line cuts the curve.

(7) Similarly pairs of conjugate lines through a point will form an involution pencil whose double lines are the tangents (if any) from the point.

### 93. Circle projected into another circle.

The curve of projection of a circle is under certain conditions another circle.

**Prop.** *If in the curve of projection of a circle the pairs of conjugate lines through the point $P$ which is the projection of the pole of the vanishing line form an orthogonal involution, then the curve is a circle having its centre at $P$.*

For since the polar of $P$ is the line at infinity, the tangents at the extremities of any chord through $P$ meet at infinity. But since the involution pencil formed by the pairs of conjugate lines through $P$ is an orthogonal one, these tangents must meet on a line through $P$ perpendicular to the chord. Hence the tangents at the extremities of the chord are at right angles to it.

Thus the curve has the property that the tangent at every point of it is perpendicular to the radius joining the point to $P$. That is, the curve is a circle with $P$ as centre.

Cor. *A circle can be projected into another circle with any point within it projected into the centre.*

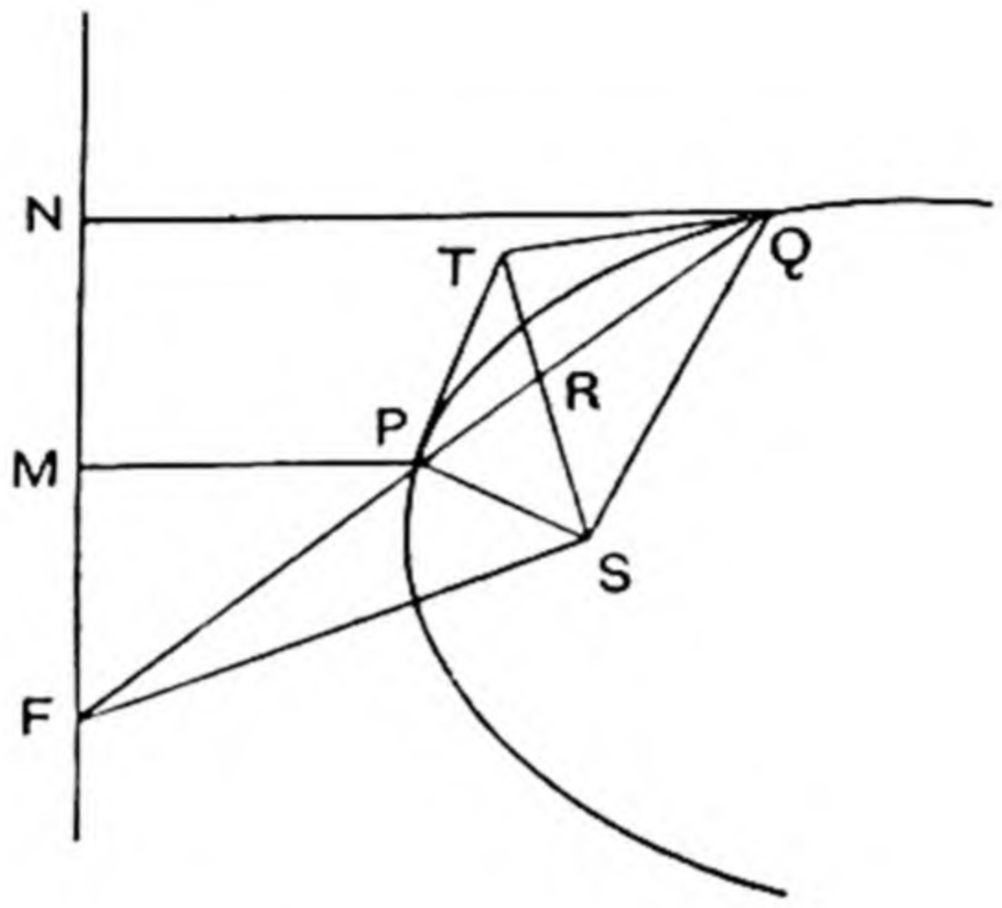
For we have only to project the polar of the point to infinity and the involution pencil formed by the conjugate lines through it into an orthogonal involution.

Note. The point to be projected into the centre needs to be within the circle if the projection is to be a real one (see Note to § 87).

## 94. Focus and directrix as pole and polar.

**Prop.** *If in the plane of the curve of projection of a circle there exist a point $S$ such that the involution pencil formed by the conjugate lines through $S$ is an orthogonal one, then $S$ and its polar are focus and directrix for the curve.*

Let $P$ and $Q$ be any two points on the curve, and let the tangents at them meet in $T$.




Join $ST$ cutting $PQ$ in $R$, and let $PQ$ meet the polar of $S$ in $F$. Join $SF$, and draw $PM$, $QN$ perpendicular to the polar of $S$.

Then $ST$ is the polar of $F$, for the polar of $F$ goes through $S$ since that of $S$ goes through $F$, and it also goes through $T$ since the polar of $T$ goes through $F$.

$\therefore$ $SF$ and $ST$ are conjugate lines.

But by hypothesis the conjugate lines at $S$ form an orthogonal involution.

$\therefore$ $TSF$ is a right angle.

And by the harmonic property of the pole and polar

$$(FR, PQ) = -1.$$

$\therefore$ $ST$ and $SF$ are the bisectors of the angle $PSQ$ (§ 72).

$\therefore$ $SP : SQ = FP : FQ$

$= PM : QN$ (by similar triangles).

$\therefore$ $SP : PM = SQ : QN$.

Thus the ratio of the distance of points on the curve from $S$ to their distance from the polar of $S$ is constant, that is $S$ and its polar are focus and directrix for the curve.

NOTE. If the polar of $S$ should happen to be the line at infinity then the curve of projection is a circle (§ 93).

We may here remark that the circle may be considered to have the focus and directrix property, the focus being at the centre, and the directrix the line at infinity. The eccentricity is the ratio of the radius of the circle to the infinite distance of the points on the circle from the line at infinity.

### 95. Parallel chords.

Before we go on to establish the focus and directrix property of the curves of projection of a circle, which we shall do by shewing that for all of them there exists at least one point $S$, the pairs of conjugate lines through which form an orthogonal involution, we will establish a very important general proposition about parallel chords.

**Prop.** *In any conic section (or curve of projection of a circle) the locus of the middle points of a system of parallel chords is a straight line, and the tangents at the points where this line meets the curve are parallel to the chords.*

*Moreover the tangents at the extremities of each of the parallel chords will intersect on the line which is the locus of the middle points of the chords, and every line parallel to the chords and in the plane of the curve is conjugate with this line containing the middle points.*

Let $QQ'$ be one of the chords of the system and $M$ its middle point.

The chords may be considered as concurrent in a point $R$ at infinity which is the projection of a point $r$ on the vanishing line; and we have

$$(QQ', MR) = -1.$$

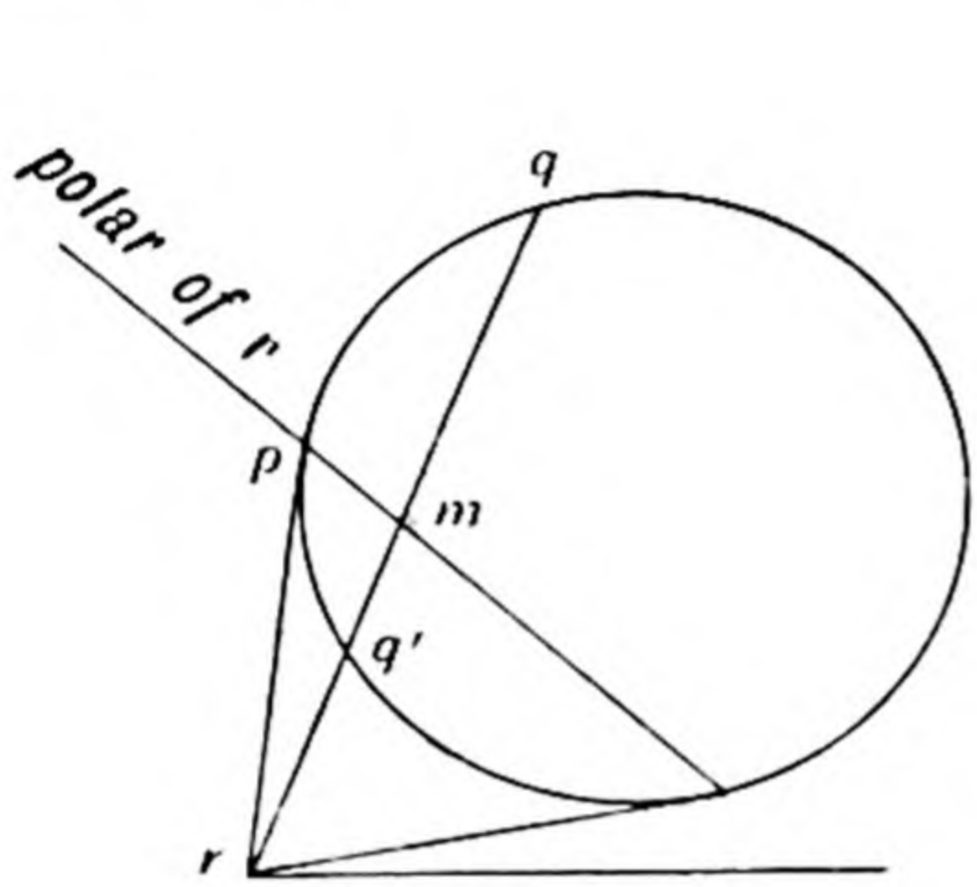
$$\therefore (qq', mr) = -1,$$

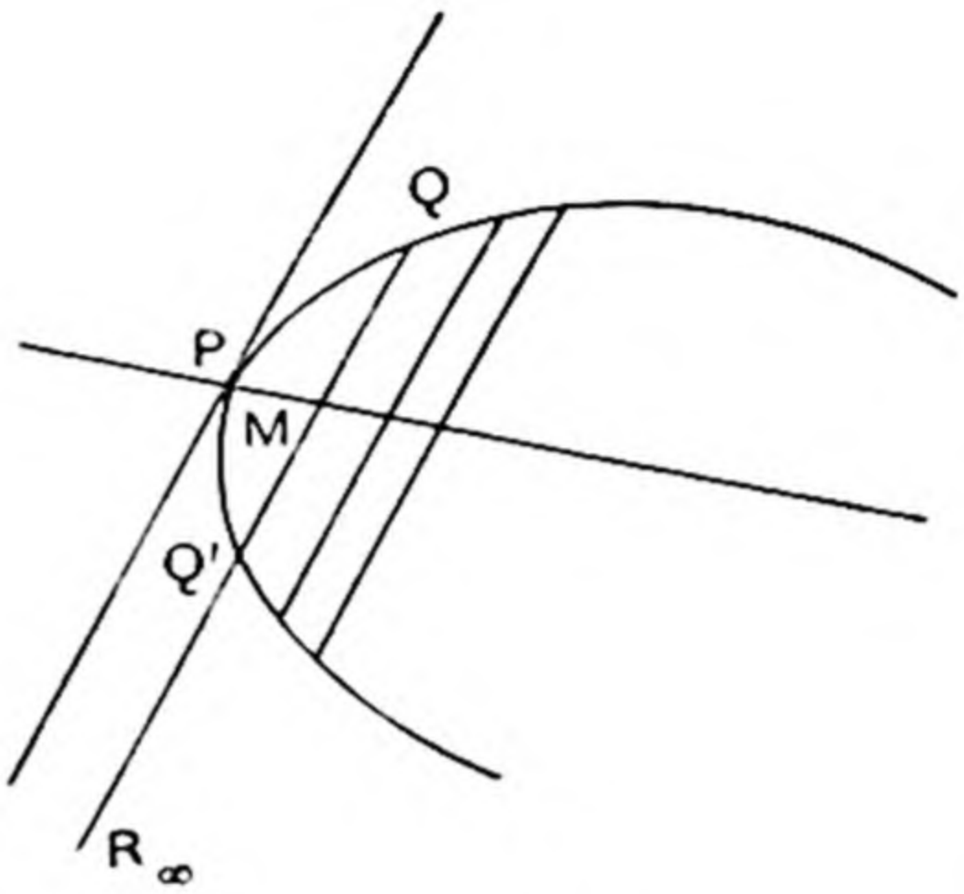
that is $m$ is on the polar of $r$.

Thus as the locus of the points $m$ is a line, that of the points $M$ is so too.

Let $P$ be a point in which this locus meets the curve, and let $P$ be the projection of $p$, then as the tangent at $p$ goes through $r$ that at $P$ must go through $R$; that is the tangent at $P$ is parallel to $QQ'$.

Further as the tangents at $q$ and $q'$ meet on the polar of $r$, those at $Q$ and $Q'$ will meet on the projection of the polar of $r$, that is on the line which is the locus of the middle points of the chords.




Also every line through $r$ will have its pole on the polar of $r$, and therefore every line through $R$ in the plane of the conic will have its pole on the line $PM$, that is, every line parallel to the chords is conjugate with the locus of their middle points.

In other words, the polar of every point on the line which is the locus of the middle points of a system of parallel chords is a line parallel to the chords.

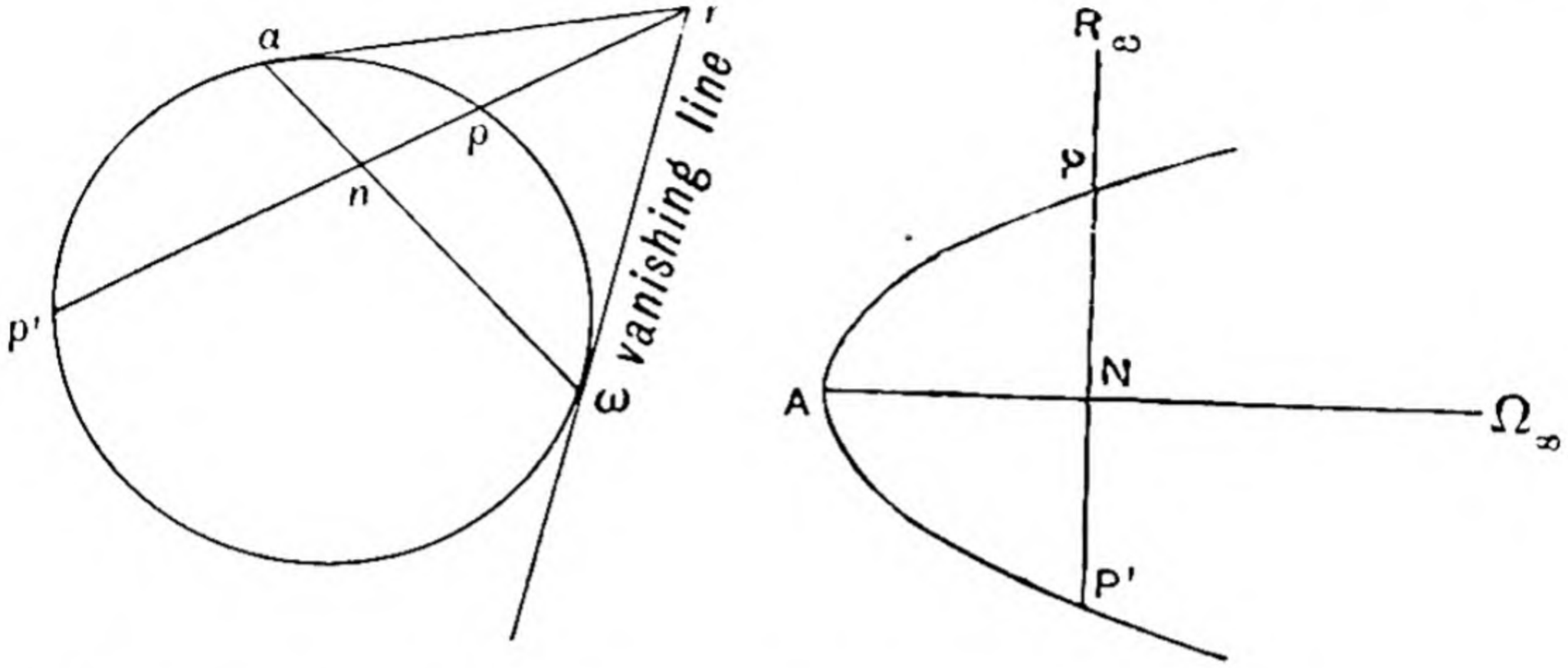
## 96. Focus and directrix property established.

We are now in a position to establish the focus and directrix property of the conic sections, defined as the projections of a circle. We shall take the parabola, ellipse and hyperbola separately, and in each case prove a preliminary proposition respecting their axes of symmetry.

**Prop.** *A parabola* (or *the projection of a circle touched by the vanishing line in its plane*) *has an axis of symmetry which meets the curve in two points one of which is at infinity.*

Let the vanishing line touch the circle in $\omega$.

In the plane through $V$, the vertex of projection, and the vanishing line draw $Vr$ at right angles to $V\omega$, meeting the vanishing line in $r$. Draw the other tangent $ra$ to the circle.




Now $r$ is the pole of $a\omega$, and therefore if $pp'$ be any chord which produced passes through $r$ and which cuts $a\omega$ in $n$ then

$$(pp', nr) = -1.$$

Thus, using corresponding capital letters in the projection, and remembering that $rn\omega$ will project into a right angle since $r\omega$ subtends a right angle at $V$, we shall have a chord $PP'$ at right angles to $A\Omega$ and cutting it at $N$ so that

$$(PP', NR) = -1.$$

But $R$ is at infinity. $\therefore PN = NP'$.

Thus all the chords perpendicular to $A\Omega$ are bisected by it, and the curve is therefore symmetrical about this line, which is called the *axis* of the parabola.

The axis meets the curve in the point $A$, called the *vertex*, and in the point $\Omega$ which is at infinity.

As $ra\omega$ projects into a right angle (for $r\omega$ subtends a right angle at $V$) the tangent at $A$ is at right angles to the axis.

Finally the curve touches the line at infinity at $\Omega$.

**97. Prop.** *A parabola* (or *projection of a circle touched by the vanishing line*) *has the focus and directrix property, and the eccentricity of the curve is unity.*

Let $P$ be any point on the curve of projection. Let $PNP'$ be the chord through $P$, perpendicular to the axis, and cutting it in $N$.

The tangents at $P$ and $P'$ will intersect in a point $T$ on the line of the axis (§ 95).

Then as $T$ is the pole of $PP'$

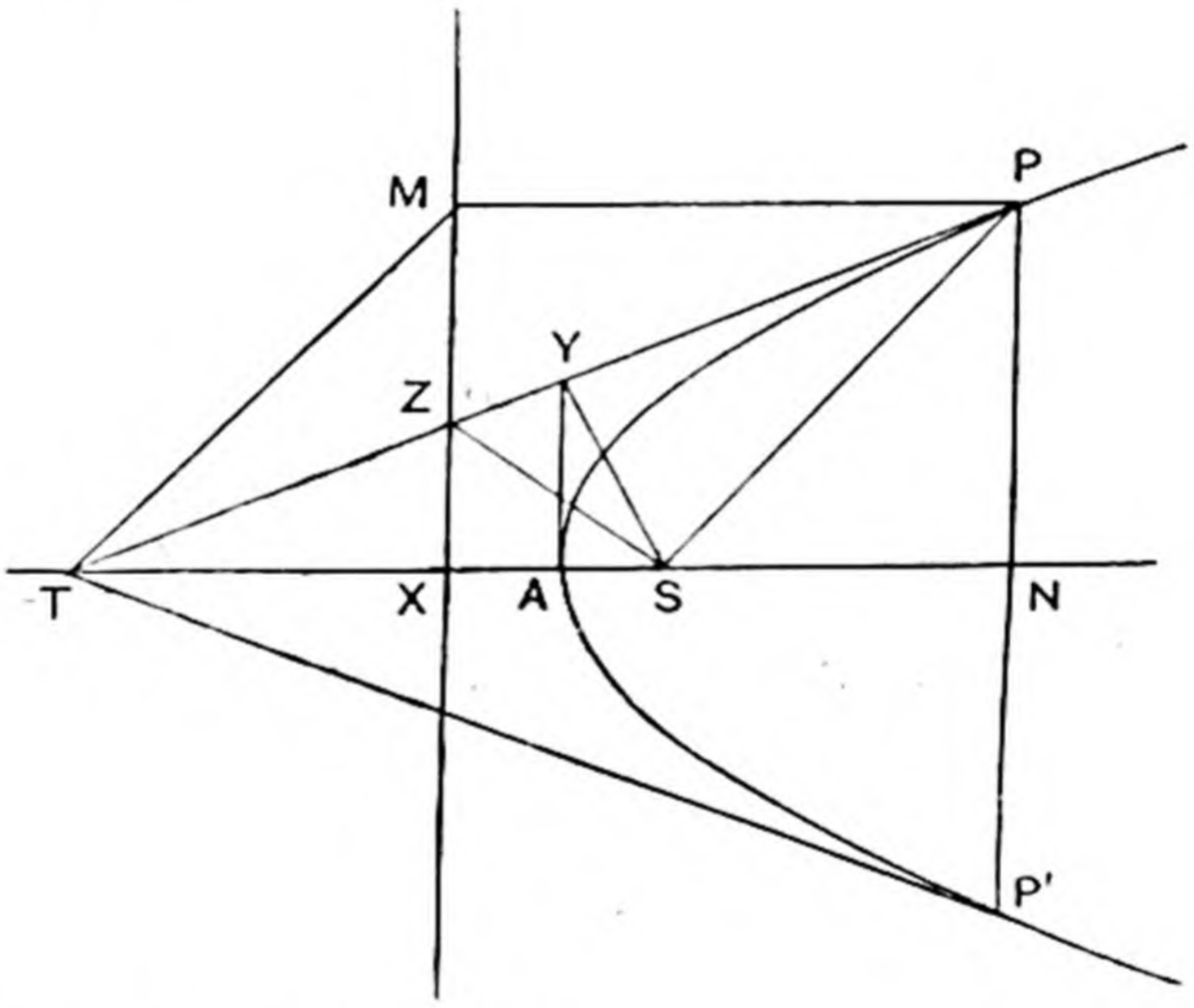
$$(TN, A\Omega) = -1.$$

$\therefore$ as $\Omega$ is at infinity, $TA = AN$.

Now let the tangent at $P$ meet that at $A$ in $Y$ and draw $YS$ at right angles to $PY$ to meet the axis in $S$.

The polar of $S$ will be at right angles to the axis (§ 95). Let it be $XM$ cutting the axis in $X$, the tangent at $P$ in $Z$, and the line through $P$ parallel to the axis in $M$.

Join $SP$, $SZ$.




Now as $S$ is the pole of $XM$

$$(XS, A\Omega) = -1.$$

$\therefore XA = AS$, and as $TA = AN$ we have $TS = XN = MP$.

But $TY : YP = TA : AN = 1$, so that $\triangle TYS \equiv \triangle PYS$, and $TS = PS$.

Thus $PS = PM$, that is $P$ is equidistant from $S$ and the polar of $S$.

Further, since $ST$ is equal and parallel to $PM$ and $SP = PM$, $SPMT$ is a rhombus and $PT$ bisects the angle $SPM$.

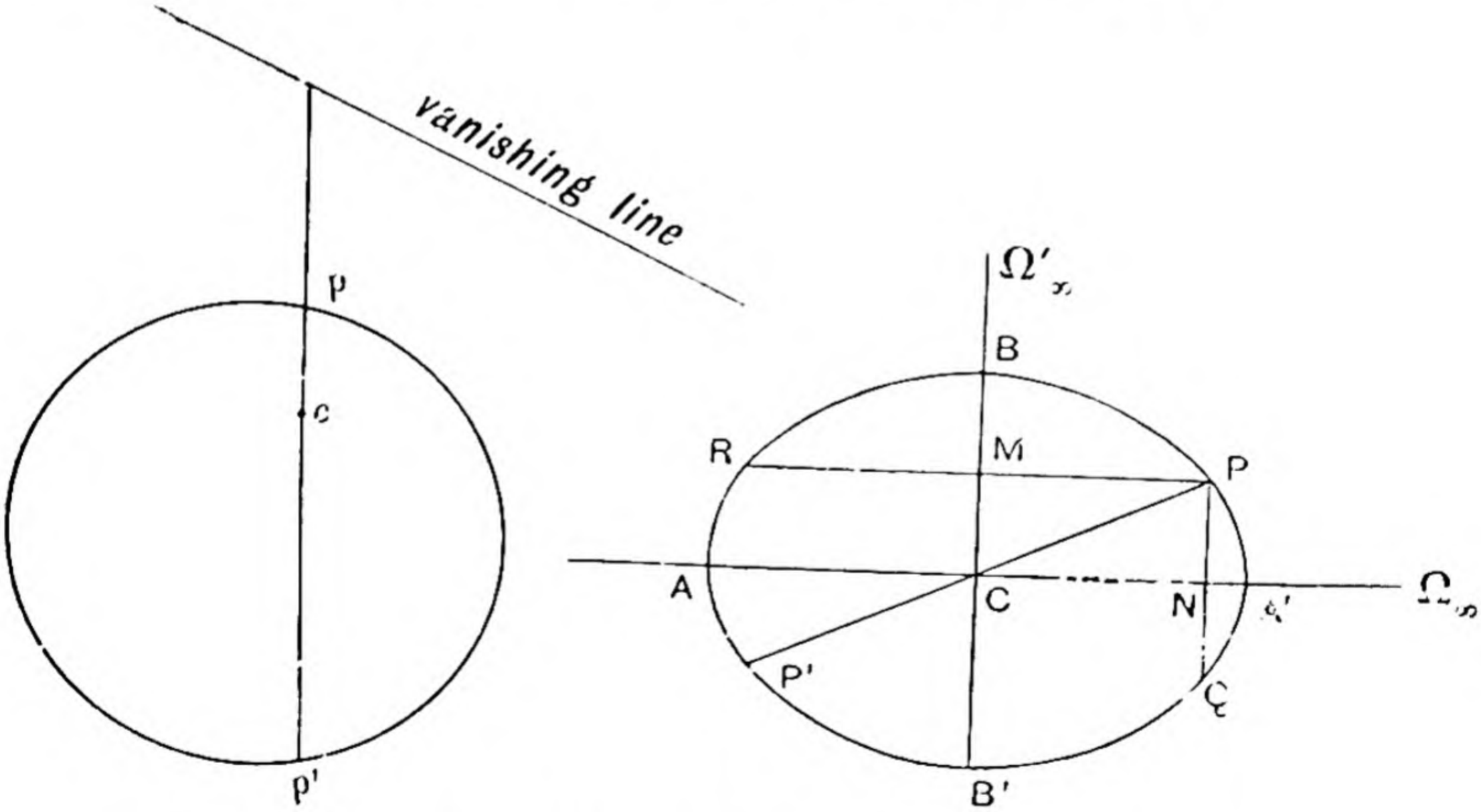
Thus $\triangle SPZ \equiv \triangle MPZ$, and $\angle ZSP = \angle ZMP =$ a right $\angle$.

Now $Z$ is the pole of $SP$, for the polar of $Z$ must go through $S$ (since that of $S$ goes through $Z$) and through $P$ since $ZP$ is a tangent at $P$.

Hence $SZ$ and $SP$ are conjugate lines for the curve, and they are at right angles. So also are $ST$ and the line through $S$ at right angles to it (§ 95).

Therefore the involution pencil formed by the pairs of conjugate lines through $S$ is an orthogonal one. Thus $S$ and its polar $XM$ are focus and directrix for the curve (§ 94), and the eccentricity is $SP : PM$ which is unity.

**98. Prop.** *The projection of a circle not met by the vanishing line in its plane is either a circle or a closed curve having two axes of symmetry, mutually perpendicular, on which are intercepted by the curve chords of unequal length.*




Let $c$ be the pole of the vanishing line.

Let $pp'$ be any chord through $c$ of the circle.

Then $pp'$ is divided harmonically at $c$ and its intersection with the polar of $c$.

Using corresponding capital letters in the projection, we shall have that the chord $PP'$ through $C$ is divided harmonically at $C$ and its intersection with the polar of $C$, which is the line at infinity. $\therefore PC = CP'$.

Thus every chord through $C$ is bisected at $C$. For this reason the point $C$ is called the *centre* of the curve, and the chords through it are called *diameters*.

The tangents at the extremities of any diameter are parallel, for the tangents at the extremities of chords of the circle through $c$ meet in the polar of $c$, which is the vanishing line.

First suppose that the involution pencil formed by the pairs of conjugate lines through $C$ is an orthogonal one; then the curve is a circle (§ 93).

Next suppose that the involution pencil is not an orthogonal one; then there must be one and only one pair of conjugate lines through $C$ mutually at right angles (§ 86).

Let the curve intercept on these lines chords $AA'$ and $BB'$.

Draw the chords $PQ$ and $PR$ perpendicular to $AA'$ and $BB'$ respectively cutting them in $N$ and $M$, and let $\Omega$ and $\Omega'$ be the points at infinity on the lines of $AA'$ and $BB'$.

Then as $\Omega'$ is the pole of $AA'$, and $PQ$ passes through $\Omega'$,

$$(PQ, N\Omega') = -1.$$

$$\therefore PN = NQ.$$

Similarly $PM = MR$.

Thus the curve is symmetrical about each of the two lines $ACA'$, $BCB'$, which are called the *axes*.

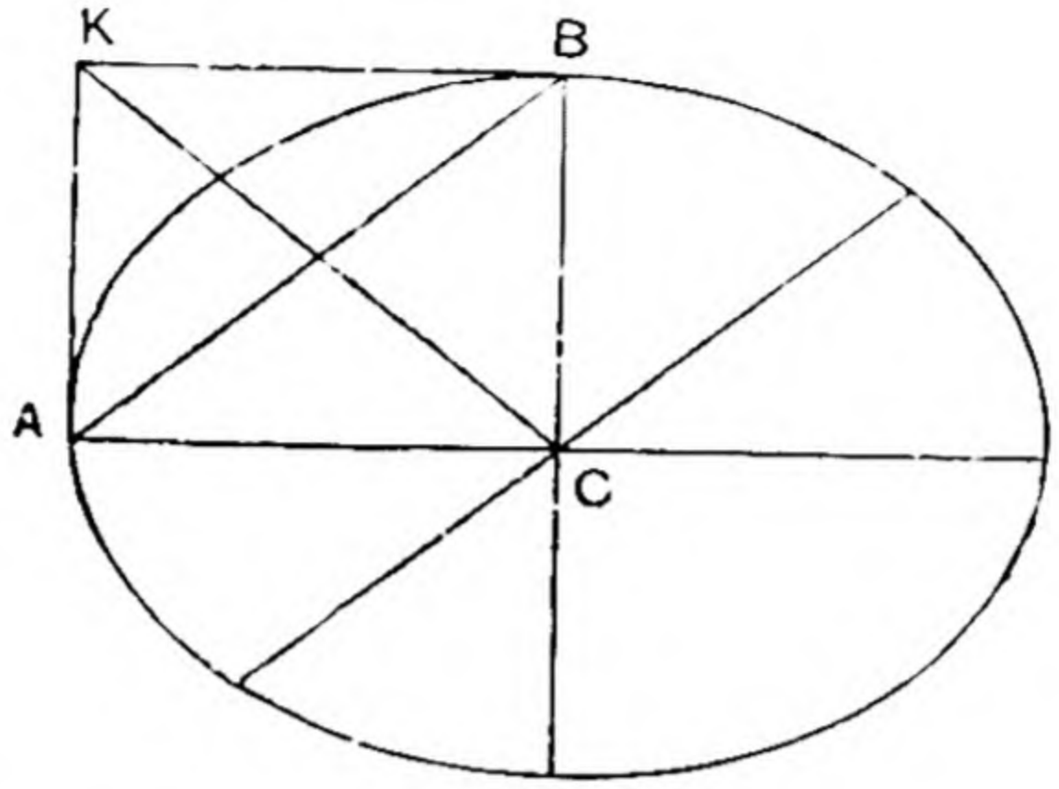
We shall now shew that $AA'$ and $BB'$ cannot be equal.

Let the tangents at $A$ and $B$ meet in $K$, then $CAKB$ is a rectangle, and $CK$ bisects $AB$.

But $CK$ bisects the chord through $C$ parallel to $AB$, for every chord through $C$ is bisected at $C$.

Hence $CK$ and the line through $C$ parallel to $AB$ are conjugate lines (§ 95).

But these lines would be at right angles if $CA = CB$. And thus if $CA$ and $CB$ were equal the involution pencil formed by the pairs of conjugate lines through $C$ would be an orthogonal one; which is contrary to hypothesis.




Hence $AA'$ and $BB'$ cannot be equal.

We shall suppose $AA'$ to be the greater of the two. Then $AA'$ is called the *major axis* and $BB'$ the *minor axis*.

**99. Prop.** *An ellipse* (or *curve of projection, other than a circle, of a circle not met by the vanishing line in its plane*) *has the focus and directrix property and the eccentricity of the curve is less than unity.*

Assuming that the projection is not a circle we have as shewn in § 98 two axes of symmetry $AA'$, $BB'$ of which $AA'$ is the greater.

With centre $B$ and radius equal to $CA$ describe a circle cutting the major axis in $S$ and $S'$.

The polars of $S$ and $S'$ are perpendicular to $AA'$ (§ 95).

Let these be $XF$ and $X'F'$, cutting $AA'$ in $X$ and $X'$ and the tangent at $B$ in $F$ and $F'$.

Now since the polar of $S$ goes through $F$, that of $F$ goes through $S$; but the polar of $F$ goes through $B$, since $FB$ is a tangent.

$\therefore$ $SB$ is the polar of $F$, and $SF$, $SB$ are conjugate lines.

We will shew that they are mutually at right angles.

Since $S$ is the pole of $XF$

$$(AA', SX) = -1.$$

$$\therefore CS \,.\, CX = CA^2.$$

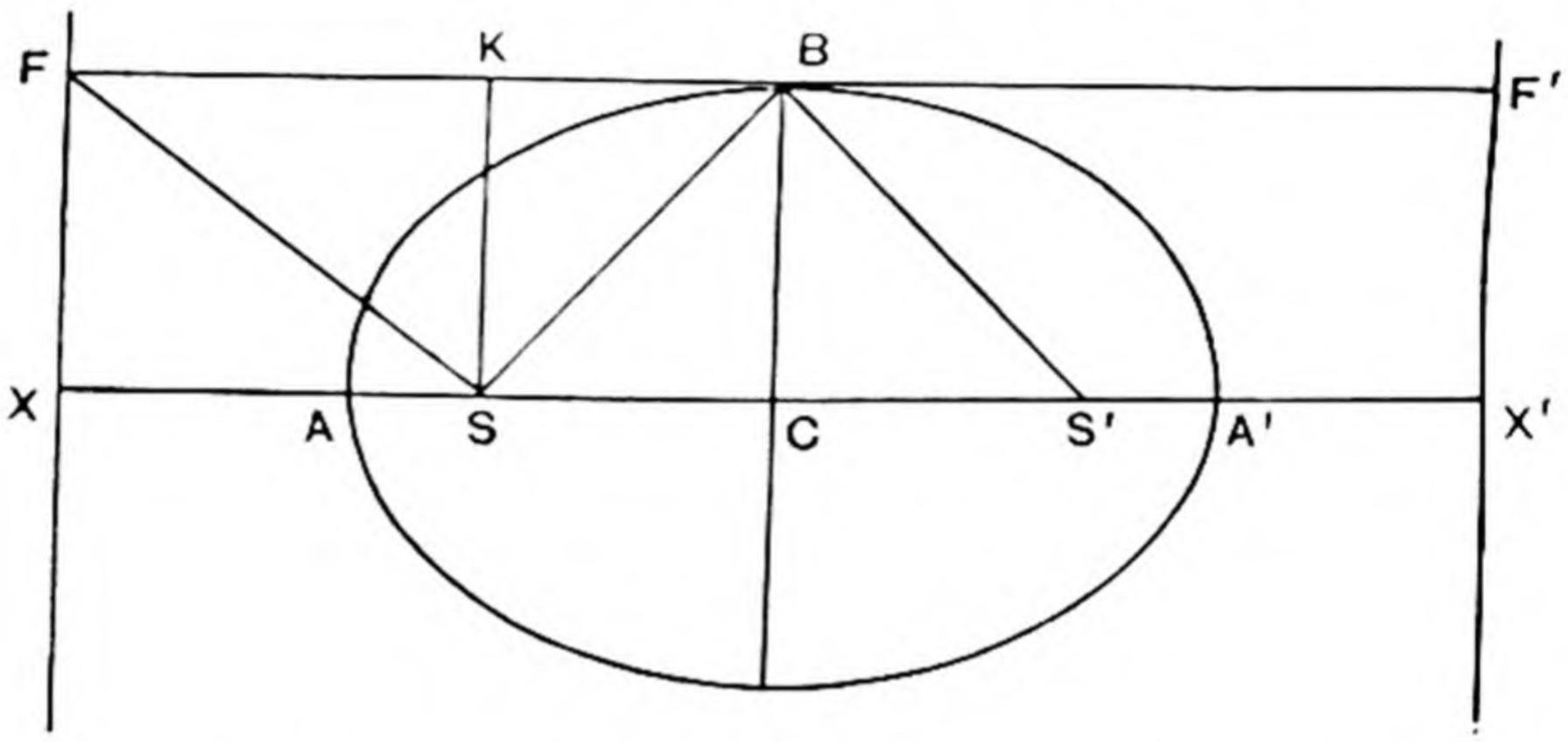
Now draw $SK$ parallel to $CB$ to meet $BF$ in $K$.

Then $$BK \,.\, KF = CS \,.\, SX = CS\,(CX - CS)$$

$$= CA^2 - CS^2$$

$$= SB^2 - CS^2 = SK^2.$$

$\therefore$ $FSB$ is a right angle.




Thus we have two pairs of conjugate lines through $S$ mutually at right angles, namely $SF$ and $SB$, as also $SX$ and $SK$ (§ 95) so that the involution pencil formed by the conjugate lines at $S$ is an orthogonal one.

$\therefore$ $S$ and its polar $XF$ are focus and directrix for the curve (§ 94).

Similarly $S'$ and its polar $X'F'$ are focus and directrix.

The eccentricity $= SB : BF = CA : CX$ which is less than unity.

Note too that as $CS \,.\, CX = CA^2$, the eccentricity $= CS : CA$.

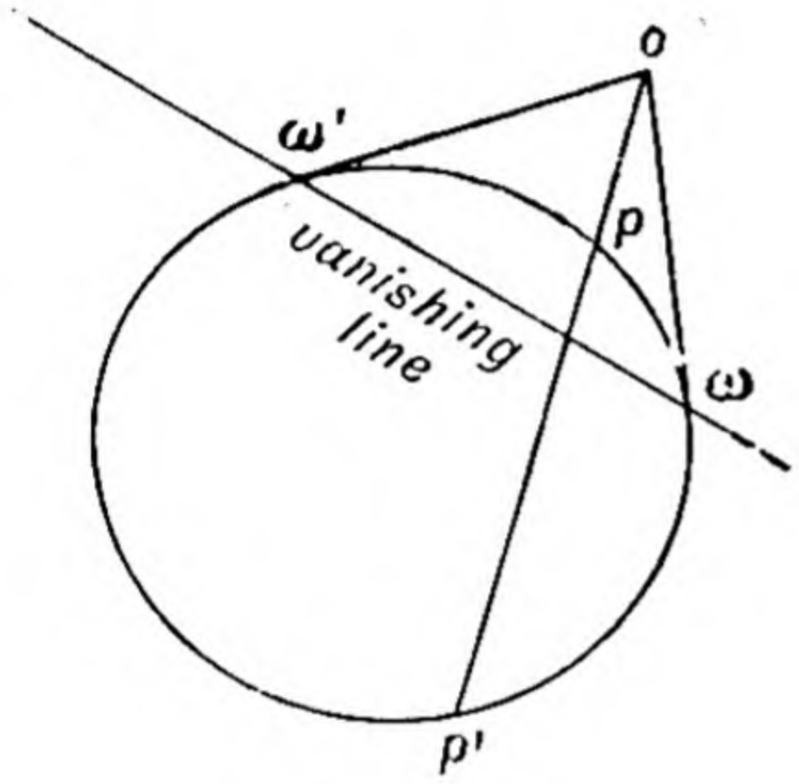
NOTE. We see now how a circle may be regarded as the limiting case of an ellipse whose two foci $S$ and $S'$ coincide with its centre, and its directrix is the line at infinity (see Note to § 94).

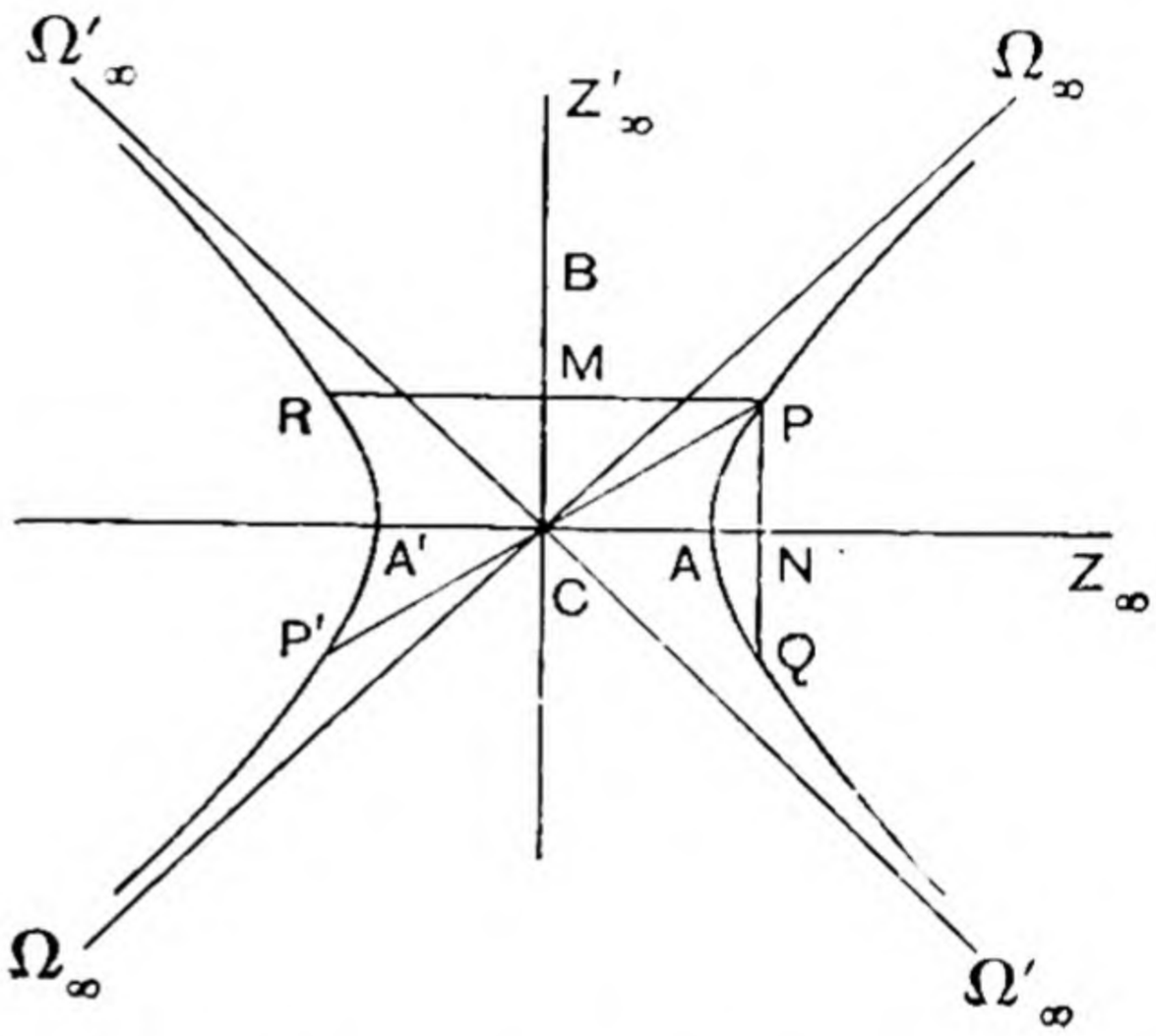
**100. Prop.** *A hyperbola* (or *projection of a circle which is cut by the vanishing line*) *has two axes of symmetry mutually at right angles, only one of which cuts the curve.*

Let the vanishing line cut the circle in $\omega$ and $\omega'$, and let $c$ be the pole of the line.

Let $pp'$ be any chord the line of which passes through $c$. Then $pp'$ is divided harmonically at $c$ and its intersection with $\omega\omega'$.

Using corresponding capital letters in the projection, we shall have that the chord $PP'$ through $C$ is divided harmonically at $C$ and its intersection with the polar of $C$ which is the line at infinity. $\therefore PC = CP'$.




Thus every chord through $C$ in the curve of projection is bisected at $C$, which is therefore called the *centre* of the curve, and the chords through $C$ are called diameters.

Let it be observed that not every line through $C$ meets the curve, since in the plane of the circle there are lines through $c$ which do not meet it.

Of each pair of conjugate lines through $c$ only one will meet the circle, for $c\omega$ and $c\omega'$ are the double lines of the involution formed by these conjugate lines.

Further the involution pencil formed by the conjugate lines through $C$ cannot be an orthogonal one, since it has real double lines, namely the projection of $c\omega$ and $c\omega'$.

Thus there will be one and only one pair of conjugate lines through $C$ mutually at right angles (§ 86).

Let this pair be $CA$ and $CB$, of which the former is the one that meets the curve, namely in $A$ and $A'$.

Note that the curve of projection will have two tangents, from $C$ whose points of contact $\Omega$ and $\Omega'$ the projections of $\omega$ and $\omega'$ are at infinity. These tangents are called *asymptotes.*

Since $C\Omega$ and $C\Omega'$ are the double lines of the involution pencil formed by the conjugate lines through $C$

$$C\,(\Omega\Omega',\ AB) = -1 \quad (\S\ 82).$$

$\therefore$ since $CA$ and $CB$ are at right angles, they are the bisectors of the angles between $C\Omega$ and $C\Omega'$ (§ 72).

To prove that the curve is symmetrical about $CA$ and $CB$ we draw chords $PQ$, $PR$ perpendicular to them and cutting them in $N$ and $M$. Let $Z$ and $Z'$ be the points at infinity along the lines $CA$ and $CB$. Then since $Z'$ is the pole of $AA'$ and $PQ$ passes through $Z'$,

$$(PQ,\ NZ') = -1.$$

$$\therefore\ PN = NQ.$$

Similarly $PM = MR$.

Thus the curve has two axes of symmetry mutually at right angles, one of which meets the curve, and the other not. $AA'$ which meets the curve is called the *transverse axis* and $CB$ is called the *conjugate axis.*

NOTE. At present $B$ is not a definite point on the line $CB$. We shall find it convenient later on to make it definite; the point to be emphasised is that the transverse axis does not cut the curve, and we cannot determine points $B$ and $B'$ on it as these points are determined in the case of the ellipse.

**101. Prop.** *A hyperbola* (or *curve of projection of a circle cut by the vanishing line*) *has the focus and directrix property, and the eccentricity is greater than unity.*

Using the notation of the preceding article, we describe a circle with centre $C$, and radius $CA$ cutting $C\Omega$ in $K$ and $L'$, and $C\Omega'$ in $K'$ and $L$, as in the figure.

The lines $KL$ and $K'L'$ will be perpendicular to the transverse axis, since, as we have seen, $CA$ bisects the angle $\Omega C\Omega'$.

$\therefore$ the poles of these lines, which we will denote by $S$ and $S'$, will lie on the line of the transverse axis (§ 95).

We will now shew that $S$ and its polar $KL$ are focus and directrix, as are also $S'$ and $K'L'$.

Let $KL$ and $K'L'$ cut $AA'$ in $X$ and $X'$.

Then by the harmonic property of the pole and polar

$$(AA', SX) = -1.$$

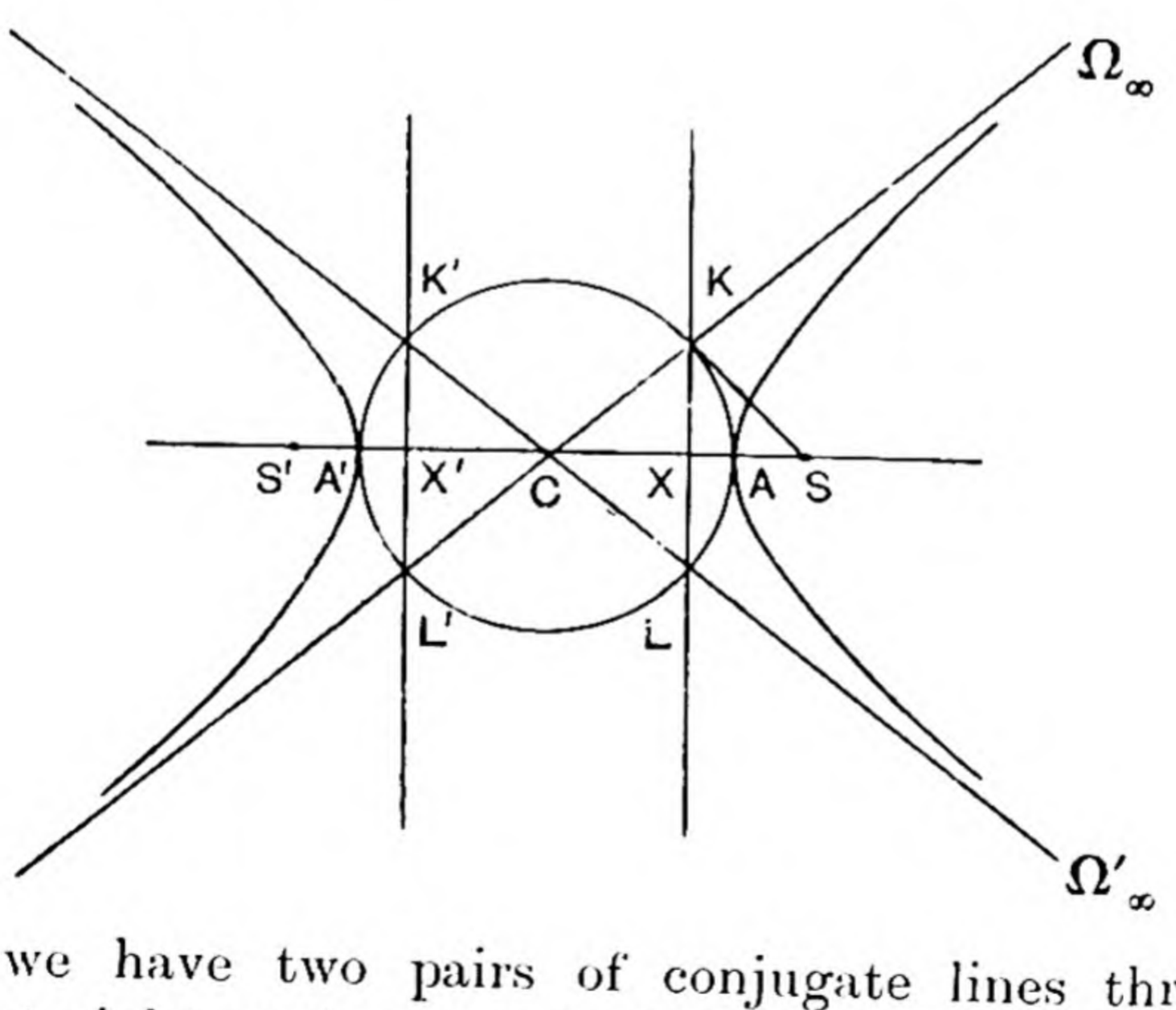
$$\therefore CS \,.\, CX = CA^2 = CK^2.$$

$\therefore CKS$ is a right angle.

Now the polar of $K$ must go through $S$, since that of $S$ goes through $K$. Moreover the polar of $K$ goes through $\Omega$, since $K\Omega$ is a tangent at $\Omega$.

$\therefore S\Omega$ is the polar of $K$, that is $SK$ and $S\Omega$ are conjugate lines.

But $\Omega$ being at infinity $S\Omega$ is parallel to $K\Omega$, that is $S\Omega$ is perpendicular to $SK$.




Thus we have two pairs of conjugate lines through $S$, mutually at right angles, namely $S\Omega$ and $SK$, and $SC$ and the line through $S$ at right angles to $SC$ (§ 95).

Hence the pencil formed by the pairs of conjugate lines through $S$ is an orthogonal one, and therefore $S$ and its polar $KX$ are focus and directrix for the curve.

Similarly $S'$ and $K'L'$ are focus and directrix.

The eccentricity is the ratio

$$S\Omega : \text{perpendicular from } \Omega \text{ on } KL$$
$$= K\Omega : \text{the same}$$
$$= CK : CX = CA : CX \text{ which is greater than unity.}$$

Note too that as $CS.CX = CA^2$, the eccentricity also $= CS:CA$.

We might have obtained the eccentricity thus:

It is the ratio $SA : AX$

$$= CS - CA : CA - CX$$
$$= CS \,.\, CX - CA \,.\, CX : CX\,(CA - CX)$$
$$= CA\,(CA - CX) : CX\,(CA - CX)$$
$$= CA : CX.$$

### 102. Central and non-central conics. Diameters.

We have seen that the ellipse and hyperbola have each a centre, that is a point such that every chord passing through the same is bisected by it. Ellipses and hyperbolas then are classified together as *central conics*. The parabola has no centre and is called *non-central*.

We have proved in § 95 that the locus of the middle points of a system of parallel chords is a straight line. Clearly in the case of the central conics this line must go through the centre, for the diameter parallel to the chords is bisected at that point.

In the case of the parabola, the line which is the locus of the middle points of a system of parallel chords is parallel to the axis. For such a system is the projection of chords of the circle concurrent at a point $r$ on the vanishing line; and the polar of $r$, which projects into the locus of the middle points of the system of chords, passes through $\omega$ the point of contact of the circle with the vanishing line. Thus the locus of the middle points of the system of parallel chords of the parabola passes through $\Omega$, that is, the line is parallel to the axis.

All lines then in the plane of a parabola and parallel to its axis will bisect each a system of parallel chords. These lines are conveniently called diameters of the parabola. They are not diameters in the same sense in which the diameters of a central

conic are, for they are not limited in length and bisected at a definite point.

### 103. Ordinates of diameters.

**Def.** The parallel chords of a conic bisected by a particular diameter are called *double ordinates* of that diameter, and the half chord is called an *ordinate* of the diameter.

The ordinates of a diameter are as we have seen parallel to the tangents at the point or points in which the diameter meets the curve.

The ordinates of an axis of a conic are perpendicular to that axis.

The ordinates of the axis of a parabola, of the major axis of an ellipse, and of the transverse axis of a hyperbola are often called simply 'ordinates' without specifying that whereto they are ordinates. Thus the ordinate of a point $P$ on a parabola, ellipse or hyperbola must be understood to mean the perpendicular $PN$ on the axis, the major axis, or the transverse axis, as the case may be.

NOTE. When we speak of the axis of a conic there can be no ambiguity in the case of a parabola, but in the case of the ellipse and hyperbola, which have two axes of symmetry, there would be ambiguity unless we determined beforehand which axis was meant. Let it then be understood that by the axis of a conic will be meant that one on which the foci lie.

**104.** The contents of the present chapter are of great importance for a right understanding of the conic sections. The student should now have a good general idea of the form of the curves, and, as it were, see them whole, realising that they have been obtained by projecting a circle from one plane on to another. We shall in the next chapter set forth properties which all conics have in common, and in subsequent chapters treat of the parabola, ellipse and hyperbola separately, shewing the special properties which each curve has.

# CHAPTER X

## PROPERTIES COMMON TO ALL CONICS

**105. Proposition.** *If the line (produced if necessary) joining two points $P$ and $Q$ of a conic meet a directrix in $F$, and $S$ be the corresponding focus, $SF$ will bisect one of the angles between $SP$ and $SQ$.*

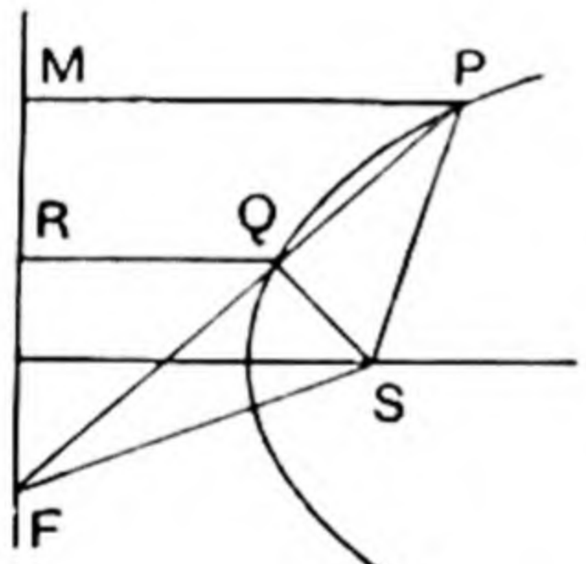



Fig. 1.

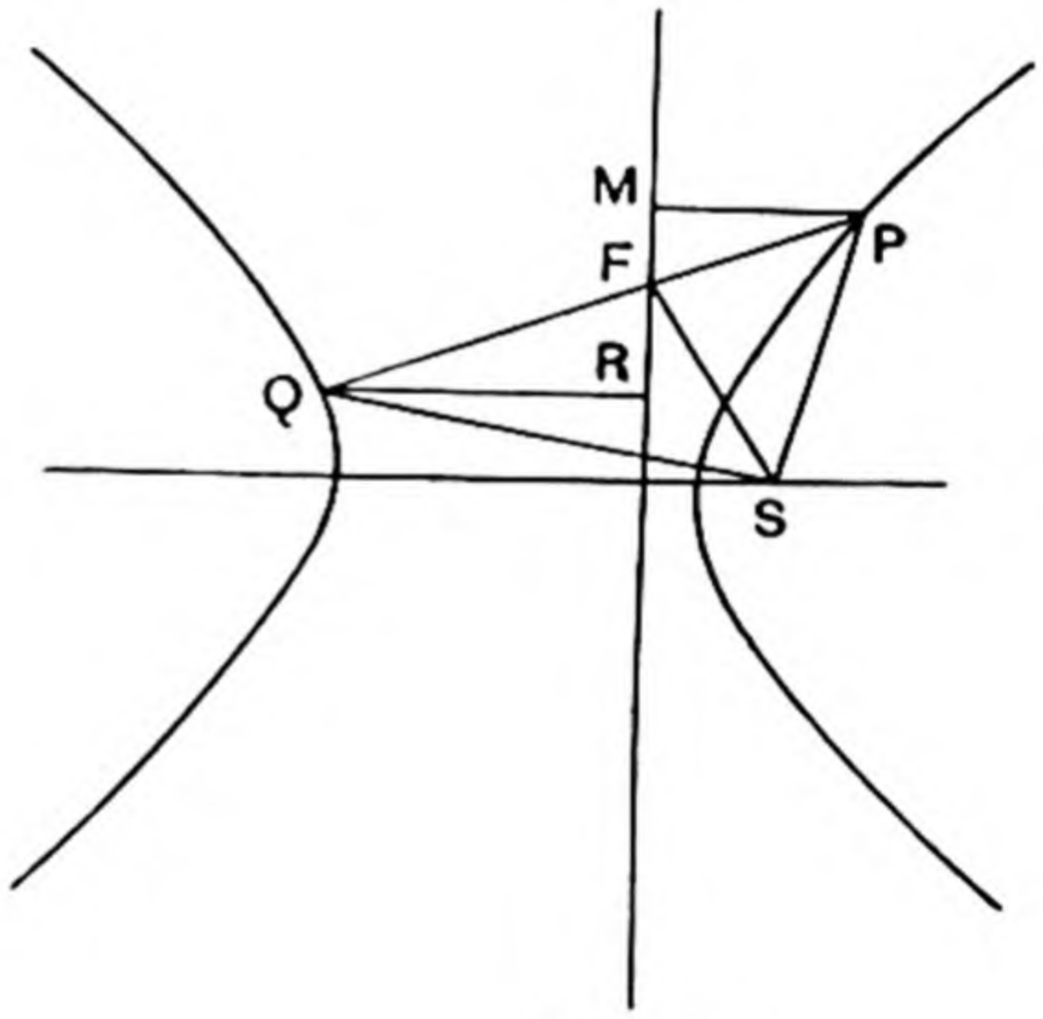



Fig. 2.

For, drawing $PM$ and $QR$ perpendicular to the directrix we have, if $e$ be the eccentricity,

$$SP : PM = e = SQ : QR,$$

$$\therefore\ SP : SQ = PM : QR$$

$$= FP : FQ \text{ (by similar } \triangle\text{s } FQR,\ FPM).$$

$\therefore$ in figs 1 and 3, $SF$ bisects the exterior angle of $PSQ$, and in fig. 2 it bisects the angle $PSQ$ itself.

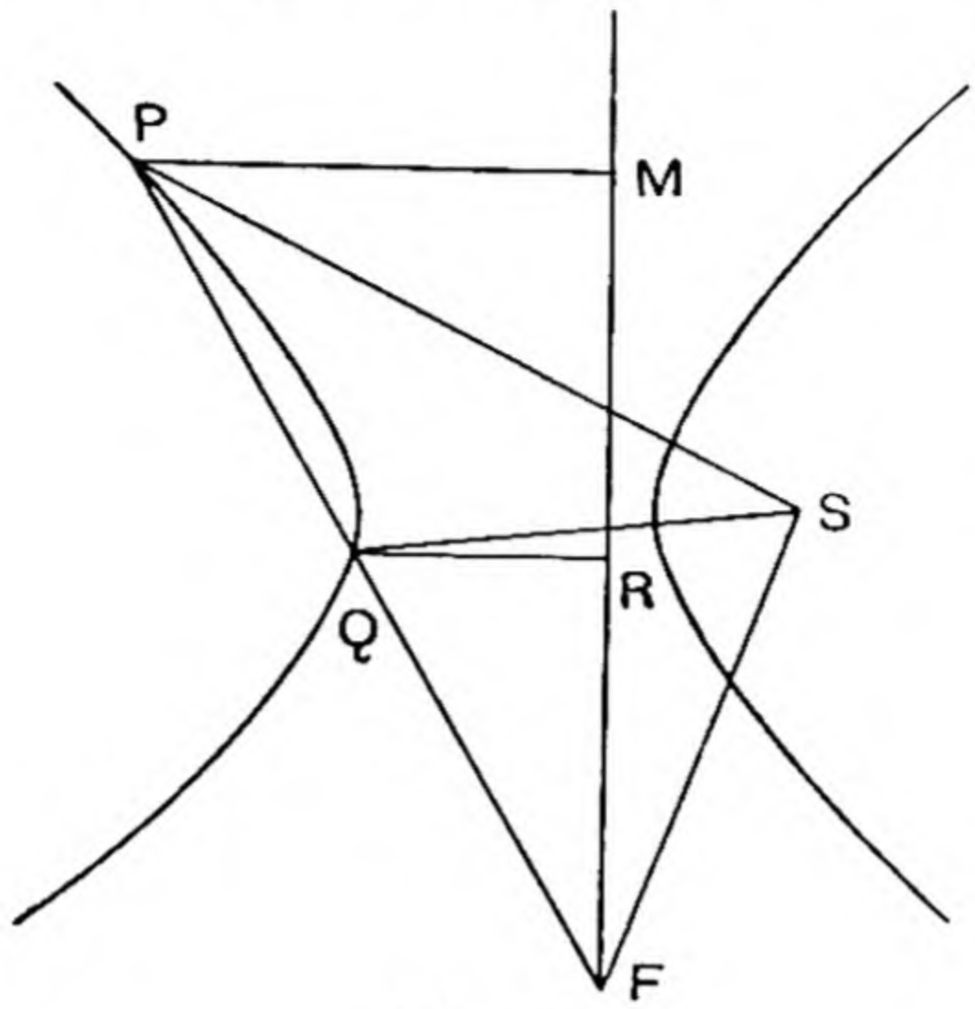


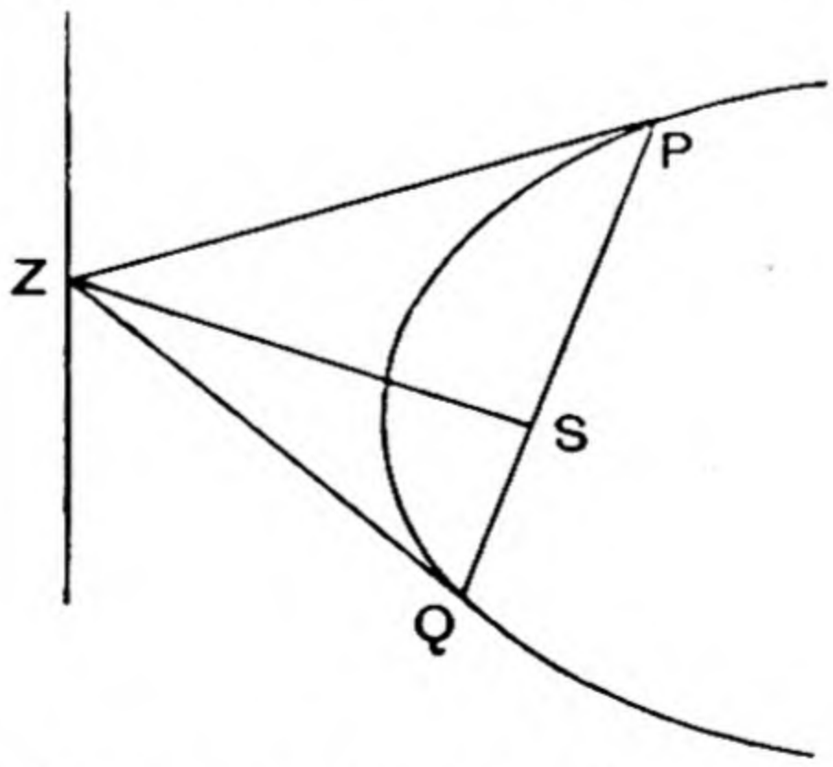

Fig. 3.

We see then that $SF$ bisects the exterior angle of $PSQ$, if $P$ and $Q$ be on the same branch of the curve, and the angle $PSQ$ itself if $P$ and $Q$ be on opposite branches

**106. Prop.** *If the tangent to a conic at a point $P$ meet a directrix in $Z$ and $S$ be the corresponding focus, $ZSP$ is a right angle.*

This is easily seen from the following considerations:

The focus and directrix are 'pole and polar' for the conic, therefore the tangents at the extremities of a focal chord $PSQ$ will meet at $Z$ in the directrix, and $Z$ will be the pole of $PQ$.




Thus $SZ$ and $SP$ are conjugate lines, since the pole of $SP$ lies on $SZ$.

But the pairs of conjugate lines through a focus are at right angles. Therefore $ZSP$ is a right angle.

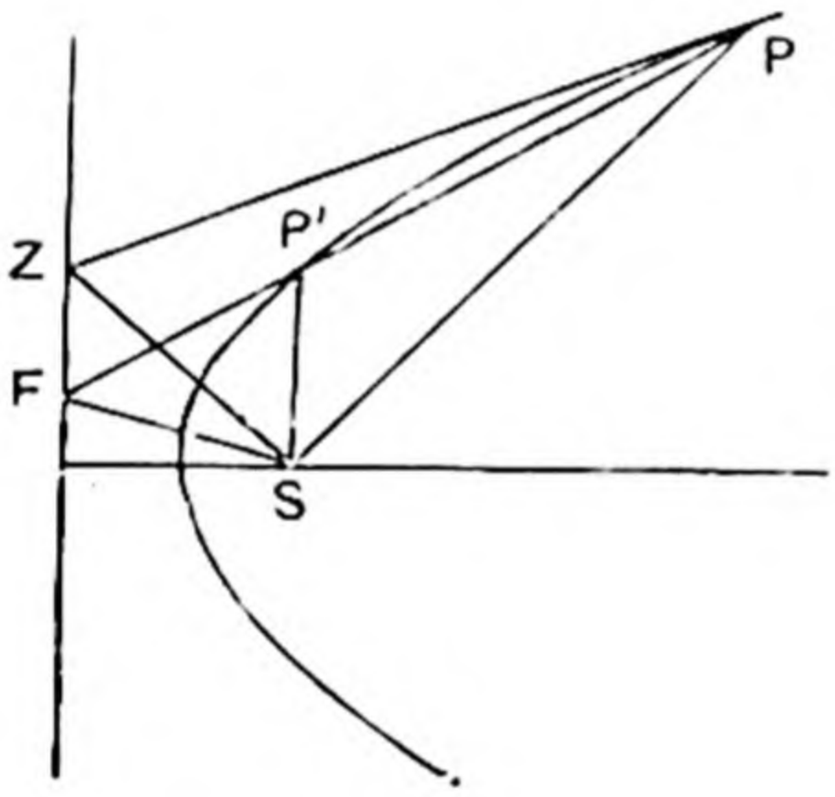
But as we are going to prove in the next article that every plane curve having the focus and directrix property is the projection of some circle, we will give another proof of the proposition dependent only on this property.

Regard the tangent at $P$ as the limiting case of the line of the chord $PP'$ when $P'$ is very close to $P$.

Now if $PP'$ meet the directrix in $F$, $SF$ bisects the exterior angle of $PSP'$ (§ 105) for $P$ and $P'$ are on the same branch.

And the nearer $P'$ approaches $P$, the more does this exterior angle approximate to two right angles.

Thus $\angle ZSP$ = the limit of $FSP'$ when $P'$ approaches $P$
= a right angle.




It should be observed that this second proof yields also the result that tangents at the extremities of a focal chord intersect in the directrix, since the tangent at either end of the chord $PSQ$ is determined by drawing $SZ$ at right angles to the chord to meet the directrix in $Z$; then $ZP$, $ZQ$ are the tangents.

**107.** In the preceding chapter we defined the conic sections as the curves of projection of a circle and shewed that they have the focus and directrix property. We shall now establish the converse proposition.

**Prop.** *Every plane curve having the focus and directrix property is the projection of some circle.*

For we have shewn in the second part of § 106 that a curve having the focus and directrix property is such that tangents at the extremities of any chord through $S$, the focus, intersect on the directrix on a line through $S$ perpendicular to the chord.

Now project so that the directrix is the vanishing line; and so that the orthogonal involution at $S$ projects into another orthogonal involution (§ 87).

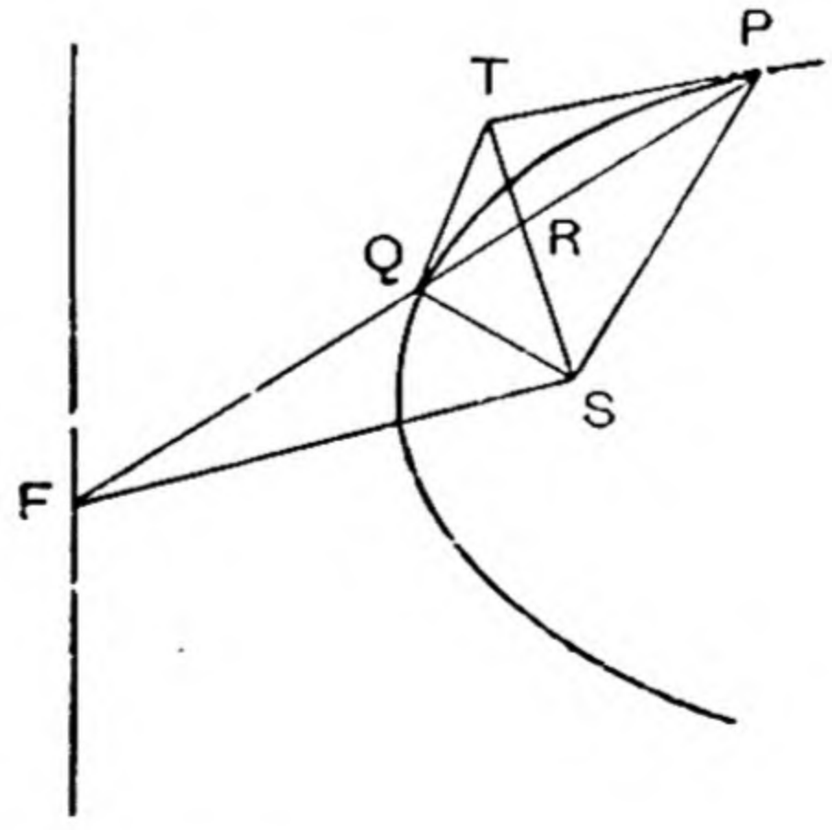
Then the curve of projection has the property that the tangents at the extremities of every chord through $s$, the projection of $S$, meet at infinity on a line through $s$ perpendicular to the chord.

Hence the tangent at each point of the curve is at right angles to the radius joining the point to $s$, and therefore the curve is a circle with $s$ as centre.

**108.** It follows of course from what we have established in the preceding chapter that if the curve having the focus and directrix property had its eccentricity unity then the circle into which it has been projected must touch the vanishing line in the plane of the circle; if the eccentricity be less than unity then the circle does not meet the vanishing line; if the eccentricity be greater than unity the circle is cut by the vanishing line.

### 109. Pair of tangents.

**Prop.** *If a pair of tangents $TP$, $TQ$ be drawn to a conic from a point $T$ and $S$ be a focus, then $SP$ and $SQ$ make equal angles with $ST$, and if $PQ$ meet the corresponding directrix in $F$ $\angle TSF$ is a right angle.*




Let $TS$ meet $PQ$ in $R$.

Since $PQ$ is the polar of $T$, and this goes through $F$, the polar of $F$ must go through $T$.

But since $F$ is on the directrix the polar of $F$ must go through $S$.

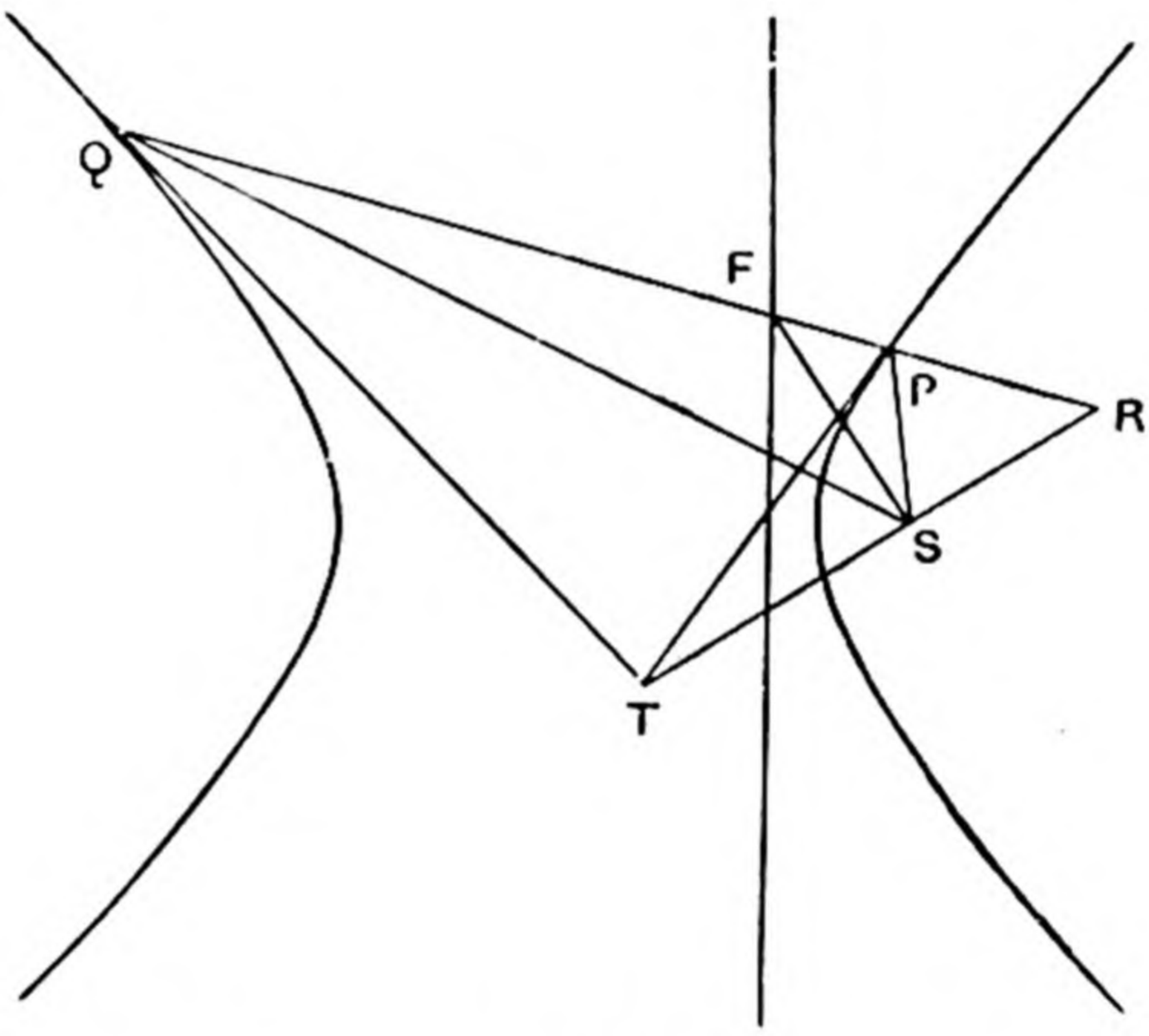
Thus $ST$ is the polar of $F$.

Hence $SF$ and $ST$ are conjugate lines, and as they are through a focus, they must be at right angles.

Further $$(PQ, FR) = -1.$$

$$\therefore S(PQ, FR) = -1.$$

Thus $SR$ and $SF$ are the bisectors of the angles between $SP$ and $SQ$ (§ 72).




NOTE. It will be seen that if the points of contact of the tangents from $T$ lie on the same branch of the curve $ST$ bisects the angle $PSQ$, but if they are on different branches then $ST$ bisects the exterior angle of $PSQ$.

The figures given do not shew the case where $TP$ and $TQ$ both touch the branch remote from $S$. The student can easily represent this in a figure of his own.

**110.** The above proposition gives a simple construction for drawing two tangents to a conic from an external point $T$.

Join $ST$ and let it meet the conic in $K$ and $K'$. The figure of the preceding article can be utilised. Take $R$ in $KK'$ such that $(TR, KK') = -1$ (§ 70, Cor. 2).

Draw $SF$ at right angles to $ST$ to meet the directrix in $F$. Draw the line $FR$ and let it cut the conic in $P$ and $Q$.

Then $TP$ and $TQ$ are the tangents.

For as $ST$ and $SF$ are at right angles and through a focus, they are conjugate lines.

$\therefore$ the pole of $ST$ lies on $SF$.

But the pole of $ST$ is on the directrix.

$\therefore$ $F$ is the pole of $ST$, that is, the polar of $F$ goes through $T$.

$\therefore$ the polar of $T$ goes through $F$.

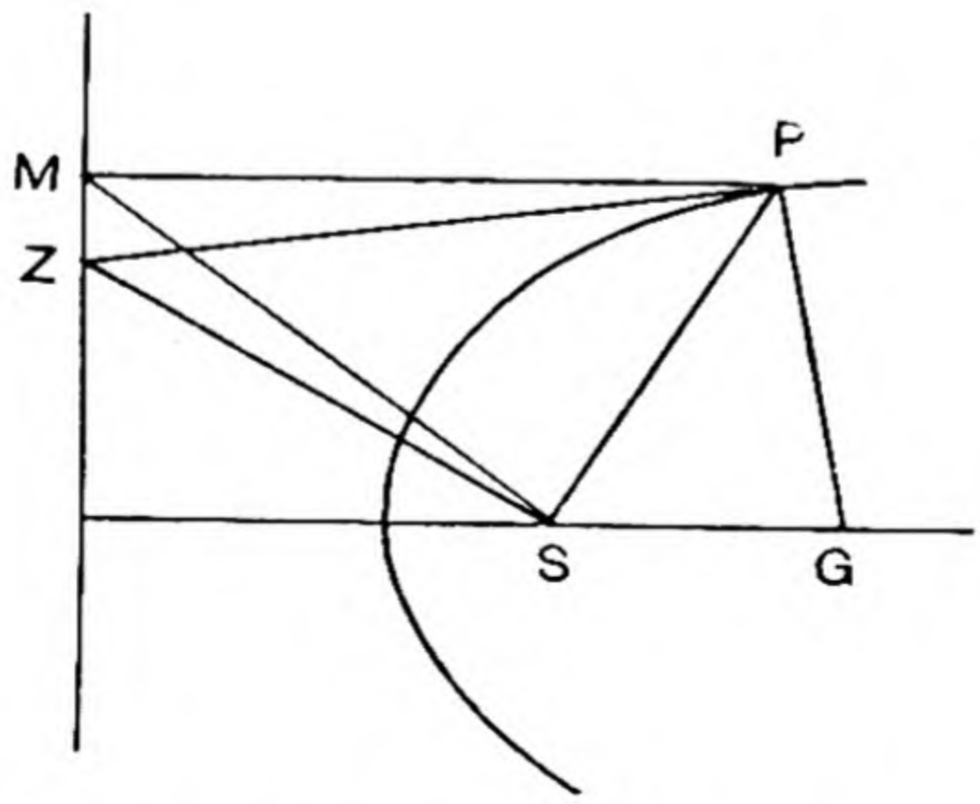
But the polar of $T$ goes through $R$ since $(TR, KK') = -1$. Thus the line $FR$ is the polar of $T$, that is, $PQ$ is the chord of contact of the tangents from $T$.

### 111. The Normal.

**Def.** The line through the point of contact of a tangent and at right angles to it is called the *normal* at that point.

**Prop.** *If the normal at $P$ to any conic meet the axis in $G$, and $S$ be a focus of the conic then $SG = e \cdot SP$, where $e$ is the eccentricity.*

Let the tangent at $P$ meet the directrix corresponding to $S$ in $Z$.




Draw $PM$ perpendicular to the directrix.

Then since $PM$ is parallel to the axis, $\angle MPS = \angle PSG$.

Also since $PMZ$ and $PSZ$ are right angles, $PSZM$ is cyclic and $\angle SMP = \angle SZP =$ complement of $\angle SPZ = \angle SPG$.

Thus the $\triangle$s $SPG$, $PMS$ are similar and

$$SG : SP = PS : PM = e ; \therefore SG = e . SP.$$

The student can make for himself a figure shewing the case where $P$ is on the branch of a hyperbola remote from $S$. In this case it will be found

$$\begin{aligned} \angle SMP &= 180^\circ - \angle SZP \\ &= 90^\circ + \angle SPZ = \angle SPG. \end{aligned}$$

So that the $\triangle$s $SPG$ and $PMS$ are still similar.

## 112. The latus rectum.

**Def.** The focal chord perpendicular to the axis on which the focus lies is called the *latus rectum* of the conic.

Thus the latus rectum is the double ordinate through the focus to the axis (§ 103).

**Prop.** *The semi-latus rectum of a conic is a harmonic mean between the segments of any focal chord.*

Let $SL$ be the semi-latus rectum, and $PSQ$ any focal chord.

Draw $PM$ and $QR$ perpendicular to the directrix, and $PN$ and $QK$ perpendicular to the axis.

Then
$$\begin{aligned} SP : PM = e &= SL : SX \\ &= SQ : QR. \end{aligned}$$

And by similar triangles

$$\begin{aligned} SP : SQ &= SN : KS \\ &= XN - XS : XS - XK \quad \text{(Fig. 1)} \\ &= MP - XS : XS - RQ \\ &= e\,(MP - XS) : e\,(XS - RQ) \\ &= SP - SL : SL - SQ. \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$ $SP$, $SL$ and $SQ$ are in harmonic progression and

$$\frac{1}{SP} + \frac{1}{SQ} = \frac{2}{SL}.$$

This proposition requires some modification if $P$ and $Q$ are on opposite branches. We now have

$$SP : SQ = NS : KS = XS - XN : KX + XS \quad \text{(Fig. 2)}$$
$$= e(XS - MP) : e(QR + XS)$$
$$= SL - SP : SQ + SL.$$

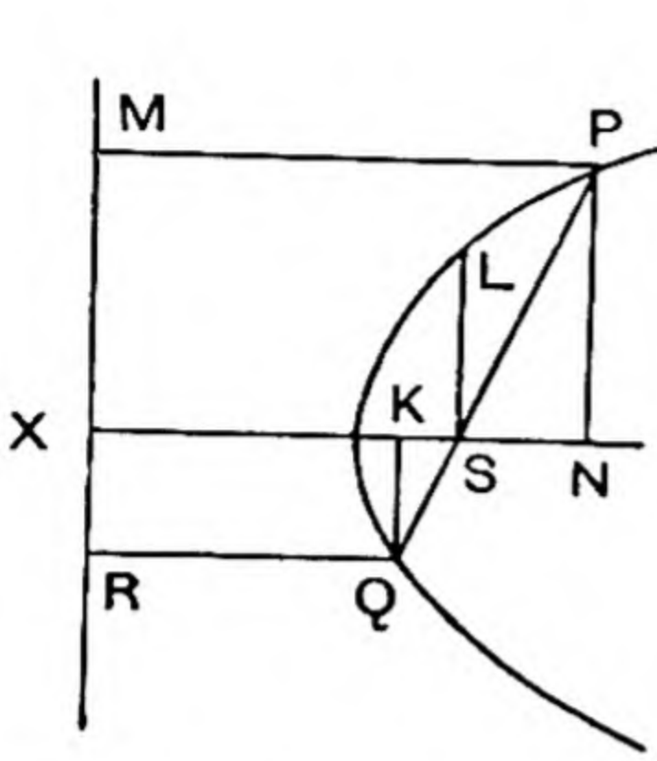



Fig. 1.

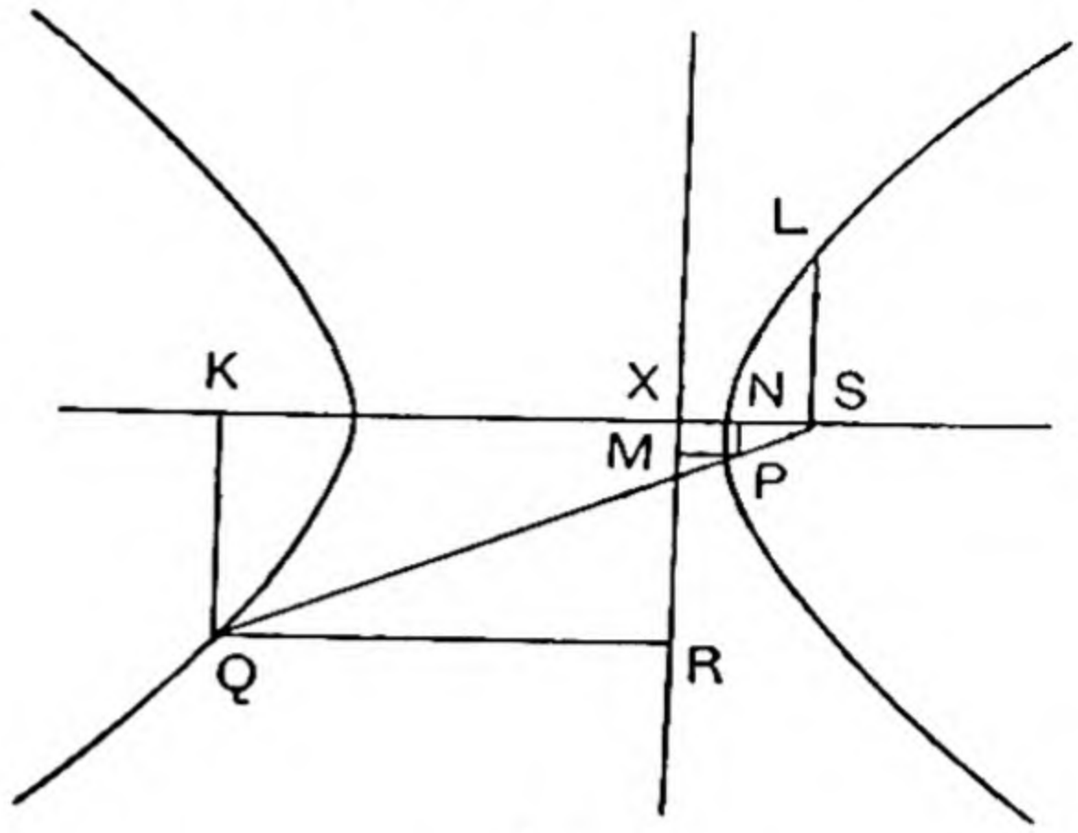



Fig. 2.

$$\therefore\ SP(SQ + SL) = SQ(SL - SP),$$
$$\therefore\ SQ \,.\, SL - SP \,.\, SL = 2SP \,.\, SQ,$$
$$\therefore\ \frac{1}{SP} - \frac{1}{SQ} = \frac{2}{SL}.$$

Thus in this case it is $SP$, $SL$ and $-SQ$ that are in H.P.

COR. *The rectangle contained by the segments of any focal chord varies as the length of the chord.*

For
$$\frac{1}{SP} \pm \frac{1}{SQ} = \frac{2}{SL},$$
according as $P$ and $Q$ be on the same or opposite branches ($P$ being on the branch adjacent to $S$), and in both cases we have
$$\frac{PQ}{SP \,.\, SQ} = \frac{2}{SL},$$
$$\therefore\ SP \,.\, SQ = \frac{SL}{2} \times PQ,$$
that is
$$SP \,.\, SQ \propto PQ.$$

If $SP$ and $SQ$ are in opposite directions $P$ and $Q$ lie on the same branch of the curve, and if they are in the same direction, $P$ and $Q$ lie on opposite branches.

**113. Prop.** ***Any conic can be projected into a circle with any point in the plane of the conic projected into the centre of the circle.***

For let $P$ be any point in the plane of the conic.

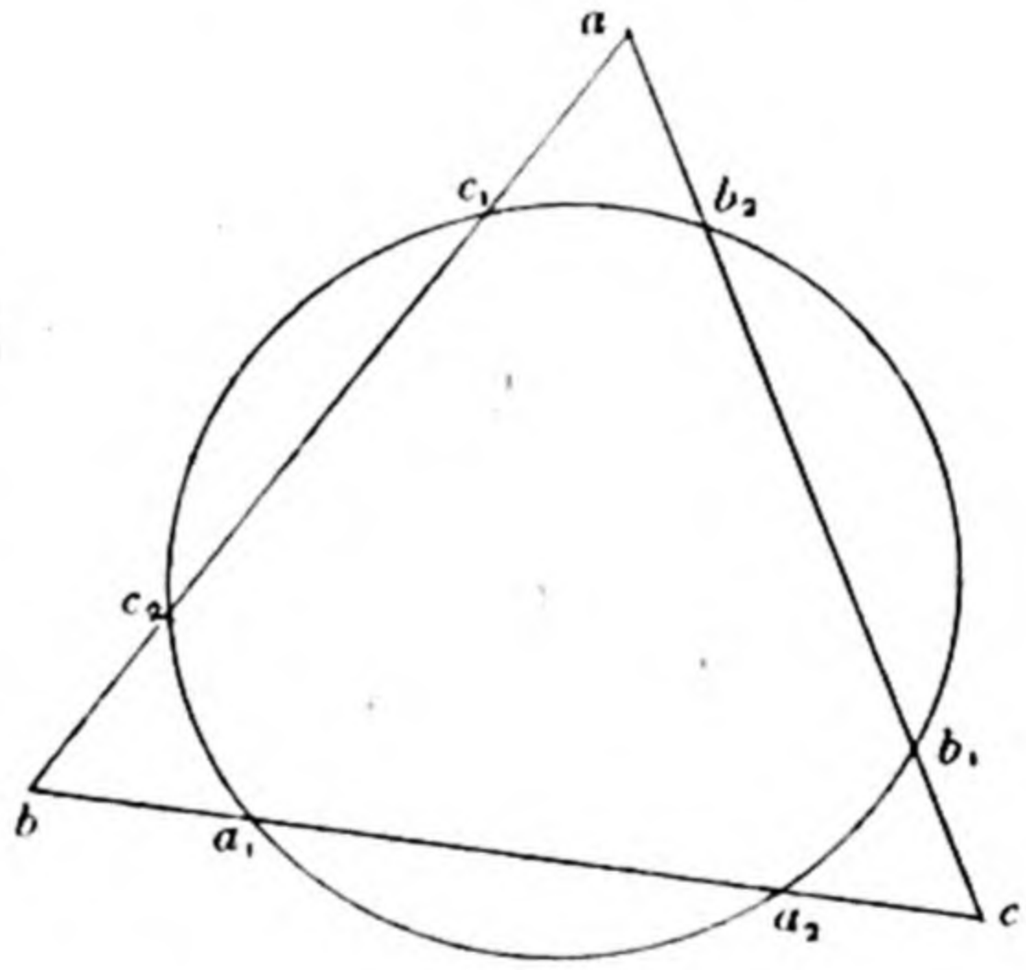
Take the polar of $P$ for the vanishing line and project so that the involution pencil formed by the pairs of conjugate lines through $P$ projects into an orthogonal involution (§ 87); then exactly as in § 93 we can prove that the curve of projection is a circle.

NOTE. In order that the projection may be a real one, the tangents from $P$ to the conic must not be real (Note to § 87), that is $P$ must lie within the conic.

**Carnot's theorem.**

**114. Prop.** *If a conic cut the sides of a triangle $ABC$ in $A_1, A_2$; $B_1, B_2$; $C_1, C_2$; then*

$$AB_1 . AB_2 . CA_1 . CA_2 . BC_1 . BC_2 = AC_1 . AC_2 . BA_1 . BA_2 . CB_1 . CB_2.$$




Project the conic into a circle; and denote the points in the projection by corresponding small letters.

Then since $ab_1 . ab_2 = ac_1 . ac_2$,

$$ca_1 . ca_2 = cb_1 . cb_2,$$

$$bc_1 . bc_2 = ba_1 . ba_2,$$

$\therefore\ ab_1 . ab_2 . ca_1 . ca_2 . bc_1 . bc_2 = ac_1 . ac_2 . ba_1 . ba_2 . cb_1 . cb_2.$

$\therefore$ the triangle formed by the lines $a_1b_2$, $b_1c_2$, $c_1a_2$ is in perspective with the triangle $abc$ (§ 68).

$\therefore$ the triangle formed by the lines $A_1B_2$, $B_1C_2$, $C_1A_2$ is in perspective with the triangle $ABC$.

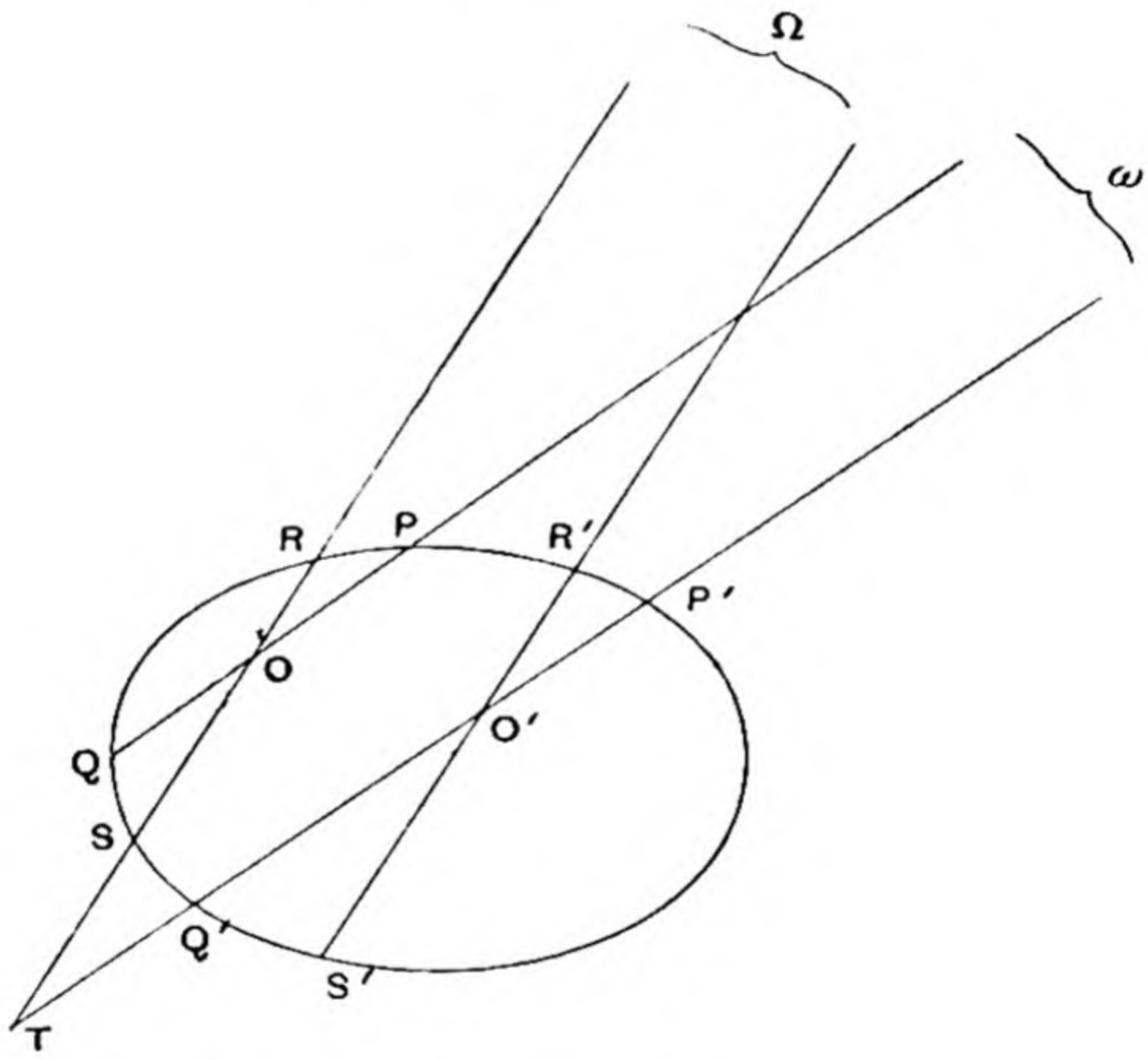
$\therefore$ by § 68

$$AB_1 . AB_2 . CA_1 . CA_2 . BC_1 . BC_2$$
$$= AC_1 . AC_2 . BA_1 . BA_2 . CB_1 . CB_2.$$

**Newton's theorem.**

**115. Prop.** *If $O$ be a variable point in the plane of a conic, and $PQ$, $RS$ be chords in fixed directions through $O$, then*

$$\frac{OP . OQ}{OR . OS} \text{ is constant.}$$




Let $O'$ be any other point and through $O'$ draw the chords $P'Q'$, $R'S'$ parallel respectively to $PQ$ and $RS$.

Let $QP$, $Q'P'$ meet in $\omega$ at infinity and $SR$, $S'R'$ in $\Omega$.

Let $P'Q'$ and $RS$ meet in $T$.

Now apply Carnot's theorem to the triangle $\omega OT$ and get

$$\frac{\omega P . \omega Q . OR . OS . TP' . TQ'}{\omega P' . \omega Q' . TR . TS . OP . OQ} = 1,$$

but
$$\frac{\omega P}{\omega P'} = 1 \text{ and } \frac{\omega Q}{\omega Q'} = 1.$$

$$\therefore \frac{TP' . TQ'}{TR . TS} = \frac{OP . OQ}{OR . OS}.$$

Next apply Carnot's theorem to the triangle $\Omega TO'$ and get

$$\frac{\Omega R . \Omega S . TP' . TQ' . O'R' . O'S'}{\Omega R' . \Omega S' . O'P' . O'Q' . TR . TS} = 1.$$

$$\therefore \frac{TP' . TQ'}{TR . TS} = \frac{O'P' . O'Q'}{O'R' . O'S'}.$$

Hence $$\frac{OP . OQ}{OR . OS} = \frac{O'P' . O'Q'}{O'R' . O'S'},$$

that is, $\frac{OP . OQ}{OR . OS}$ is constant.

This proposition is known as Newton's theorem.

NOTE. In applying Newton's theorem it must be remembered that the lines $OP$, $OQ$, &c. have sign as well as magnitude. If $OP$ and $OQ$ are opposite in direction, they have opposite sign and so for $OR$ and $OS$.

**116.** Newton's theorem is of great importance, as we shall see in later chapters, where considerable use will be made of it. We give some propositions illustrating its use.

**Prop.** *If two chords of a conic $PP'$ and $QQ'$ intersect in $O$, the ratio $OP . OP' : OQ . OQ'$ is equal to that of the lengths of the focal chords parallel to $PP'$ and $QQ'$.*

Let the focal chords parallel to $PP'$ and $QQ'$ be $pSp'$ and $qSq'$.

Then by Newton's theorem

$$OP . OP' : OQ . OQ' = Sp . Sp' : Sq . Sq'$$
$$= pp' : qq' \text{ (§ 112 Cor.).}$$

In the special case where $O$ is the centre of the conic we have $OP' = -OP$ and $OQ' = -OQ$.

$$\therefore OP^2 : OQ^2 = pp' : qq'.$$

NOTE. We have already explained that in using Newton's theorem, the signs of the segments of the line are to be considered.

If $OP . OP'$ and $OQ . OQ'$ have opposite signs so also will $Sp . Sp'$ and $Sq . Sq'$ have opposite signs. This only happens in

the case of the hyperbola, and when one of the four points $p$, $p'$ and $q$, $q'$ lies on the opposite branch to the other three. Then one of the focal chords $pp'$, $qq'$ will join two points on opposite branches and the other will join two points on the same branch.

If we make the convention that a negative value be attached to the length of a focal chord if it joins two points on opposite branches otherwise it is to count positive the relation

$$OP \,.\, OP' : OQ \,.\, OQ' = pp' : qq'$$

is algebraically as well as numerically correct.

So also it is true, with the same convention as to sign, that if $CP$, $CQ$ be the semidiameters parallel to the focal chords, $pp'$, $qq'$

$$pp' : qq' = CP^2 : CQ^2.$$

And from this we see that of the two diameters parallel to two focal chords, one of which joins two points on the same branch and the other two points on opposite branches, only one can meet the curve in real points for the ratio $CP^2 : CQ^2$ has now a negative value.

**117. Prop.** *If $OP$ and $OQ$ be two tangents to a conic then $OP^2 : OQ^2$ is equal to the ratio of the focal chords parallel respectively to $OP$ and $OQ$.*

Let the focal chords be $pSp'$, $qSq'$. Then regarding $OP$ as meeting the curve in two coincident points $P$, and $OQ$ similarly, we have by Newton's theorem

$$OP \,.\, OP : OQ \,.\, OQ = Sp \,.\, Sp' : Sq \,.\, Sq',$$

$$\therefore\ OP^2 : OQ^2 = pp' : qq'.$$

Whence we see that the focal chords have the same sign.

It is clear too that the ratio of the tangents from a point to a central conic is equal to that of the diameters parallel to them.

**118. Prop.** *If a circle cut a conic in four points the chords joining their points of intersection in pairs are equally inclined to the axis.*

Let the conic and circle intersect in the four points $P$, $Q$, $P'$, $Q'$.

Let $PP'$ and $QQ'$ intersect in $O$.

Draw focal chords $pSp'$, $qSq'$ parallel to $PP'$ and $QQ'$.

Then, by Newton's theorem

$$OP \cdot OP' : OQ \cdot OQ' = Sp \cdot Sp' : Sq \cdot Sq'$$
$$= pp' : qq'.$$

But from the circle

$$OP \cdot OP' = OQ \cdot OQ',$$
$$\therefore\ pp' = qq' \text{ and } Sp \cdot Sp' = Sq \cdot Sq'.$$

Thus the parallel focal chords have the same sign, their lengths are equal and the rectangles contained by their segments are equal.

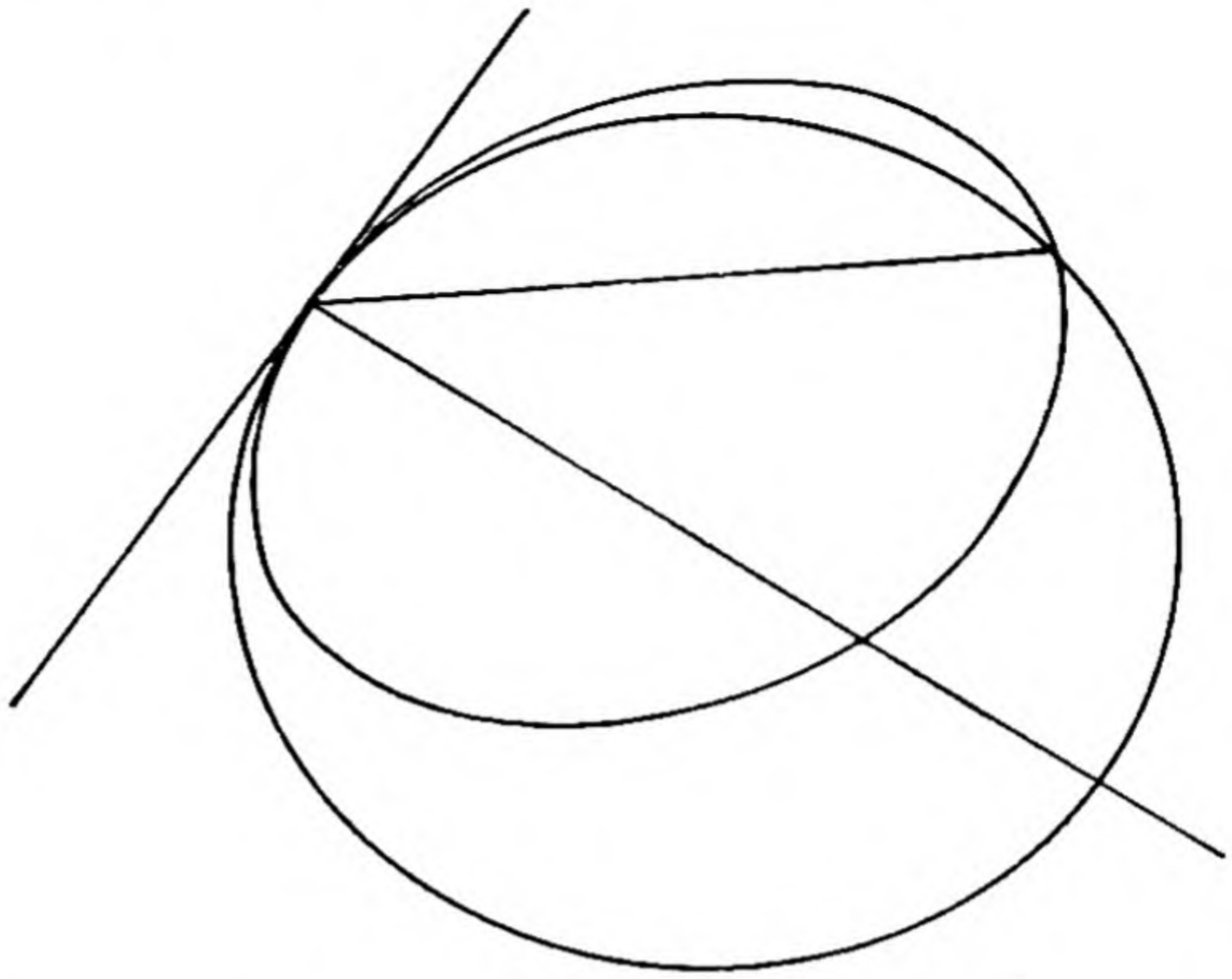
These chords must then be symmetrically placed and make equal angles with the axis. Thus $PP'$ and $QQ'$, parallel to them, make equal angles with the axis.

Cor. If a circle touch a conic at one point and cut it at two others, the tangent at the point of contact and the chord joining the two points of intersection make equal angles with the axis.

**Circle of curvature.**

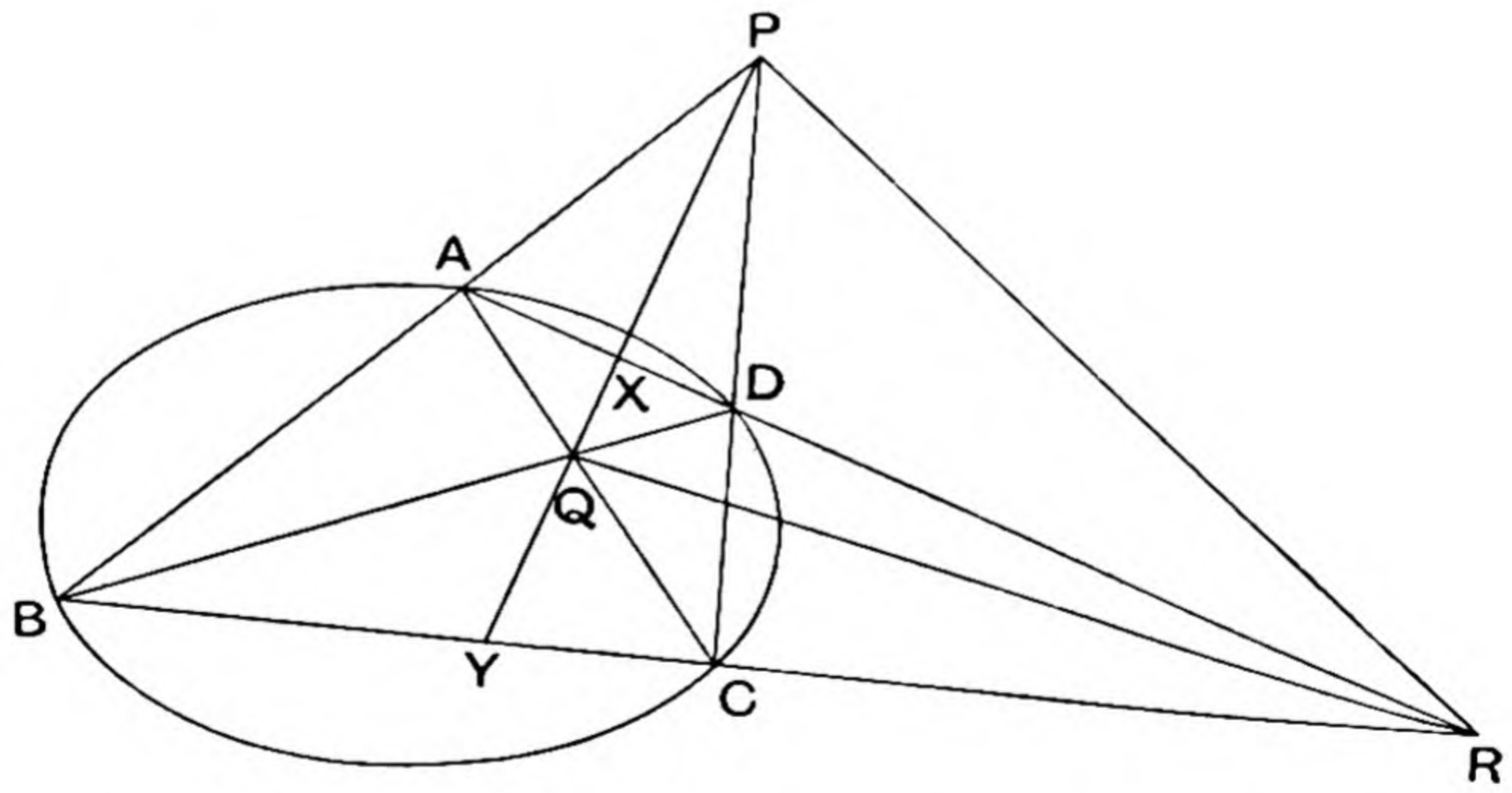
**119.** An infinite number of circles can be drawn to touch a conic at a given point $P$, such circles having their centres along the normal at the point. These circles will in general cut the conic in two other points, but in the special case where one of these other two points coincides with the point of contact $P$ the circle is called the circle of curvature at $P$. This circle may be regarded as the limiting case of the circle passing through $P$ and through two points on the conic consecutive to $P$, so that the conic and the circle have two consecutive tangents in common. They have then the same rate of curvature at that point. The subject of curvature properly belongs to the Differential Calculus, but it seems desirable to give here the principal properties of the circles of curvature of conics. Accordingly we shall at the end of the chapters on the parabola, ellipse, and hyperbola add a proposition relating to the circles of curvature for these curves. It is clear from § 118 that if the circle of curvature at a point $P$ of a conic cut the conic again in $Q$ then $PQ$ and the tangent at $P$ are equally inclined to the axis. For the tangent at $P$ and the chord $PQ$ are the common chords of the circle and the conic.

The following figure illustrates the circle of curvature at a point of a conic.



## Self-Polar Triangle.

**119a. Prop.** *If a conic pass through the four points of a quadrangle, the diagonal or harmonic triangle is self-polar with regard to the conic—that is, each vertex is the pole of the opposite side.*




Let $ABCD$ be the quadrangle; $PQR$ the diagonal or harmonic triangle.

Let $PQ$ cut $AD$ and $BC$ in $X$ and $Y$.

Then $$(AD, XR) = -1,$$

$\therefore$ the polar of $R$ goes through $X$ (§ 92 (5))

and $$(BC, YR) = -1,$$

$\therefore$ the polar of $R$ goes through $Y$.

$\therefore$ $PQ$ is the polar of $R$.

Similarly $QR$ is the polar of $P$, and $PR$ of $Q$.

Thus the proposition is proved.

Another way of stating this proposition would be to say that the diagonal points when taken in pairs are conjugate for the conic.

The triangle $PQR$ is also called *self-conjugate* with regard to the conic.

## EXERCISES

1. Given a conic and a focus and corresponding directrix of it, shew how to draw the tangent at any point.

2. Given two points on a conic and a directrix, shew that the locus of the corresponding focus is a circle.

3. $POP'$ and $QOQ'$ are two chords of a conic intersecting in $O$, prove that $PQ$ and $P'Q'$ meet on the polar of $O$.

[Project the conic into a circle and $O$ into the centre.]

4. If the tangent at the end of a latus rectum $LSL'$ meet the tangent at the nearer vertex $A$ in $T$ then $TA = AS$.

5. If the tangent at any point $P$ of a conic meet a directrix in $F$, and the latus rectum through the corresponding focus in $D$ then $SD : SF$ = the eccentricity.

6. If the normal at $P$ to a conic meet the axis in $G$, and $GL$ be perpendicular to the focal radius $SP$, then $PL$ = the semi-latus rectum.

7. If $PSP'$ be a focal chord and $Q$ any point on the conic and if $PQ$ and $P'Q$ meet the directrix corresponding to the focus $S$ in $F$ and $F'$, $FSF'$ is a right angle.

8. If a conic touch the sides opposite to $A$, $B$, $C$ of a triangle $ABC$ in $D$, $E$, $F$ respectively then $AD$, $BE$, $CF$ are concurrent.

[Use § 114.]

9. By means of Newton's theorem prove that if $PN$ be the ordinate of a point $P$ on a parabola whose vertex is $A$, then $PN^2 : AN$ is independent of the position of $P$ on the curve.

10. Conics are drawn through two fixed points $D$ and $E$, and are such that $DE$ subtends a constant angle at a focus of them; shew that the line joining this focus to the pole of $DE$ passes through a fixed point.

11. The polar of any point with respect to a conic meets a directrix on the diameter which bisects the focal chord drawn through the point and the corresponding focus.

12. Prove that the line joining a focus of a conic to that point in the corresponding directrix at which a diameter bisecting a system of parallel chords meets it is perpendicular to the chords.

[Use §§ 95 and 106.]

13. $P$ and $Q$ are two points on a conic, and the diameters bisecting the chords parallel respectively to the tangents at $P$ and $Q$ meet a directrix in $M$ and $N$; shew that $MN$ subtends at the corresponding focus an angle equal to that between the tangents at $P$ and $Q$.

14. Given a focus and the corresponding directrix of a variable conic, shew that the polar of a given point passes through a fixed point.

15. Given a focus and two points of a variable conic, prove that the corresponding directrix must pass through one or other of two fixed points.

16. If two conics have a common focus, a chord common to the two conics will pass through the point of intersection of the corresponding directrices.

17. If $T$ be any point on the tangent at a point $P$ of a conic of which $S$ is a focus, and if $TM$ be the perpendicular to $SP$, and $TN$ the perpendicular on the directrix corresponding to $S$, then $SM : TN = e$. (Adams' theorem.)

18. Given a focus of a conic and a chord through that focus, prove that the locus of the extremities of the corresponding latus rectum is a circle.

19. If $TP$ and $TQ$ be two tangents to a conic prove that the portion of a tangent parallel to $PQ$ intercepted between $TP$ and $TQ$ is bisected at the point of contact.

20. A diameter of a conic meets the curve in $P$ and bisects the chord $QR$ which is a normal at $Q$, shew that the diameter through $Q$ bisects the chord through $P$ which is a normal at $P$.

21. $PQ$ is a chord of a conic cutting the axis in $K$, and $T$ is the pole of $PQ$; the diameter bisecting $PQ$ meets a directrix in $Z$ and $S$ is the corresponding focus; prove that $TS$ is parallel to $ZK$.

22. If $AA'$, $BB'$, $CC'$ be chords of a conic concurrent at $O$, and $P$ any point on the conic, then the points of intersection of the straight lines $BC$, $PA'$, of $CA$, $PB'$, and of $AB$, $PC'$ lie on a straight line through $O$.

[Project to infinity the line joining $O$ to the point of intersection of $AB$, $PC'$ and the conic into a circle.]

23. $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$ are four points on a conic; $AB$, $CD$ meet in $E$; $AC$ and $BD$ in $F$; and the tangents at $A$ and $D$ in $G$; prove that $E$, $F$, $G$ are collinear.

[Project $AD$ and $BC$ into parallel lines and the conic into a circle.]

24. If a conic be inscribed in a quadrilateral, the line joining two of the points of contact will pass through one of the angular points of the triangle formed by the diagonals of the quadrilateral.

25. Prove Pascal's theorem, that if a hexagon be inscribed in a conic the pairs of opposite sides meet in three collinear points.

[Project the conic into a circle so that the line joining the points of intersection of two pairs of opposite sides is projected to infinity.]

26. $A$ is a fixed point in the plane of a conic, and $P$ any point on the polar of $A$. The tangents from $P$ to the conic meet a given line in $Q$ and $R$. Shew that $AR$, $PQ$, and $AQ$, $PR$ intersect on a fixed line.

[Project the conic into a circle having the projection of $A$ for centre.]

27. A system of conics touch $AB$ and $AC$ at $B$ and $C$. $D$ is a fixed point, and $BD$, $CD$ meet one of the conics in $P$, $Q$. Shew that $PQ$ meets $BC$ in a fixed point.

28. If a conic pass through the points $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$, the points of intersection of $AC$ and $BD$, of $AB$ and $CD$, of the tangents at $B$ and $C$, and of the tangents at $A$ and $D$ are collinear.

29. Through a fixed point $A$ on a conic two fixed straight lines $AI$, $AI'$ are drawn, $S$ and $S'$ are two fixed points and $P$ a variable point on the conic; $PS$, $PS'$ meet $AI$, $AI'$ in $Q$, $Q'$ respectively, shew that $QQ'$ passes through a fixed point.

30. If a conic cut the sides $BC$, $CA$, $AB$ of a triangle $ABC$ in $A_1A_2$, $B_1B_2$, $C_1C_2$, and $AA_1$, $BB_1$, $CC_1$ are concurrent, then will $AA_2$, $BB_2$, $CC_2$ be concurrent.

31. When a triangle is self-conjugate for a conic, two and only two of its sides cut the curve in real points.

32. Prove that of two conjugate diameters of a hyperbola, one and only one can cut the curve in real points.

[Two conjugate diameters and the line at infinity form a self-conjugate triangle.]

33. Given four points $S$, $A$, $B$, $C$, shew that in general four conics can be drawn through $A$, $B$, $C$ having $S$ as focus; and that three of the conics are hyperbolas with $A$, $B$, $C$ not on the same branch, while the remaining conic may be an ellipse, a parabola, or a hyperbola having $A$, $B$, $C$ on the same branch.

34. Prove that a circle can be projected into a parabola with any given point within the circle projected into the focus.

35. Prove that a circle can be projected into an ellipse with two given points within the circle projected into the centre and a focus of the ellipse.

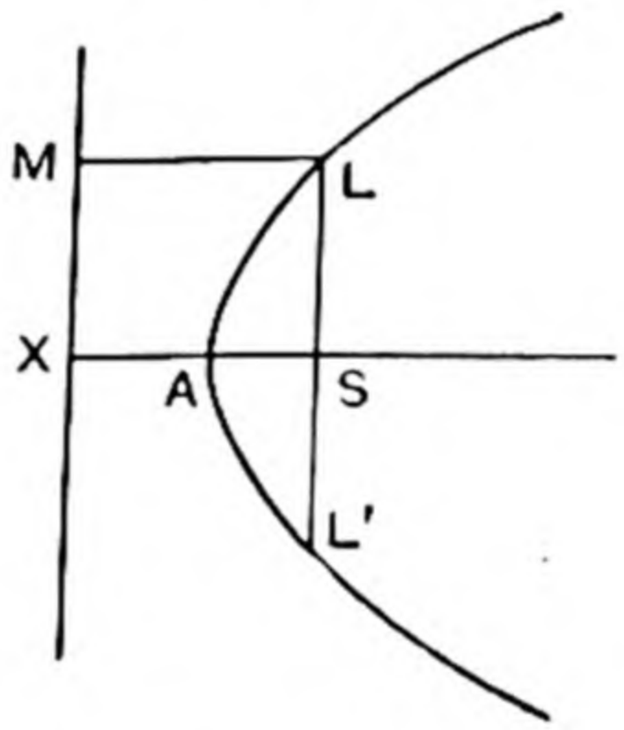
36. Prove that a circle can be projected into a hyperbola with a given point $P$ within the circle and another given point $Q$ without it projected respectively into a focus and the centre of the hyperbola.

# CHAPTER XI

## THE PARABOLA

**120.** The form of the parabola has already been indicated in §§ 96 and 97. In this chapter we shall develop the special properties of the curve. Throughout $A$ will stand for the vertex, $S$ for the focus, $X$ for the intersection of the directrix with the axis, and $\Omega$ for the point at infinity along the axis, at which point, as we have seen, the parabola touches the line at infinity.

**Prop.** *The latus rectum* $= 4AS$.




Let $LSL'$ be the latus rectum. Draw $LM$ perpendicular to the directrix. Then $LL' = 2LS = 2LM = 2SX = 4AS$.

**121. Prop.** *If $PN$ be the ordinate of the point $P$, then* $PN^2 = 4AS \,.\, AN$.

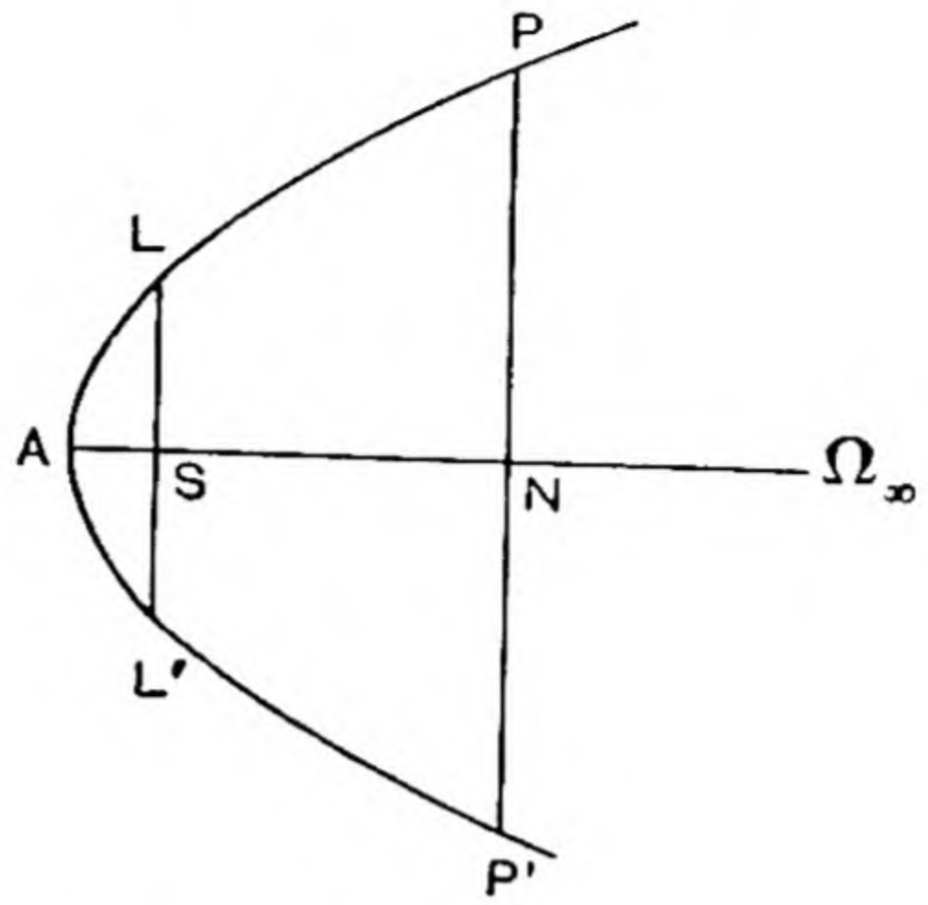
Let $PN$ meet the parabola again in $P'$, and let $LSL'$ be the latus rectum.

Then by Newton's theorem (§ 115),

$$NP \,.\, NP' : SL \,.\, SL' = NA \,.\, N\Omega : SA \,.\, S\Omega$$
$$= NA : SA$$

since $\Omega$ is at infinity.

$$\therefore\ PN^2 : SL^2 = AN : AS;$$
$$\therefore\ PN^2 : 4AS^2 = AN : AS;$$
$$\therefore\ PN^2 = 4AS \,.\, AN.$$




This proposition will later on be seen to be only a special case of a more general theorem.

**122.** The preceding proposition shews that a parabola is the locus of a point in a plane such that the square of its distance from a line $l$ varies as its distance from a perpendicular line $l'$. The line $l$ is the axis, $l'$ the tangent at the vertex, and the constant of variation is the length of the latus rectum.

To determine the parabola we ought to know on which side of the line $l'$ the point lies. If it may lie on either side then the locus is *two* parabolas, each of which is got from the other by rotating the figure about the tangent at the vertex through two right angles.

### 123. Tangent and Normal.

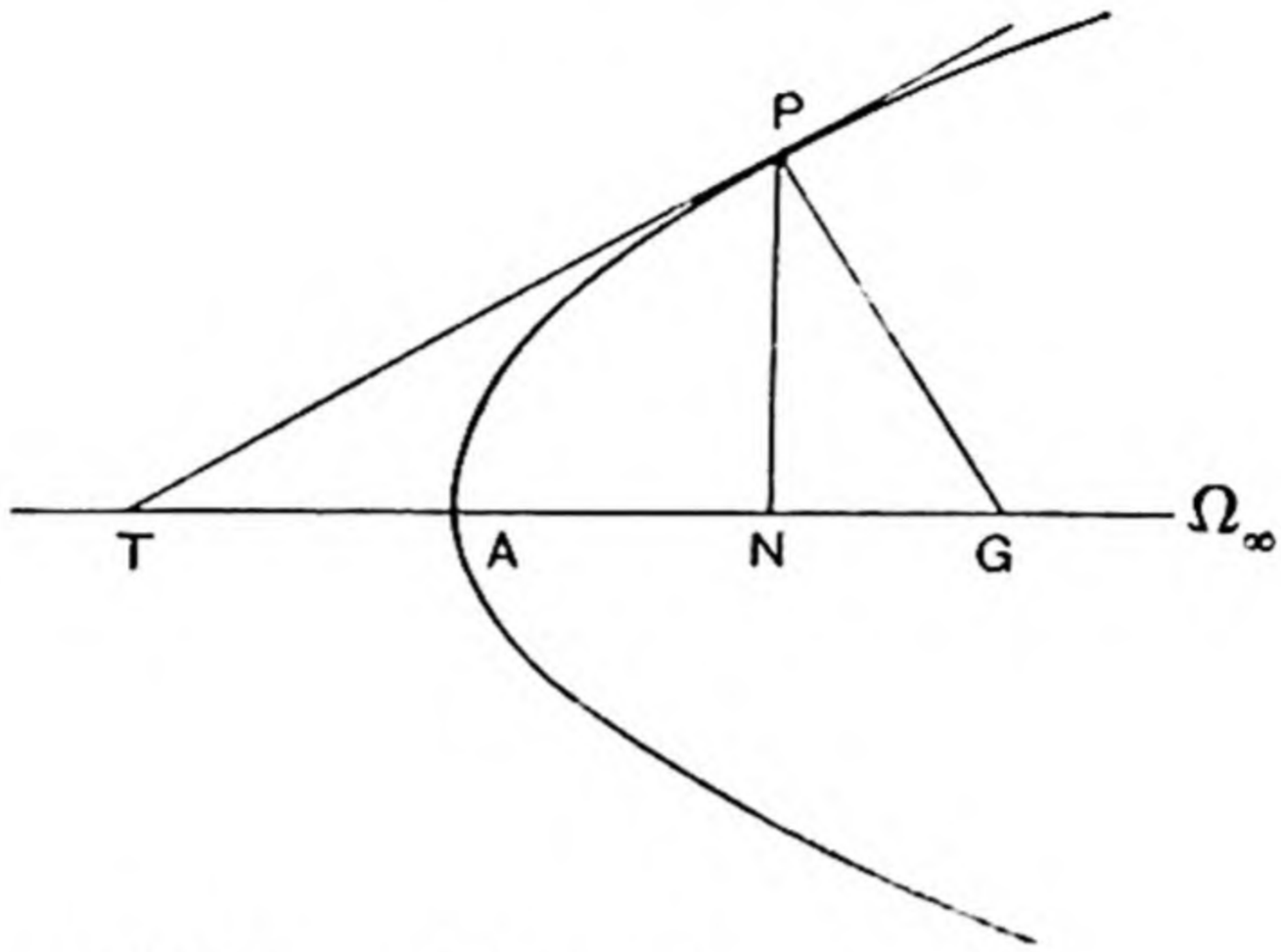
**Prop.** If the tangent and normal at $P$ meet the axis in $T$ and $G$ respectively, and $PN$ be the ordinate of $P$,

$$(1)\quad TA = AN,$$
$$(2)\quad NG = 2AS.$$

The first of these properties has been already proved in § 97. We have seen that if $PN$ meet the curve again in $P'$, the tangents at $P$ and $P'$ meet on the line of the axis, that is, they

intersect in $T$. Then by the harmonic property of the pole and polar

$$(TN, A\Omega) = -1;$$
$$\therefore\ TA = AN.$$




Also since $TPG$ is a right angle

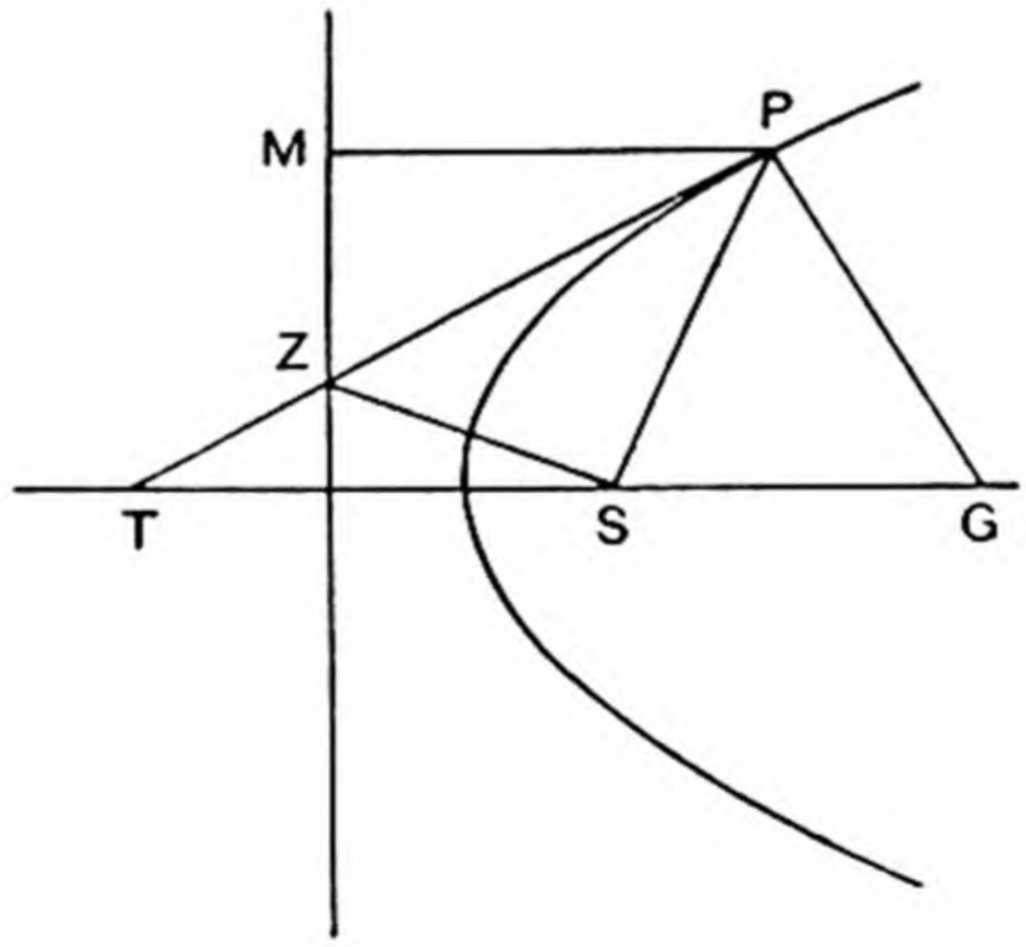
$$PN^2 = TN \,.\, NG = 2AN \,.\, NG.$$

But $$PN^2 = 4AS \,.\, AN \text{ (§ 121)},$$

$$\therefore\ NG = 2AS.$$

**Def.** $NG$ is called the *subnormal* of the point $P$. Thus in a parabola the subnormal is constant.

**124. Prop.** *The tangent at any point of a parabola makes equal angles with the axis and the focal distance of the point.*




Let the tangent at $P$ meet the directrix in $Z$, and the axis in $T$. Draw $PM$ perpendicular to the directrix.

Now since $SP = PM$, and $PZ$ is common to the $\triangle$s $SPZ$, $MPZ$ which have the angles at $M$ and $S$ right angles,

$$\therefore \triangle SPZ \equiv \triangle MPZ$$

$$\text{and } \angle SPT = \angle TPM = \angle STP.$$

Cor. If the normal at $P$ meet the axis $G$ then

$$SG = SP = ST.$$

That $ST = SP$ follows from the equality of the angles $SPT$ and $STP$.

Further the complements of these angles must be equal;

$$\therefore \angle SPG = \angle SGP;$$

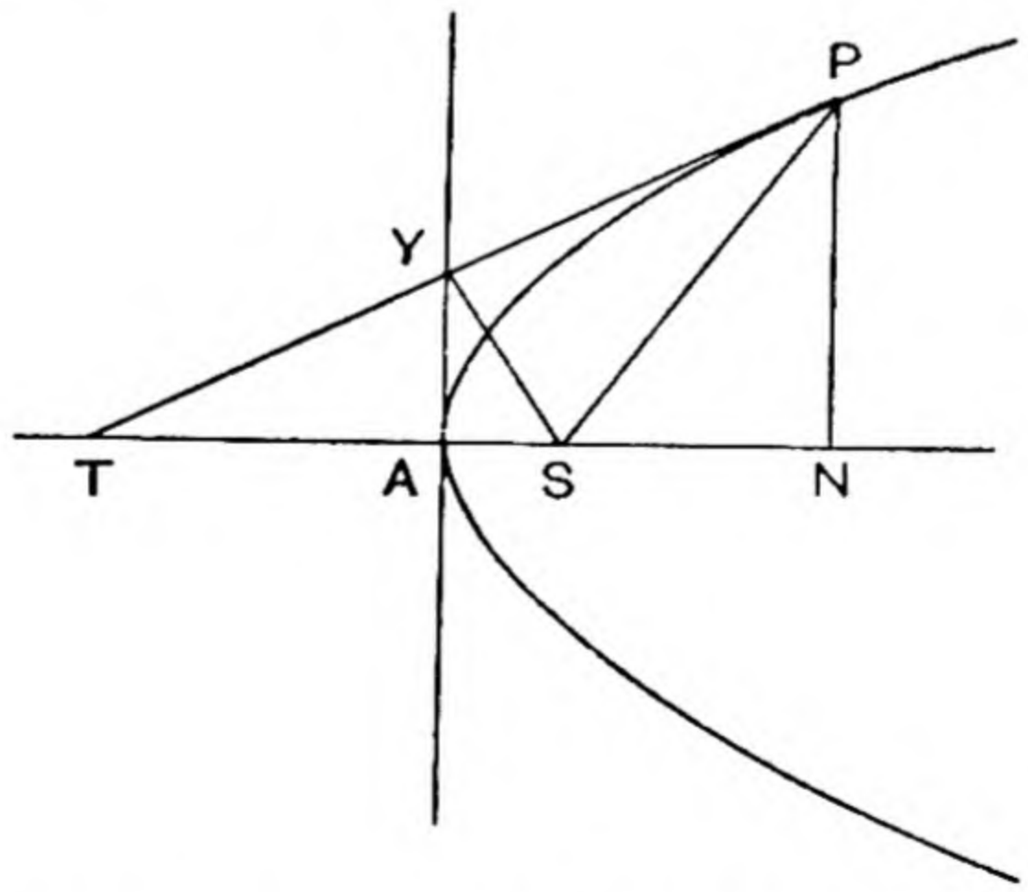
$$\therefore SG = SP.$$

We note that the equality of $SG$ and $SP$ in a parabola follows from the fact that for any conic $SG = e \,.\, SP$ (§ 111).

**125. Prop.** *The foot of the perpendicular $Y$ from the focus on to the tangent at any point $P$ of a parabola lies on the tangent at the vertex and $SY^2 = SA \,.\, SP$.*

The first part of this proposition is implicitly proved in § 97. We can also prove it thus:

Let the tangent at $P$ meet the axis in $T$. Since $ST = SP$, $SY$ will bisect $TP$.




But if $PN$ be the ordinate of $P$, $TA = AN$.

$\therefore AY$ is parallel to $NP$, that is $AY$ is the tangent at the vertex.

Further as $SYT$ is a right angle and $YA$ perpendicular to $ST$, $SY^2 = SA \,.\, ST = SA \,.\, SP$.

Cor. 1. $\angle SPY = \angle SYA$.

Cor. 2. If the locus of the foot of the perpendicular from a fixed point on a variable line be a straight line, then the variable line touches a parabola having its focus at the fixed point.

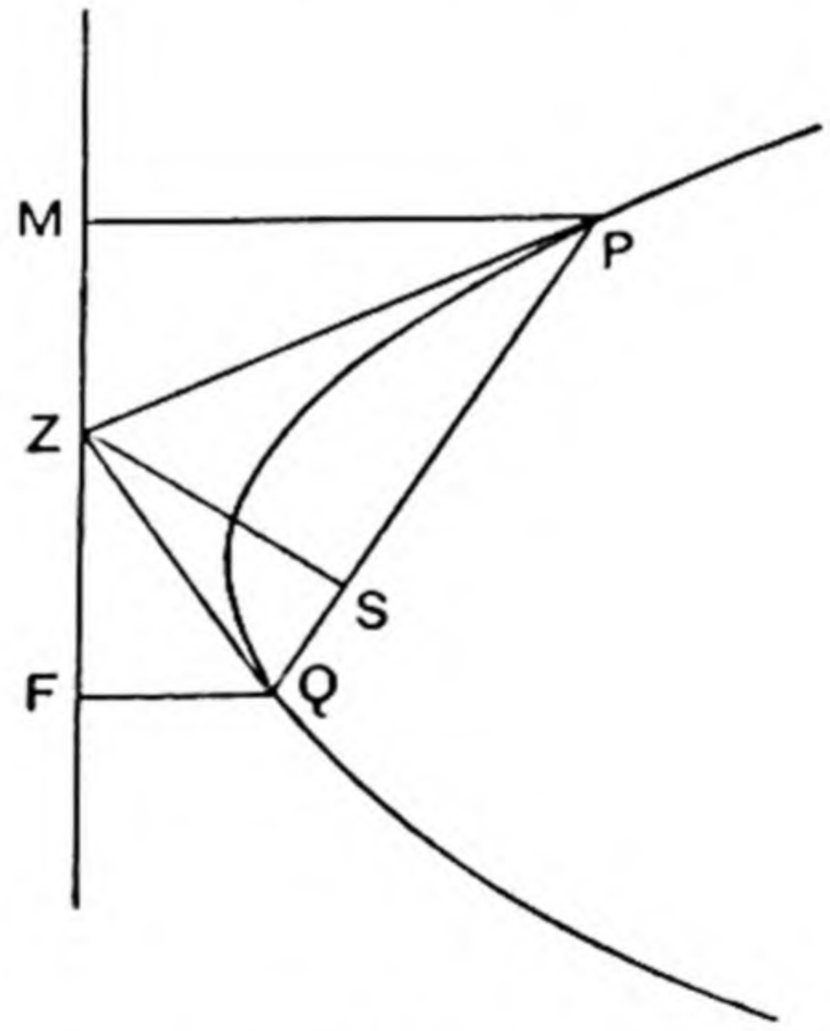
**Def.** When a line moves in a plane so as always to touch a certain curve, the curve is called the *envelope* of the line.

**Pair of Tangents.**

**126. Prop.** *Tangents to a parabola at the extremities of a focal chord intersect at right angles in the directrix.*

That they intersect in the directrix we know already, since the focus and directrix are pole and polar.

Let $PSQ$ be a focal chord, and let the tangents meet in the directrix in $Z$. Draw $PM$ and $QF$ perpendicular to the directrix.




Then as we have seen in § 124

$$\triangle SPZ \equiv \triangle MPZ,$$

$$\therefore \angle SZP = \angle MZP.$$

Similarly $\angle SZQ = \angle FZQ$.

Thus $\angle QZP = \frac{1}{2}$ of two right $\angle$s

$=$ a right angle.

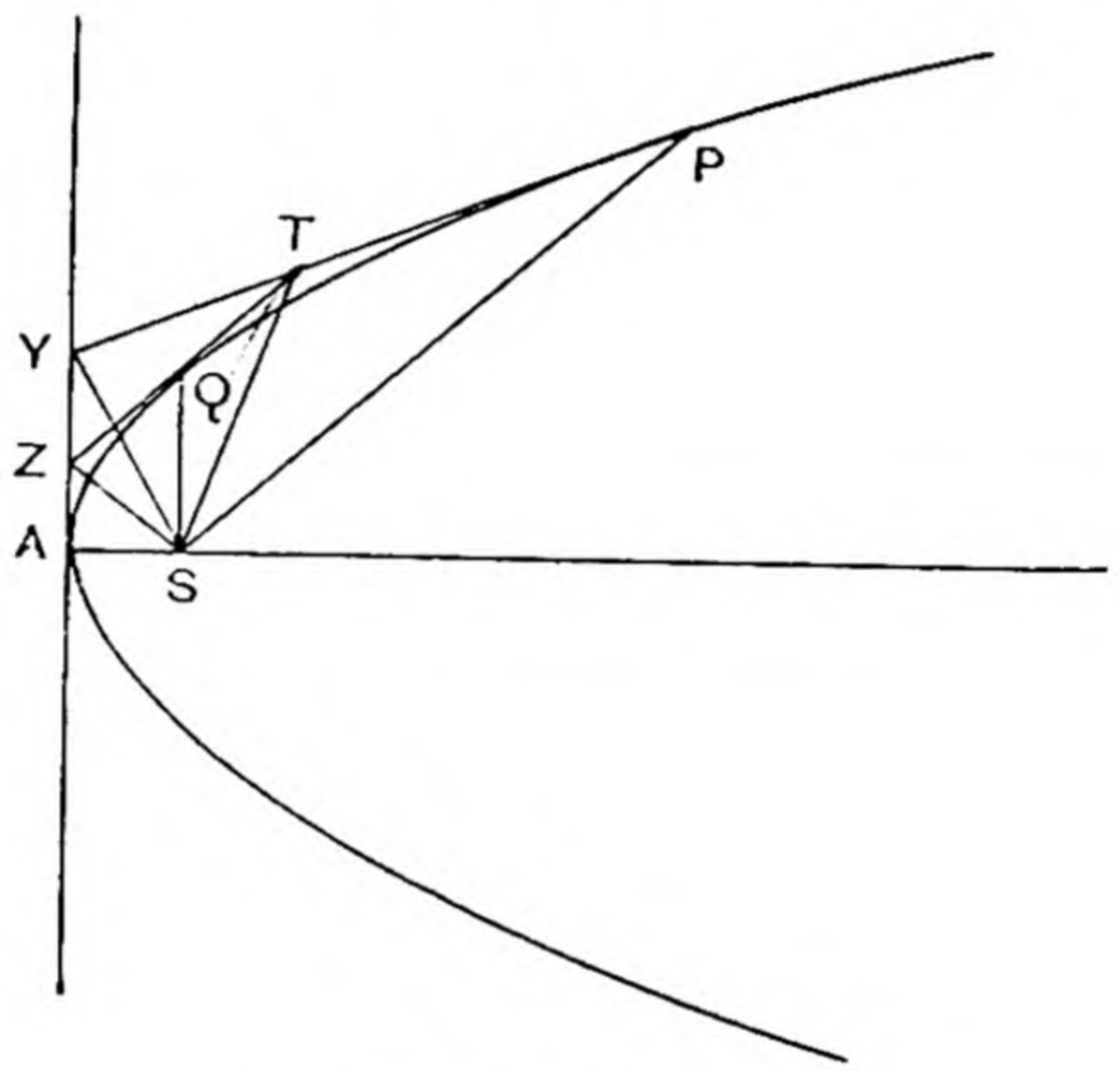
**127. Prop.** *If $TP$ and $TQ$ be two tangents to a parabola, the triangles $SPT$, $STQ$ are similar.*

We know already that the angles $PST$, $TSQ$ are equal (§ 109).

Let the tangents at $P$ and $Q$ meet the tangent at the vertex in $Y$ and $Z$, then $SYT$ and $SZT$ are right angles (§ 125).

Then $\angle SPY = \angle SYA$ (§ 125)

$= \angle STZ$ since $SZYT$ is cyclic.




Thus $\angle SPT = \angle STQ$;

$\therefore$ the remaining angle $STP = \angle SQT$ and the triangles $SPT$ and $STQ$ are similar.

Cor. 1. $ST^2 = SP \,.\, SQ$

for $SP : ST = ST : SQ.$

Cor. 2. $TP^2 : TQ^2 = SP : SQ$

for $TP^2 : TQ^2 = \triangle SPT : \triangle STQ$

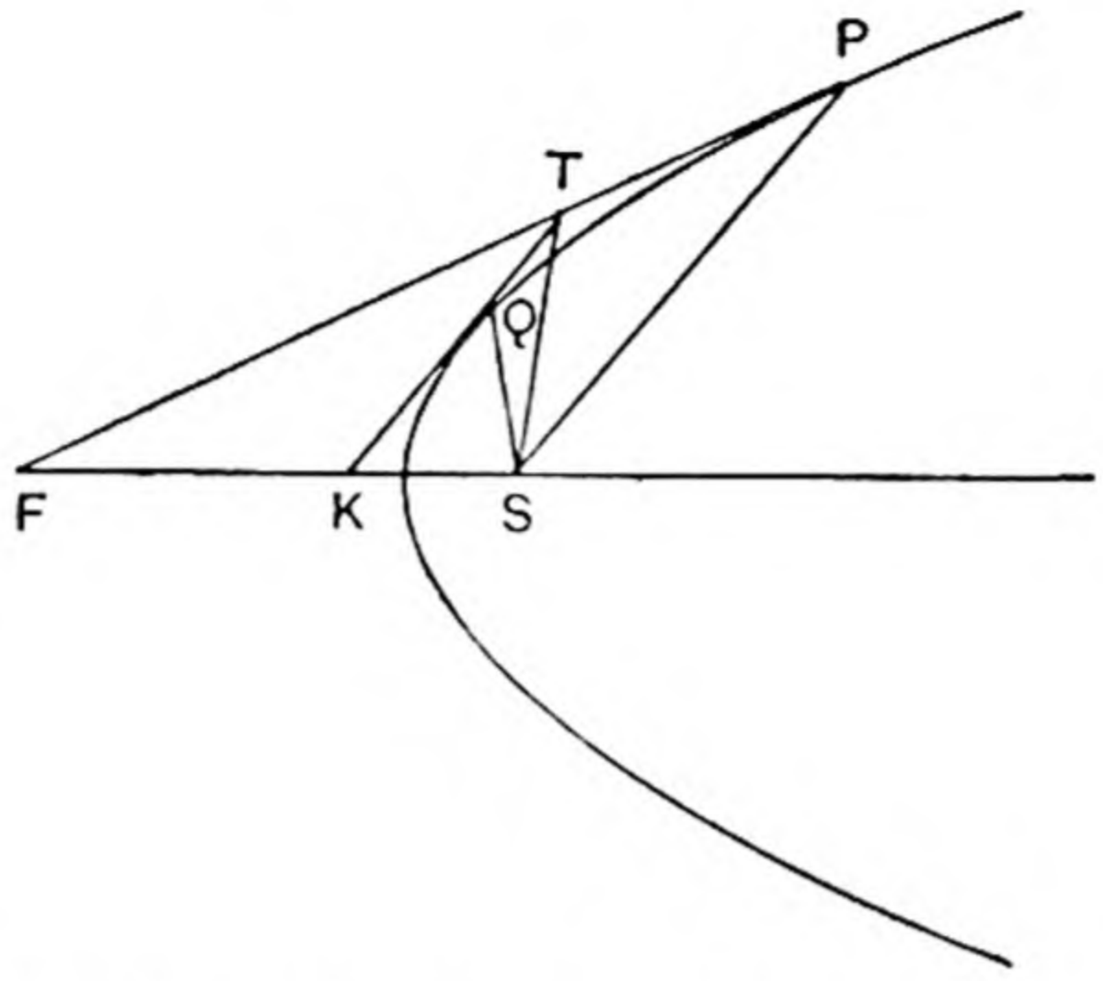
$= SP \,.\, ST : ST \,.\, SQ$

since $\angle PST = \angle TSQ$

$= SP : SQ.$

**128. Prop.** *The exterior angle between two tangents to a parabola is equal to half the angle which their chord of contact subtends at the focus.*

Let the tangents at $P$ and $Q$ meet in $T$, and let them meet the axis in $F$ and $K$ respectively.




Then
$$\begin{aligned}
\angle FTK &= \angle SKQ - \angle SFP \\
&= \angle SQK - \angle SPT \\
&= 2 \text{ right angles} - \angle SQT - \angle SPT \\
&= 2 \text{ right angles} - \angle STP - \angle SPT \\
&= \angle TSP \\
&= \tfrac{1}{2} \angle PSQ.
\end{aligned}$$

**129. Parabola escribed to a triangle.**

When the sides of a triangle are tangents to a parabola, the triangle is said to *circumscribe* the parabola. But it must be clearly understood that the triangle does not enclose the parabola, for no finite triangle can enclose a parabola, which is infinite in extent. When a triangle circumscribes a parabola, the parabola is really escribed to it, that is, it touches one side of the triangle and the other two sides produced. Only triangles which have the line at infinity for one of their sides can enclose the parabola, and in the strict sense of the word be said to circumscribe it. It is convenient however to extend the meaning of the word 'circumscribe' and to understand by a triangle circumscribing a conic a triangle whose sides touch the conic whether the triangle encloses the conic or not.

**130. Prop.** *The circumcircle of the triangle formed by three tangents to a parabola passes through the focus.*

Understanding the word 'circumscribe' as explained in § 129 we may state this proposition thus:

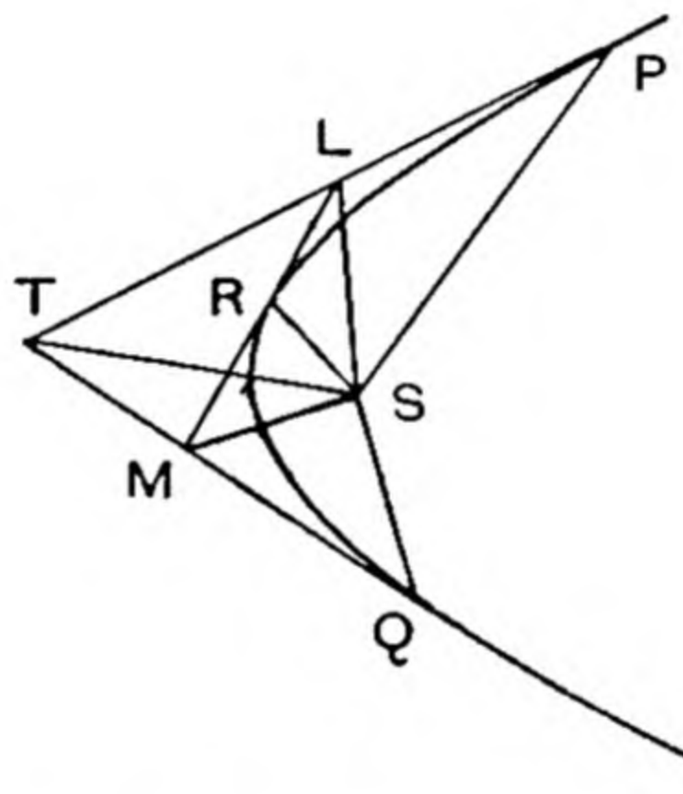
*If a triangle circumscribe a parabola its circumcircle goes through the focus.*

This can be seen from the fact that the feet of the perpendiculars from the focus on the three sides of the triangle which touch the parabola are collinear, lying as they do on the tangent at $A$.

$\therefore$ $S$ lies on the circumcircle of the triangle (§ 7).

Or we may prove the proposition in another way:

Let the tangents at $P, Q, R$ form the triangle $TLM$ as in the figure.




Then as $\triangle SPL$ is similar to $\triangle SLR$, $\angle SLR = \angle SPL$.

And as $\triangle SPT$ is similar to $\triangle STQ$, $\angle STQ = \angle SPT$.

$\therefore$ $\angle SLM = \angle STM$,

that is, $SLTM$ is cyclic, or $S$ lies on the circle through $T$, $L$ and $M$.

Cor. *The orthocentre of a triangle circumscribing a parabola lies on the directrix.*

For if $TLM$ be the triangle, the line joining $S$ to the orthocentre is bisected by the tangent at the vertex, which is, as we have seen, the pedal line of $S$ (§ 8).

$\therefore$ the orthocentre must lie on the directrix.

**131. Prop.** *If the tangents at $P$ and $Q$ to a parabola meet in $T$, and a third tangent at $R$ cut them in $L$ and $M$, the triangle $SLM$ is similar to the triangles $SPT$ and $STQ$, and*

$$PL : LT = TM : MQ = LR : RM.$$

By the preceding proposition $S$ lies on the circumcircle of $TLM$.

$\therefore \angle SML = \angle STL$

and $\angle SLM = \angle SPT$ from the similar $\triangle$s $SPL$, $SLR$.

$\therefore \triangle SLM$ is similar to $\triangle SPT$ and therefore also to $\triangle STQ$.

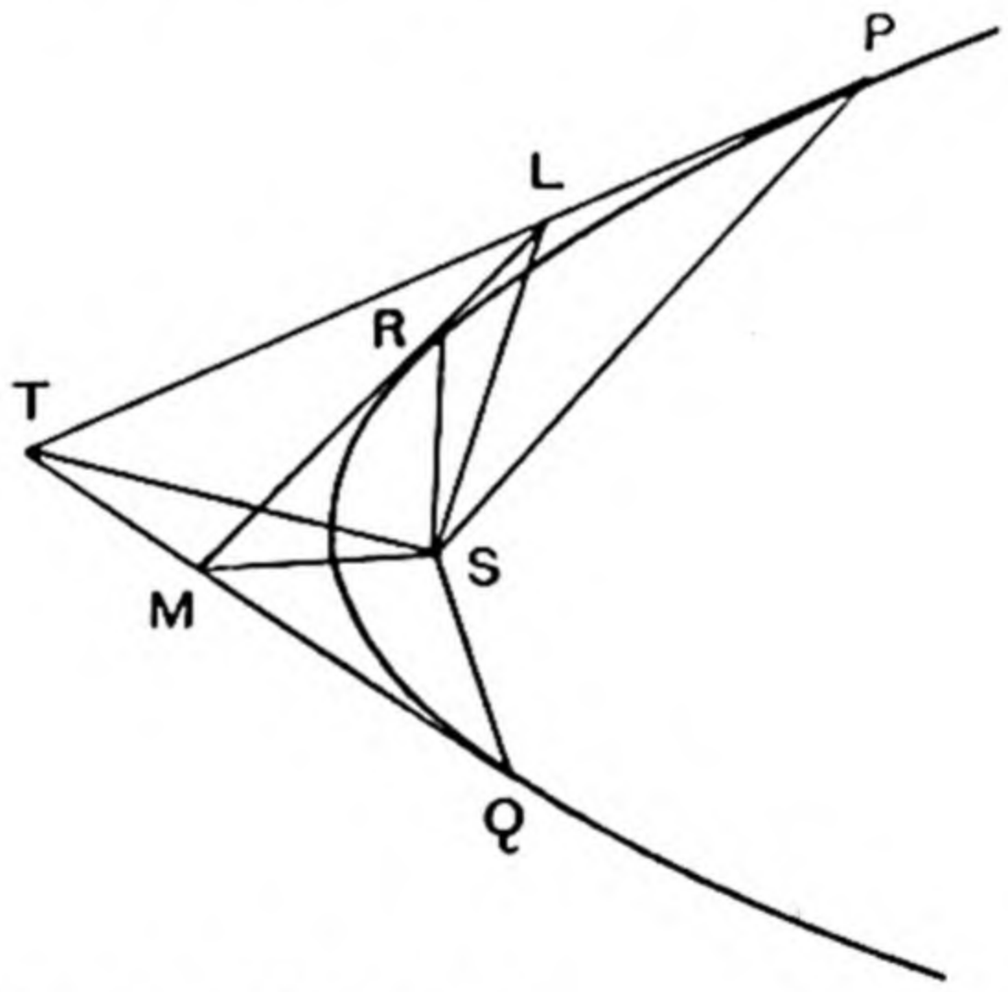
Further $\triangle SLR$ is similar to $\triangle STM$ for $\angle SLM = \angle STM$,

and $$\angle SRL = \angle SLP$$
$$= 180^\circ - \angle SLT = \angle SMT.$$

$\therefore LR : TM = SR : SM$

$= MR : MQ$ (by similar $\triangle$s $SRM$, $SMQ$).

$\therefore LR : RM = TM : MQ.$




Similarly $MR : RL = TL : LP.$

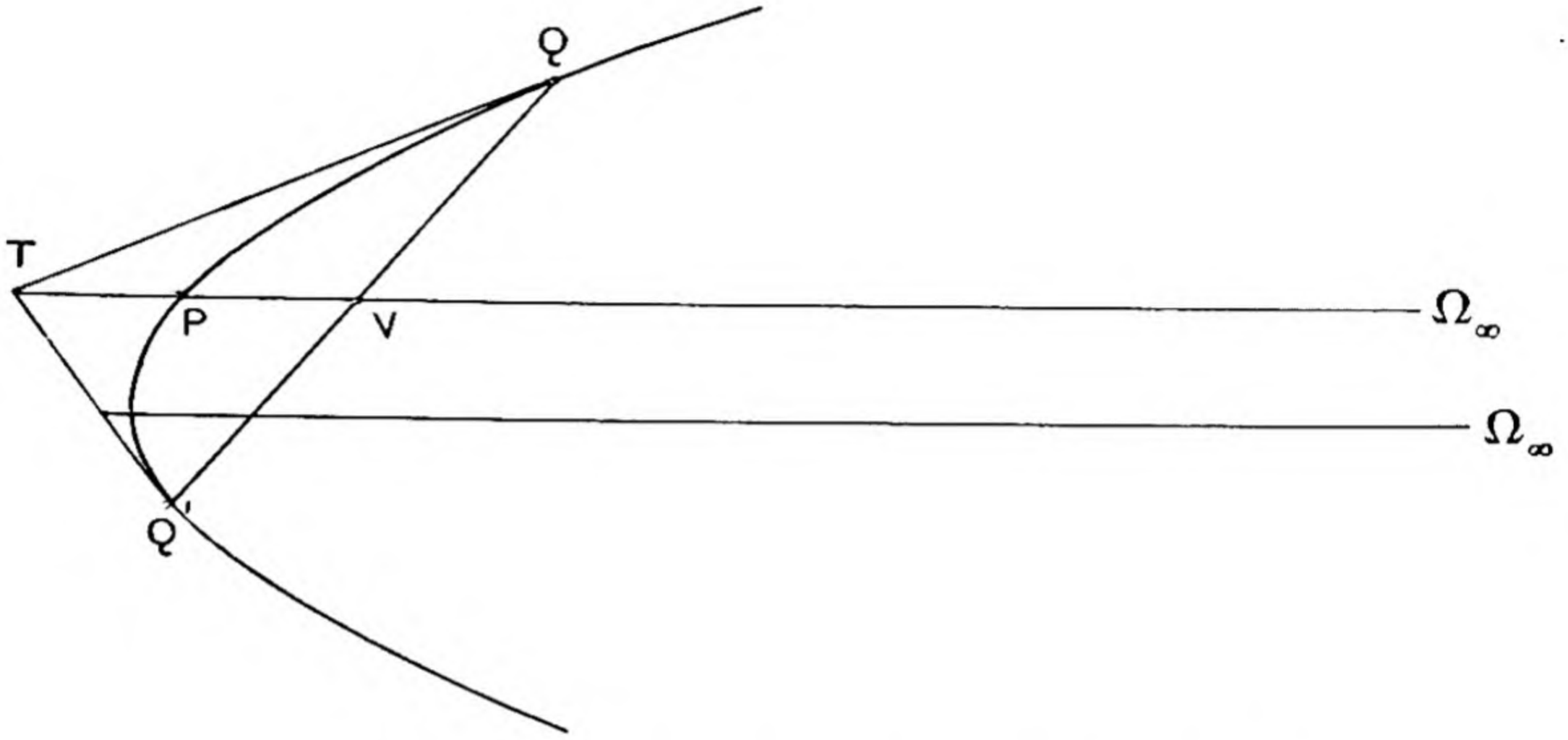
Hence $PL : LT = TM : MQ = LR : RM.$

**132. Diameters.**

We have already explained in § 102 what is meant by diameters of a parabola. Every line parallel to the axis is a diameter, and every diameter bisects a system of parallel chords. It must be remembered too that the tangents at the extremities

of each of the parallel chords bisected by a diameter intersect on that diameter (§ 95).

**Prop.** *If $TQ$ and $TQ'$ be tangents to a parabola, and $TV$ be the diameter bisecting $QQ'$ in $V$ and cutting the curve in $P$ then $TP = PV$.*




For $PV$ being parallel to the axis goes through $\Omega$.

Thus by the harmonic property of the pole and polar

$$(TV, P\Omega) = -1,$$

$$\therefore TP = PV.$$

Note that $TA = AN$ (§ 123) is only a special case of this.

**133. Prop.** *The length of any focal chord of a parabola is four times the distance of the focus from the point where the diameter bisecting the chord meets the curve.*

Let $RSR'$ be any focal chord, $PV$ the diameter which bisects it in $V$.

Let the tangents at $R$ and $R'$ meet in $Z$. Then $Z$ is both on the directrix and on the line of the diameter $PV$. Also $ZP = PV$ (§ 132).

But $ZSV$ is a right angle (§ 106).

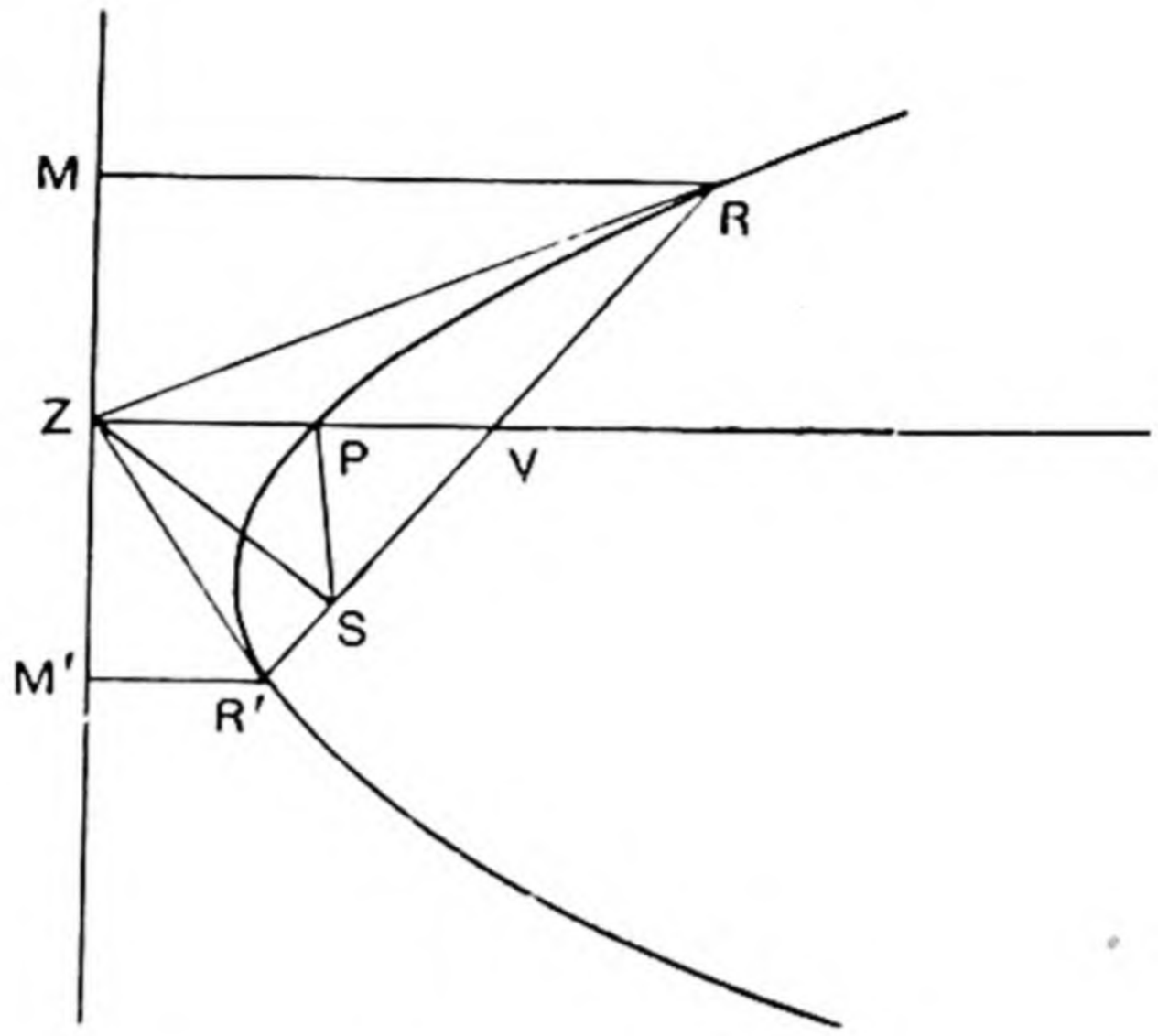
$$\therefore SP = PV = ZP.$$

Now draw $RM$ and $R'M'$ perpendicular to the directrix.

Then $2VZ = RM + R'M'$ since $V$ is the middle point of $RR'$

$$= RS + SR' = RR';$$

$$\therefore RR' = 4PV = 4SP.$$




A focal chord bisected by a particular diameter is called the *parameter* of the diameter which bisects the chord. Thus $RR'$ is the parameter of the diameter $PV$, and we have proved it equal to $4SP$. In particular the latus rectum is the parameter of the axis, and we proved it equal to $4SA$.

**134. Prop.** *If $QV$ be an ordinate of a diameter $PV$ then*

$$QV^2 = 4SP \,.\, PV.$$

Produce the ordinate $QV$ to meet the curve again in $Q'$.

$\therefore QV = VQ'$.

Draw the focal chord $RSR'$ parallel to the chord $QQ'$. $RR'$ will be bisected by $PV$ in $U$ (say).

The diameter $PV$ meets the curve again in $\Omega$ at an infinity, thus by Newton's theorem

$$VQ \,.\, VQ' : VP \,.\, V\Omega = UR \,.\, UR' : UP \,.\, U\Omega;$$

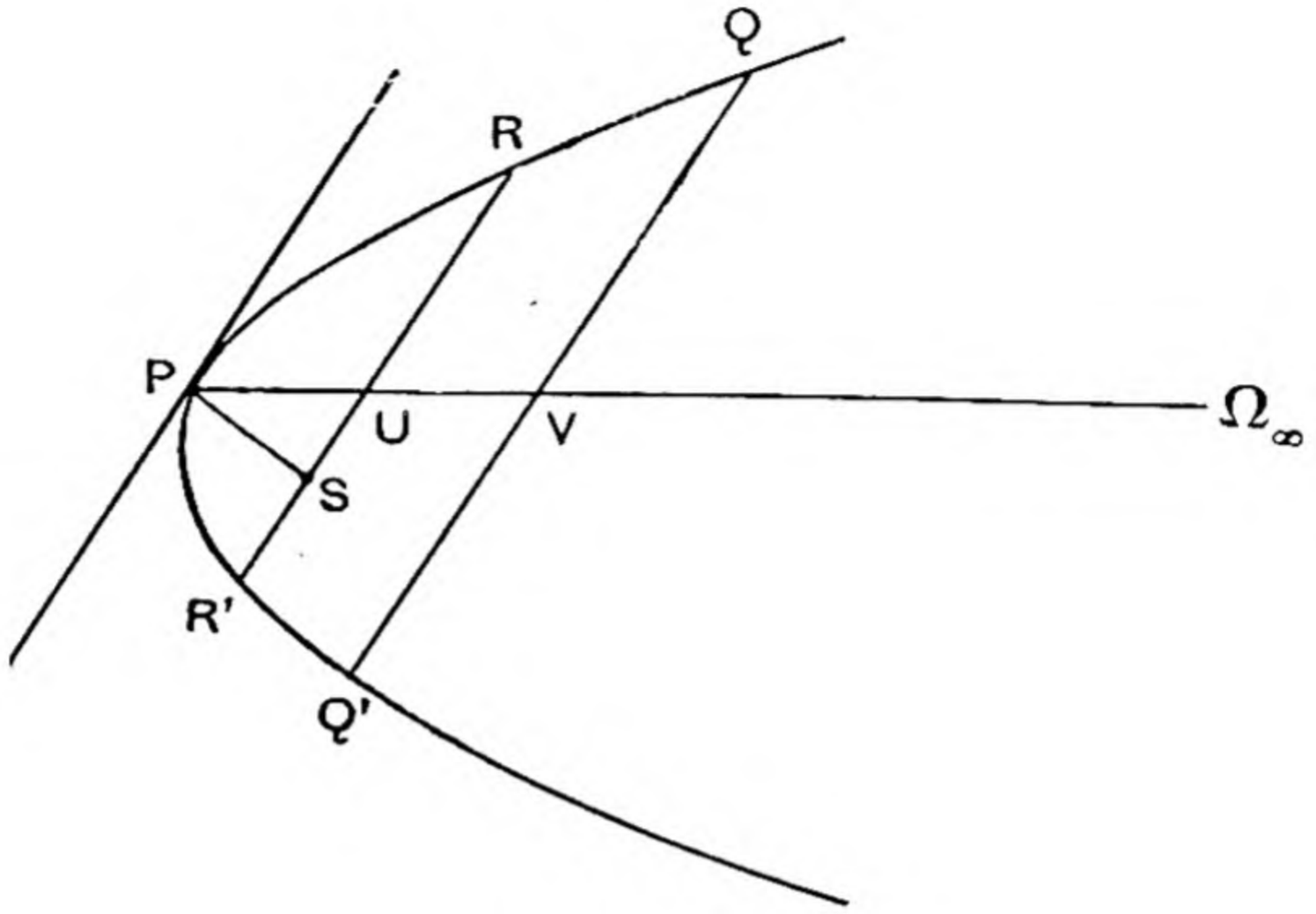
$$\therefore VQ \,.\, VQ' : UR \,.\, UR' = VP \,.\, V\Omega : UP \,.\, U\Omega = VP : UP.$$

$$\therefore QV^2 : RU^2 = PV : PU;$$

$$\therefore \frac{QV^2}{PV} = \frac{RU^2}{PU} = \frac{4SP^2}{SP} \text{ (§ 133)}$$

$$= 4SP.$$

$$\therefore QV^2 = 4SP \,.\, PV.$$




It will be seen that the property $PN^2 = 4AS \,.\, AN$ of § 121 is only a special case of the general proposition just proved.

**135**. The preceding proposition shews that a parabola may be regarded as the locus of a point in a plane such that the square of its distance from a fixed line $l$ varies as its distance from another fixed line $l'$ not necessarily at right angles to $l$. The line $l$ is a diameter of the parabola and $l'$ is a tangent at the point where $l$ and $l'$ intersect.

If $\alpha$ be the angle which $QV$ makes with the axis in § 134

$QV =$ perp. from $Q$ on $PV \times$ cosec $\alpha$

and $PV =$ perp. from $Q$ on tangent at $P \times$ cosec $\alpha$;

$\therefore$ (Perp. from $Q$ on $PV)^2 \times$ cosec$^2$ $\alpha$

$= 4SP \times$ perp. from $Q$ on tangent at $P \times$ cosec $\alpha$.

$$\therefore \frac{(\text{Perp. from } Q \text{ on } PV)^2}{\text{Perp. from } Q \text{ on tangent at } P} = 4SP \sin \alpha = 4SY$$

where $SY$ is the perpendicular from $S$ on the tangent at $P$.

Thus if a point move in a plane so that the square of its distance from a line $l$ is $k$ times its distance from another line $l'$, $k$ being constant, the locus of the point is a parabola having its axis parallel to $l$. The focus lies in a line parallel to $l'$ and distant $\frac{k}{4}$ from it, and it also lies in a line through the intersection of $l$ and $l'$ and making with $l'$ the same angle that $l$ makes with it. The line $l'$ is the tangent to the parabola at its point of intersection with $l$.

As already explained in § 122 if the lines $l$ and $l'$ are at right angles $l$ is the axis itself and $l'$ the tangent at the vertex.

### 136. Circle of curvature.

We have explained in § 119 what we mean by the circle of curvature at any point of a conic. We shall now shew how the circle of curvature at any point of a parabola can be determined.

The centre of the circle of curvature at $P$ lies on the normal at $P$, if then we can find the length of the chord through $P$ of this circle in any direction, the length of the diameter of the circle can be found by drawing a line through the other extremity of this chord and perpendicular to it to meet the normal in $D$, then $PD$ will be the diameter of the circle of curvature.

**Prop.** *The chords of the circle of curvature parallel to the axis and through the focus at any point $P$ of a parabola $= 4SP$.*

It is clear that these two chords must be equal for they make equal angles with the tangent at $P$.

Now consider a circle touching the parabola at $P$ and cutting it again at a near point $Q$. Draw the diameter of the parabola through $Q$ and let it meet the circle again in $K$ and the tangent at $P$ in $R$. Draw $QV$ the ordinate to the diameter $PV$.

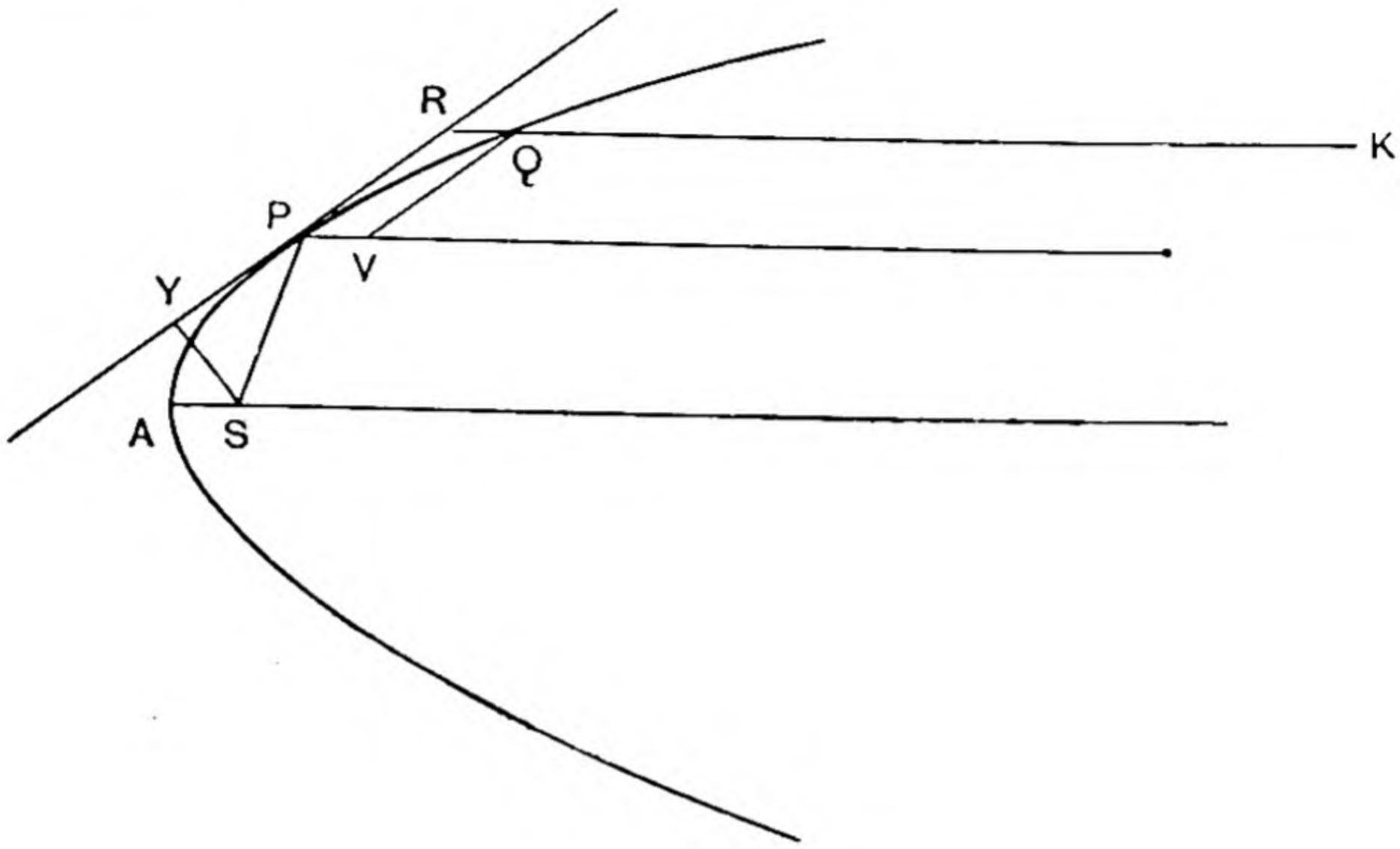
Then from the circle we have

$$RQ \,.\, RK = RP^2;$$

$$\therefore RK = \frac{RP^2}{RQ} = \frac{QV^2}{PV} = 4SP. \quad (\S\ 134.)$$

Now in the limit when $Q$ moves up to and ultimately coincides with $P$, $RK$ becomes the chord of the circle of curvature through $P$ parallel to the axis.

Hence this chord is of length $4SP$.




———

COR. The diameter of the circle of curvature at $P = \dfrac{4SP^2}{SY}$, where $SY$ is the perpendicular on the tangent. For

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{4SP}{\text{Diameter}} &= \cos(\angle \text{ between normal and axis})\\ &= \sin(\angle \text{ between tangent and axis})\\ &= \sin(\angle \text{ between tangent and } SP)\\ &= \frac{SY}{SP}.\end{aligned}$$

NOTE. The diameter of the circle of curvature is commonly called the diameter of curvature, and the chords of the circle of curvature through $P$ are called simply chords of curvature.

## EXERCISES

1. $PSP'$ is a focal chord of a parabola, $PN$ and $P'N'$ ordinates to the axis, prove

$$PN \,.\, P'N' = 4AS^2 = 4AN \,.\, AN'.$$

2. A series of parabolas touch a given line and have a common focus, prove that their vertices lie on a circle.

3. If a straight line rotate about a point in a plane containing the line the directions of motion of each point in it at a given moment are tangents to a parabola.

4. The ordinates of points on a parabola are divided in a given ratio, prove that the locus of the points dividing them is another parabola.

5. The locus of the middle points of focal chords of a parabola is also a parabola, whose latus rectum is half that of the original parabola.

6. If $QV$ be an ordinate of the diameter $PV$ and $QD$ be perpendicular to the diameter $QD^2 = 4AS \,.\, PV$.

7. If the normal at $P$ to a parabola meet the axis in $G$ then $PG^2 = 4AS \,.\, SP$.

8. $PQ$, $PR$ are two chords of a parabola; $PQ$ meets the diameter through $R$ in the point $F$ and $PE$ meets the diameter through $Q$ in $E$; prove that $EF$ is parallel to the tangent at $P$.

[Project the parabola into a circle with $E$ projected into the centre.]

9. If a circle touch a parabola at $P$ and cut it at $Q$ and $R$, the diameters through $Q$ and $R$ will meet the circle again in points on a line parallel to the tangent at $P$.

[Use § 116 Cor.]

10. If $TP$ and $TQ$ be two fixed tangents to a parabola, and a variable tangent cut them in $L$ and $M$ respectively the ratios $PL : TM$ and $TL : QM$ are equal and constant.

11. If two tangents $TP$ and $TQ$ to a parabola be cut by a third tangent in $L$ and $M$ respectively then

$$\frac{TL}{TP} + \frac{TM}{TQ} = 1.$$

12. If the normal at $P$ to a parabola meet the curve again in $Q$ and $PN$ be the ordinate of $P$, and $T$ the pole of $PQ$,

$$PQ : PT = PN : AN.$$

13. If the tangent at $P$ meet the directrix in $Z$ and the latus rectum produced in $D$, then $SD = SZ$.

14. $TP$ and $TQ$ are tangents to a parabola, and the diameters through $P$ and $Q$ meet any line drawn through $T$ in $M$ and $N$; prove

$$TM^2 = TN^2 = TP \,.\, TQ.$$

15. If $T$ be any point on the tangent at $P$ to a parabola and the diameter through $T$ meet the curve in $Q$, then

$$RP^2 = 4SP \,.\, RQ.$$

16. If the chord $PQ$ which is normal at $P$ to a parabola subtends a right angle at $S$, then $SQ = 2SP$.

17. If $PN$ and $P'N'$ be two ordinates of a parabola such that the circle on $NN'$ as diameter touches the parabola, then

$$NP + N'P' = NN'.$$

18. $TP$ and $TQ$ are two tangents to a parabola, and $PK$ and $QL$ are drawn perpendicular respectively to $TQ$ and $TP$, prove that the triangles $STK$ and $STL$ are equal.

19. $TP$ and $TP'$ are tangents to a parabola, and the diameter through $T$ cuts the curve in $Q$. If $PQ$, $P'Q$ cut $TP'$, $TP$ respectively in $R$ and $R'$, and the diameters through $R$ and $R'$ cut the curve in $V$, $V'$ respectively, prove that $PV$, $P'V'$ intersect on $TQ$.

[Project the parabola into a circle and the line through $T$ parallel to $PP'$ to infinity.]

20. Prove that no circle described on a chord of a parabola as diameter can meet the directrix unless the chord be a focal chord, and then the circle touches the directrix.

21. If $TP$ and $TQ$ be a pair of tangents to a parabola and the chord $PQ$ be normal at $P$, then $TP$ is bisected by the directrix.

22. The triangle $ABC$ circumscribes a parabola having $S$ as focus, prove that the lines through $A$, $B$, $C$ perpendicular to $SA$, $SB$, $SC$ respectively are concurrent.

23. The tangents to a parabola at $P$ and $P'$ intersect in $Q$; the circles circumscribing the triangles $SPQ$, $SPQ'$ meet the axis again in $R$ and $R'$. Prove that $PR$ and $QR'$ are parallel.

24. A given triangle $ABC$ moves in a plane, with one side $AB$ passing through a fixed point, and with the vertex $A$ on a given straight line. Shew that the side $AC$ will envelop a parabola.

25. Shew that the envelope of a line which moves so as to intercept equal chords on two given circles is a parabola having the radical axis of the two given circles as the tangent at its vertex.

26. A line meets a parabola in $P$ and $p$ on the same side of the axis. $AQ$ is drawn parallel to $Pp$ to meet the curve again in $Q$. Prove that the ordinate of $Q$ is equal to the sum of the ordinates of $P$ and $p$.

27. The distance of the point of intersection of two tangents to a parabola from the axis is half the sum of the ordinates of their points of contact.

28. If $LL'$ be the latus rectum of a parabola and the tangent at any point $P$ meet that at $L$ in $V$, then $SL \cdot LP = VL \cdot VL'$.

29. A circle touches a parabola at a point $P$, and passes through the focus $S$. Shew that the parabola meets the circle again or not according as the latus rectum is or is not less than $SP$.

30. $QQ'$ is the normal at $Q$ to a parabola meeting the parabola again in $Q'$, $QP$ is equally inclined to the axis with the normal and meets the curve again in $P$; $V$ is the middle point of $QQ'$, and $PV$ meets the axis in $R$; shew that $QSPR$ lie on a circle, $S$ being the focus.

31. Two parabolas with equal latus rectum are on the same axis, and are such that the part of any tangent to one which is cut off by the other is equal to the perpendicular upon this tangent from the focus of the first parabola. Shew that the latus rectum of each is sixty-four times the distance between the vertices.

32. A circle touches a parabola at both ends of a double ordinate $PP'$ to the axis. The normal at $P$ meets the circle in $R$ and the parabola in $Q$. The diameter of the parabola through $Q$ meets $PP'$ in $U$. Prove that the circle $QRU$ touches $PP'$ at $U$.

33. $EF$ is a double ordinate of the axis of a parabola, $R$ any point on it, and the diameter through $R$ meets the curve in $P$; the tangent at $P$ intersects in $M$ and $N$ the diameters through $E$ and $F$. Prove that $PR$ is a mean proportional between $EM$ and $FN$.

34. If a parabola roll on another equal parabola, the vertices being originally in contact, its focus will trace out the directrix of the fixed parabola.

35. If $P$ be any point on a parabola whose vertex is $A$, and $PR$ perpendicular to $AP$ meet the axis $R$, a circle whose centre is $R$ and radius $RP$ will pass through the ends of the ordinate to the parabola through $R$. Also if common tangents be drawn to the circle and parabola the ordinates at the points where they touch the parabola will be tangents to the circle.

36. Through any point on a parabola two chords are drawn equally inclined to the tangent there. Shew that their lengths are proportional to the portions of their diameters bisected between them and the curve.

37. $TQ$, $TR$, tangents to a parabola, meet the tangent at $P$ in $Y$ and $Z$, and $TU$ is drawn parallel to the axis, meeting the parabola in $U$. Prove that the tangent at $U$ passes through the middle point of $YZ$, and that, if $S$ be the focus,

$$YZ^2 = 4SP \,.\, TU.$$

38. $PQ$ is a normal chord of a parabola meeting the axis in $G$. Prove that the distance of $G$ from the vertex, the ordinates of $P$ and $Q$, and the latus rectum are four proportionals.

39. Lines are drawn through the focus of a parabola to cut the tangents to it at a constant angle. Prove that the locus of their intersection is a straight line.

40. The radius of curvature at an extremity of the latus rectum of a parabola is equal to twice the normal.

41. The diameter at either extremity of the latus rectum of a parabola passes through the centre of curvature at its other extremity.

42. If the tangent at any point $P$ of a parabola meet the axis in $T$, and the circle of curvature meet the curve in $Q$, then $PQ = 4PT$.

43. If $R$ be the middle point of the radius of curvature at $P$ on a parabola, $PR$ subtends a right angle at the focus.

44. The tangent from any point of a parabola to the circle of curvature at its vertex is equal to the abscissa of the point.

45. The chord of curvature through the vertex $A$ at any point $P$ of a parabola is $\frac{4PY^2}{AP}$, $Y$ being the foot of the perpendicular from the focus on the tangent at $P$.

# CHAPTER XII

## THE ELLIPSE

**137.** We have already in §§ 98 and 99 indicated the general form of the ellipse, shewing that it has two axes of symmetry at right angles to one another and intersecting in $C$ the centre. On the major axis $AA'$ are two foci $S$ and $S'$, at a distance equal to $CA$ from $B$ and $B'$ the ends of the minor axis, and to these foci correspond directrices at right angles to $AA'$ and cutting it externally in $X$ and $X'$ so that $CS : CA = CA : CX = e$, the eccentricity. It is convenient to call $A$ and $A'$, the ends of the major axis, the *vertices* of the ellipse.

It will be understood that the smaller is the ratio $CS : CA$ the more does the ellipse approximate to circular form, and the greater $CS : CA$ is without reaching unity the more does the ellipse flatten out.

We have always

$$CS^2 = CA^2 - CB^2$$

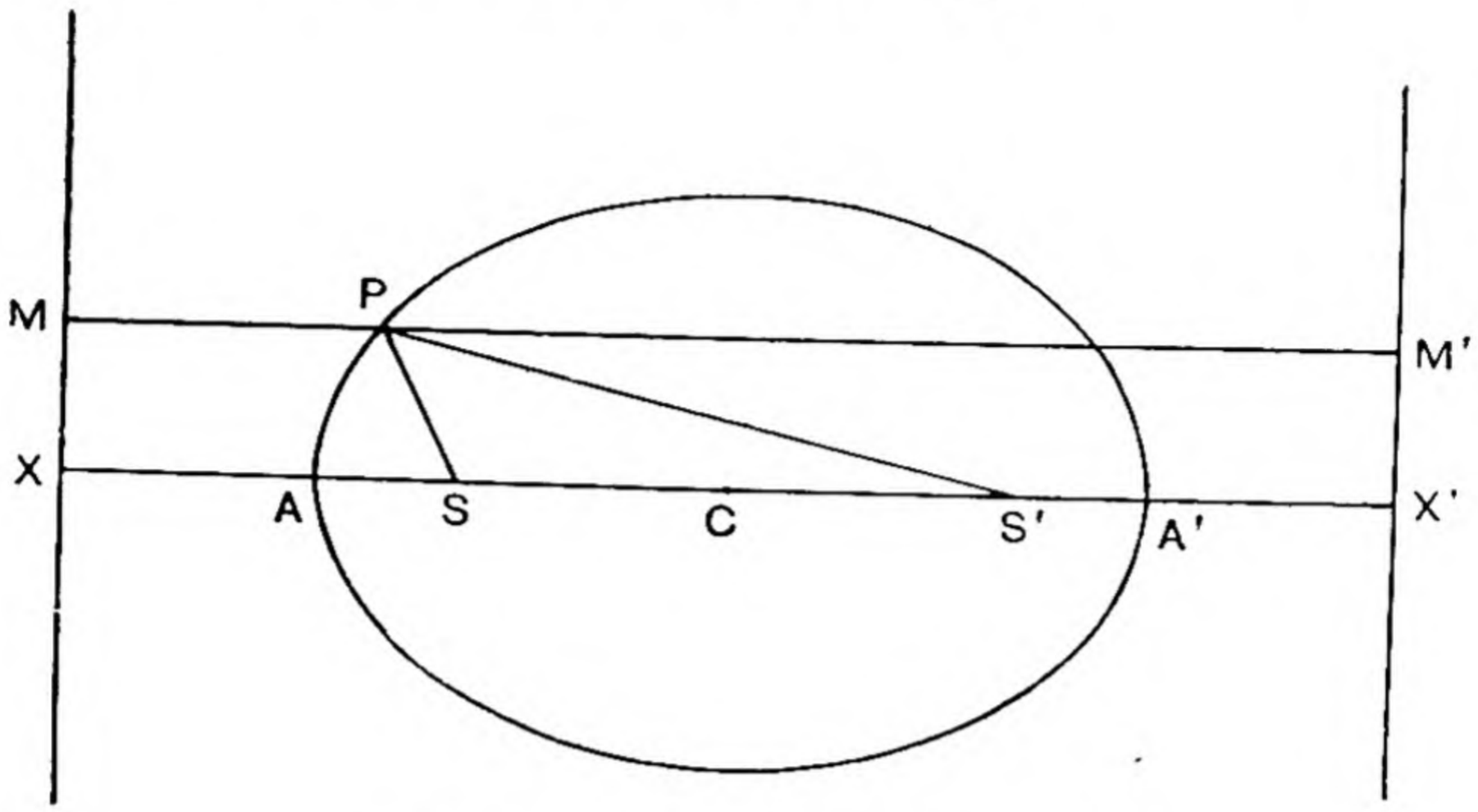
so that, keeping $CA$ constant, $CB$ diminishes as $CS$ increases, and vice versâ. And we have already explained that a circle may be regarded as the limiting case of an ellipse whose two foci coincide with the centre.

We now proceed to establish the chief geometrical properties which all ellipses have in common.

### 138. Sum of focal distances constant.

**Prop.** *The sum of the focal distances of any point on an ellipse is constant and equal to $AA'$.*

Let $P$ be any point on an ellipse, $MPM'$ the perpendicular through $P$ to the directrices as in the figure.




Then $$SP = e \,.\, PM \text{ and } S'P = e \,.\, PM';$$

$$\therefore\ SP + S'P = e\,(MP + PM') = e \,.\, XX'$$

$$= 2e \,.\, CX = 2CA = AA'.$$

Cor. Two confocal ellipses (that is, which have both foci in common) cannot intersect.

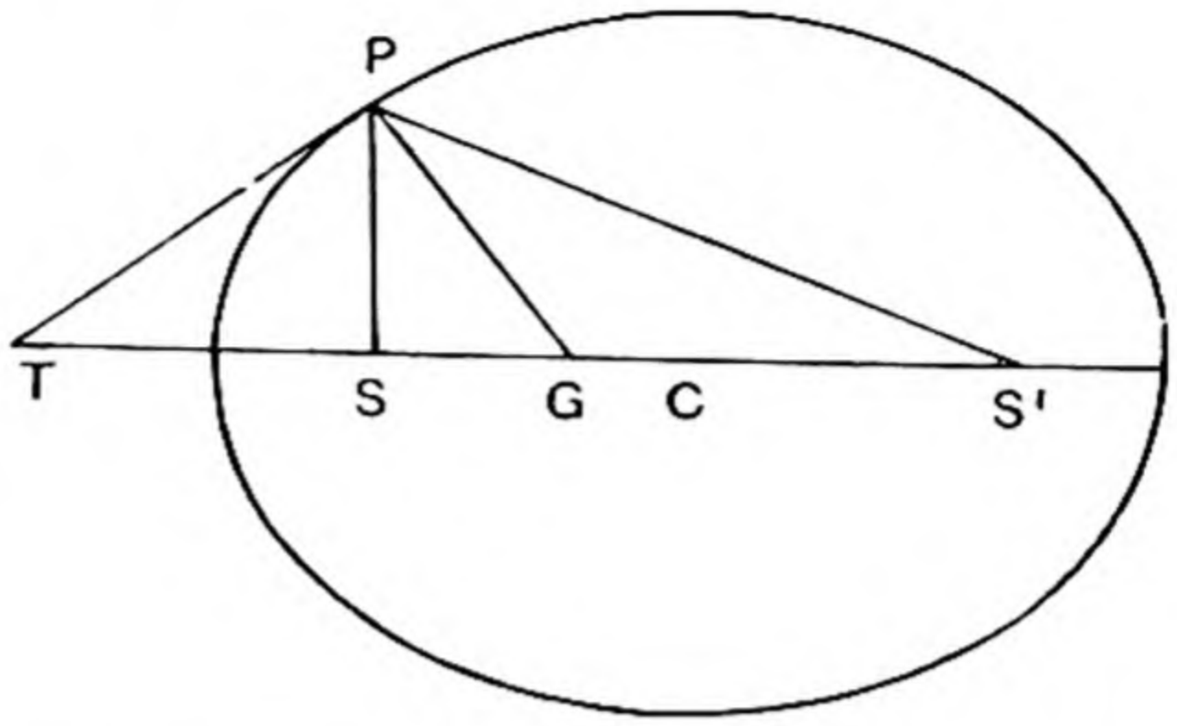
**139.** The proposition just proved shews that an ellipse may be regarded as the locus in a plane of a point the sum of whose distances from two fixed points in the plane is constant. And we learn that an ellipse can be drawn by tying the ends of a piece of string to two pins stuck in the paper so that the string is not tight, and then holding the string tight by means of the pencil pressed against it, and allowing the point of the pencil to make its mark in all possible positions thus determined.

By keeping the string the same length and changing the distance between the pins we can draw ellipses all having the same major axis but having different eccentricities. It will be seen that the nearer the pins are together the more does the ellipse approximate to circular form.

## 140. Tangent and Normal.

**Prop.** *The tangent and normal at any point of an ellipse bisect respectively the exterior and interior angles between the focal distances of the point.*

Let the tangent and normal at $P$ meet the major axis in $T$ and $G$ respectively.




Then by § 111 $SG = e \,.\, SP$, and $S'G = e \,.\, S'P$.

$\therefore\ SG : GS' = SP : PS'$;

$\therefore\ PG$ bisects the angle $SPS'$;

$\therefore\ PT$ which is at right angles to $PG$ must bisect the exterior angle of $SPS'$.

Cor. $$CG \,.\, CT = CS^2$$

for since $PG$ and $PT$ are the bisectors of the angles between $SP$ and $S'P$,

$$(GT,\ SS') = -1.$$

**Prop.**

**141.** *If $SY$, $S'Y'$ be the perpendiculars from the foci on the tangent at any point $P$ of an ellipse, $Y$ and $Y'$ lie on the circle described on the major axis $AA'$ as diameter, and*

$$SY \,.\, S'Y' = BC^2.$$

Produce $SY$ to meet $S'P$ in $K$.

Then $$\triangle SPY \equiv \triangle KPY$$

for $$\angle SPY = \angle KPY \quad (\S\ 140)$$

$\angle SYP = \angle KYP$ being right angles and $PY$ is common.

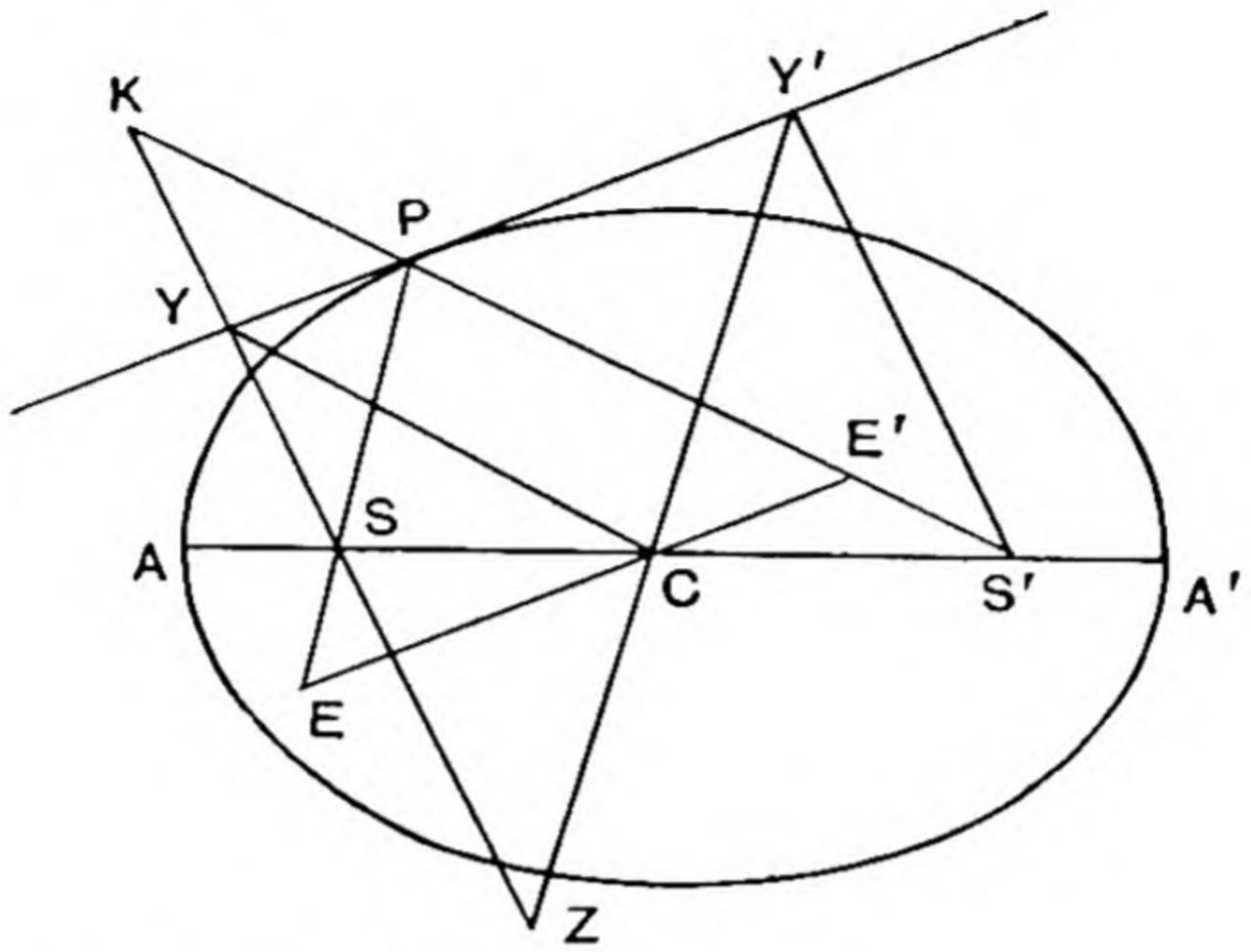
$\therefore\ PK = SP$ and $KY = SY$,

$\therefore\ KS' = KP + PS' = SP + PS' = AA'$ (§ 138).

Now since $Y$ and $C$ are the middle points of $SK$ and $SS'$, $CY$ is parallel to $S'K$ and $CY = \frac{1}{2} S'K = CA$.

Thus $Y$ (and similarly $Y'$) lies on the circle on $AA'$ as diameter.

Moreover as $Y'YS$ is a right angle, $YS$ will meet the circle again in a point $Z$ such that $Y'Z$ will be a diameter, that is, $Y'Z$ goes through $C$.




And $\triangle CSZ \equiv \triangle CS'Y'$ so that $SZ = S'Y'$.

$\therefore\ SY \,.\, S'Y' = SY \,.\, SZ = AS \,.\, SA' = CA^2 - CS^2 = BC^2$.

Cor. 1. The diameter parallel to the tangent at $P$ will meet $SP$ and $S'P$ in points $E$ and $E'$ such that $PE = PE' = AC$.

For $PYCE'$ is a parallelogram. $\therefore\ PE' = CY = AC$ and similarly $PE = AC$.

Cor. 2. The envelope of a line such that the foot of the perpendicular on it from a fixed point $S$ lies on a fixed circle, which has $S$ within it, is an ellipse having $S$ for a focus.

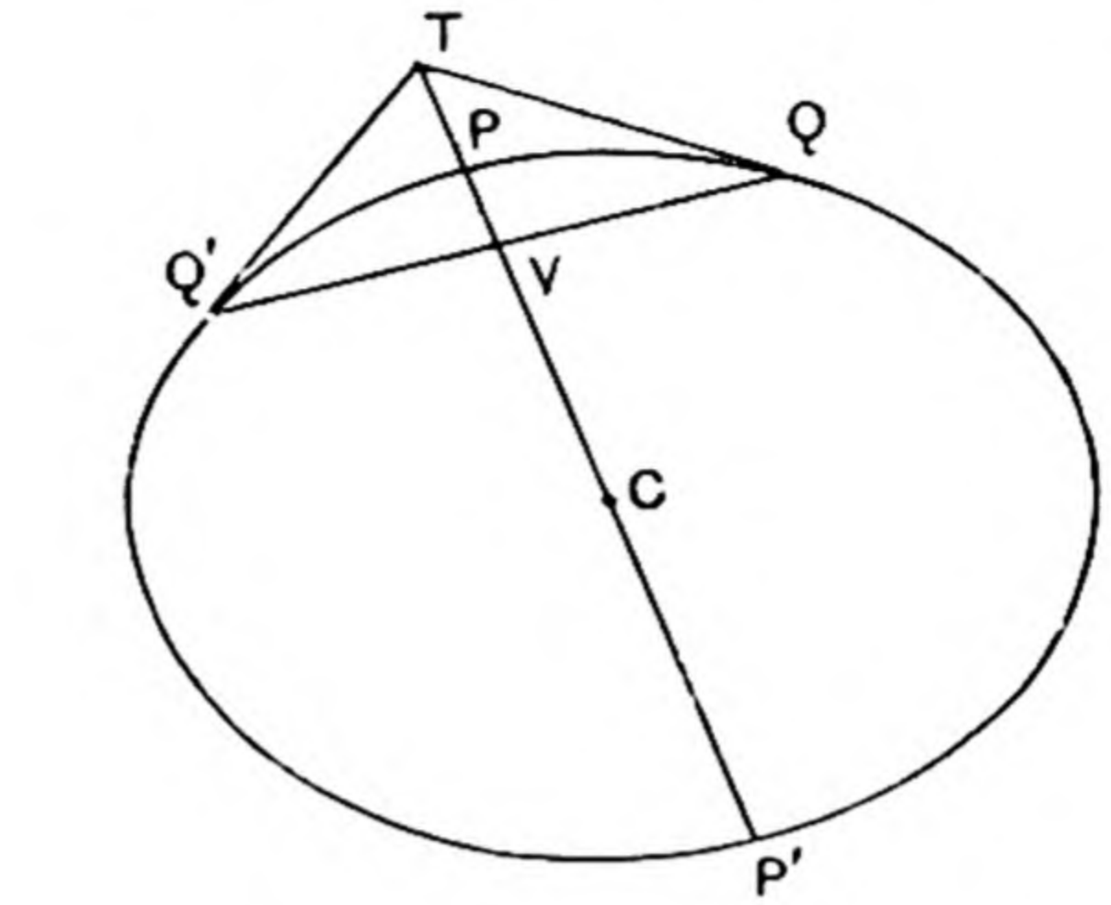
Cor. 3. The envelope of a line such that the product of the perpendiculars on it from two fixed points, lying on the same side of it, is constant is an ellipse having the fixed points for its foci.

**Def.** The circle on the major axis of an ellipse as diameter is called the *auxiliary circle.*

**142. Prop.** *If $TQ$ and $TQ'$ be a pair of tangents to an ellipse whose centre is $C$, and $CT$ meet $QQ'$ in $V$ and the curve in $P$, $CV \,.\, CT = CP^2$.*

For let $PC$ meet the ellipse again in $P'$. Then as $T$ and $QQ'$ are pole and polar, $(TV, PP') = -1$.

$\therefore$ as $C$ is the middle point of $PP'$, $CV \,.\, CT = CP^2$.

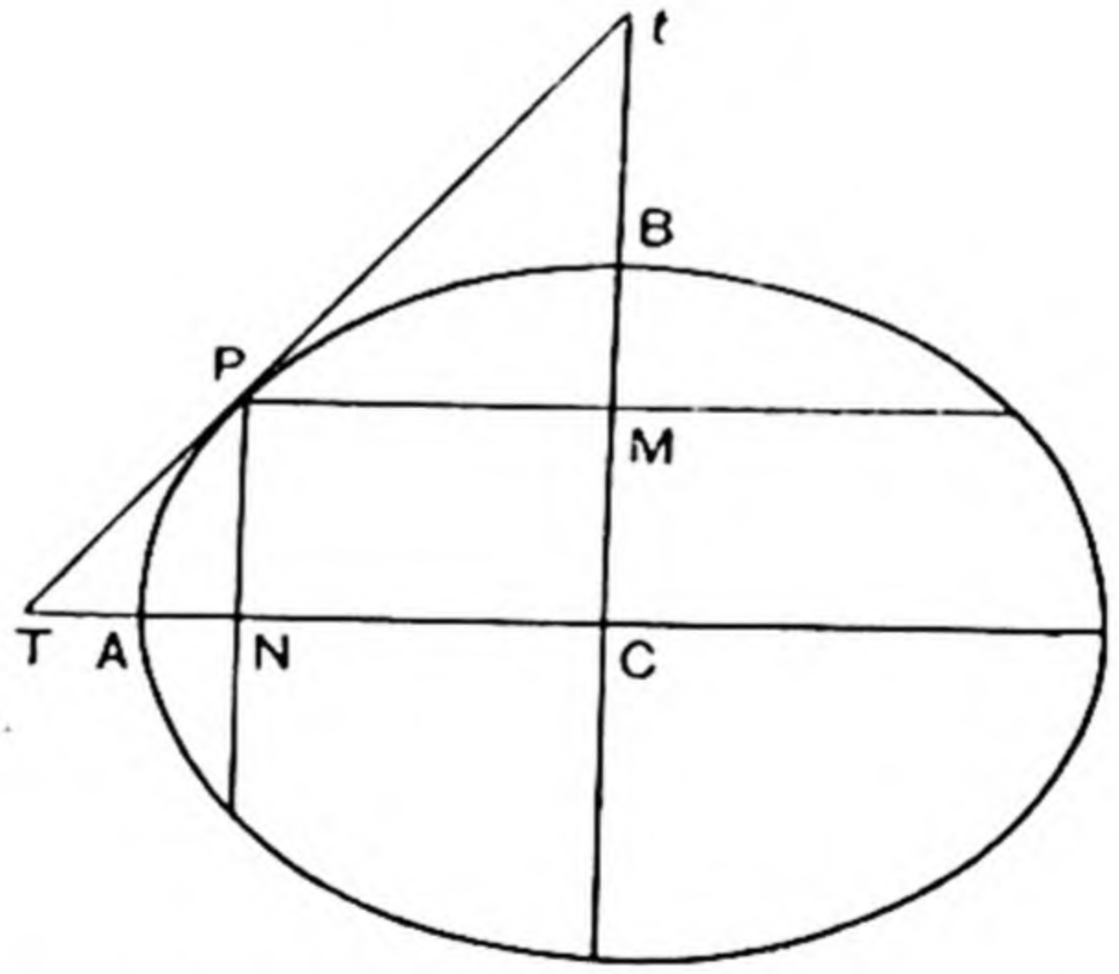



**143**. The preceding proposition is an important one and includes the following as a special case:

*If the tangent at $P$ meet the major and minor axes in $T$ and $t$, and $PN$, $PM$ be the ordinates to these axes then*

$$CN \,.\, CT = CA^2,$$

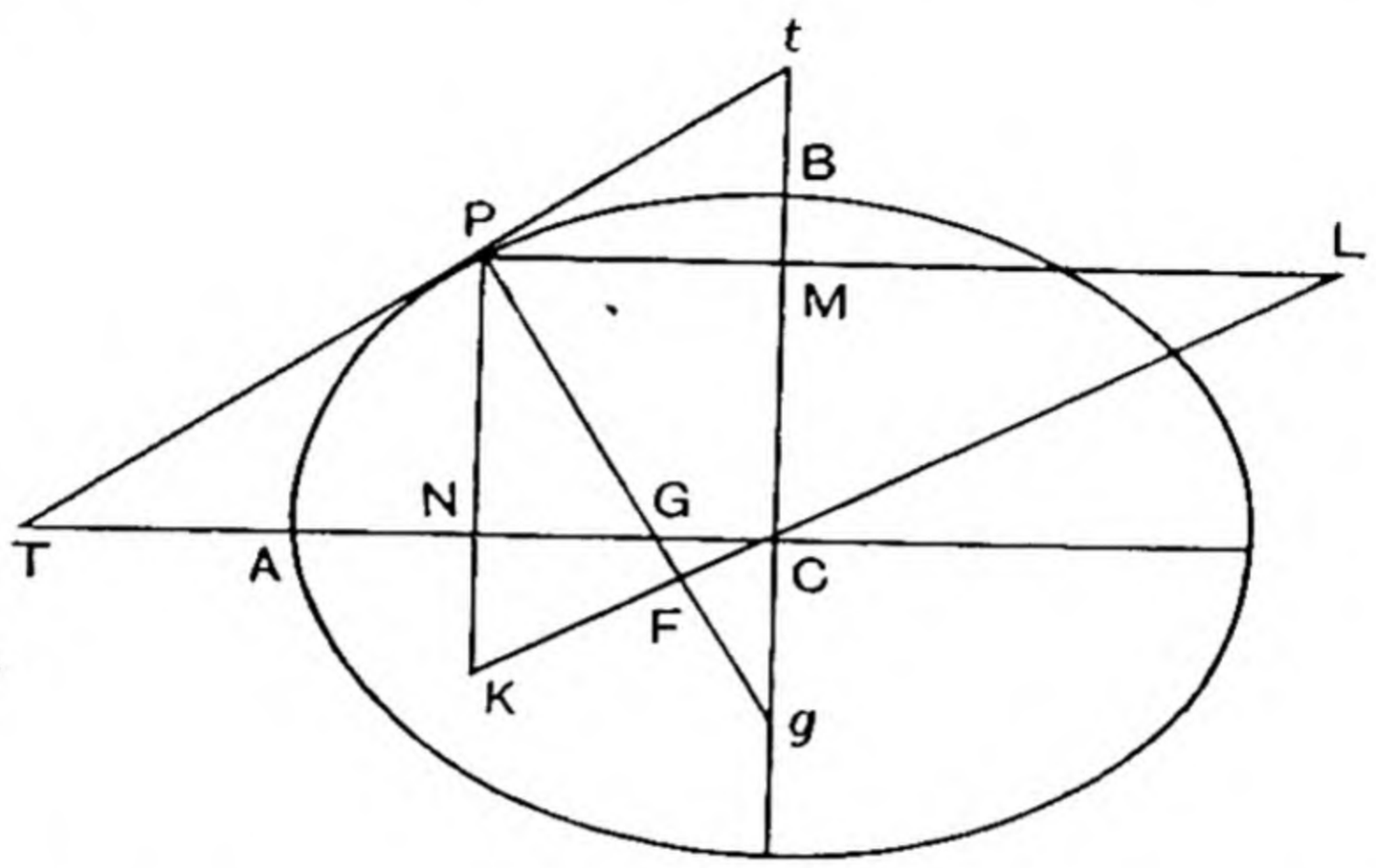
$$CM \,.\, Ct = CB^2.$$




For $T$ is the intersection of the tangents at $P$ and at the point where $PN$ again meets the curve, and $t$ is the intersection of the tangents at $P$ and at the point where $PM$ again meets the curve.

**144. Prop.** *If the normal at any point $P$ on an ellipse meet the major and minor axes in $G$ and $g$, and the diameter parallel to the tangent at $P$ in $F$, then $PF \cdot PG = BC^2$ and $PF \cdot Pg = AC^2$.*

Draw the ordinates $PN$ and $PM$ to the axes and let these meet the diameter parallel to the tangent at $P$ in $K$ and $L$ as in the figure.




Let the tangent at $P$ meet the major and minor axes in $T$ and $t$.

Then $NKFG$ is cyclic since $N$ and $F$ are right angles.

$\therefore\ PF \cdot PG = PN \cdot PK = CM \cdot Ct = BC^2$.

Also $gFML$ is cyclic since $F$ and $M$ are right angles.

$\therefore\ PF \cdot Pg = PM \cdot PL = CN \cdot CT = CA^2$.

**144a. Prop.** *If the normal at $P$ on an ellipse meet the major axis in $G$, and $PN$ be the ordinate to this axis, $CG = e^2 \cdot CN$.*

Let the tangent at $P$ meet the major axis in $T$.

We have already proved in § 140 Cor. that $CG \cdot CT = CS^2$.

But $$CN \cdot CT = CA^2;$$

$$\therefore\ CG : CN = CS^2 : CA^2 = e^2;$$

$$\therefore\ CG = e^2 \cdot CN.$$

Cor. $NG : NC = BC^2 : AC^2$.

For as $$CG : CN = CS^2 : CA^2,$$

$$\therefore\ CN - CG : CN = CA^2 - CS^2 : CA^2$$

$$= BC^2 : AC^2.$$

### 144b. Pair of tangents.

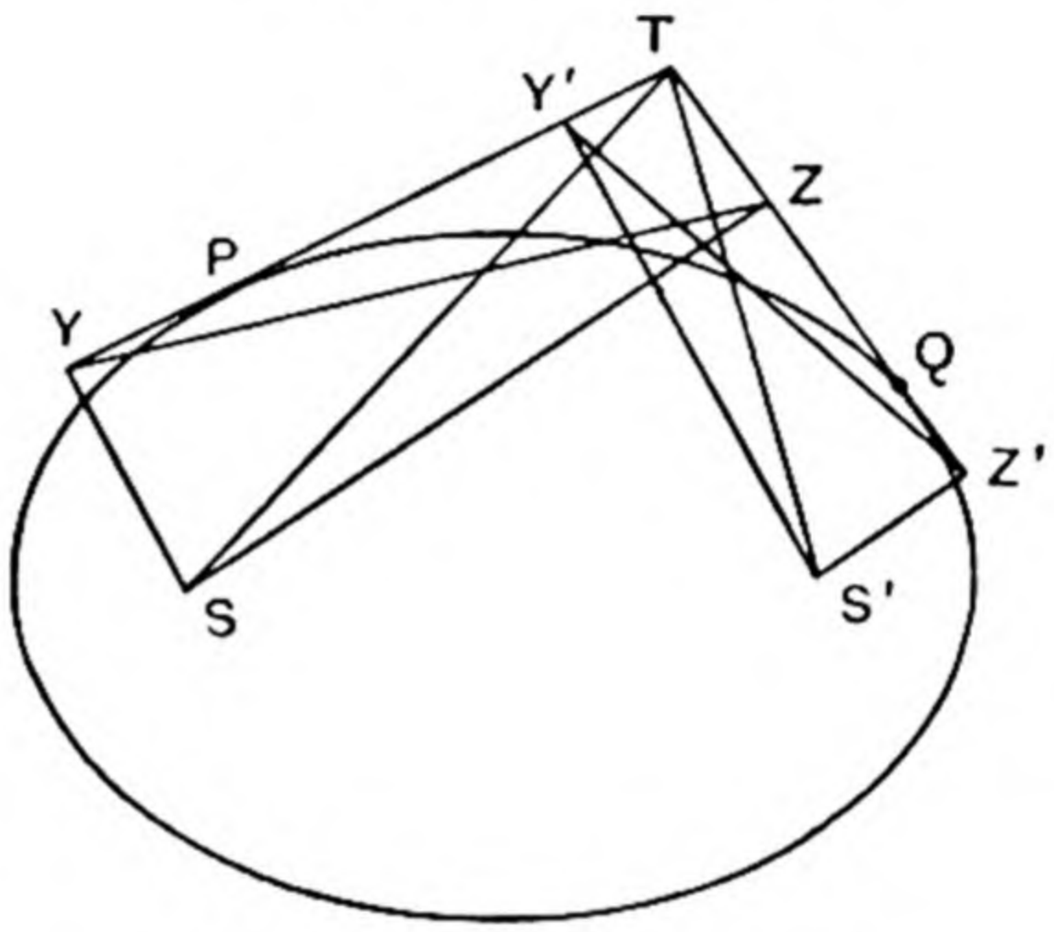
**Prop.** *The two tangents drawn from an external point to an ellipse make equal angles with the focal distances of the point.*

Let $TP$ and $TQ$ be the tangents; it is required to prove $\angle PTS = \angle S'TQ$.

Draw $SY$, $S'Y'$ perpendicular to $TP$, and $SZ$ and $S'Z'$ perpendicular to $TQ$.

Then $SY \cdot S'Y' = BC^2 = SZ \cdot S'Z'$ (§ 141);

$\therefore\ SY : SZ = S'Z' : S'Y'$.




Also $\angle YSZ$ = supplement of $\angle YTZ$ (since $SYTZ$ is cyclic)

$= \angle Y'S'Z'$ (since $Y'TZ'S'$ is cyclic).

$\therefore$ the $\triangle$s $SYZ$ and $S'Z'Y'$ are similar, and $\angle SZY = \angle S'Y'Z'$.

But $\angle SZY = \angle STY$ in the same segment and

$\angle S'Y'Z' = \angle S'TZ'$ in the same segment.

$\therefore\ \angle STY = S'TZ'$.

### 145. Director Circle.

**Prop.** *The locus of points, from which the tangents to an ellipse are at right angles, is a circle* (*called the* **director circle** *of the ellipse*).

Let $TP$ and $TQ$ be two tangents at right angles.

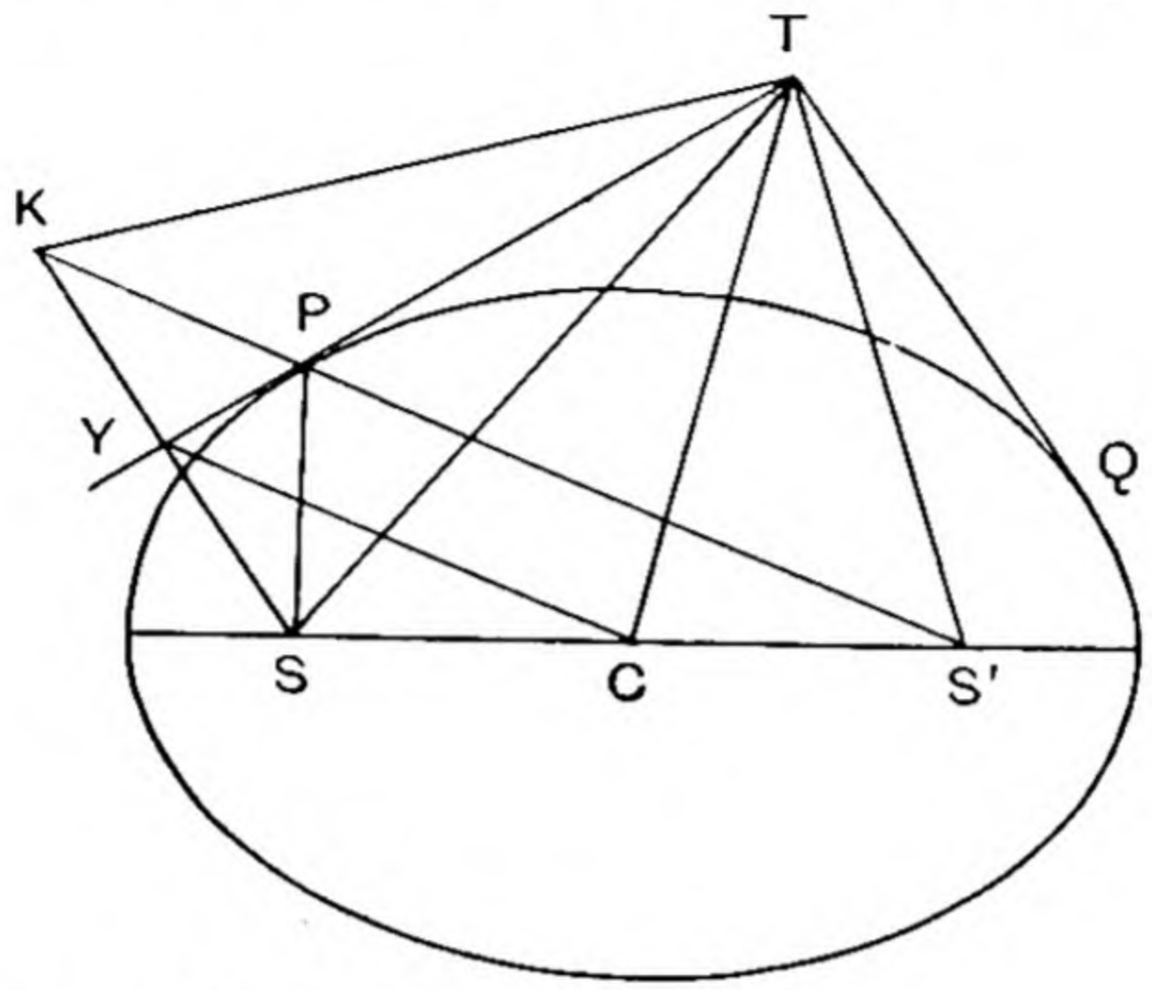
Draw $SY$ perpendicular to $TP$ to meet $S'P$ in $K$.

Then by § 141, $SY = YK$ and $S'K = AA'$.

Also $\triangle SYT \equiv \triangle KYT$, for $SY = KY$ and $YT$ is common and the angles at $Y$ are right angles.

$\therefore\ ST = KT$ and $\angle KTP = \angle STP = \angle QTS'$ (§ 144 b).

$\therefore\ \angle KTS' = \angle PTQ =$ a right angle.




Now $2CT^2 + 2CS^2 = ST^2 + S'T^2$ (§ 10)

$= KT^2 + S'T^2$

$- KS'^2$

$= 4CA^2.$

$\therefore\ CT^2 = 2CA^2 - CS^2 = 2CA^2 - (CA^2 - CB^2) = CA^2 + CB^2.$

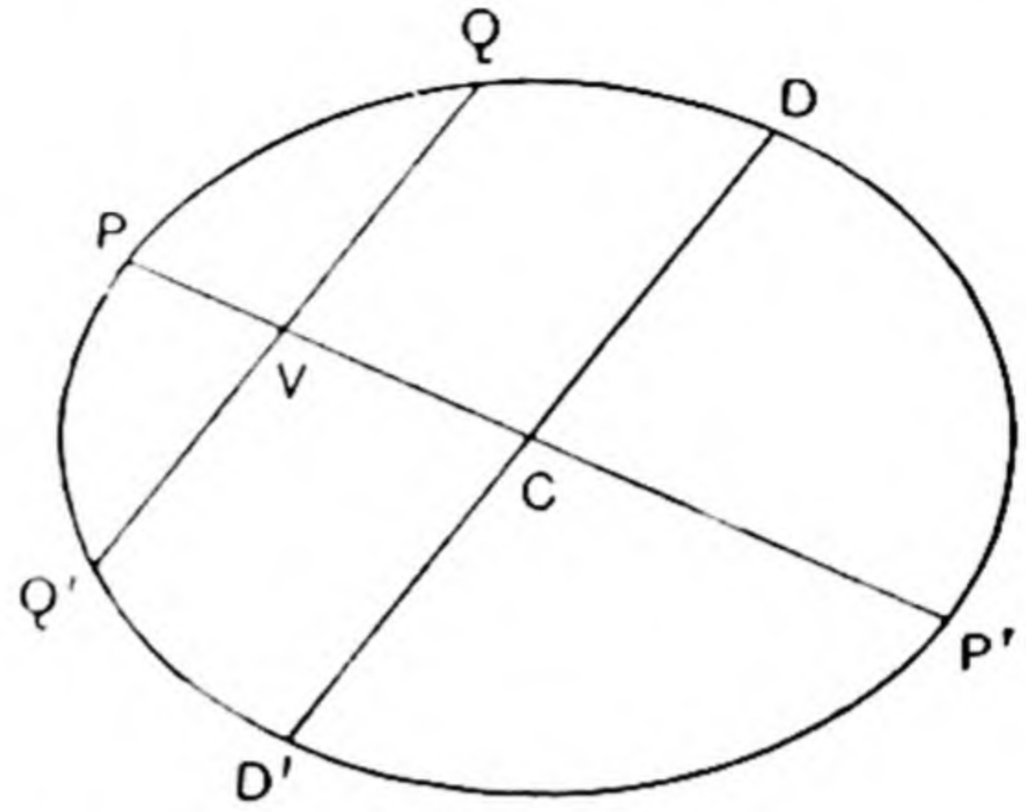
Thus the locus of $T$ is a circle round $C$, the square of whose radius is $CA^2 + CB^2$.

### 146. Conjugate Diameters.

The student is already familiar with the idea of conjugate lines of a conic, two lines being called conjugate when each contains the pole of the other. When a pair of conjugate lines meet in the centre of an ellipse, each being a diameter it is convenient to call them *conjugate diameters*. It is clear that they are such that the tangents at the points where either meets the curve are parallel to the other. Moreover all the chords which are parallel to one of two conjugate diameters are bisected by the other (§ 95), and these chords are double ordinates of the diameter which thus bisects them. The axes of the ellipse are that particular pair of conjugate diameters which are mutually at right angles.

**147. Prop.** *If $QV$ be an ordinate of the diameter $PCP'$ of an ellipse, and $DCD'$ be the diameter conjugate to $CP$,*

$$QV^2 : PV \,.\, VP' = CD^2 : CP^2.$$




For, producing $QV$ to meet the ellipse again in $Q'$, by Newton's theorem we have

$$VQ \,.\, VQ' : VP \,.\, VP' = CD \,.\, CD' : CP \,.\, CP'.$$

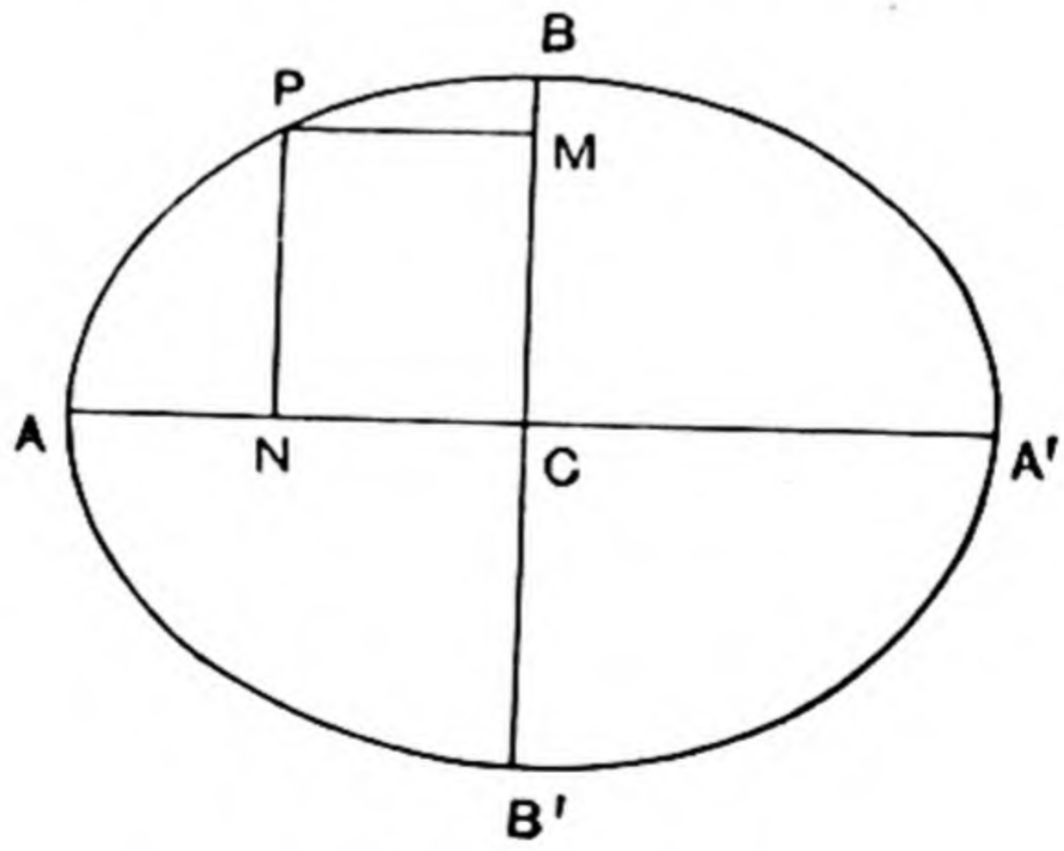
But $$VQ' = -VQ,\ CD' = -CD,\ CP' = -CP;$$

$$\therefore\ QV^2 : PV \,.\, VP' = CD^2 : CP^2.$$

**148.** Special cases of the preceding proposition are these: *If $PN$ and $PM$ be ordinates of the major and minor axes of an ellipse then*

$$PN^2 : AN \,.\, NA' = BC^2 : AC^2,$$

$$PM^2 : BM \,.\, MB' = AC^2 : BC^2.$$




COR. The latus rectum $= \dfrac{2BC^2}{AC}$.

For if $SL$ be the semi-latus rectum

$$SL^2 : AS \,.\, SA' = BC^2 : AC^2 \text{ and } AS \,.\, SA' = BC^2.$$

**149.** These properties in § 148 shew that an ellipse may be regarded as the locus of a point in a plane such that the square of its distance from a fixed line $l$ in the plane bears a constant ratio to the product of its distances from two other fixed lines $l'$ and $l''$, perpendicular to the former and on opposite sides of the point.

The line $l$ is one of the axes of the ellipse, and the lines $l'$ and $l''$ are the tangents at the ends of the other axis.

The property established in § 147 shews that an ellipse may also be regarded as the locus of a point in a plane such that the square of its distance from a fixed line $l$ in the plane, bears a constant ratio to the product of its distances from two other fixed lines $l'$ and $l''$ which are parallel to each other (but not necessarily perpendicular to $l$), and on opposite sides of the point. The line $l$ is a diameter of the ellipse and the lines $l'$ and $l''$ are the tangents at the points where $l$ meets the curve.

For the student can easily prove for himself that in the notation of § 147

$QV^2 : PV \,.\, VP' =$ square of perpendicular from $Q$ on $PP'$

: product of perpendiculars from $Q$ on tangents at $Q$ and $Q'$.

**Auxiliary Circle.**

**150. Prop.** *If $P$ be any point on an ellipse and $PN$ the ordinate of the major axis, and if $NP$ meet the auxiliary circle in $p$, then*

$$NP : Np = BC : AC.$$

For by § 148

$$PN^2 : AN \,.\, NA' = BC^2 : AC^2$$

and as $\angle ApA'$ being in a semicircle is a right angle

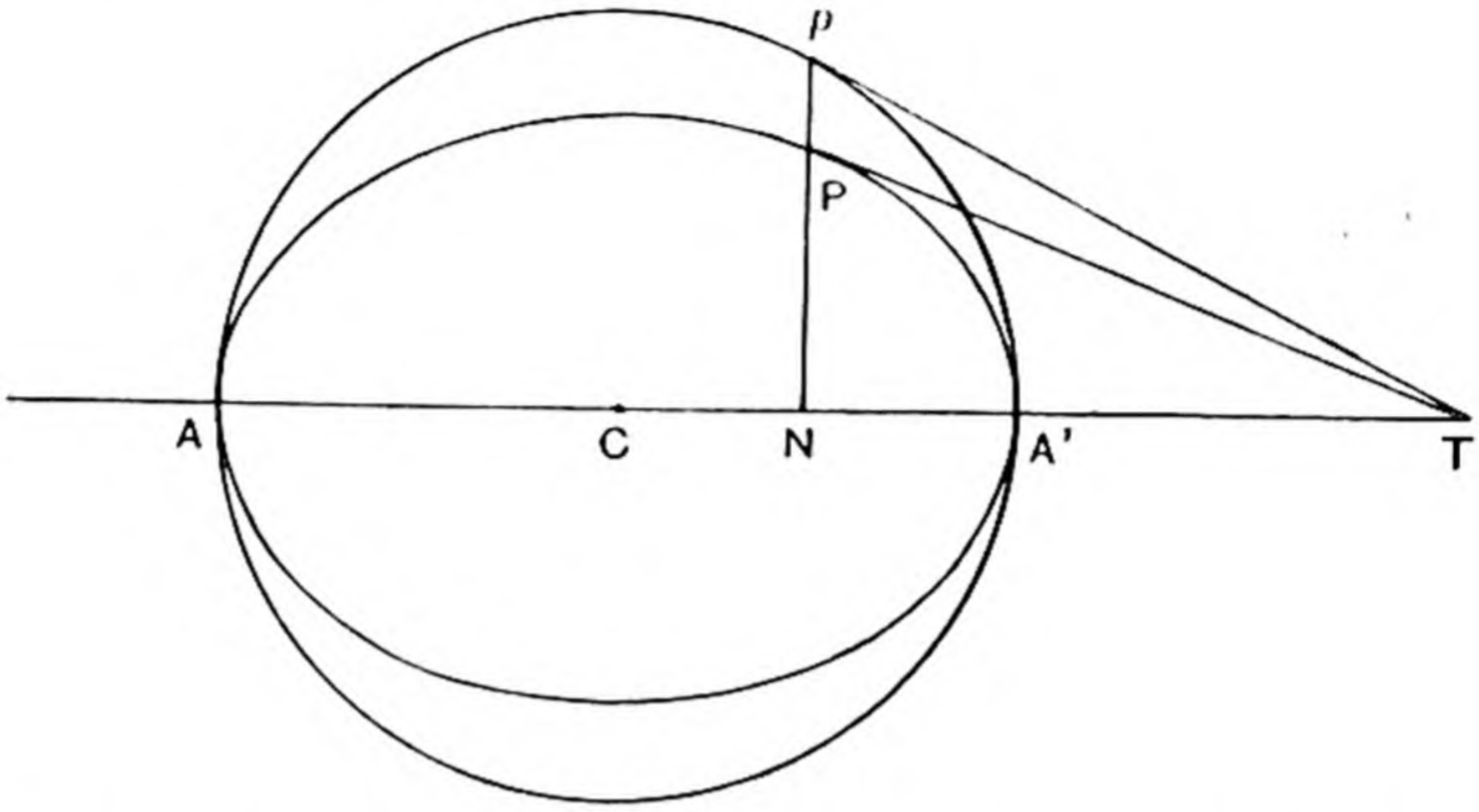
$$pN^2 = AN \,.\, NA';$$

$$\therefore\ PN : pN = BC : AC.$$

$P$ and $p$ are said to be *corresponding points* on the ellipse and the auxiliary circle. The tangents at two corresponding

points will meet the line of the major axis in the same point. For let the tangent at $P$ meet it in $T$, then $CN \,.\, CT = CA^2$ (§ 143).

$\therefore$ $T$ is the pole of $pN$ for the circle, that is, the tangent at $p$ goes through $T$.




The student can prove for himself by the same method that if an ordinate $PM$ to the minor axis meet the circle on $BB'$ as diameter in $p'$ then

$$PM : p'M = AC : BC.$$

From all this it follows that if the ordinates of a diameter of a circle be all divided in the same ratio, the points of division trace out an ellipse having the diameter of the circle as one of its axes.

**151. Prop.** *If $CP$ and $CD$ be a pair of conjugate semi-diameters of an ellipse, and $p$, $d$ the points on the auxiliary circle corresponding to $P$ and $D$, then $pCd$ is a right angle.*

Let the tangents at $P$ and $p$ meet the major axis in $T$. Draw the ordinates $PN$, $DM$.

Now since $CD$ is parallel to $TP$, $\triangle PNT$ is similar to $\triangle DMC$.

$$\therefore\ PN : DM = NT : MC.$$

But as $$PN : pN = BC : AC = DM : dM,$$

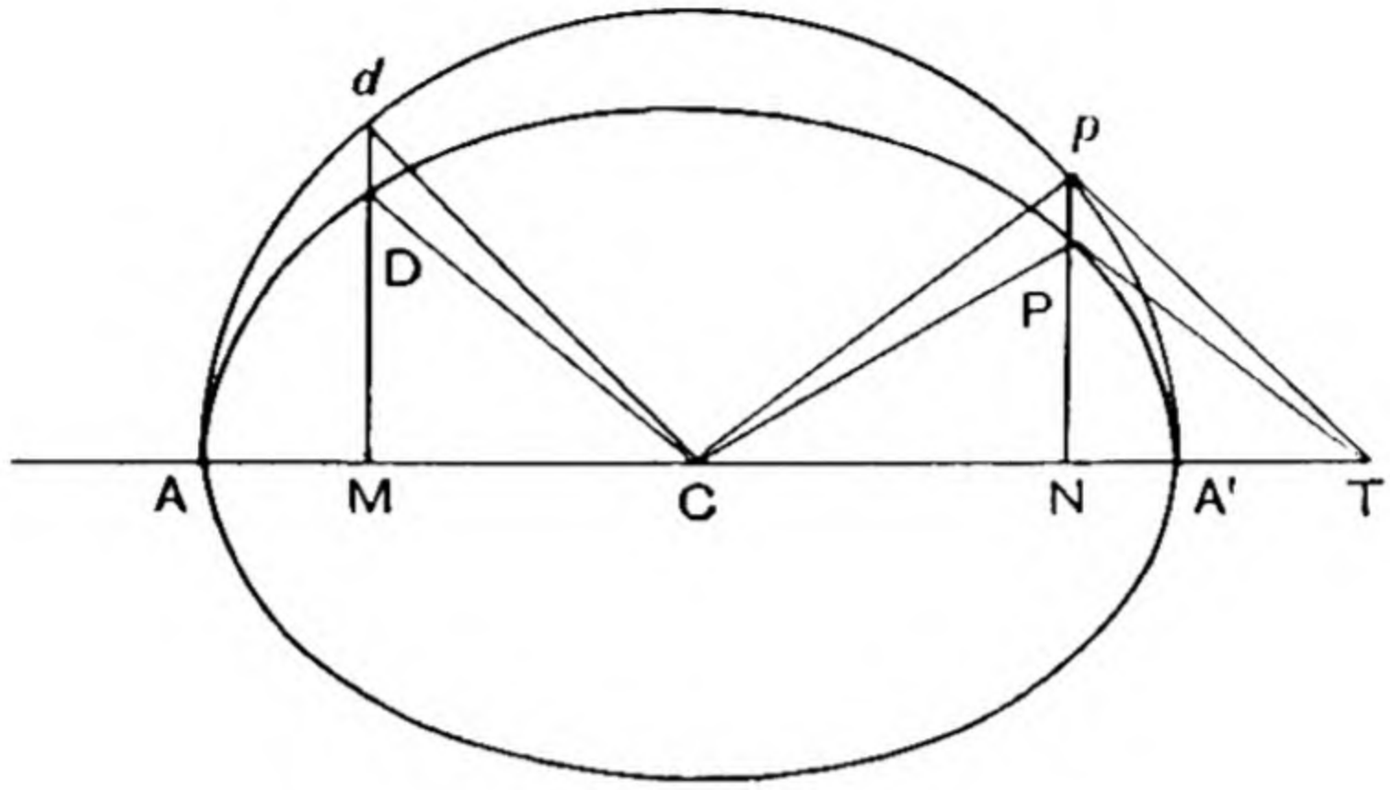
$$\therefore\ PN : DM = pN : dM.$$

$$\therefore\ pN : dM = NT : MC,$$

that is
$$pN : NT = dM : MC.$$

$\therefore$ as the $\triangle$s $pNT$ and $dMC$ have the angles at $M$ and $N$ equal, they are similar.

$$\therefore\ \angle MCd = \angle NTp.$$




$\therefore$ $Cd$ is parallel to $Tp$.

$\therefore$ $\angle dCp = \angle CpT =$ a right angle.

Cor. $pN = CM$ and $dM = CN$ for $\triangle CNp \equiv \triangle dMC$.

Whence also we have

$$PN : CM = BC : AC,$$
$$DM : CN = BC : AC.$$

**152. Prop.** *If $CP$ and $CD$ be conjugate semidiameters of an ellipse*

$$CP^2 + CD^2 = CA^2 + CB^2.$$

For using the figure of the last proposition

$$CP^2 = CN^2 + PN^2 = CN^2 + \frac{BC^2}{AC^2} \cdot pN^2$$

and $CD^2 = CM^2 + DM^2 = pN^2 + \frac{BC^2}{AC^2} dM^2 = pN^2 + \frac{BC^2}{AC^2} CN^2$.

$$\therefore\ CP^2 + CD^2 = \left(1 + \frac{BC^2}{AC^2}\right)(pN^2 + CN^2)$$
$$= \left(1 + \frac{BC^2}{AC^2}\right) AC^2 = AC^2 + BC^2.$$

Thus the sum of the squares of two conjugate diameters of an ellipse is constant and $= AA'^2 + BB'^2$.

Or we may prove the proposition thus:

In § 151 we proved $pN = CM$,

$$\therefore\ CM^2 + CN^2 = pN^2 + CN^2 = Cp^2 = AC^2.$$

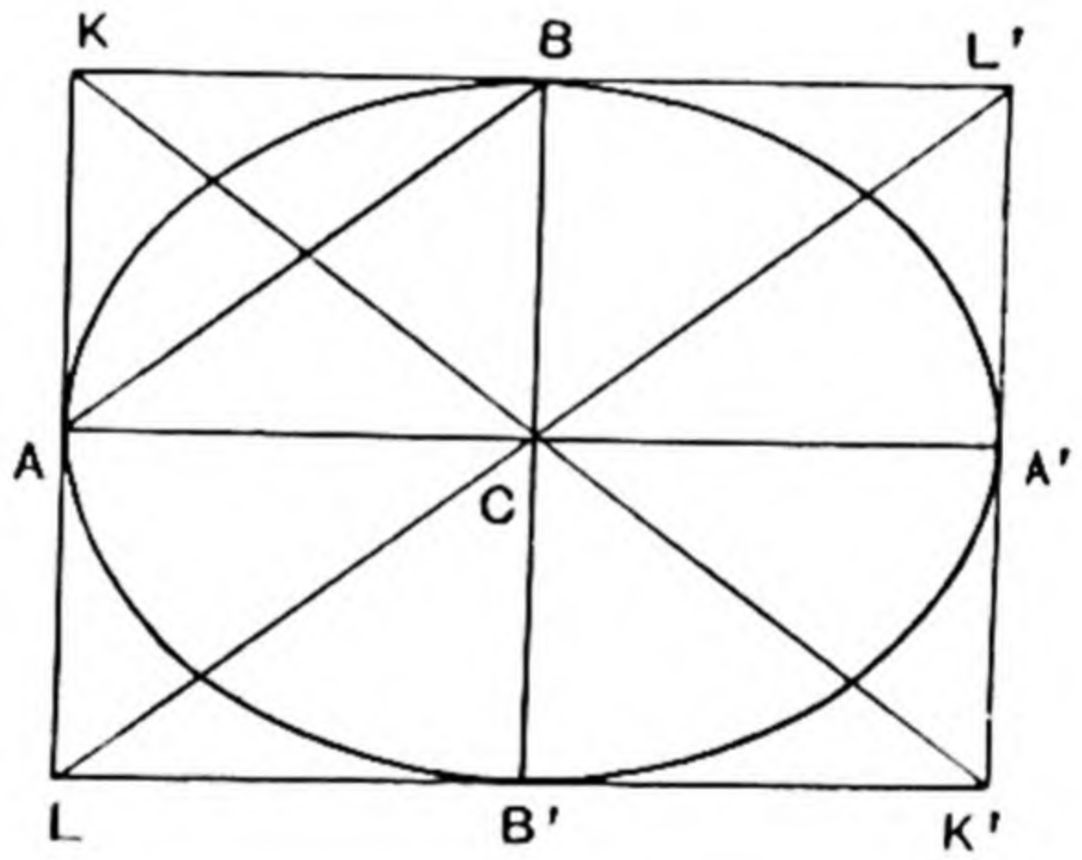
In exactly the same way by drawing ordinates to the minor axis and working with the circle on $BB'$ as diameter we have

$$PN^2 + DM^2 = BC^2.$$

Whence by addition, $CP^2 + CD^2 = AC^2 + BC^2$.

**152a. Equiconjugate Diameters.**

There is one pair of conjugate diameters of an ellipse which are equal to one another namely those which lie along the diagonals of the rectangle formed by the tangents at the extremities of the major and minor axes.



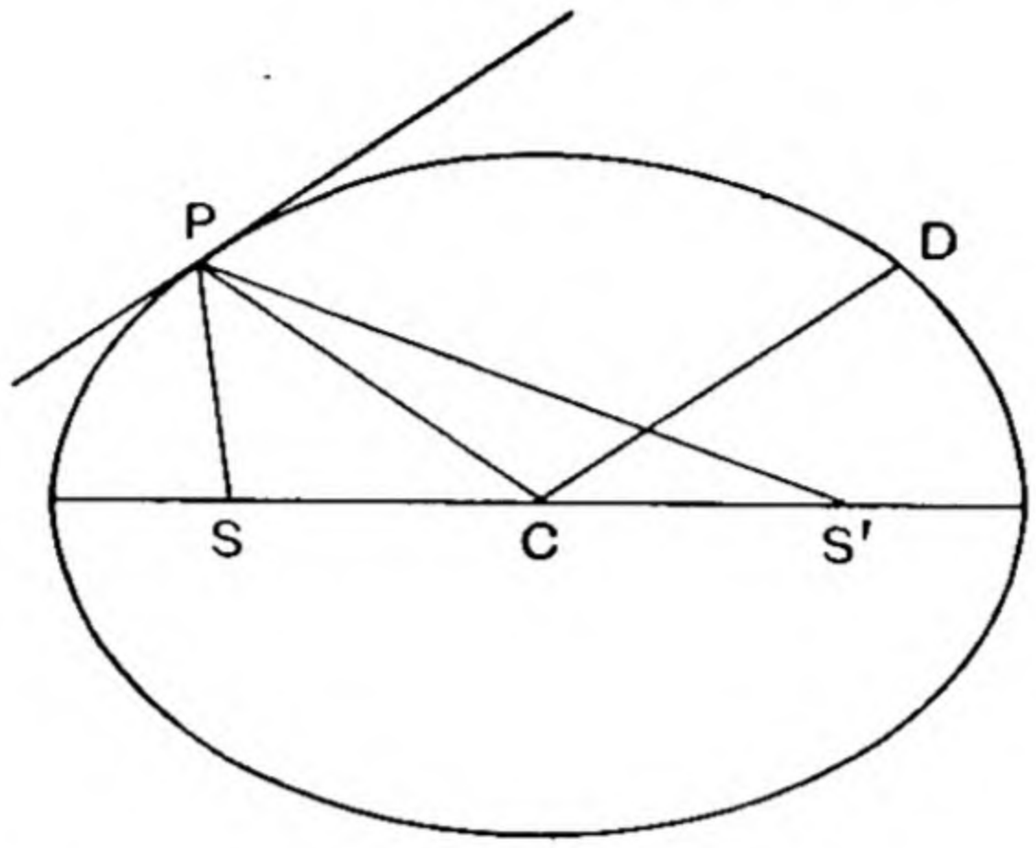

That the diameters along these lines are equal is clear from the symmetry of the curve, and that they are conjugate diameters is seen from the fact that in the figure here presented since $KC$ bisects $AB$, which is parallel to $LL'$, $CK$ and $CL'$ are conjugate lines.

**152b. Prop.** *If $CP$ and $CD$ be a pair of conjugate semi-diameters of an ellipse*

$$SP \,.\, S'P = CD^2.$$

Since $C$ is the middle point of $SS'$

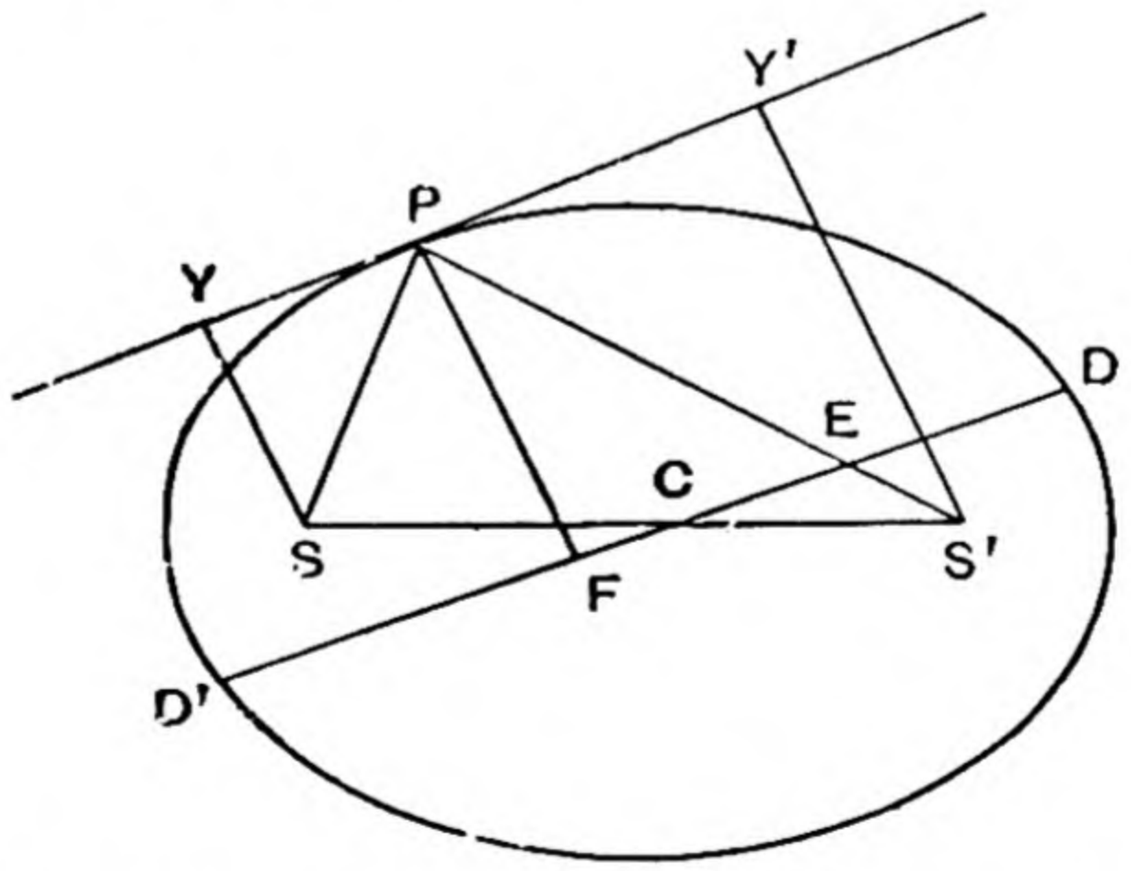
$$2CP^2 + 2CS^2 = SP^2 + S'P^2$$
$$= (S'P + SP)^2 - 2SP \,.\, S'P$$
$$= 4CA^2 - 2SP \,.\, S'P.$$




$$\therefore \quad SP \,.\, S'P = 2CA^2 - CP^2 - CS^2$$
$$= CA^2 + CB^2 - CP^2$$
$$= CD^2 \qquad \text{(by § 152)}.$$

**153. Prop.** *If $P$ be any point on an ellipse, and the normal at $P$ meet $DCD'$, the diameter conjugate to $CP$, in $F$, then $PF \,.\, CD = AC \,.\, BC$.*

Draw the tangent at $P$ and drop the perpendiculars $SY$ and $S'Y'$ from the foci on it.




Join $SP$ and $S'P$, and let $S'P$ cut $DD'$ in $E$.

Then the $\Delta$s $SPY$, $S'PY'$ are similar.

$$\therefore\ SY : SP = S'Y' : S'P.$$

$$\therefore\ SY \,.\, S'Y' : SP \,.\, S'P = SY^2 : SP^2$$

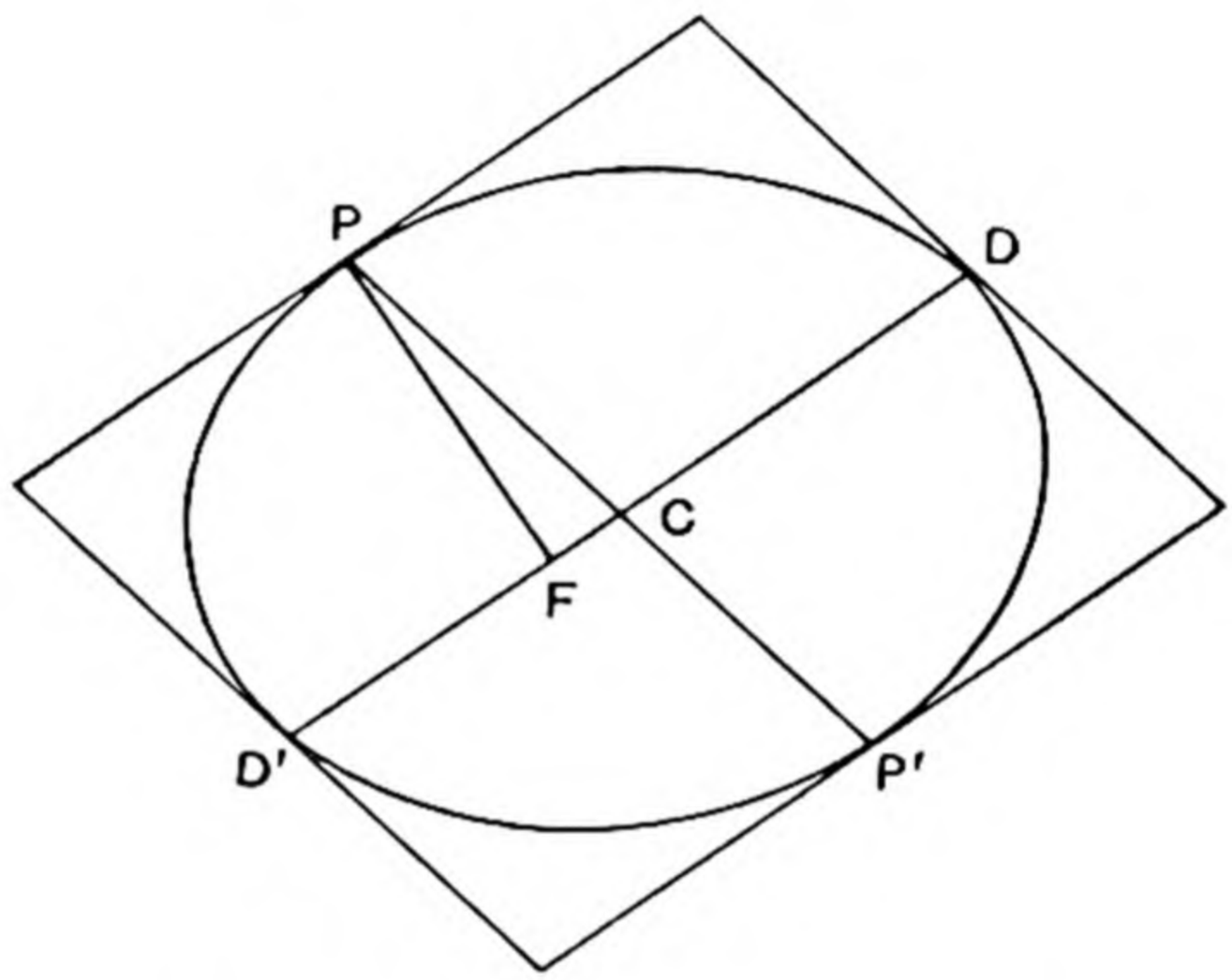
$$= PF^2 : PE^2 \text{ since the } \triangle\text{s } SYP, PFE \text{ are similar.}$$

$$\therefore\ BC^2 : CD^2 = PF^2 : AC^2,$$

that is,
$$PF \,.\, CD = AC \,.\, BC.$$

Cor. The area of the parallelogram formed by the tangents at the extremities of a pair of conjugate diameters is constant

$$= 4AC \,.\, BC.$$




For the area $= 4$ area of parallelogram $PD'$

$$= 4PF \,.\, CD = 4AC \,.\, BC.$$

**Circle of Curvature.**

**154. Prop.** *The chord of the circle of curvature at any point $P$ of an ellipse and through the centre of the ellipse is*

$$\frac{2CD^2}{CP}.$$

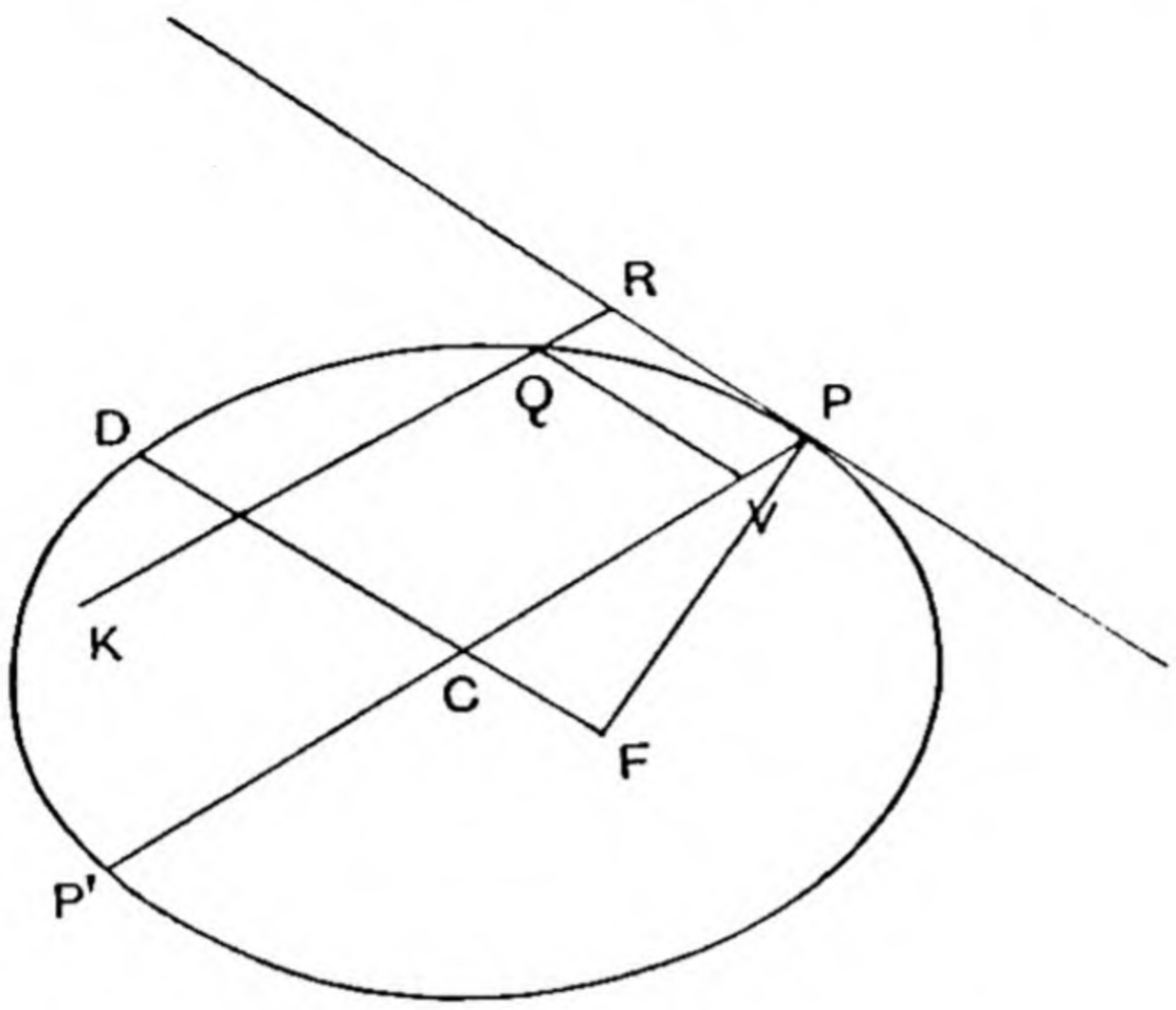
Let $Q$ be a point on the ellipse near to $P$ and $QV$ the ordinate of the diameter $PCP'$.

Consider the circle touching the ellipse at $P$ and cutting it in $Q$. Let $QK$ be the chord of this circle parallel to $CP$. Let $QK$ meet the tangent at $P$ in $R$.

Then from the circle

$$RQ \,.\, RK = RP^2.$$

$$\therefore\ RK = \frac{RP^2}{RQ} = \frac{QV^2}{PV} = \frac{CD^2}{CP^2}\ VP' \quad (\S\ 147).$$




Thus the chord of the circle of curvature through the centre being the limit of $RK$ when $Q$ approaches $P$

$$= \frac{CD^2}{CP^2} \times \text{Limit}\ \ VP'$$

$$= \frac{CD^2}{CP^2} \times 2CP = \frac{2CD^2}{CP}.$$

Cor. The diameter of the circle of curvature $= \dfrac{2CD^2}{PF}$, $F$ being the point in which the normal meets $CD$, for

$$\text{Diameter} : \frac{2CD^2}{CP} = \sec\,(\angle \text{ between normal and } CP)$$

$$= CP : PF.$$

$$\therefore\ \text{Diameter} = \frac{2CD^2}{PF} = \frac{2CD^3}{AC \,.\, BC}.$$

## EXERCISES

1. Prove that in the notation of this chapter

$$CS : CX = CS^2 : CA^2.$$

2. If $SL$ be the semi-latus rectum of an ellipse then $SL = e \,.\, SX$; prove from this that

$$SL = \frac{BC^2}{AC}.$$

Obtain also the length of the latus rectum by using the fact (§§ 116, 117) that the lengths of two focal chords are in the ratio of the squares of the diameters parallel to them.

3. If $Y$, $Z$ be the feet of the perpendiculars from the foci of an ellipse on the tangent at $P$, of which $PN$ is the ordinate; prove that the circle circumscribing $YNZ$ passes through the centre of the ellipse.

4. If $P$ be any point on an ellipse whose foci are $S$ and $S'$ the circle circumscribing $SPS'$ will cut the minor axis in the points where it is met by the tangent and normal at $P$.

5. If two circles touch internally the locus of the centres of circles touching them both is an ellipse, whose foci are the centres of the given circles.

6. If the tangent at $P$ to an ellipse meet the major axis in $T$, and $NG$ be the subnormal,

$$CT \,.\, NG = BC^2.$$

7. If $PN$ be the ordinate of any point $P$ of an ellipse and $Y$, $Y'$ the feet of the perpendiculars from the foci on the tangent at $P$, then $PN$ bisects the angle $YNY'$.

8. If the normal at $P$ to an ellipse meet the minor axis in $g$, and the tangent at $P$ meet the tangent at the vertex $A$ in $V$, shew that $Sg : SC = PV : VA$.

9. If the normal at $P$ meet the major axis in $G$, $PG$ is a harmonic mean between the perpendiculars from the foci on the tangent at $P$.

10. If an ellipse inscribed in a triangle have one focus at the orthocentre, the other focus will be at the circumcentre.

11. If an ellipse slide between two straight lines at right angles the locus of its centre is a circle.

12. Lines are drawn through a focus of an ellipse to meet the tangents to the ellipse at a constant angle, prove that the locus of the points in which they meet the tangents is a circle.

13. The locus of the incentre of the triangle whose vertices are the foci of an ellipse and any point on the curve is an ellipse.

14. The opposite sides of a quadrilateral described about an ellipse subtend supplementary angles at either focus.

15. Prove that the foci of an ellipse and the points where any tangent to it meets the tangents at its vertices are concyclic.

16. If $CQ$ be a semidiameter of an ellipse conjugate to a chord which is normal to the curve at $P$, then $CP$ is conjugate to the normal at $Q$.

17. If $P$ be any point on an ellipse, foci $S$ and $S'$, and $A$ be a vertex, then the bisectors of the angles $PSA$, $PS'A$ meet on the tangent at $P$.

18. In an ellipse whose centre is $C$ and foci $S$ and $S'$, $GL$ is drawn perpendicular to $CP$, and $CM$ is drawn parallel to $S'P$ meeting $PG$ in $M$. Prove that the triangles $CLM$, $CMP$ are similar.

19. A circle is drawn touching an ellipse at two points, and $Q$ is any point on the ellipse. Prove that if $QT$ be a tangent to the circle from $Q$, and $QL$ perpendicular to the common chord, then

$$QT = e \,.\, QL.$$

20. If a parabola have its focus coincident with one of the foci of an ellipse, and touch its minor axis, a common tangent to the ellipse and parabola will subtend a right angle at the focus.

21. Shew how to determine the magnitude and position of the axes of an ellipse, having given two conjugate diameters in magnitude and position.

22. Construct an ellipse when the position of its centre and a self-conjugate triangle are given.

23. If $P$ be any point on an ellipse whose vertices are $A$ and $A'$, and $AP$, $A'P$ meet a directrix in $E$ and $F$, then $EF$ subtends a right angle at the corresponding focus.

24. Deduce from Ex. 23 the property that $PN^2 : AN \,.\, NA'$ is constant.

25. Prove that chords joining any point on an ellipse to the ends of a diameter are parallel to a pair of conjugate diameters.

[Two such chords are called supplemental chords.]

26. If a circle touch a fixed ellipse at $P$, and intersect it at the ends of a diameter $QQ'$, then $PQ$ and $PQ'$ are fixed in direction.

27. Ellipses have a common fixed focus and touch two fixed straight lines, prove that their director circles are coaxal.

28. $SY$ is the perpendicular from the focus $S$ of an ellipse on a tangent, and $K$ the point in $SY$ produced such that $SY = YK$. Prove that the square of the tangent from $K$ to the director circle is double the square on $SY$.

29. The circle of curvature at an extremity of one of the equal conjugate diameters of an ellipse meets the ellipse again at the extremity of that diameter.

30. If $PN$ be the ordinate of a point $P$ on an ellipse, the chord of curvature in the direction of $PN = \dfrac{2CD^2}{BC^2} \times PN$.

31. If $S$ and $S'$ be the foci of an ellipse and $B$ an extremity of the minor axis, the circle $SS'B$ will cut the minor axis in the centre of curvature at $B$.

32. The circle of curvature at a point $P$ of an ellipse passes through the focus $S$, and $SE$ is drawn parallel to the tangent at $P$ to meet in $E$ the diameter through $P$; shew that it divides the diameter in the ratio 3 : 1.

33. The circle of curvature at $P$ on an ellipse cuts the curve again in $Q$; the tangent at $P$ meets the other common tangent, which touches the ellipse and circle at $E$ and $F$, in $O$; prove $(TO, EF) = -1$.

34. The tangent at $P$ to an ellipse meets the equiconjugates in $Q$ and $Q'$; shew that $CP$ is a symmedian of the triangle $QCQ'$.

# CHAPTER XIII

## THE HYPERBOLA

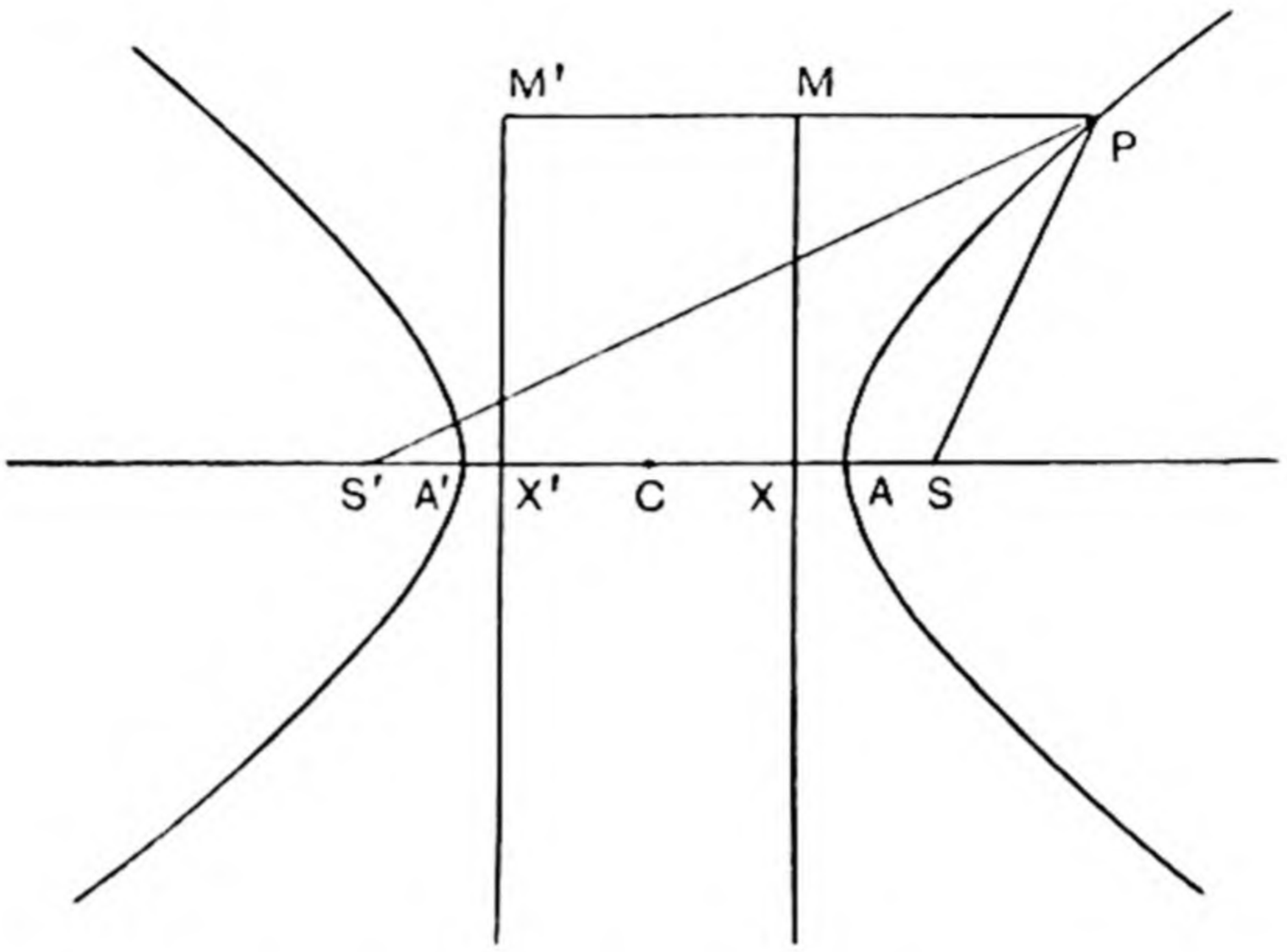
**155.** We have seen in §§ 100, 101 that a hyperbola, which is the projection of a circle cut by the vanishing line, has two axes of symmetry at right angles, one of which, named the transverse axis, meets the curve in what are called the vertices $A$ and $A'$, while the other called the conjugate axis does not meet the curve. These two axes meet in $C$ the centre of the curve, and there are two tangents from $C$ to the curve having their points of contact at infinity. These tangents are called the asymptotes and they make equal angles with the axes.

The curve has two foci $S$ and $S'$ lying on the line of the transverse axis, and such that the feet of the perpendiculars from them on the asymptotes lie on the circle on $AA'$ as diameter. The directrices which are the polars of the foci are at right angles to the transverse axis, and pass through the feet of these perpendiculars. If $X$ and $X'$ be the points in which the directrices cut the transverse axis and $C$ be the centre, then the eccentricity $(e) = CS : CA = CA : CX$.

**156.** In this chapter we shall set forth the principal properties that all hyperbolas have in common. Some of these are the same as those of the ellipse and can be established in much the same way. But the fact that the hyperbola has a pair of asymptotes, that is, tangents whose points of contact are at infinity, gives the curve a character and properties of its own.

### 157. Difference of focal distances constant.

**Prop.** *The difference of the focal distances of any point on a hyperbola is constant, and equal to the length $AA'$ of the transverse axis.*




Let $P$ be any point on the hyperbola.

Draw $PMM'$ as in the figure perpendicular to the directrices, then

$$S'P = e \,.\, PM' \text{ and } SP = e \,.\, PM.$$

$$\therefore\ S'P \sim SP = e \,.\, XX' = AA'.$$

For points on the one branch we have $S'P - SP = AA'$ and for points on the other $SP - S'P = AA'$.

Cor. Two confocal hyperbolas cannot intersect.

### Tangent and Normal.

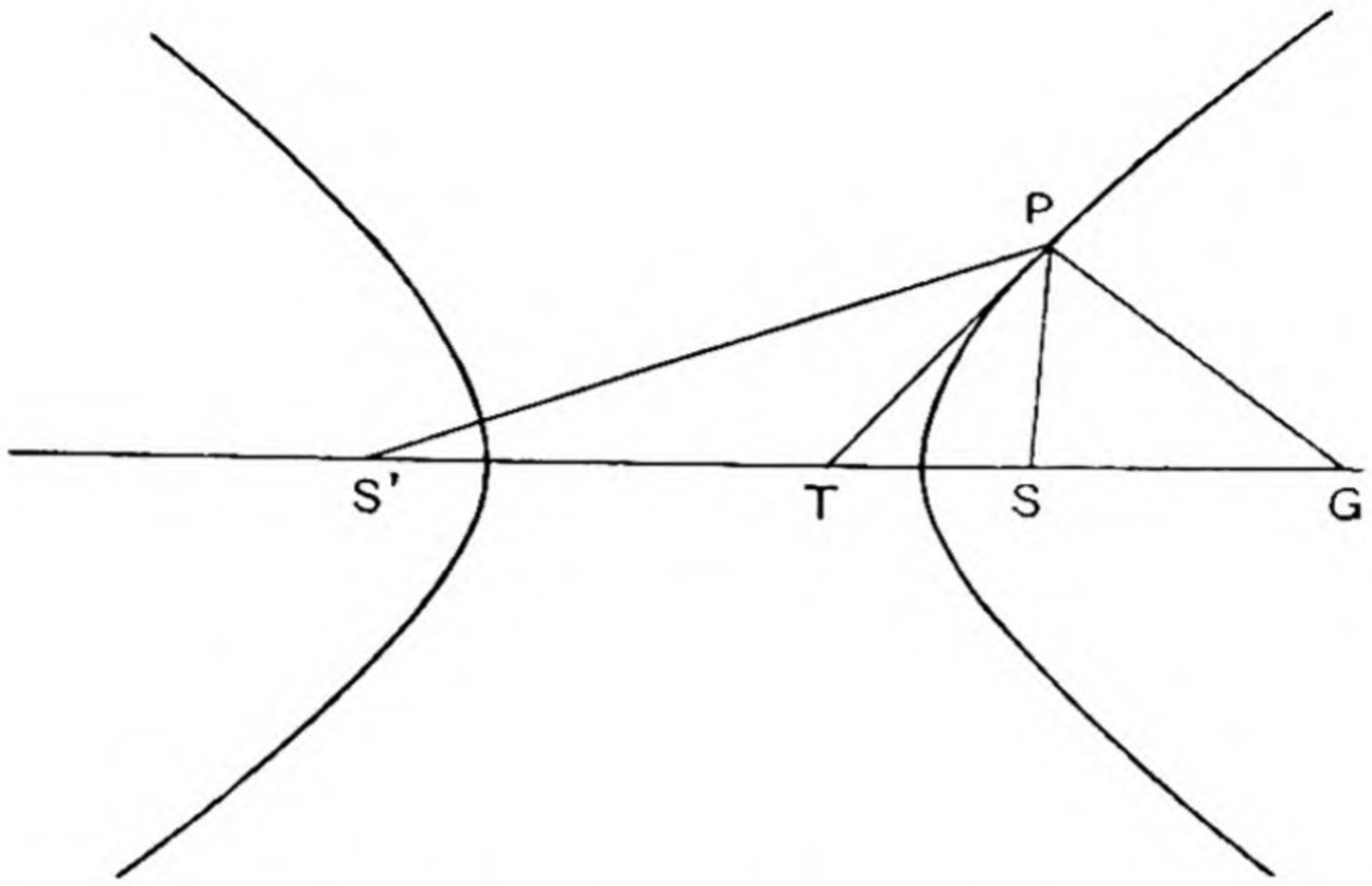
**158. Prop.** *The tangent and normal at any point of a hyperbola bisect respectively the interior and exterior angles of the focal radii of the point.*

Let the tangent and normal at $P$ meet the transverse axis in $T$ and $G$.

Then by § 111 $SG = e \,.\, SP$, $S'G = e \,.\, S'P$.

$$\therefore\ SG : SP = S'G : S'P.$$

$\therefore$ $PG$ is the bisector of the exterior angle of $SPS'$, and $PT$, perpendicular to $PG$, must therefore bisect the interior angle.




Cor. 1. $CG \,.\, CT = CS^2$, for $(SS', TG) = -1$.

Cor. 2. If an ellipse and hyperbola are confocal their tangents at the points of intersection of the curves are at right angles, or, in other words, the curves cut at right angles.

**159. Prop.** *If $SY$, $S'Y'$ be the perpendiculars from the foci on the tangent to a hyperbola at any point $P$, $Y$ and $Y'$ will lie on the circle on $AA'$ as diameter (called the* **auxiliary** *circle), and $SY \,.\, S'Y'$ will be constant.*

Let $SY$ meet $S'P$ in $K$.

Then since $\angle SPY = \angle KPY$ (§ 158)

and $\angle SYP = \angle KYP$

and $PY$ is common,

$\therefore \triangle SPY \equiv \triangle KPY$

and $SY = YK,\ PK = SP.$

And since $Y$ and $C$ are the middle points of $SK$ and $SS'$, $CY$ is parallel to $S'K$ and

$$CY = \tfrac{1}{2}S'K = \tfrac{1}{2}(S'P - KP) = \tfrac{1}{2}(S'P - SP) = \tfrac{1}{2}AA' = CA.$$

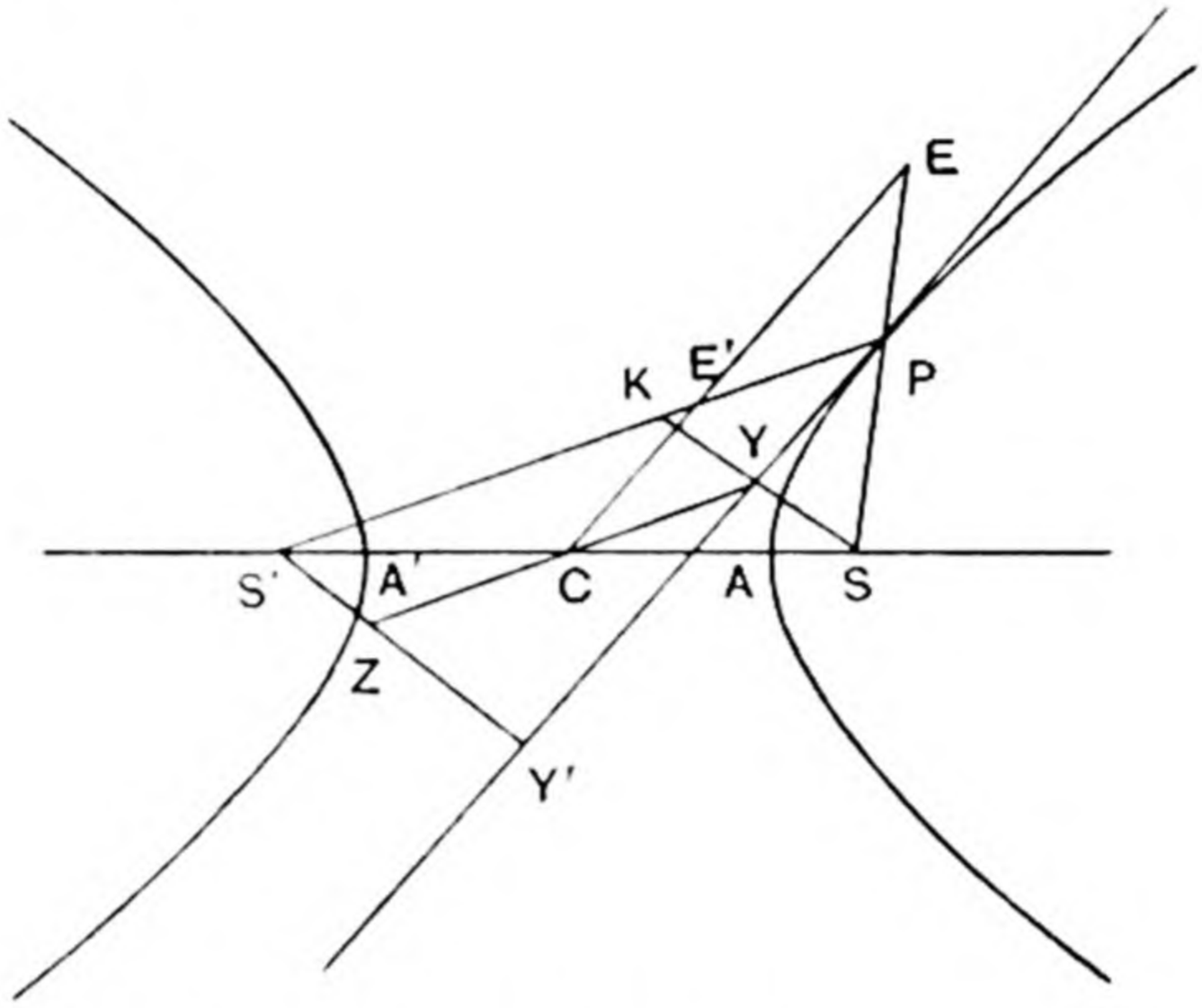
Thus $Y$ (and similarly $Y'$) lies on the circle on $AA'$.

If $S'Y'$ meet the circle again in $Z$, then since $YY'Z$ is a right angle, $YZ$ must be a diameter and pass through $C$.

Also $\triangle SCY \equiv \triangle S'CZ$ and $S'Z = SY$.

$\therefore SY \cdot S'Y' = S'Z \cdot S'Y' = S'A' \cdot S'A = CS^2 - CA^2$

which is constant.




Cor. 1. The diameter parallel to the tangent at $P$ will meet $SP$ and $S'P$ in points $E$ and $E'$ such that $PE = PE' = CA$.

Cor. 2. The envelope of a line such that the foot of the perpendicular on it from a fixed point $S$ lies on a fixed circle which has $S$ *outside* it, is a hyperbola having $S$ for a focus.

Cor. 3. The envelope of a line such that the product of the perpendiculars on it from two fixed points, lying on *opposite* sides of it, is constant is a hyperbola having the fixed points for its foci.

Compare § 141, Corr. 2 and 3.

### 160. On the length of the conjugate axis.

We have seen that the conjugate axis of a hyperbola does not meet the curve, so that we cannot say it has a length in the same way that the minor axis of an ellipse has for its length that portion of it intercepted by the curve.

It is convenient, and this will be understood better as we

proceed, to measure off a length $BB'$ on the conjugate axis such that $B$ and $B'$ are equidistant from $C$, and

$$BC^2 = CS^2 - CA^2 = AS \,.\, A'S.$$

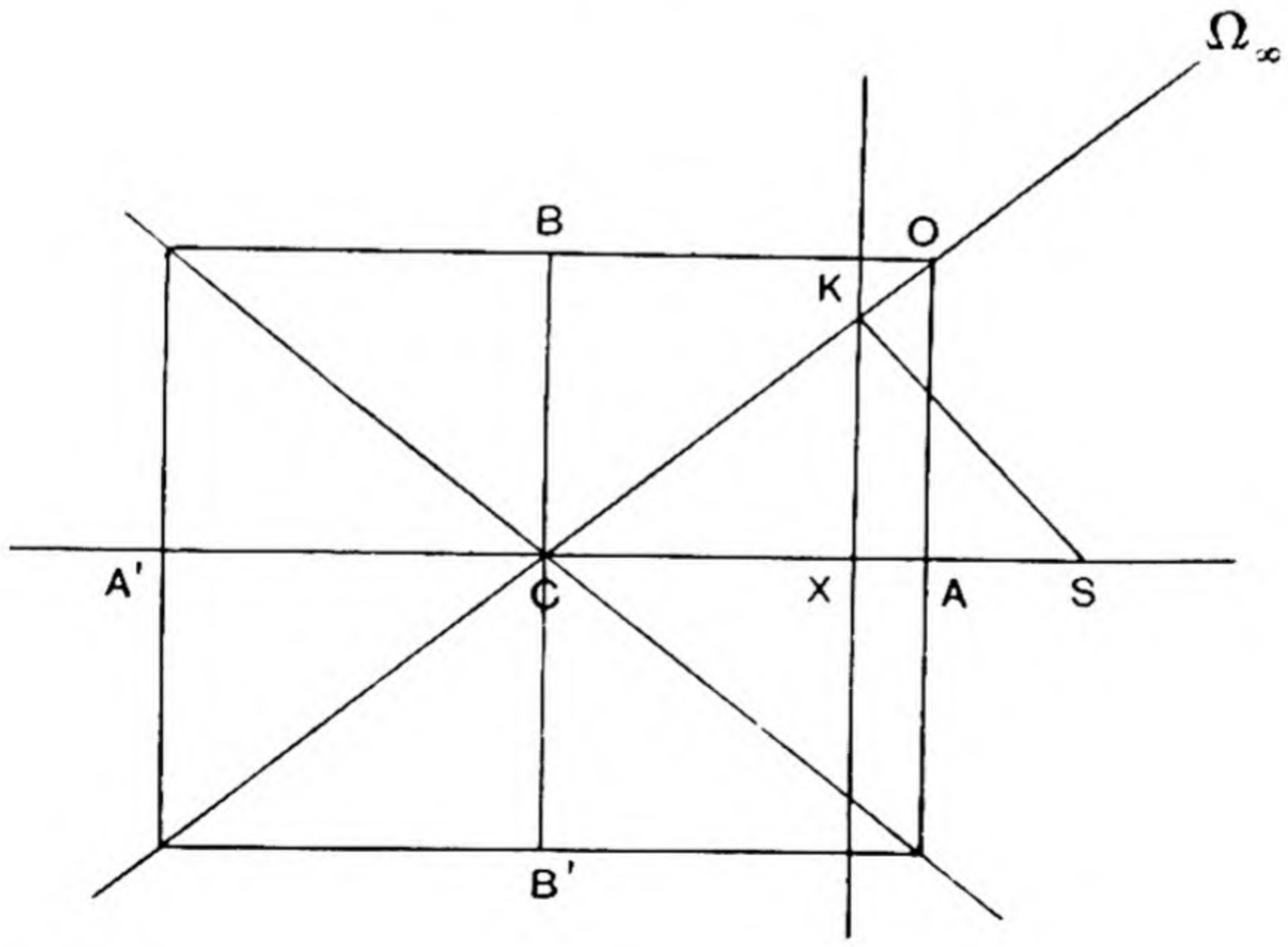
This will make $SY \,.\, S'Y'$ in the preceding proposition equal to $BC^2$. (Compare § 141.)

The length $BB'$ thus defined will for convenience be called the length of the conjugate axis, but it must be clearly understood that $BB'$ is not a diameter length of the hyperbola, for $B$ and $B'$ do not lie on the curve.

**161.** It will easily be seen that if a rectangle be drawn having a pair of opposite sides along the tangents at $A$ and $A'$, and having its diagonals along the asymptotes, then the portion of the conjugate axis intercepted in this rectangle will be this length $BB'$ which we have marked off as explained above.

For if the tangent at $A$ meet the asymptote $C\Omega$ in $O$, and the directrix corresponding to $S$ meet $C\Omega$ in $K$, we have, since $CKS$ is a right angle and $CK = CA$ (§ 101),

$$\triangle CKS \equiv \triangle CAO.$$




Hence

$$AO^2 = SK^2 = CS^2 - CK^2 = CS^2 - CA^2.$$

**Pair of tangents.**

**162. Prop.** *The two tangents drawn from a point to a hyperbola make equal or supplementary angles with the focal distances of the point.*

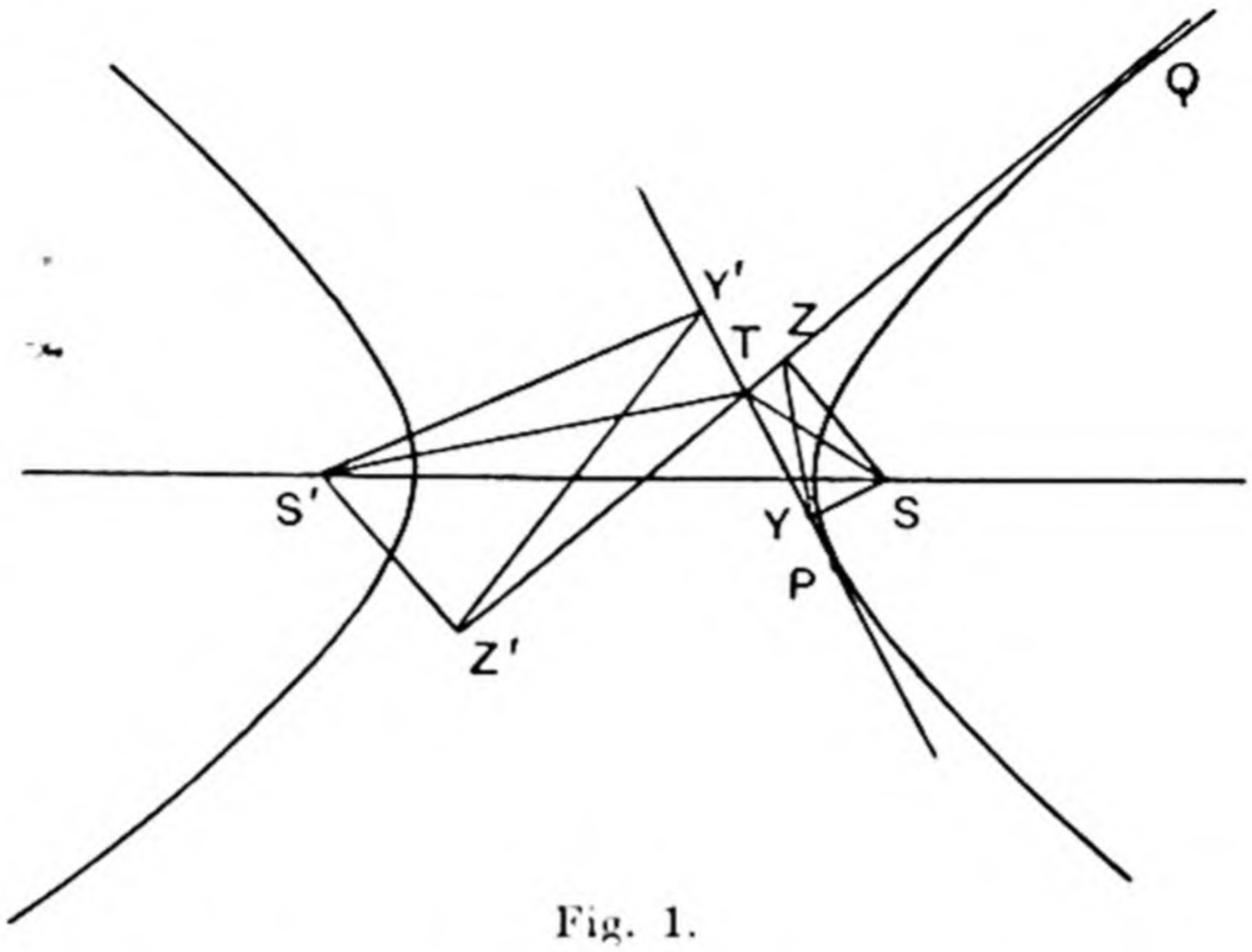



Fig. 1.

Let $TP$, $TQ$ be the tangents, it is required to prove that the angles $STP$, $S'TQ$ are equal or supplementary.

Draw $SY$, $S'Y'$ perp. to $TP$, and $SZ$, $S'Z'$ to $TQ$.

Then $$SY \cdot S'Y' = BC^2 = SZ \cdot S'Z'.$$

$$\therefore\ SY : SZ = S'Z' : S'Y'.$$

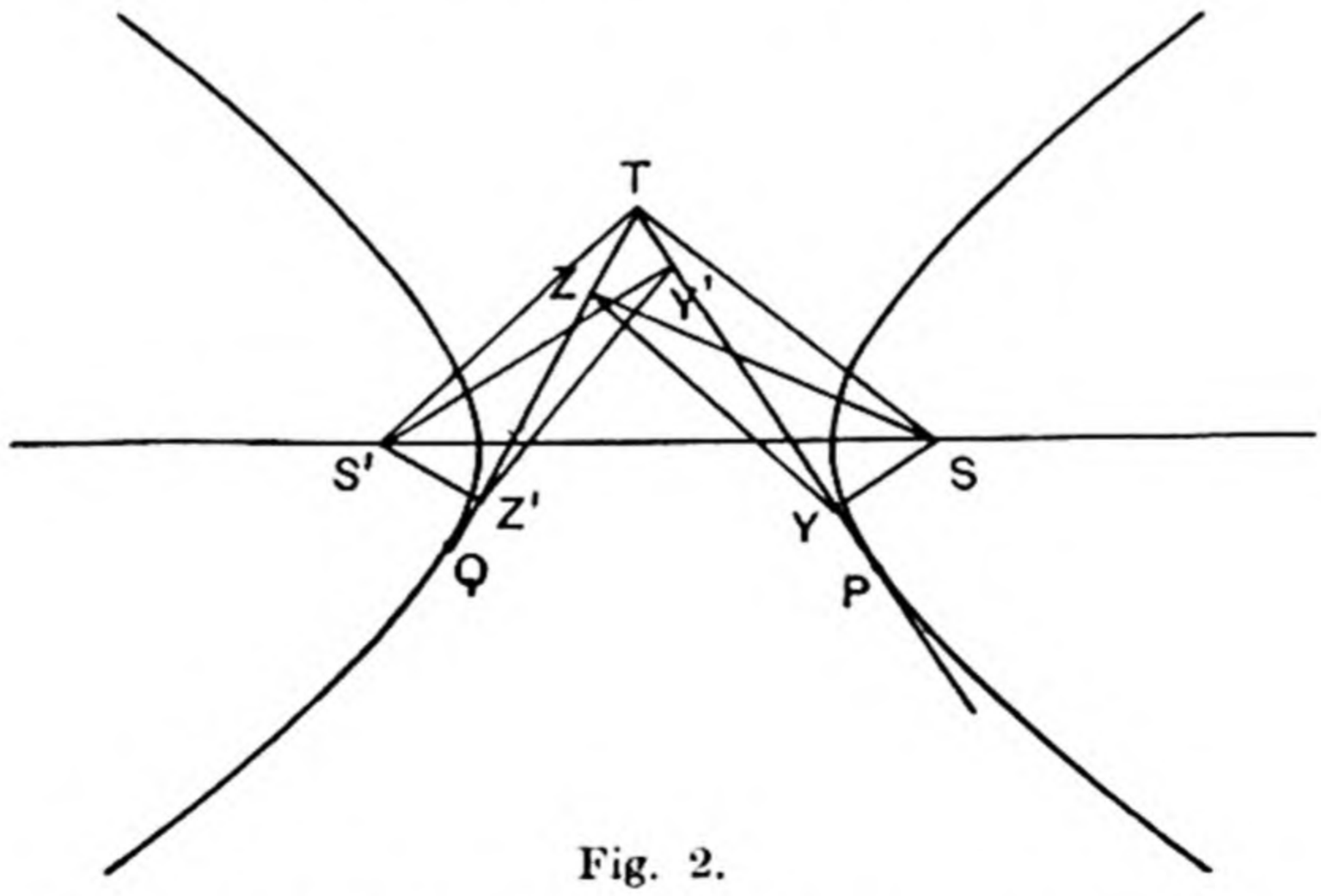



Fig. 2.

Also $\angle YSZ = \angle Z'S'Y'$ these being the supplements of the

equal angles $ZTY$ and $Z'TY'$ in fig. 1, and in fig. 2 each being equal to $YTZ$, since $SZTY$ and $S'Y'TZ'$ are cyclic.

Hence the $\triangle$s $SYZ$ and $S'Z'Y'$ are similar and

$$\angle STP = \angle SZY = \angle S'Y'Z' = \angle S'TZ'$$
$$= \text{supplement of } \angle S'TQ \text{ in fig. 1,}$$

while in fig. 2 it $= \angle S'TQ$.

Thus the two tangents from an external point make equal or supplementary angles with the focal distances of the point according as the tangents belong to opposite branches or the same branch of the curve.

### 163. Director Circle.

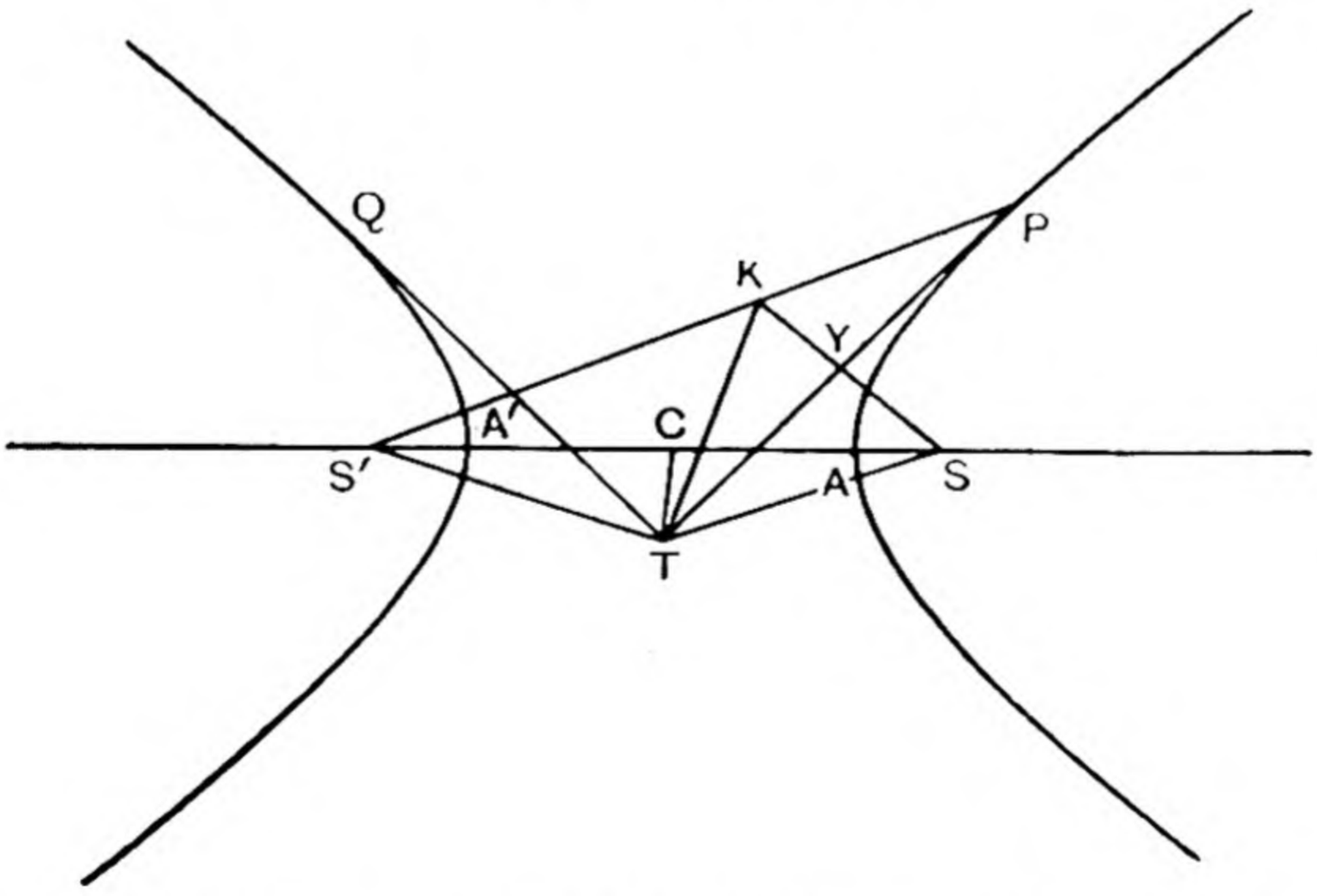
**Prop.** *The locus of points tangents from which to a hyperbola are at right angles is a circle* (*called the* **director circle** *of the hyperbola*).

Let $TP$ and $TQ$ be two tangents at right angles.

Draw $SY$ perp. to $TP$ to meet $S'P$ in $K$.

Then by § 159, $SY = YK$ and $S'K = AA'$.

Also $$\triangle SYT \equiv \triangle KYT.$$




Thus $ST = KT$ and $\angle KTY = \angle STY = \angle QTS'$ (§ 162).

$\therefore \quad \angle KTS' = \angle PTQ =$ a right angle.

Now
$$2CT^2 + 2CS^2 = ST^2 + S'T^2 \text{ (§ 10)}$$
$$= KT^2 + S'T^2$$
$$= KS'^2 = AA'^2 = 4CA^2.$$
$$\therefore\ CT^2 = 2CA^2 - CS^2$$
$$= CA^2 - (CS^2 - CA^2)$$
$$= CA^2 - CB^2.$$

Thus the locus of $T$ is a circle whose centre is $C$ and the square of whose radius is $CA^2 - CB^2$. (Cf. § 145.)

Cor. 1. If $CA = CB$, $CT = 0$, that is the tangents from $C$, or the asymptotes, are at right angles.

Cor. 2. If $CA < CB$, there are no points from which tangents at right angles can be drawn.

## The Conjugate Hyperbola.

**164.** A hyperbola is completely determined when we know the length and position of its transverse and conjugate axes; for when $AA'$ and $BB'$ are fixed, $S$ and $S'$ the foci on the line $AA'$ are determined by

$$CS^2 = CS'^2 = CA^2 + CB^2.$$

Also the eccentricity $e = CS : CA$, and the directrices are determined, being the lines perp. to $AA'$ through points $X$ and $X'$ on it such that

$$CA : CX = e = CA' : CX.$$

**165.** We are going now to take a new hyperbola having for its transverse and conjugate axes respectively the conjugate and transverse axes of the original hyperbola. This new hyperbola will clearly have the same asymptotes as the original hyperbola (§ 161) and it will occupy space in what we may call the exterior angle between those asymptotes, as shewn in the figure.

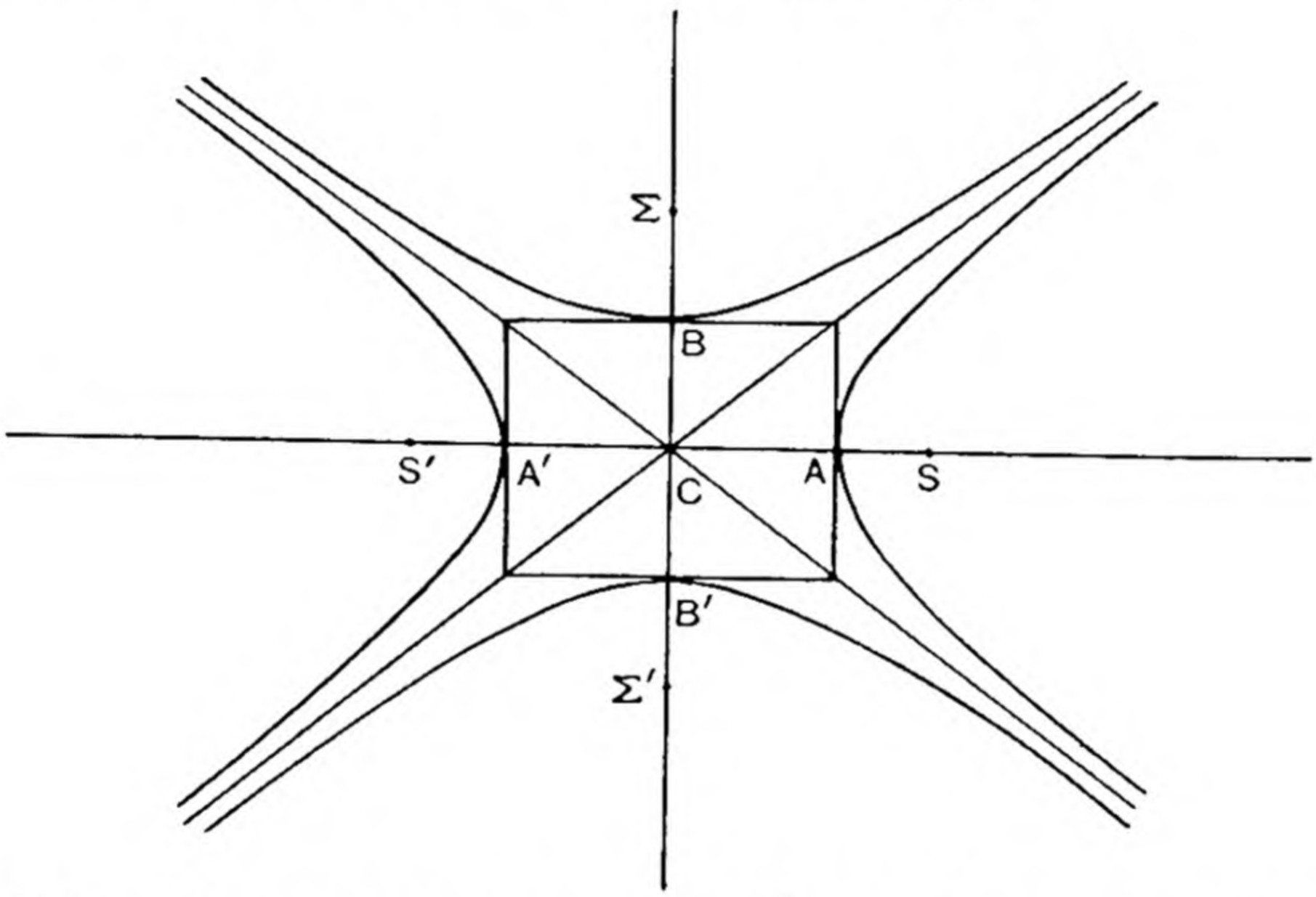
This new hyperbola is called the *conjugate hyperbola* in relation to the original hyperbola, and it follows that the original hyperbola is the conjugate hyperbola of the new one.

The hyperbola and its conjugate are two distinct curves, each having its foci and directrices, nor will they in general have the same eccentricity.

The foci $S$ and $S'$ of the original hyperbola lie on the line of $AA'$ and are such that $CS^2 = CA^2 + CB^2$, and the eccentricity is $CS : CA$. The foci $\Sigma$ and $\Sigma'$ of the conjugate hyperbola lie on the line of $BB'$ and are such that $C\Sigma^2 = CA^2 + CB^2$.

Thus $C\Sigma = CS$, but the eccentricity is $C\Sigma : CB$, which is only the same as that of the original hyperbola if $CA = CB$.

In this special case the asymptotes are the diagonals of a square (§ 161) and are therefore at right angles.




When the asymptotes are at right angles the hyperbola is said to be rectangular. In the next chapter we shall investigate the special properties of the rectangular hyperbola.

The conjugate hyperbola is, as we shall see, a very useful adjunct to the hyperbola and considerable use will be made of it in what follows.

**Asymptotic properties.**

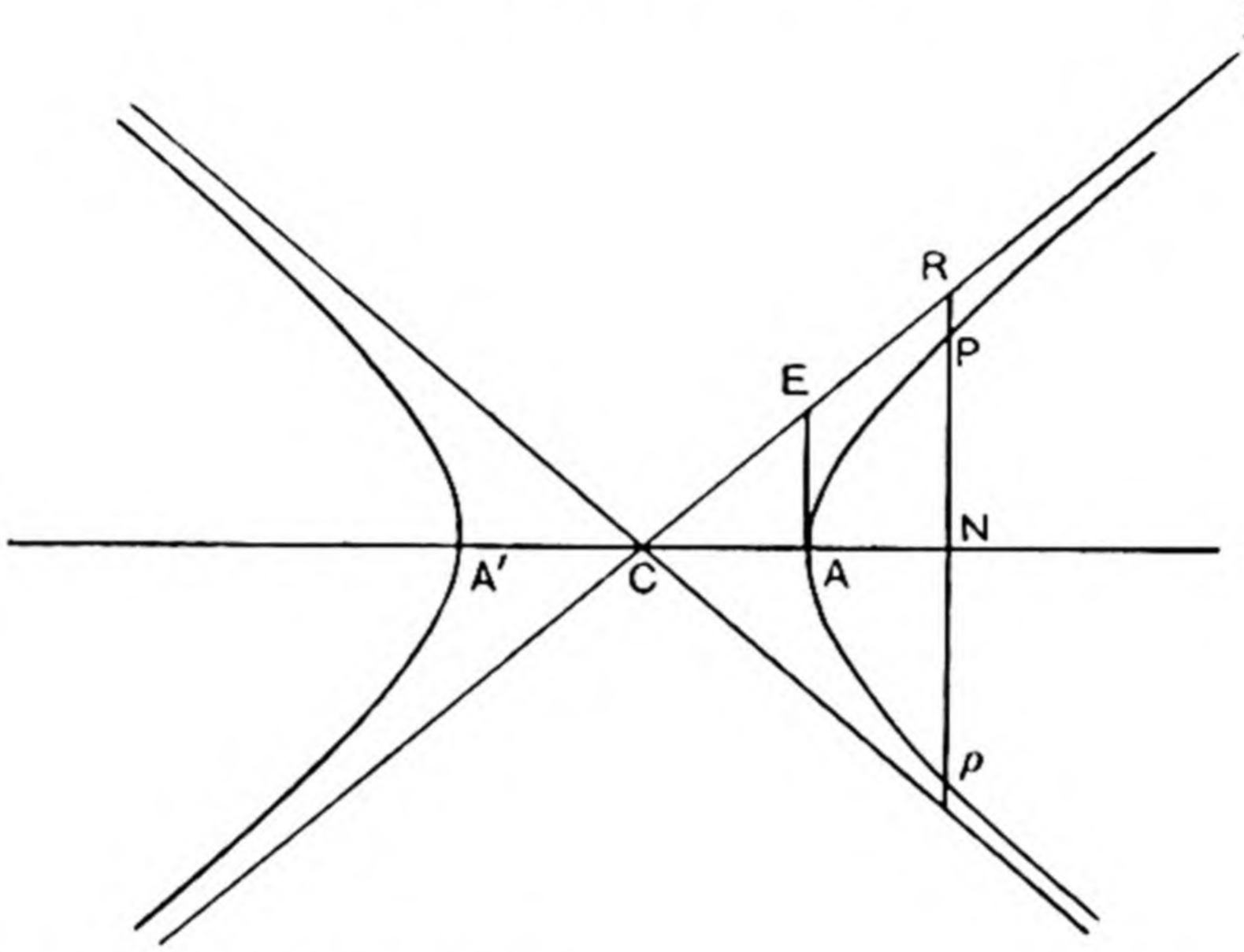
**166. Prop.** *If $R$ be any point on an asymptote of a hyperbola, and $RN$ perpendicular to the transverse axis meet the hyperbola in $P$ and $p$ then $RP \,.\, Rp = BC^2$.*

Let the tangent at $A$ meet the asymptote on which $R$ lies in $E$.

Then $\Omega$ being the point of contact of the asymptote with the curve at infinity we have by Newton's theorem

$$RP \,.\, Rp : R\Omega^2 = EA^2 : E\Omega^2.$$

$$\therefore\ RP \,.\, Rp = EA^2 = BC^2.$$




This can also be written

$$RN^2 - PN^2 = BC^2.$$

It will presently be seen that this proposition is only a special case of a more general theorem.

**167. Prop.** *If $PN$ be the ordinate to the transverse axis of any point $P$ of a hyperbola*

$$PN^2 : AN \,.\, A'N = BC^2 : AC^2.$$

Using the figure of § 166 we have

$$RN^2 - PN^2 = BC^2.$$

$$\therefore\ PN^2 = RN^2 - BC^2.$$

But
$$RN^2 : BC^2 = RN^2 : EA^2$$
$$= CN^2 : CA^2.$$

$$\therefore\ RN^2 - BC^2 : BC^2 = CN^2 - CA^2 : CA^2.$$

$$\therefore\ PN^2 : BC^2 = AN \,.\, A'N : CA^2.$$

$$\therefore\ PN^2 : AN \,.\, A'N = BC^2 : AC^2,$$

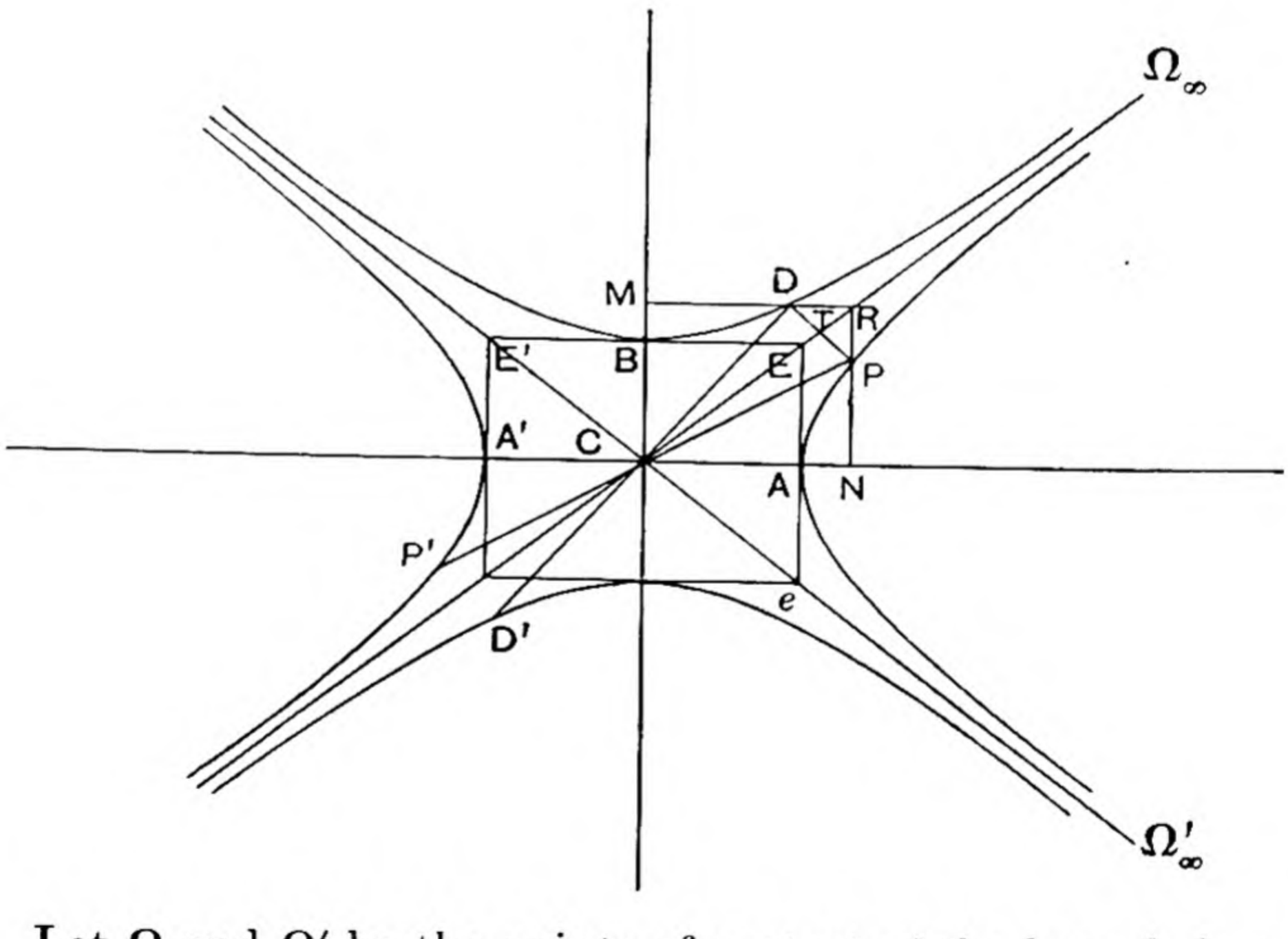
or we may write this

$$PN^2 : CN^2 - CA^2 = BC^2 : AC^2.$$

This too will be found to be but a special case of a more general theorem.

Comparing this property with the corresponding one in the ellipse (§ 148) we see that it was not possible to establish the property for the hyperbola in the same way as for the ellipse, because the conjugate axis does not meet the hyperbola.

**168. Prop.** *If from any point $R$ in an asymptote of a hyperbola $RPN$, $RDM$ be drawn perpendicular to the transverse and conjugate axes to cut the hyperbola and its conjugate respectively in $P$ and $D$, then $PD$ is parallel to the other asymptote, and $CP$, $CD$ are conjugate lines for both the hyperbola and the conjugate hyperbola.*




Let $\Omega$ and $\Omega'$ be the points of contact of the hyperbola and its asymptotes at infinity.

We first observe that $AB$ is parallel to $C\Omega'$.

For drawing the lines through $A$ and $B$ perpendicular to

the axes to meet the asymptotes, as indicated in the figure, in $E$, $e$, $E'$, we have

$$EB : BE' = EA : Ae.$$

Also $MN$ is parallel to $AB$, for

$$CA : CB = CA : AE = CN : RN$$
$$= CN : CM.$$
$$\therefore CA : CN = CB : CM.$$

Now $RN^2 - PN^2 = BC^2$
and $RM^2 - DM^2 = AC^2$ } § 166.

$$\therefore RN^2 - PN^2 : RM^2 - DM^2 = CM^2 : CN^2$$
$$= RN^2 : RM^2.$$
$$\therefore RN^2 : RM^2 = PN^2 : DM^2.$$

Thus $PD$ is parallel to $MN$ and therefore to $C\Omega'$.

Thus $PD$ will be bisected by $C\Omega$ in the point $T$ (say).

Now $DP$ will meet $C\Omega'$ at $\Omega'$, and we have

$$(DP, T\Omega') = -1.$$

$\therefore$ $CP$ and $CD$ will belong to the involution of which $C\Omega$ and $C\Omega'$ are the double lines.

But $C\Omega$ and $C\Omega'$ being tangents from $C$ to both the hyperbola and its conjugate are the double lines of the involution pencil formed by the pairs of conjugate lines through $C$.

$\therefore$ $CP$ and $CD$ are conjugate lines for both the hyperbola and its conjugate.

From this it follows that the tangent at $P$ to the hyperbola is parallel to $CD$, and the tangent at $D$ to the conjugate hyperbola is parallel to $CP$.

### 169. On the term conjugate diameters.

If the lines $PC$, $DC$ in the figure of § 168 meet the hyperbola and its conjugate again in the points $P'$ and $D'$ respectively, then $PCP'$ and $DCD'$ are called *conjugate diameters* for each of the hyperbolas. But it must be clearly understood that $PCP'$ is a diameter of the original hyperbola, whereas $DCD'$ is not, but it is a diameter of the conjugate hyperbola.

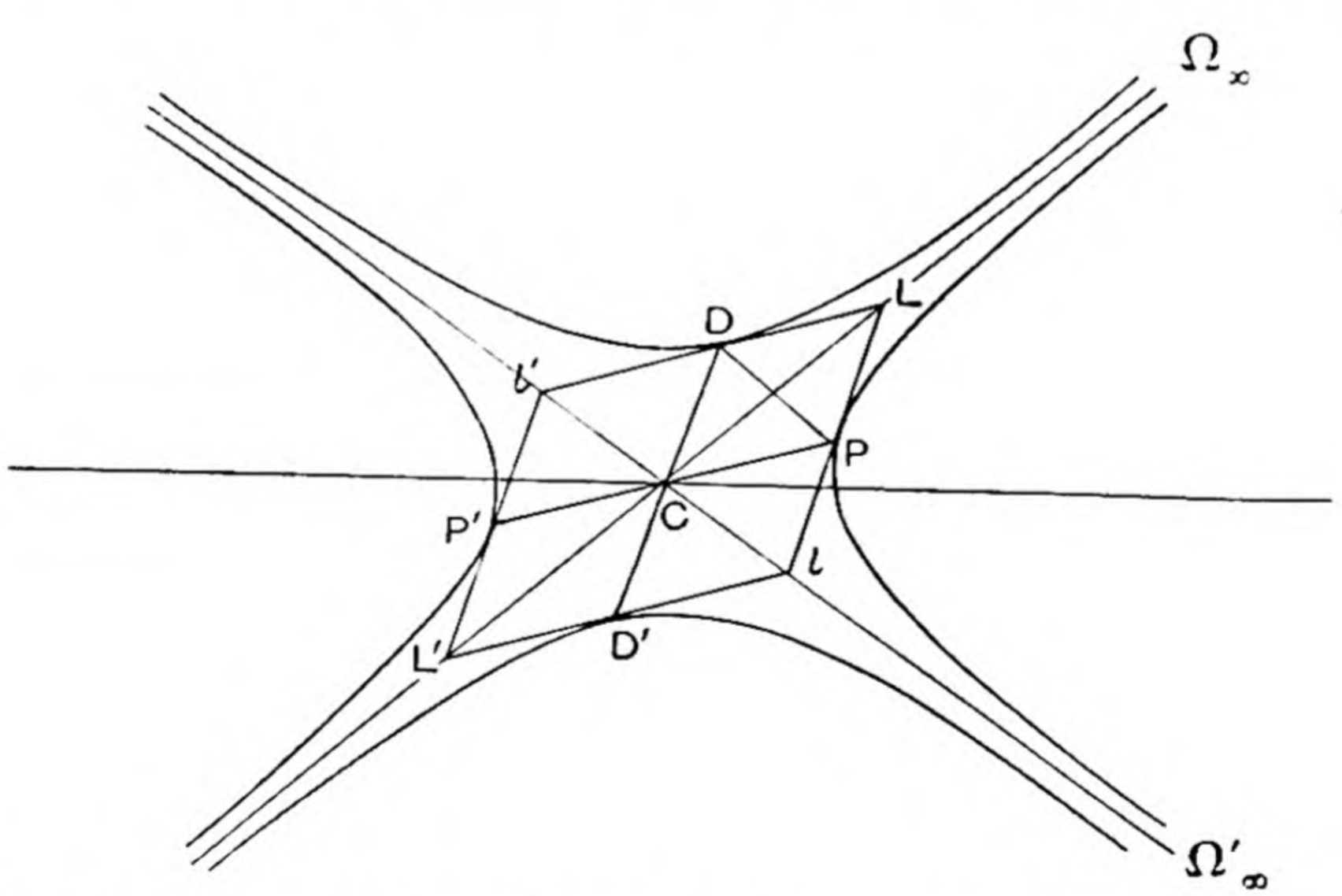
Of two so-called conjugate diameters one is a diameter of the hyperbola and the other of the conjugate hyperbola.

The line $DCD'$ is a diameter even for the original hyperbola in so far as it is a line through the centre and it will bisect a system of parallel chords, but it is not a diameter in the sense that it represents a length intercepted by the curve on the line, for $D$ and $D'$ are not on the hyperbola. $DCD'$ does not meet the hyperbola in real points, though of course as the student acquainted with Analytical Geometry will know it meets the curve in imaginary points, that is, points whose coordinates involve the imaginary quantity $\sqrt{-1}$.

**170. Prop.** *The tangents at the extremities of a pair of conjugate diameters form a parallelogram whose diagonals lie along the asymptotes.*

Let $PCP'$ and $DCD'$ be the conjugate diameters, as in the figure.

We have already proved (§ 168) that $PD$ is bisected by $C\Omega$.




The tangents at $P$ and $D$ are respectively parallel to $CD$ and $CP$.

These tangents then form with $CP$ and $CD$ a parallelogram having one diagonal along $C\Omega$.

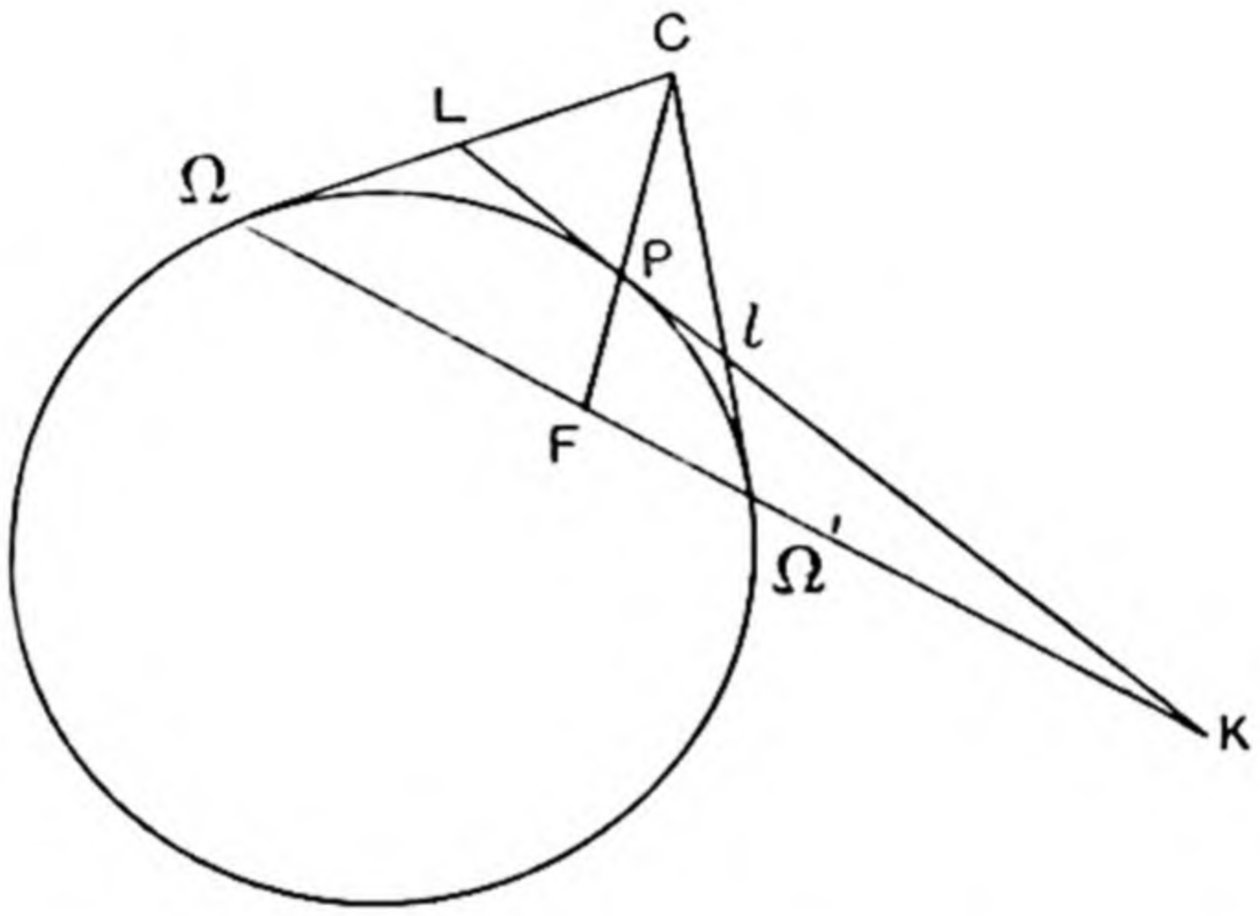
Similarly the tangents at $P'$ and $D'$ meet on $C\Omega$, and those at $P'$, $D$ and $P$, $D'$ on $C\Omega'$.

Cor. The portion of the tangent at any point intercepted between the asymptotes is bisected at the point of contact.

For $$LP = DC = CD' = Pl.$$

**171.** The property given in the Corollary of § 170 can be independently established by projecting into a circle, and we may use the same letters in the projection without confusion.

Let the tangent at $P$ to the circle meet the vanishing line $\Omega\Omega'$ in $K$.




The polar of $K$ goes through $C$, since that at $C$ goes through $K$, and the polar of $K$ goes through $P$.

$\therefore CP$ is the polar of $K$.

Let $CP$ meet $\Omega\Omega'$ in $F$.

$$\therefore (KF, \Omega\Omega') = -1.$$
$$\therefore C(KF, \Omega\Omega') = -1.$$
$$\therefore (KP, Ll) = -1.$$

Thus in the hyperbola $L$ and $l$ are harmonically conjugate with $P$ and the point at infinity along $Ll$. $\therefore LP = Pl$.

**172. Prop.** *If through any point $R$ on an asymptote of a hyperbola a line be drawn cutting the same branch of the hyperbola in $Q$ and $q$, then $RQ \cdot Rq$ is equal to the square of the semi-diameter of the conjugate hyperbola parallel to $RQq$.*

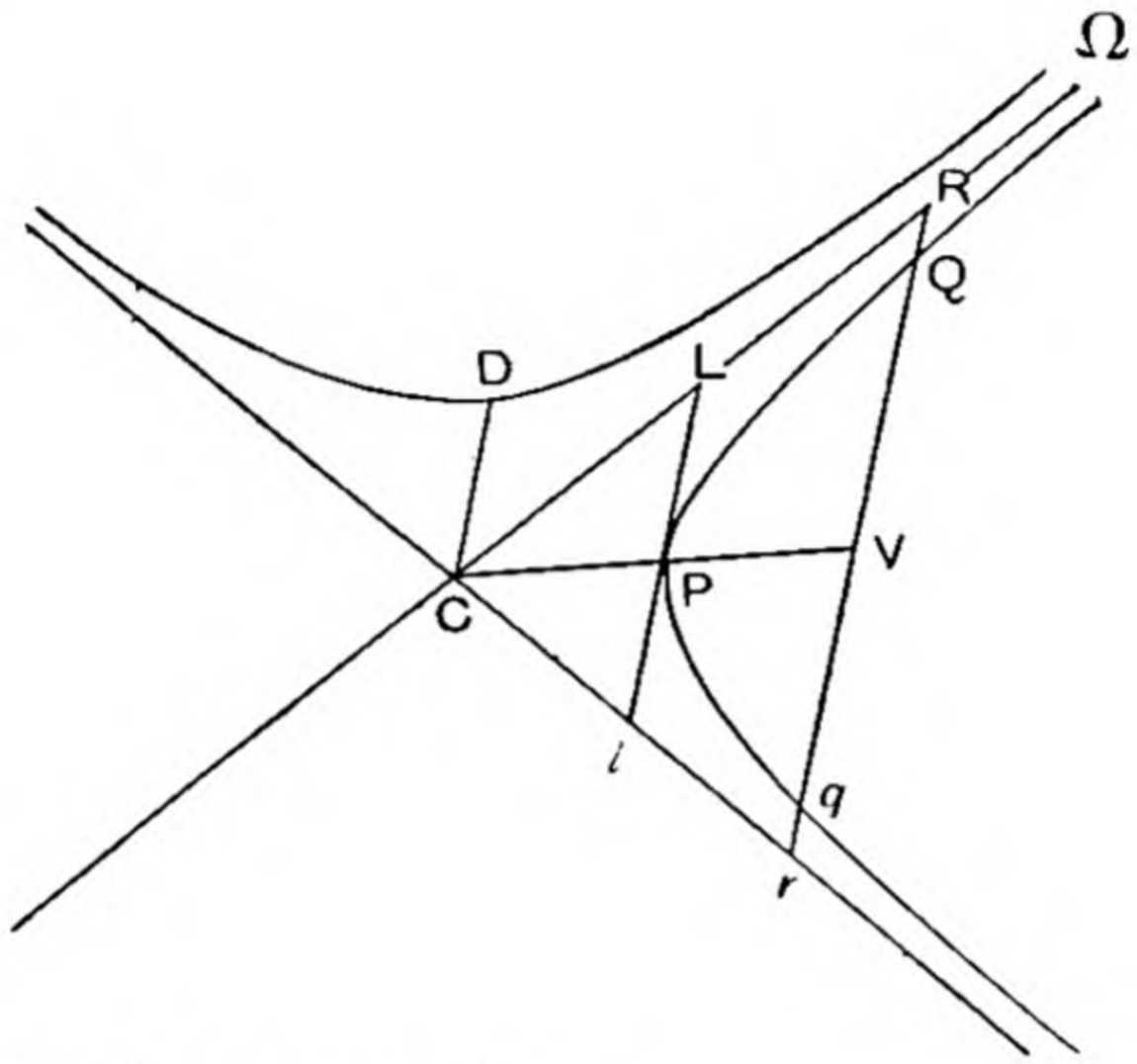
Let $V$ be the middle point of $Qq$.

Let $CV$ cut the hyperbola in $P$.

Then the tangent at $P$ is parallel to $Qq$.

Let it meet the asymptotes in $L$ and $l$.

Let $CD$ be the semi-diameter of the conjugate hyperbola parallel to $Qq$.




By Newton's theorem we have

$$RQ \,.\, Rq : R\Omega^2 = LP^2 : L\Omega^2.$$

$$\therefore\ RQ \,.\, Rq = LP^2 = CD^2.$$

Thus if the line $RQq$ be always drawn in a fixed direction the rectangle $RQ \,.\, Rq$ is independent of the position of the point $R$ on the asymptote.

We may write the above relation

$$RV^2 - QV^2 = CD^2.$$

And if $RQq$ meet the other asymptote in $r$ we have

$$rV^2 - qV^2 = CD^2.$$

$$\therefore\ rV^2 - qV^2 = RV^2 - QV^2.$$

$$\therefore\ RV = Vr$$

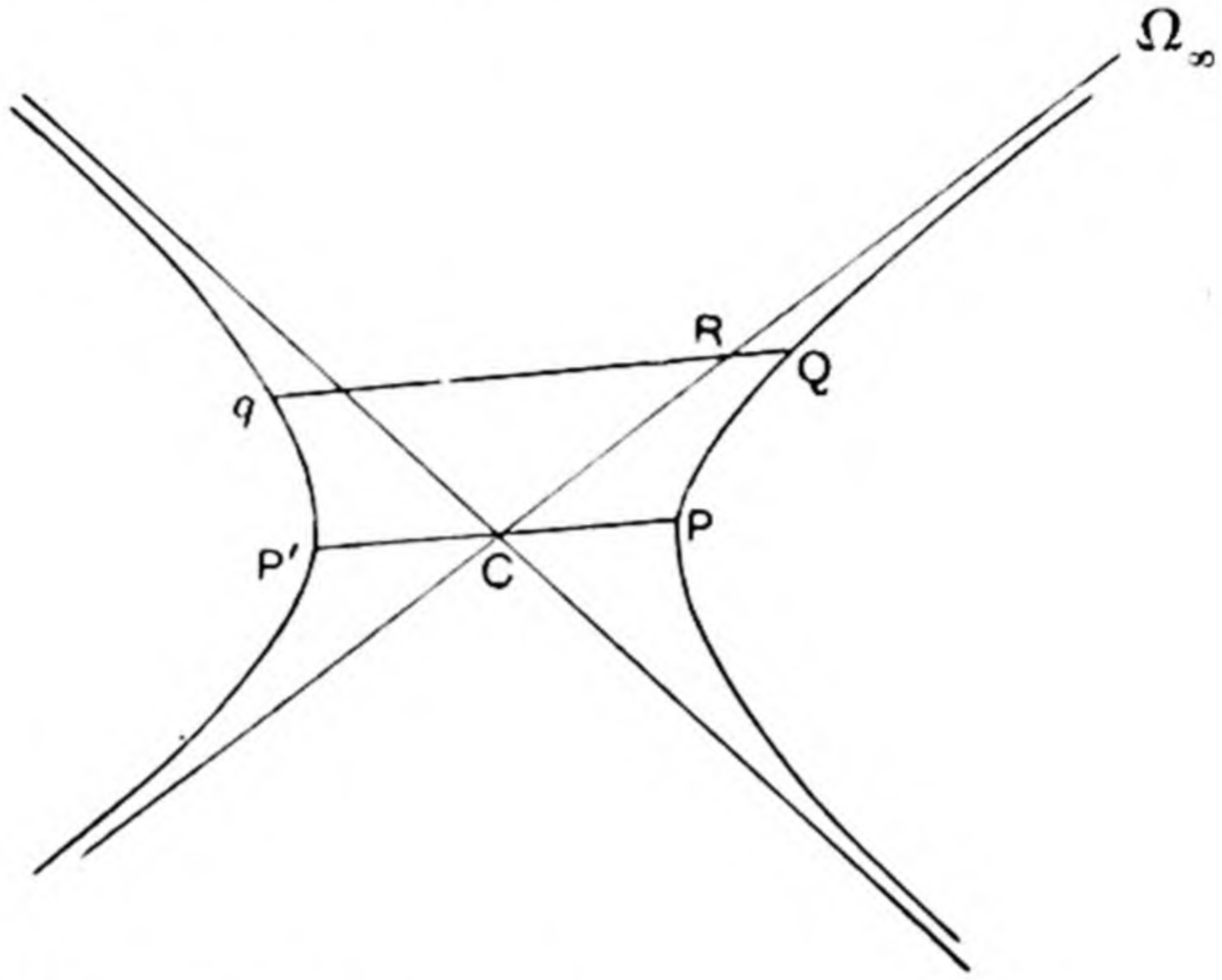
and

$$\therefore\ RQ = qr.$$

Hence any chord of a hyperbola and the length of its line intercepted between the asymptotes have the same middle point.

We thus have the following remarkable property of the hyperbola: *If $Rr$ joining any two points on the asymptotes of a hyperbola cut the curve in $Q$ and $q$ then $RQ = qr$.*

**173. Prop.** *If a line be drawn through a point $R$ on an asymptote of a hyperbola to meet opposite branches of the curve in $Q$ and $q$ then $qR \,.\, RQ = CP^2$ where $CP$ is the semi-diameter of the hyperbola parallel to $Qq$.*




For by Newton's theorem

$$RQ \,.\, Rq : R\Omega^2 = CP \,.\, CP' \;\; C\Omega^2.$$

$$\therefore \; RQ \,.\, Rq = -\, CP^2.$$

$$\therefore \; qR \,.\, RQ = CP^2.$$

As in the preceding article we can shew that $Qq$ and the portion of it intercepted between the asymptotes have the same middle point.

**174. Prop.** *If $QV$ be an ordinate of the diameter $PCP'$ and $DCD'$ the diameter conjugate to $PP'$ then*

$$QV^2 : PV \,.\, P'V = CD^2 : CP^2.$$

Let $QV$ meet the asymptote $C\Omega$ in $R$ and the curve again in $Q'$.

Through $R$ draw the chord $qq'$ of the hyperbola parallel to $PCP'$.

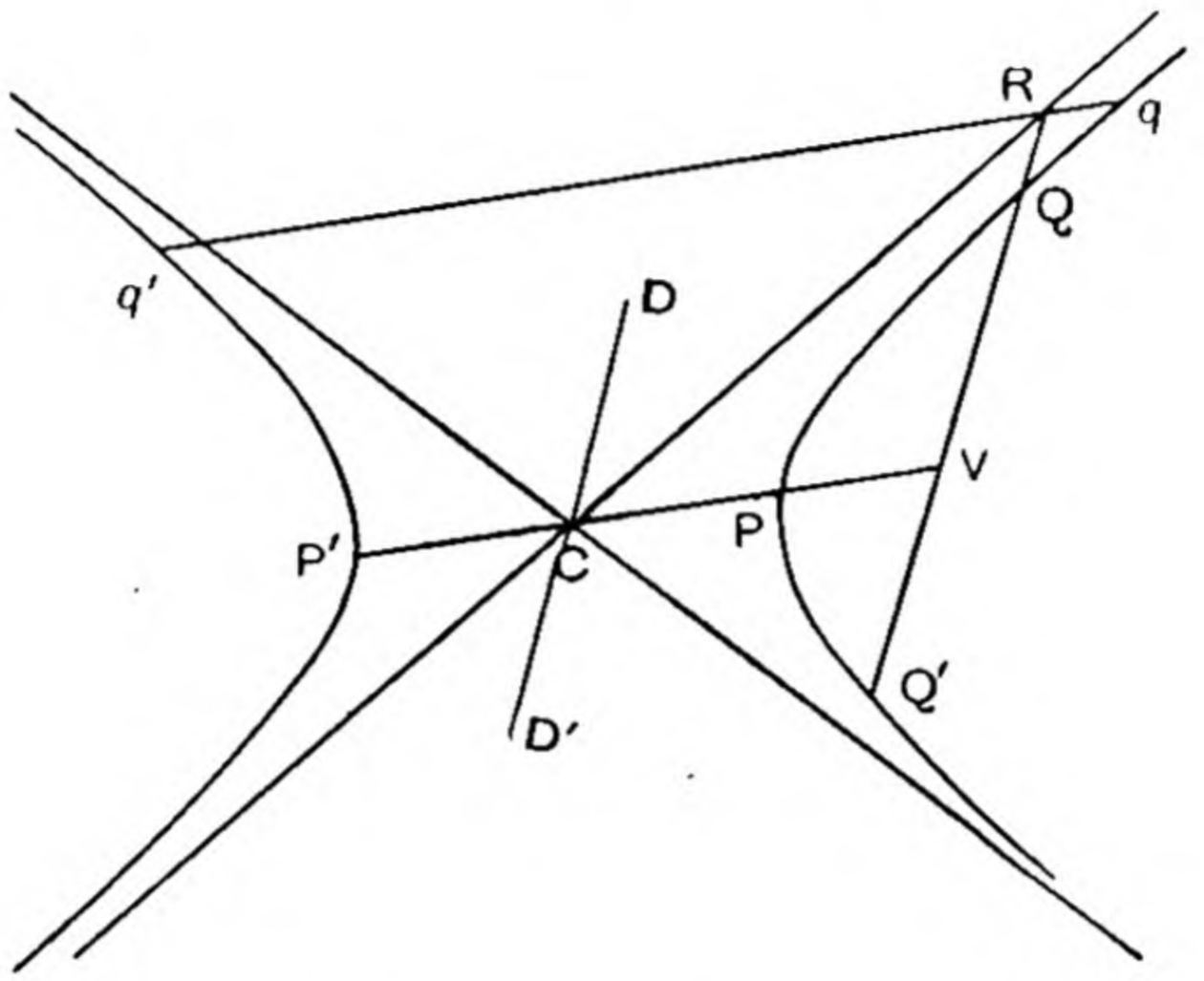
Then by Newton's theorem

$$VQ \,.\, VQ' : VP \,.\, VP' = RQ \,.\, RQ' : Rq \,.\, Rq'.$$

$$\therefore\ -QV^2 : VP \,.\, VP' = CD^2 : -CP^2,$$

that is

$$QV^2 : PV \,.\, P'V = CD^2 : CP^2.$$




This is the general theorem of which that of § 167 is a special case.

We may write the relation as

$$QV^2 : CV^2 - CP^2 = CD^2 : CP^2.$$

**175.** From §§ 167, 174 we can see that a hyperbola may be regarded as the locus of a point in a plane such that the ratio of the square of its distance from a fixed line $l$ varies as the product of its distances from two other fixed lines $l'$ and $l''$ parallel to one another and such that the point is on the same side of both of them.

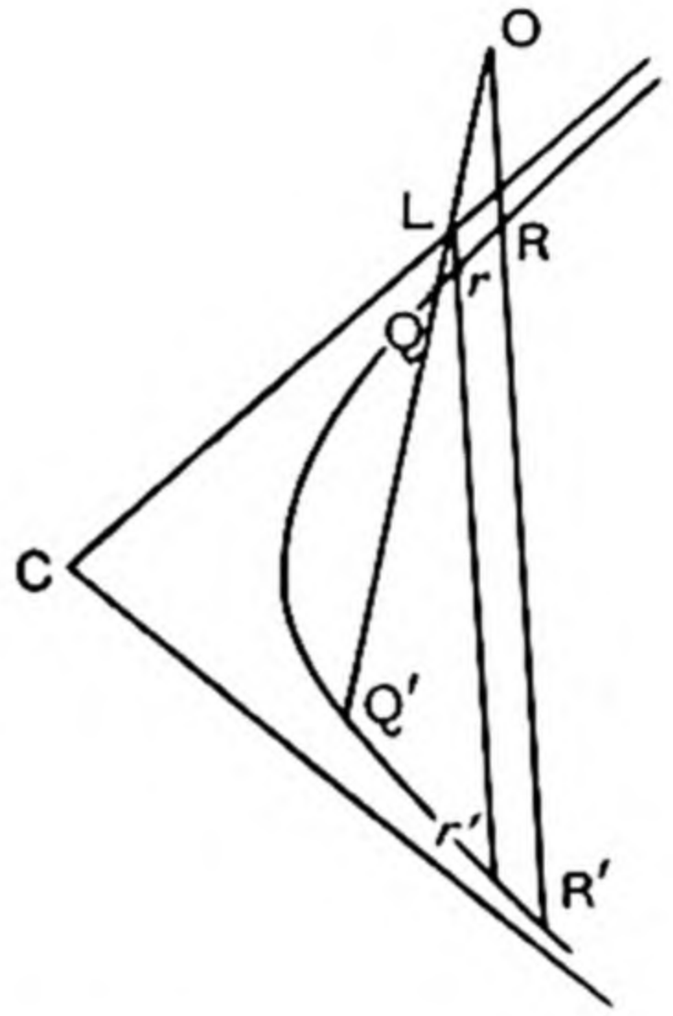
If $l'$ and $l''$ be perpendicular to $l$ then $l$ is the transverse axis of the hyperbola and $l'$, $l''$ the tangents at its vertices.

If $l'$ and $l''$ are not perpendicular to $l$, then $l$ is a diameter of the hyperbola, and $l'$, $l''$ are the tangents at the points where it meets the hyperbola.

**176. Prop.** *If $QQ'$, $RR'$ be chords of a hyperbola intersecting in $O$ then the ratio $OQ.OQ' : OR.OR'$ is equal to that of the squares of the diameter parallel to the respective chords.*

Let $OQQ'$ meet an asymptote in $L$.

Through $L$ draw $Lrr'$ parallel to $ORR'$ to meet the curve in $r$ and $r'$.




Then by Newton's theorem

$$OQ.OQ' : OR.OR' = LQ.LQ' : Lr.Lr'$$

$$= \text{sq. of diameter parallel to } QQ'$$

$$: \text{sq. of diameter parallel to } RR'.$$

**177.** This proposition holds equally well if the ends of either or both of the chords lie on opposite branches of the hyperbola, provided that $OQ.OQ'$ and $OR.OR'$ be regarded simply as positive magnitudes.

For suppose that $Q, Q'$ lie on opposite branches and $R, R'$ on the same branch, then as $LQ$ and $LQ'$ are in opposite directions we must for the application of Newton's theorem say

$$LQ.LQ' = -QL.LQ' = -\text{ sq. of diameter parallel to } QQ',$$

so that, as $OQ.OQ' = -QO.OQ'$, we have

$$QO.OQ' : OR.OR' = \text{sq. of diameter parallel to } QQ'$$

$$: \text{sq. of diameter parallel to } RR'.$$

**178.** It may perhaps seem unnecessary to make a separate proof for the hyperbola of the proposition proved generally for the central conics in § 116. But our purpose has been to bring out the fact that in § 116 the diameters must be length diameters of the curve itself, and for these the proposition is true. But as diameters of the hyperbola do not all meet the curve in real points, we wanted to shew how the diameters of the conjugate diameter may be used instead. Whenever the signs of $OQ.OQ'$ and $OR.OR'$ in the notation of §§ 176, 177 are different, this means that the diameters parallel to $QQ'$, $RR'$ are such that only one of them meets the hyperbola. The other meets the conjugate hyperbola.

**179.** We can see now that if $DCD'$ be a diameter of the conjugate hyperbola, the imaginary points $\delta$, $\delta'$, in which it meets the original hyperbola, are given by

$$C\delta^2 = C\delta'^2 = -CD^2,$$

and this to the student acquainted with Analytical Geometry is also clear from the following:

The equation of the hyperbola is

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1 \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots(1),$$

and of the conjugate hyperbola

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = -1 \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots(2).$$

Thus corresponding to every point $(x, y)$ on (2) there is a point $(ix, iy)$ on (1) and vice versa.

And if a line through the centre meet the conjugate hyperbola (2) in $(x, y)$ it will meet the original hyperbola in $(ix, iy)$.

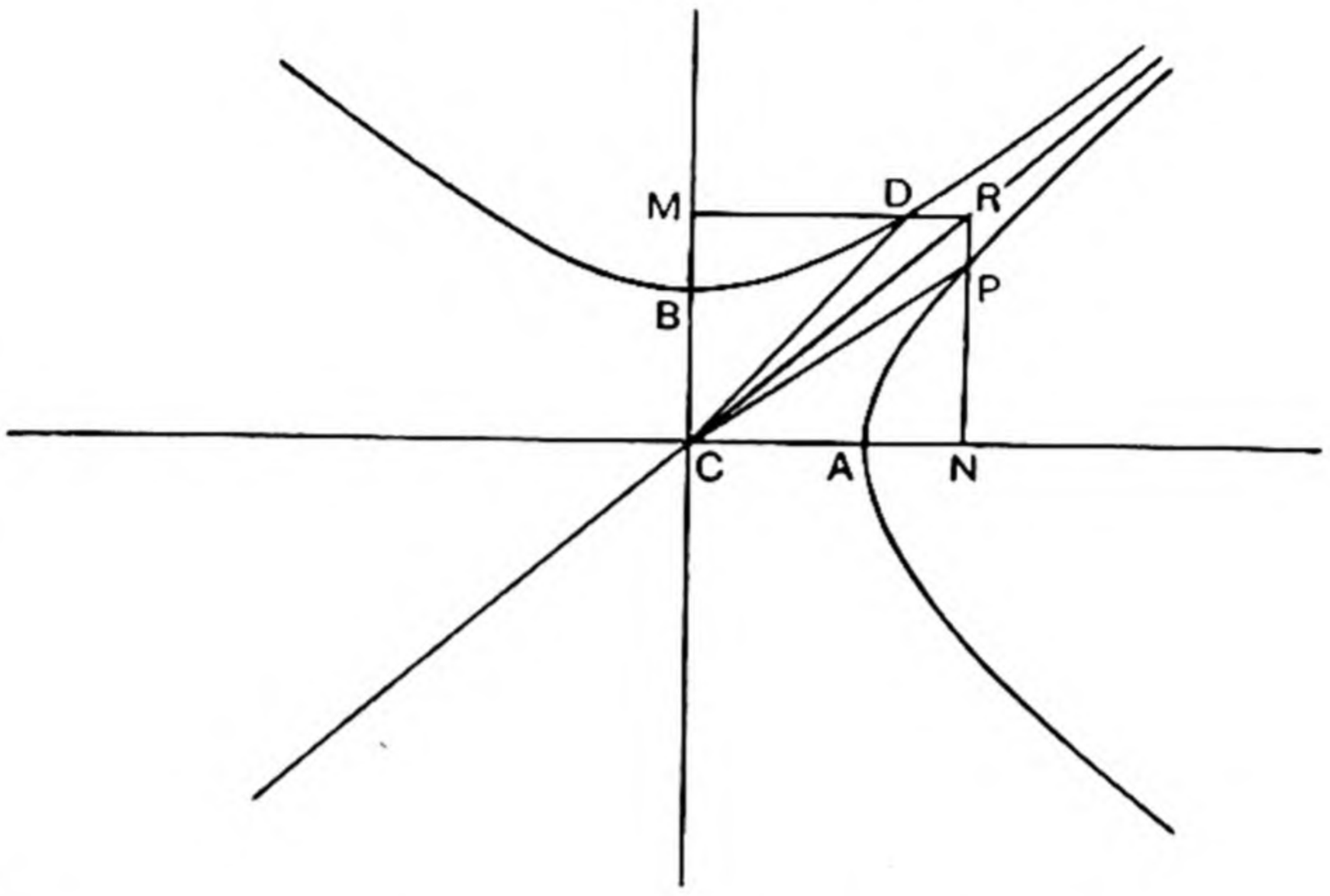
**180. Prop.** *If $CP$ and $CD$ be conjugate semi-diameters of a hyperbola*

$$CP^2 - CD^2 = CA^2 - CB^2.$$

Draw the ordinates $PN$ and $DM$ to the transverse and conjugate axes.

These intersect in a point $R$ on an asymptote (§ 168) and we have

$$CP^2 = CN^2 + PN^2 = CR^2 - (RN^2 - PN^2)$$
$$= CR^2 - BC^2 \quad (\S\ 166)$$




and

$$CD^2 = CM^2 + DM^2 = CR^2 - (RM^2 - DM^2)$$
$$= CR^2 - CA^2.$$
$$\therefore\ CP^2 - CD^2 = CA^2 - CB^2.$$

Cor. If $CA = CB$, that is if the hyperbola be a rectangular one, then $CP = CD$.

**181. Prop.** *If $P$ be any point on a hyperbola*

$$SP \,.\, S'P = CD^2$$

*where $CD$ is the semi-diameter conjugate to $CP$.*

Since $C$ is the middle point of $SS'$

$$SP^2 + S'P^2 = 2CS^2 + 2CP^2 \quad (\S\ 10).$$
$$\therefore\ (S'P - SP)^2 + 2SP \,.\, S'P = 2CS^2 + 2CP^2,$$

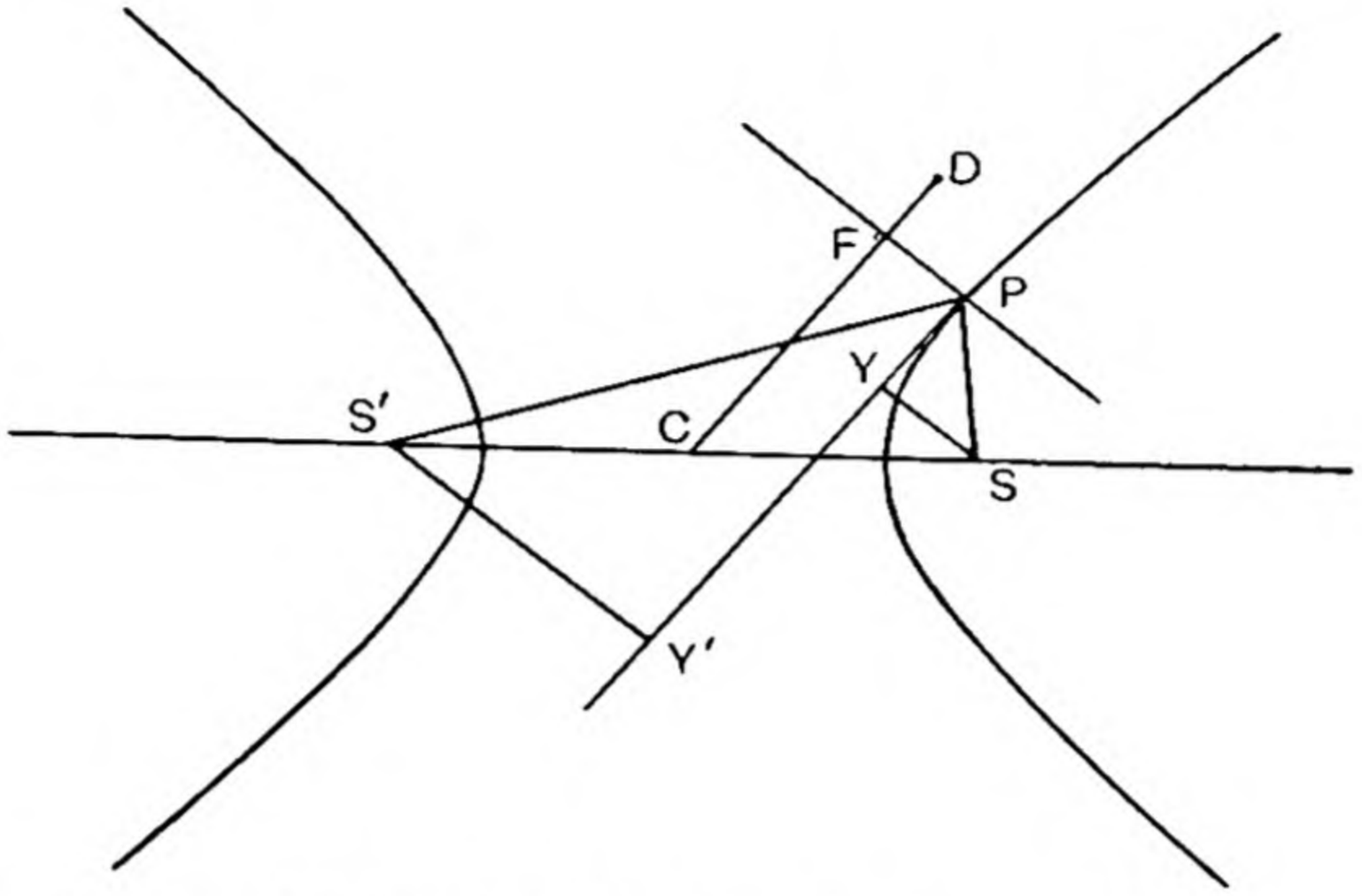
that is

$$4CA^2 + 2SP \,.\, S'P = 2CS^2 + 2CP^2.$$
$$\therefore\ SP \,.\, S'P = CP^2 + CS^2 - 2CA^2$$
$$= CP^2 + CB^2 + CA^2 - 2CA^2$$
$$= CP^2 - (CA^2 - CB^2)$$
$$= CD^2 \quad (\S\ 180).$$

**182. Prop.** *If $CP$ and $CD$ be conjugate semi-diameters of a hyperbola, and the normal at $P$ meet $CD$ in $F$, then*

$$PF \,.\, CD = AC \,.\, BC.$$

Draw the perpendiculars $SY$ and $S'Y'$ from the foci on the tangent at $P$.




Then the $\triangle$s $SPY$, $S'PY$ being similar we have

$$\frac{SY}{SP} = \frac{S'Y'}{S'P} = \frac{S'Y' - SY}{S'P - SP} = \frac{2PF}{2AC} = \frac{PF}{AC}.$$

$$\therefore \frac{SY \,.\, S'Y'}{SP \,.\, S'P} = \frac{PF^2}{AC^2},$$

that is

$$\frac{BC^2}{CD^2} = \frac{PF^2}{AC^2}.$$

$$\therefore PF \,.\, CD = AC \,.\, BC.$$

Cor. The area of the parallelogram formed by the tangents at the ends of a pair of conjugate diameters is constant $= AA' \,.\, BB'$.

**183. Prop.** *The area of the triangle formed by the asymptotes and any tangent to a hyperbola is constant.*

Let the tangent at $P$ meet the asymptotes in $L$ and $l$. (Use fig. of § 170.)

Let $P'$ be the other end of the diameter through $P$ and let $DCD'$ be the diameter conjugate to $PP'$. Then $L$ and $l$ are

angular points of the parallelogram formed by the tangents at $P$, $P'$, $D$, $D'$ (§ 170).

Moreover $\triangle CLl$ is one quarter of the area of the parallelogram formed by these tangents, that is (§ 182),

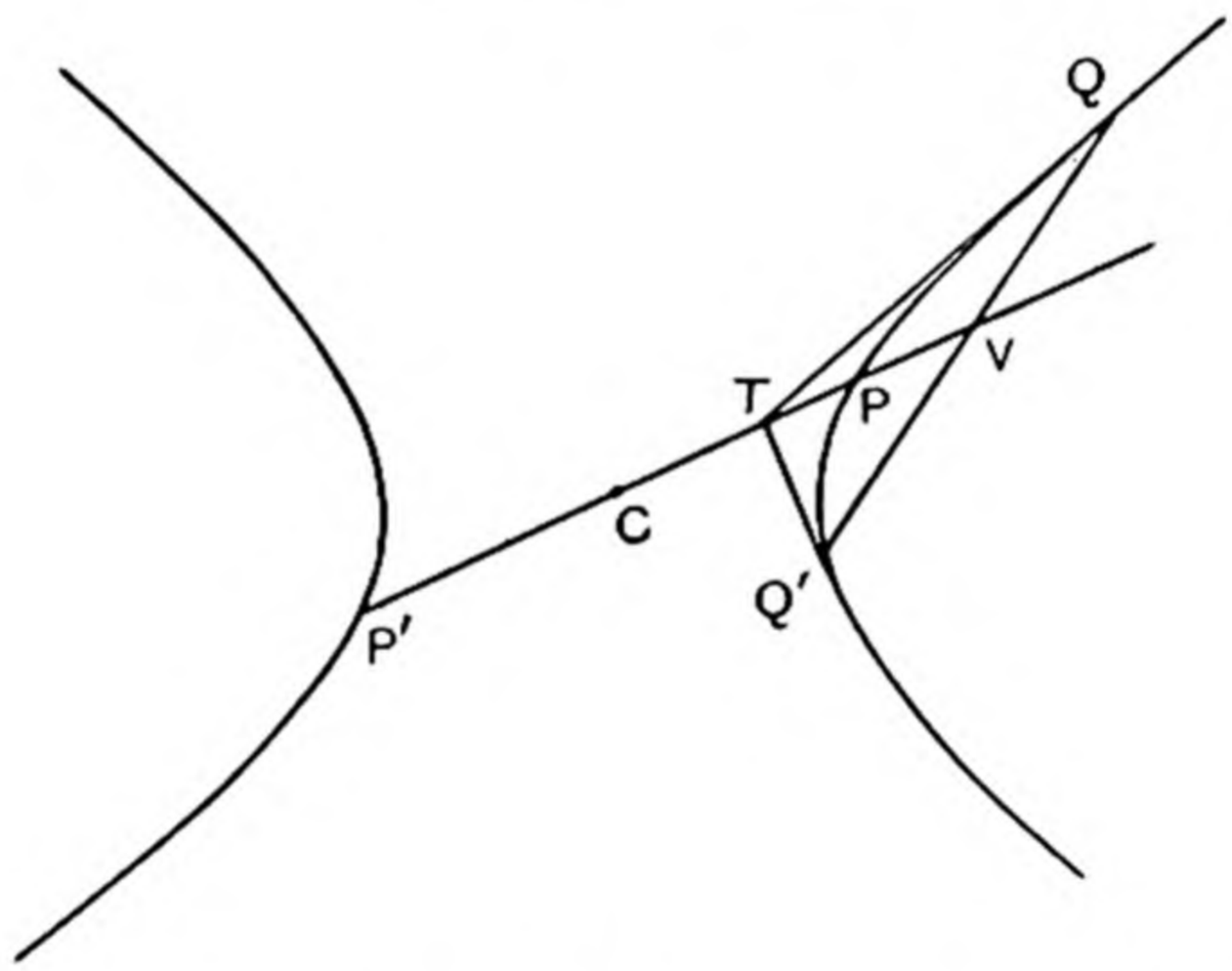
$$\triangle CLl = CA \,.\, CB,$$

which is constant.

Cor. The envelope of a line which forms with two fixed lines a triangle of constant area is a hyperbola having the fixed lines for its asymptotes, and the point of contact of the line with its envelope will be the middle point of the portion intercepted between the fixed lines.

**184. Prop.** *If $TQ$ and $TQ'$ be tangents to the same branch of a hyperbola, and $CT$ meet the curve in $P$ and $QQ'$ in $V$, then*

$$CV \,.\, CT = CP^2.$$




This follows at once from the harmonic property of the pole and polar, for we have

$$(PP', TV) = -1.$$

$$\therefore\ CV \,.\, CT = CP^2.$$

**185. Prop.** *If $TQ$ and $TQ'$ be tangents to* **opposite** *branches of a hyperbola, and $CT$ meet $QQ'$ in $V$ and the conjugate hyperbola in $P$ then*

$$VC \,.\, CT = CP^2.$$

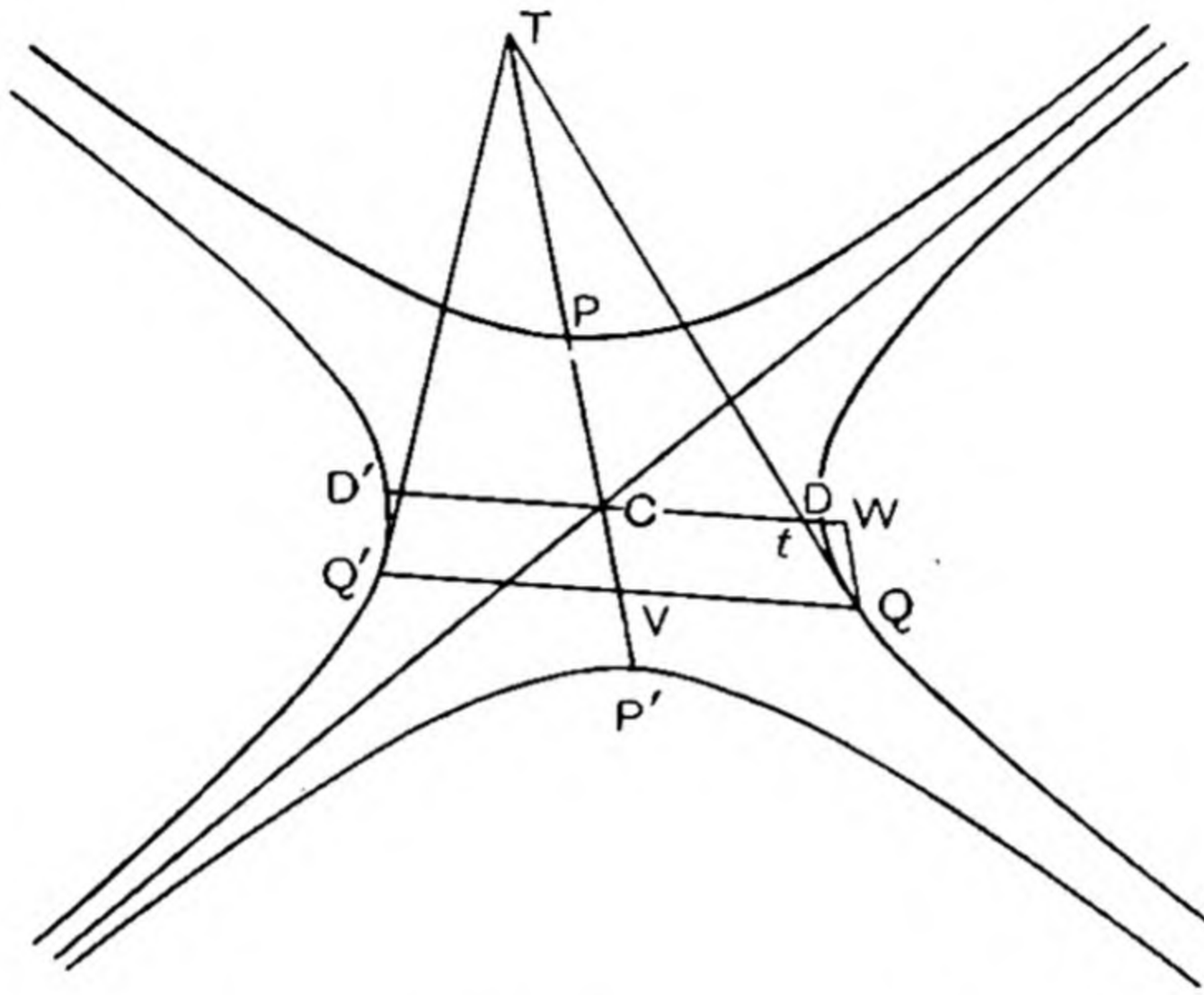
This can be surmised from the preceding proposition, for if $CT$ meet the original hyperbola in the imaginary point $p$, we have (§ 179)

$$Cp^2 = -CP^2.$$

$$\therefore\ CV.CT = Cp^2 \quad (\S\ 184)$$

$$= -CP^2.$$

$$\therefore\ VC.CT = CP^2.$$




We give however the following purely geometrical proof, which does not introduce imaginary points.

Let $DCD'$ be the diameter conjugate to $PP'$ and meeting the hyperbola in $D$, $D'$, and $TQ$ in $t$.

Draw the ordinate $QW$ to the diameter $DD'$, that is, $QW$ is parallel to $PP'$.

Then by similar $\triangle$s $tWQ$, $tCT$

$$TC : WQ = Ct : tW.$$

$$\therefore\ TC.WQ : WQ^2 = Ct.CW : CW.tW$$

$$= Ct.CW : CW^2 - Ct.CW.$$

But by § 184, $Ct.CW = CD^2$.

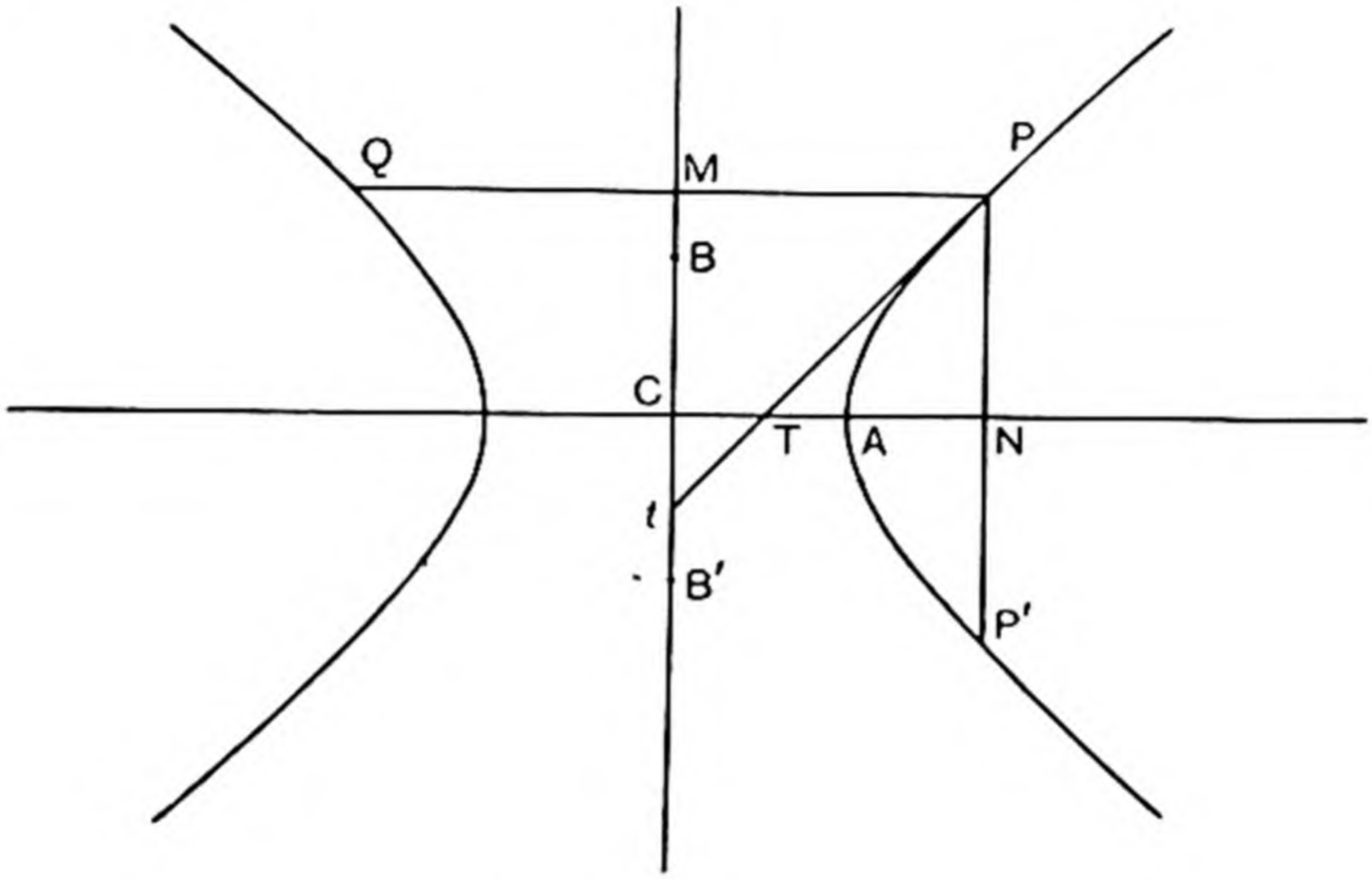
$$\therefore\ TC.WQ : WQ^2 = CD^2 : CW^2 - CD^2.$$

But $$CP^2 : WQ^2 = CD^2 : CW^2 - CD^2 \quad (\S\ 174).$$

$$\therefore\ TC \,.\, WQ = CP^2.$$

$$\therefore\ VC \,.\, CT = CP^2.$$

**186.** The following are special cases of the two preceding propositions.




*If the tangent at $P$ to a hyperbola meet the transverse and conjugate axes in $T$ and $t$ respectively and $PN$, $PM$ be ordinates to these axes*

$$CT \,.\, CN = CA^2,$$

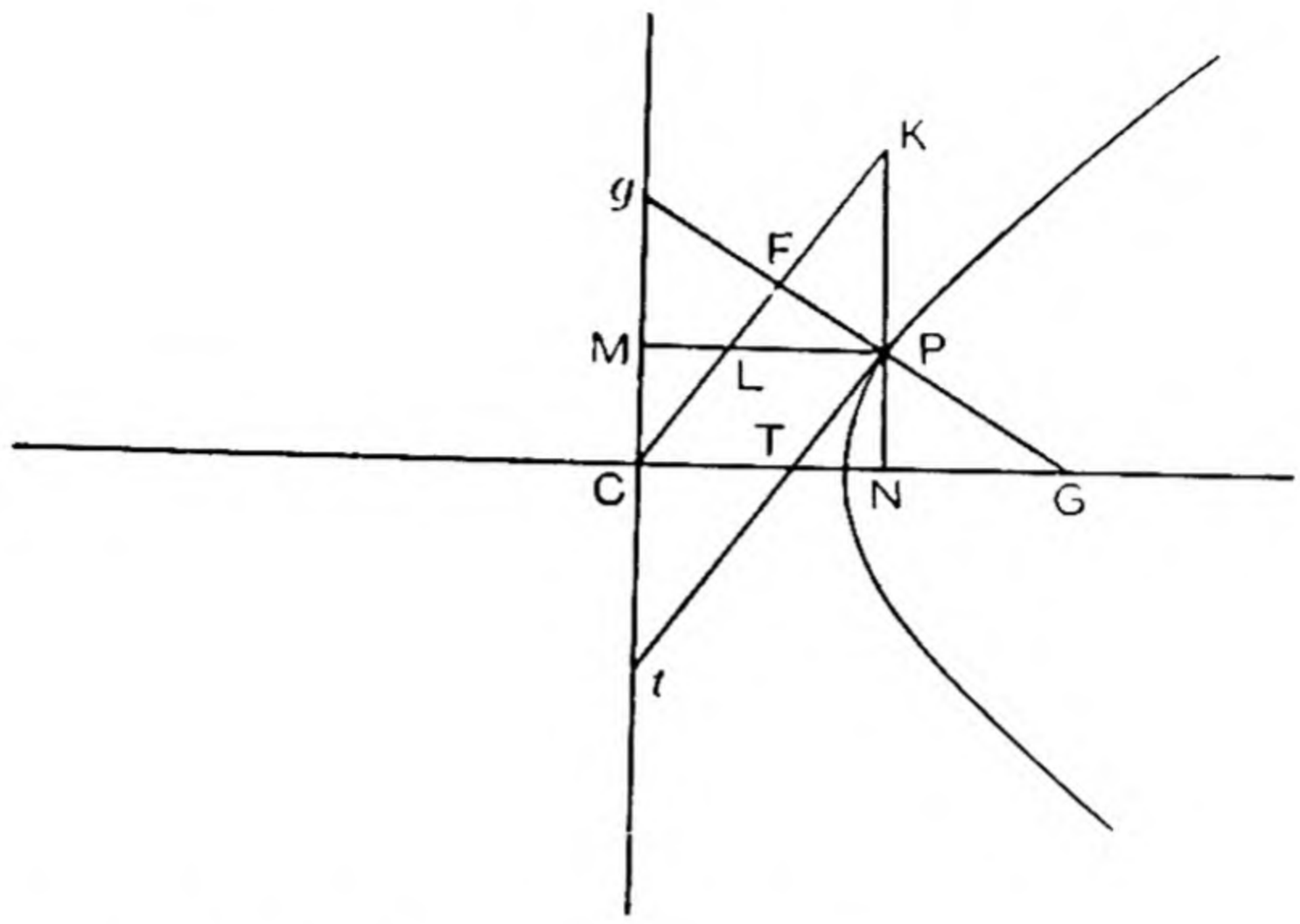
$$MC \,.\, Ct = CB^2.$$

For the tangents from $T$ will be $TP$ and $TP'$ where $P'$ is the point in which $PN$ again meets the hyperbola; and the tangents from $t$ will be $tP$, $tQ$ where $Q$ is the point in which $PM$ again meets the hyperbola.

**187. Prop.** *If the normal at $P$ to a hyperbola meet the transverse and conjugate axes in $G$ and $g$, and the diameter parallel to the tangent at $P$ in $F$, then*

$$FP \,.\, PG = BC^2,\ \ PF \,.\, Pg = AC^2.$$

This proposition can be established exactly like the corresponding one in the ellipse (§ 144).




**188. Prop.** *If the normal at $P$ to a hyperbola meet the transverse axis in $G$, and $PN$ be the ordinate*

$$CG = e^2 . CN$$

and
$$NG : CN = BC^2 : AC^2.$$

This is proved in the same way as in § 144 a.

**Circle of curvature.**

**189. Prop.** *The chord of the circle of curvature at any point $P$ of a hyperbola and through the centre of the hyperbola is $\frac{2CD^2}{CP}$, and the diameter of the circle is $\frac{2CD^2}{PF}$.*

This is proved in the same way as for the ellipse.

## EXERCISES

1. If a line be drawn through a focus $S$ of a hyperbola parallel to one of the asymptotes and a perpendicular $S'K$ be drawn from the other focus $S'$ on to this line $SK = AA'$.

[Use § 157. Take $P$ at $\Omega$.]

2. Find the locus of the centre of a circle touching two fixed circles externally.

3. If the tangent at any point $P$ of a hyperbola cut an asymptote in $T$ and $SP$ cut the same asymptote in $Q$ then $SQ = QT$.

[$TP$ and $T\Omega$ subtend equal angles at $S$.]

4. Shew that when a pair of conjugate diameters of a hyperbola are given in magnitude and position the asymptotes are completely determined. Hence shew that there are only two hyperbolas having a given pair of conjugate diameters.

5. If two hyperbolas have the same asymptotes a chord of one touching the other is bisected at the point of contact.

6. If $PH$, $PK$ be drawn parallel to the asymptotes $C\Omega$, $C\Omega'$ of a hyperbola to meet $C\Omega'$ and $C\Omega$ in $H$ and $K$, then

$$PH \,.\, PK = \tfrac{1}{4} CS^2.$$

[Use § 183.]

7. The tangent to a hyperbola at $P$ meets an asymptote in $T'$ and $TQ$ is drawn parallel to the other asymptote to meet the curve in $Q$. $PQ$ meets the asymptote in $L$ and $M$. Prove that $LM$ is trisected at $P$ and $Q$.

8. From any point $R$ on an asymptote of a hyperbola $RPN$ is drawn perpendicular to the transverse axis to cut the curve in $P$; $RK$ is drawn at right angles to $CR$ to meet the transverse axis in $K$. Prove that $PK$ is the normal at $P$.

[Prove that $CN = e^2 \,.\, CK$. § 188.]

9. Prove that in any central conic if the normal at $P$ meet the axes in $G$ and $g$ then $PG \,.\, Pg = CD^2$ where $CD$ is conjugate to $CP$.

10. If the tangent at a point $P$ of a hyperbola meet the asymptotes in $L$ and $l$, and the normal at $P$ meet the axes in $G$ and $g$, then $L$, $l$, $G$, $g$ lie on a circle which passes through the centre of the hyperbola.

11. The intercept of any tangent to a hyperbola between the asymptotes subtends at the further focus an angle equal to half the angle between them.

12. Given a focus of an ellipse and two points on the curve shew that the other focus describes a hyperbola.

13. If $P$ be any point on a central conic whose foci are $S$ and $S'$, the circles on $SP$, $S'P$ as diameters touch the auxiliary circle and have for their radical axis the ordinate of $P$.

14. The pole of the tangent at any point $P$ of a central conic with respect to the auxiliary circle lies on the ordinate of $P$.

15. If $PP'$ and $DD'$ be conjugate diameters of a hyperbola and $Q$ any point on the curve then $QP^2 + QP'^2$ exceeds $QD^2 + QD'^2$ by a constant quantity.

16. Given two points of a parabola and the direction of its axis, prove that the locus of its focus is a hyperbola.

17. If two tangents be drawn to a hyperbola the lines joining their intersections with the asymptotes will be parallel.

18. If from a point $P$ in a hyperbola $PK$ be drawn parallel to an asymptote to meet a directrix in $K$, and $S$ be the corresponding focus, then $PK = SP$.

19. If the tangent and normal at a point $P$ of a central conic meet the axis in $T$ and $G$ and $PN$ be the ordinate, $NG \,.\, CT = BC^2$.

20. The base of a triangle being given and also the point of contact with the base of the inscribed circle, the locus of the vertex is a hyperbola.

21. If tangents be drawn to a series of confocal hyperbolas the normals at their points of contact will all pass through a fixed point, and the points of contact will lie on a circle.

22. A hyperbola is described touching the principal axes of a hyperbola at one of their extremities; prove that one asymptote is parallel to the axis of the parabola and that the other is parallel to the chords of the parabola bisected by the first.

23. If an ellipse and a hyperbola confocal with it intersect in $P$, the asymptotes of the hyperbola pass through the points of intersection of the ordinate of $P$ with the auxiliary circle of the ellipse.

24. Prove that the central distance of the point where a tangent to a hyperbola meets one asymptote varies as the distance, parallel to the transverse axis, of the point of contact from the other asymptote.

25. Tangents $RPR'$, $TQT'$ are drawn to a hyperbola, $R$, $T'$ being on one asymptote and $R'$, $T'$ on the other; shew that the circles on $RT'$ and $R'T'$ as diameters are coaxal with the director circle.

26. From any point $P$ on a given diameter of a hyperbola, two straight lines are drawn parallel to the asymptotes, and meeting the hyperbola in $Q$, $Q'$; prove that $PQ$, $PQ'$ are to one another in a constant ratio.

27. The asymptotes and one point on a hyperbola being given, determine the points in which a given line meets the curve.

28. If $PN$ be the ordinate and $PG$ the normal of a point $P$ of a hyperbola whose centre is $C$, and the tangent at $P$ intersect the asymptotes in $L$ and $L'$, then half the sum of $CL$ and $CL'$ is the mean proportional between $CN$ and $CG$.

29. The tangents to a conic from any point on the director circle are the bisectors of the angles between every pair of conjugate lines through the point.

30. Given a focus, a tangent and the eccentricity of a conic, the locus of the centre is a circle.

31. If $P$ be a point on a central conic such that the lines joining $P$ to the foci are at right angles, $CD^2 = 2BC^2$.

32. Find the position and magnitude of the axes of a hyperbola which has a given line for an asymptote, passes through a given point, and touches a given straight line at a given point.

33. If $P$ be any point on a hyperbola whose foci are $S$ and $S'$ the incentre of the triangle $SPS'$ lies on the tangent at one of the vertices of the hyperbola.

34. With two conjugate diameters of an ellipse as asymptotes a pair of conjugate hyperbolas are constructed; prove that if one hyperbola touch the ellipse the other will do likewise and that the diameters drawn through the points of contact are conjugate to each other.

35. Prove that a circle can be described to touch the four straight lines joining the foci of a hyperbola to any two points on the same branch of the curve.

36. Tangents are drawn to a hyperbola and the portion of each tangent intercepted by the asymptotes is divided in a given ratio; shew that the locus of the point of section is a hyperbola.

37. From a point $R$ on an asymptote of a hyperbola $RE$ is drawn touching the hyperbola in $E$, and $ET$, $EV$ are drawn through $E$ parallel to the asymptotes, cutting a diameter in $T$ and $V$; $RV$ is joined, cutting the hyperbola in $P$, $p$; shew that $TP$ and $Tp$ touch the hyperbola.

[Project the hyperbola into a circle and $V$ into the centre.]

38. $CP$ and $CD$ are conjugate semi-diameters of a hyperbola, and the tangent at $P$ meets an asymptote in $L$; prove that if $PD$ meet the transverse axis in $F$, $LFC$ is a right angle.

39. From a given point on a hyperbola draw a straight line such that the segment between the other intersection with the hyperbola and a given asymptote shall be equal to a given line. When does the problem become impossible?

40. If $P$ and $Q$ be two points on two circles $S_1$ and $S_2$ belonging to a coaxal system of which $L$ is one of the limiting points, such that the angle $PLQ$ is a right angle, prove that the foot of the perpendicular from $L$ on $PQ$ lies on one of the circles of the system, and thus shew that the envelope of $PQ$ is a conic having a focus at $L$.

41. If a conic touch the sides of a triangle at the feet of the perpendiculars from the vertices on the opposite sides, the centre of the conic must be at the symmedian point of the triangle.

# CHAPTER XIV

## THE RECTANGULAR HYPERBOLA

**190.** A rectangular hyperbola as we have already explained is one which has its asymptotes at right angles and its transverse and conjugate axes equal. The eccentricity of a rectangular hyperbola $= \sqrt{2}$, for $e = CS : CA$, and $CS^2 = CA^2 + CB^2 = 2CA^2$.

We will now set forth a series of propositions giving the chief properties of the curve.

**191. Prop.** *In a rectangular hyperbola conjugate diameters are equal, and if $QV$ be an ordinate of a diameter $PCP'$, $QV^2 = PV \,.\, P'V$.*

For we have $CP^2 - CD^2 = CA^2 - CB^2$ (§ 180)

$= 0$

and $QV^2 : PV \,.\, P'V = CD^2 : CP^2$ (§ 174)

$= 1.$

**192. Prop.** *Conjugate diameters of a rectangular hyperbola are equally inclined to each of the asymptotes.*

For the asymptotes are the double lines of the involution pencil formed by the pairs of conjugate lines through $C$, and therefore the asymptotes are harmonically conjugate with any pair of conjugate diameters. Hence as the asymptotes are at right angles they must be the bisectors of the angles between each pair of conjugate diameters (§ 72).

Cor. 1. Any diameter of a rectangular hyperbola and the tangents at its extremities are equally inclined to each of the asymptotes.

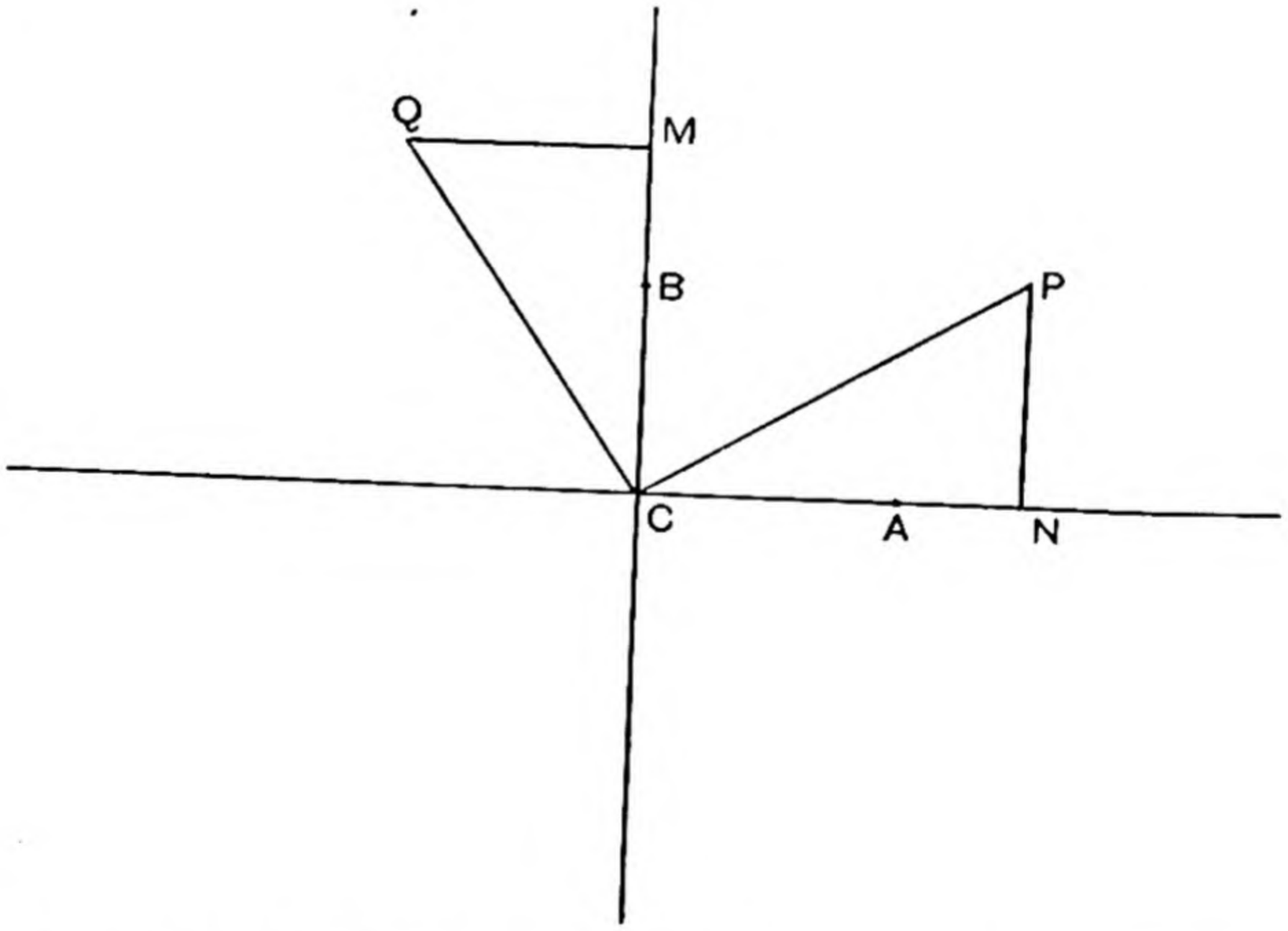
COR. 2. Any chord of a rectangular hyperbola and the diameter bisecting it are equally inclined to each asymptote.

**193. Prop.** *Any diameter of a rectangular hyperbola is equal to the diameter perpendicular to it of the conjugate hyperbola.*

This is obvious when we consider that the conjugate hyperbola is in our special case equal to the original hyperbola and can be obtained by rotating the whole figure of the hyperbola through a right angle about an axis through its centre perpendicular to its plane.

**194.** *If a hyperbola have two perpendicular diameters equal to one another, the one belonging to the hyperbola itself and the other to its conjugate, the hyperbola must be a rectangular one.*

Let $CP$ and $CQ$ be the semi-diameters at right angles to one another and equal, $P$ being on the hyperbola, and $Q$ on the conjugate.




Draw $PN$ and $QM$ perpendicular to the transverse and conjugate axes respectively.

Then $$\Delta CNP \equiv \Delta CMQ.$$

Now $PN^2 : CN^2 - CA^2 = BC^2 : AC^2$ (§ 167)

and $QM^2 : CM^2 - BC^2 = AC^2 : BC^2$,

whence we get $$\frac{CN^2}{AC^2} - \frac{PN^2}{BC^2} = 1$$

and $$\frac{CM^2}{BC^2} - \frac{QM^2}{AC^2} = 1.$$

Subtract and use $CN^2 = CM^2$ and $PN^2 = QM^2$.

$$\therefore CN^2\left(\frac{1}{AC^2} - \frac{1}{BC^2}\right) - PN^2\left(\frac{1}{BC^2} - \frac{1}{AC^2}\right).$$

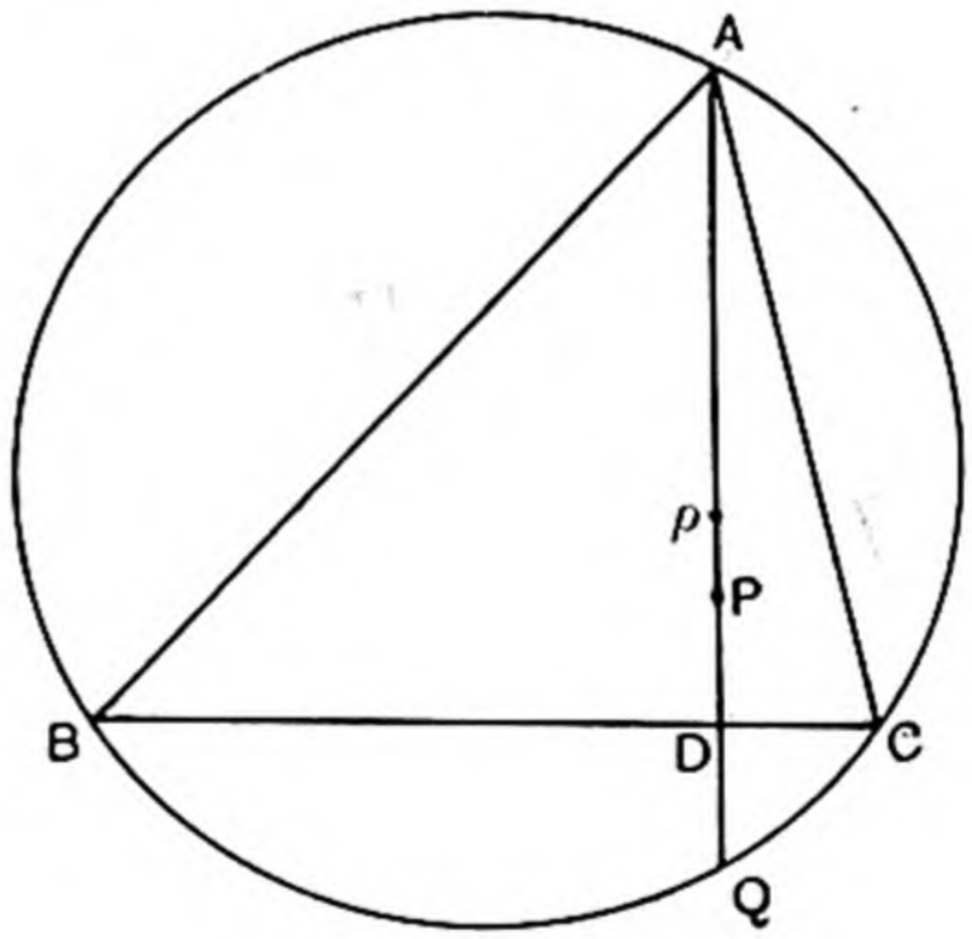
$\therefore$ since $CN^2 + PN^2 \neq 0$, $AC = BC$.

**195. Prop.** *If a rectangular hyperbola pass through the vertices of a triangle it passes also through the orthocentre.*

Let $ABC$ be the triangle, $P$ its orthocentre and $AD$ the perpendicular from $A$ on $BC$.

Let the rectangular hyperbola meet $AD$ again in $p$.

Since the chords $Ap$ and $BC$ are at right angles the diameters parallel to them will meet one the hyperbola and the other the conjugate hyperbola.




Thus $DB \,.\, DC$ and $Dp \,.\, DA$ will have opposite signs (§ 177), and the ratio of their numerical values will be unity since the diameters parallel to them being at right angles are equal.

$$\therefore BD \,.\, DC = Dp \,.\, DA.$$

But $BD \,.\, DC = AD \,.\, DQ$ where $Q$ is the point in which $AD$ produced meets the circumcircle

$$= - AD \,.\, DP \quad (\S\, 6).$$

$$\therefore \; Dp \,.\, DA = DA \,.\, DP.$$

$$\therefore \; Dp = DP$$

that is $p$ coincides with $P$.

Cor. When a rectangular hyperbola circumscribes a triangle, if the three vertices lie on the same branch of the curve, the orthocentre will lie on the other branch, but if two of the vertices lie on one branch and the third on the other, the orthocentre will lie on that branch on which are the two vertices.

**196. Prop.** *If a conic circumscribing a triangle pass through the orthocentre it must be a rectangular hyperbola.*

Let $ABC$ be the triangle and $AD$, $BE$, $CF$ the perpendiculars meeting in the orthocentre $P$.

It is clear that the conic must be a hyperbola, since it is impossible for two chords of an ellipse or parabola to intersect at a point external to one of them and not to the other, and the chords $AP$ and $BC$ do so intersect.

Now since $BD \,.\, DC = AD \,.\, PD$, the diameter parallel to $BC$ = the diameter parallel to $AP$.

And these diameters must belong the one to the hyperbola and the other to its conjugate since $DB \,.\, DC$ and $DP \,.\, DA$ have opposite sign (§ 177).

Therefore the hyperbola is a rectangular one (§ 194).

**197. Prop.** *If a rectangular hyperbola circumscribe a triangle, its centre lies on the nine points circle of the triangle.*

Let $ABC$ be the triangle, and $D$, $E$, $F$ the middle points of the sides.

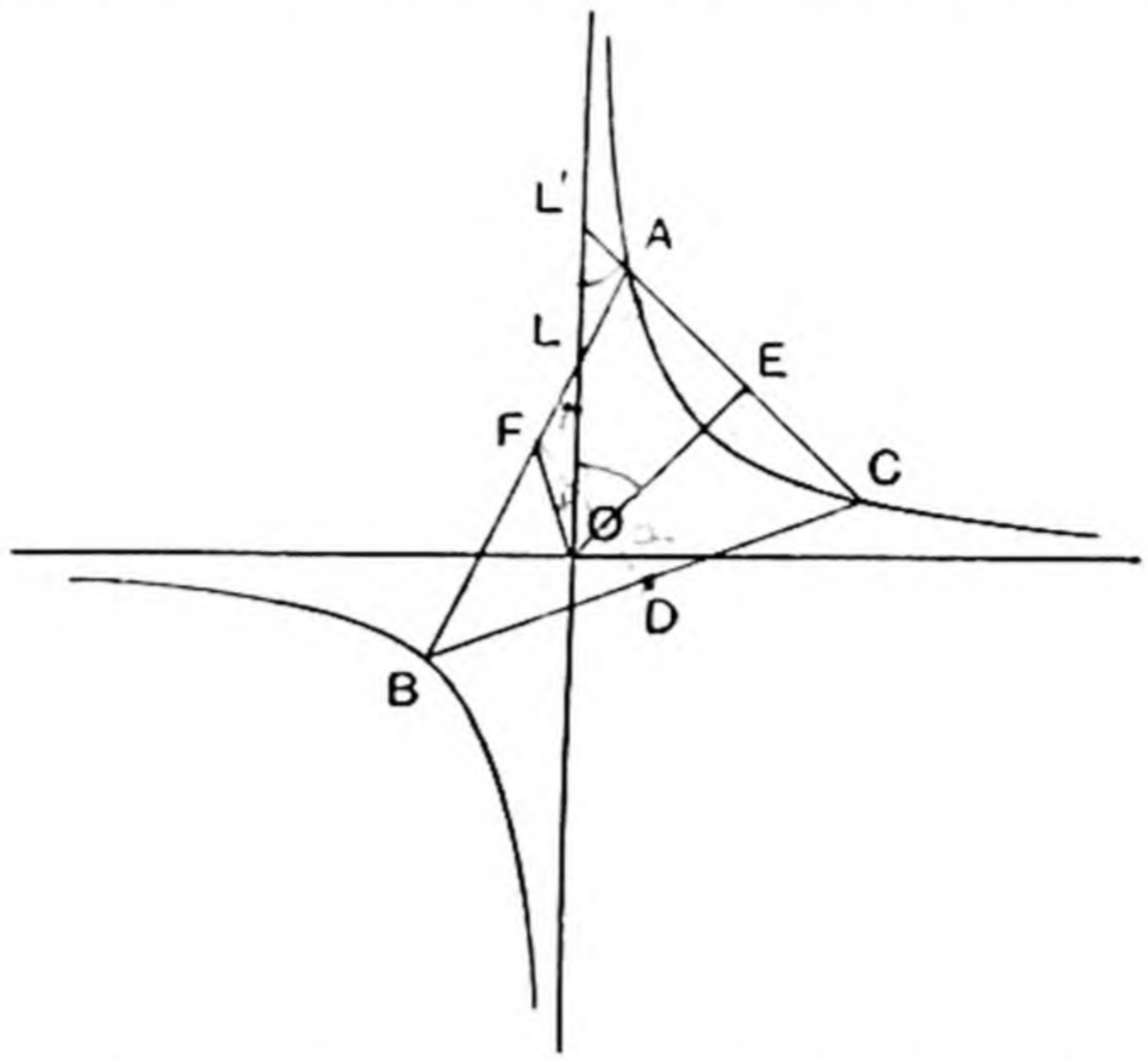
Let $O$ be the centre of the rectangular hyperbola and $OLL'$ an asymptote cutting $AB$ and $AC$ in $L$ and $L'$.

Since $OF$ bisects the chord $AB$, $OF$ and $AB$ make equal angles with $OLL'$ (§ 192, Cor. 2).

$$\therefore \; \angle FOL = \angle FLO.$$

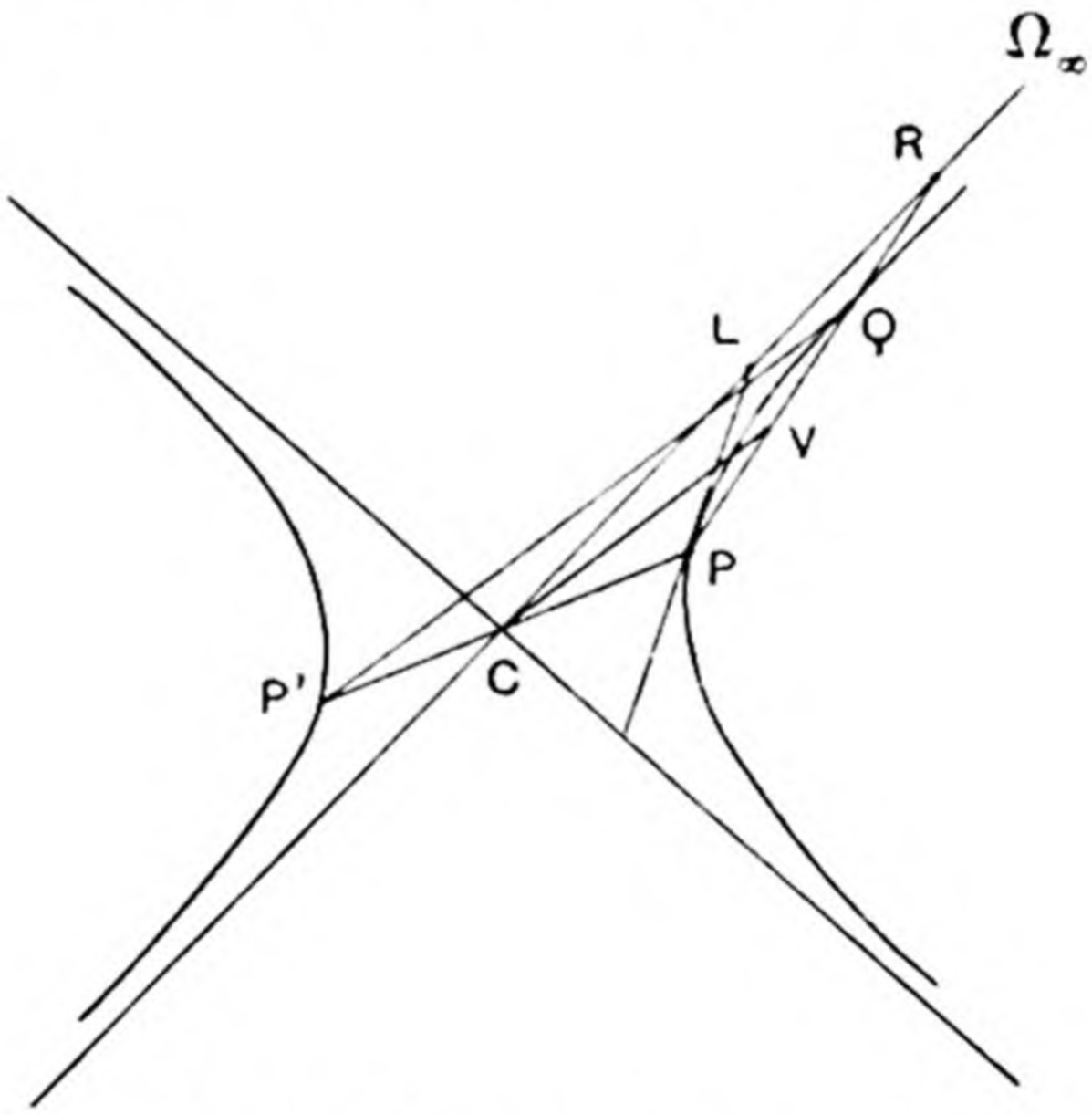
Similarly $\angle EOL' = \angle EL'O.$

$\therefore\ \angle FOE = \angle ALL' + \angle AL'L = \angle BAC = \angle FDE.$




$\therefore$ $O$ lies on the circle round $DEF$, which circle is the nine points circle of the triangle.

**198. Prop.** *The angle between any chord $PQ$ of a rectangular hyperbola and the tangent at $P$ is equal to the angle subtended by $PQ$ at $P'$, the other end of the diameter through $P$*




Let the chord $PQ$ and the tangent at $P$ meet the asymptote $C\Omega$ in $R$ and $L$. Let $V$ be the middle point of $PQ$.

Then $\angle VRC = \angle VCR$ (§ 192, Cor. 2).

and $\angle PLC = \angle PCL$ (§ 192, Cor. 1).

$\therefore \angle LPR = \angle CLP - \angle CRV$

$= \angle PCL - \angle VCR = \angle VCP$

$= \angle QP'P$ (since $CV$ is parallel to $QP'$).

**199. Prop.** *Any chord of a rectangular hyperbola subtends at the ends of any diameter angles which are equal or supplementary.*

Let $QR$ be a chord, and $PCP'$ a diameter.

Let the tangents at $P$ and $P'$ meet the asymptotes in $L$, $l$ and $L'$, $l'$.

In fig. 1, where $Q$ and $R$ lie on the same branch and $PP'$ cuts $QR$ internally,

$\angle QPL = \angle QP'P$ (§ 198)

and $\angle RPl = \angle RP'P$.

$\therefore \angle QPR =$ supplement of sum of $QPL$ and $RPl$

$=$ supplement of $\angle QP'R$.

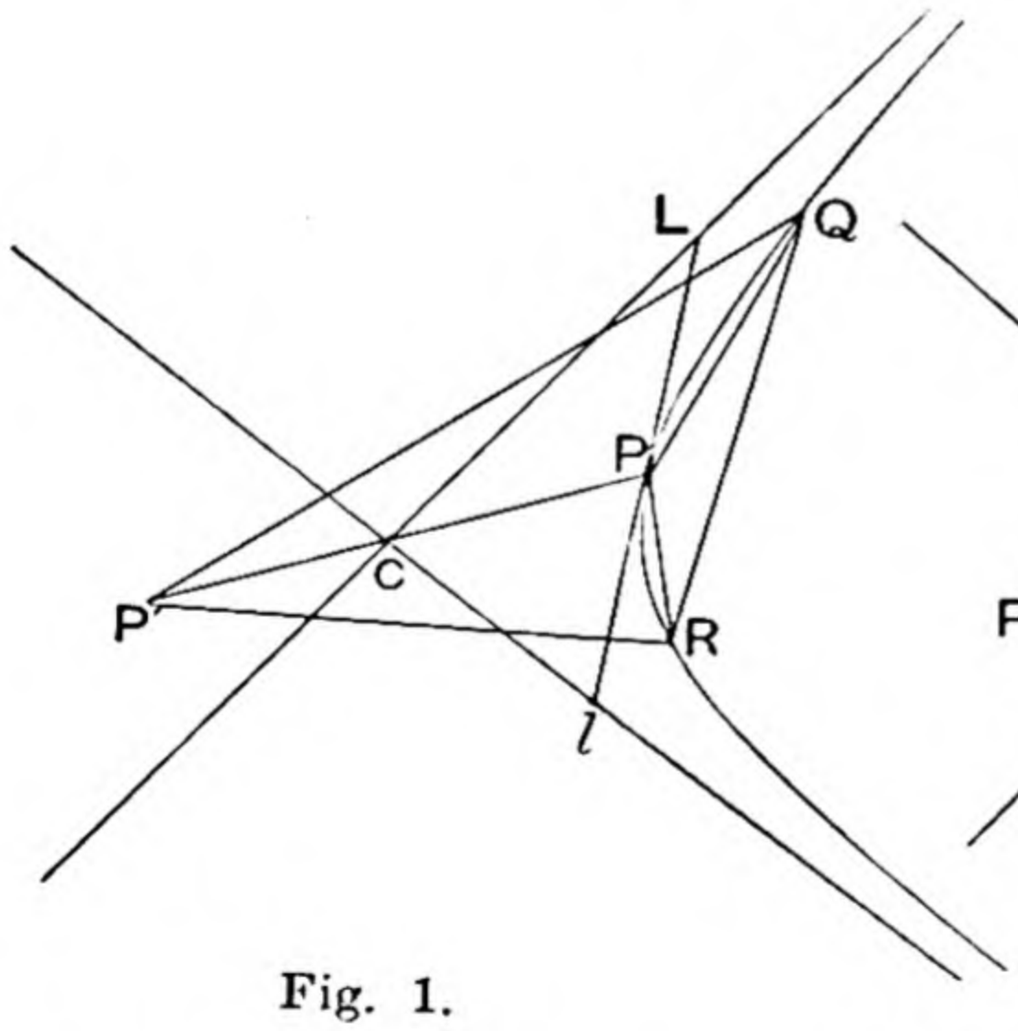



Fig. 1.

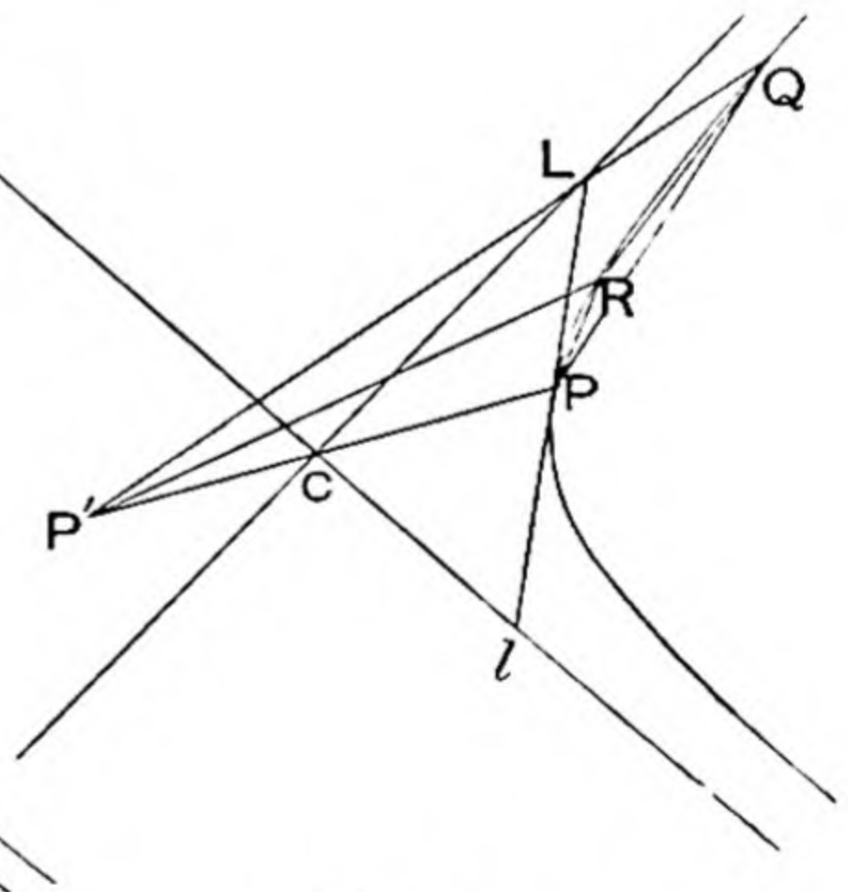



Fig. 2.

In fig. 2, where $Q$ and $R$ lie on the same branch and $PP'$ cuts $QR$ externally,

$\angle LPR = \angle RP'P$

and $\angle LPQ = \angle QP'P$.

$\therefore \angle RPQ = \angle QP'P - \angle RP'P = \angle QP'R$.

In fig. 3, where $Q$ and $R$ lie on opposite branches and $PP'$ cuts $QR$ internally,

$$\begin{aligned}\angle QPR &= \angle QPL + \angle LPP' + \angle P'PR \\ &= \angle QP'P + \angle PP'l' + \angle RP'l' \\ &= \angle QP'R.\end{aligned}$$

In fig. 4, where $Q$ and $R$ lie on opposite branches and $PP'$ cuts $QR$ externally,

$$\angle QPR = \angle QPL + \angle LPR = \angle QP'P + \angle LPR$$

and $$\angle QP'R = \angle QP'L' + \angle L'P'R = \angle QP'L' + \angle RPP'.$$

$$\therefore\ \angle QPR + \angle QP'R' = \angle L'P'P + \angle LPP'$$

$$= 2 \text{ right } \angle \text{s.}$$

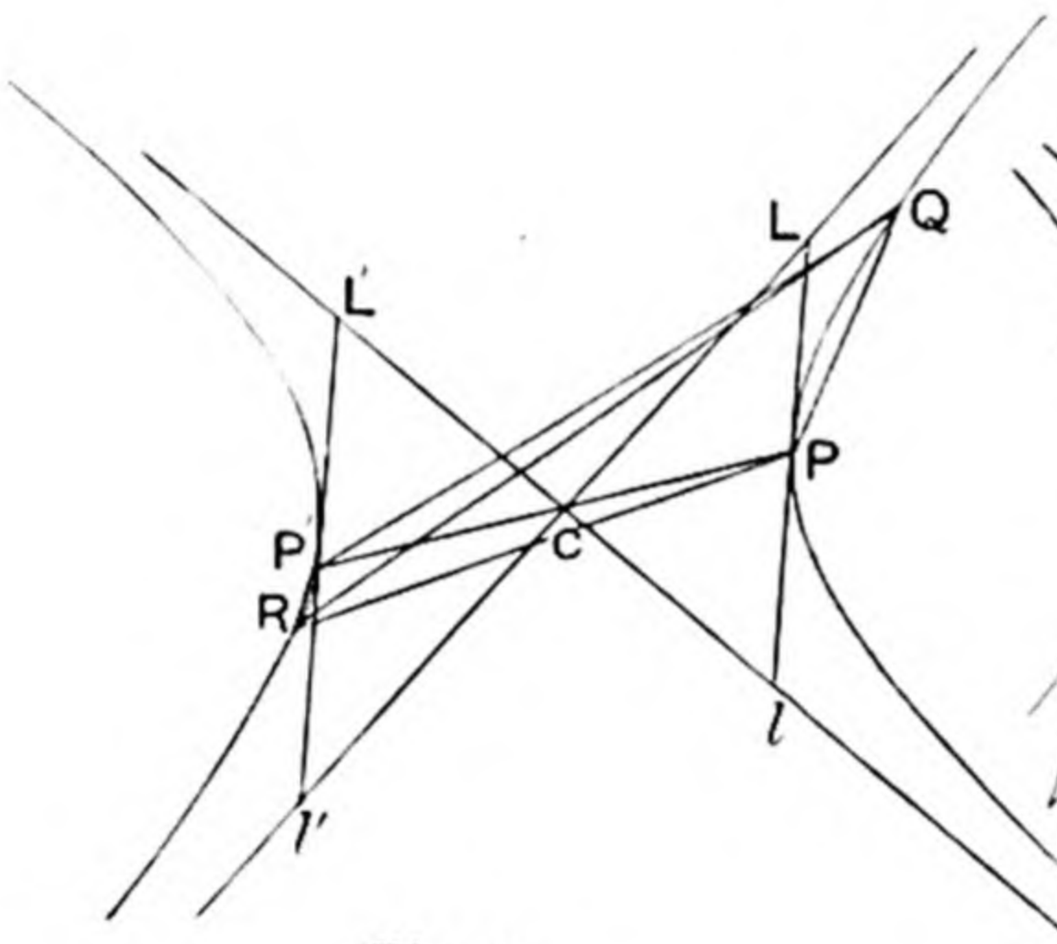



Fig. 3.

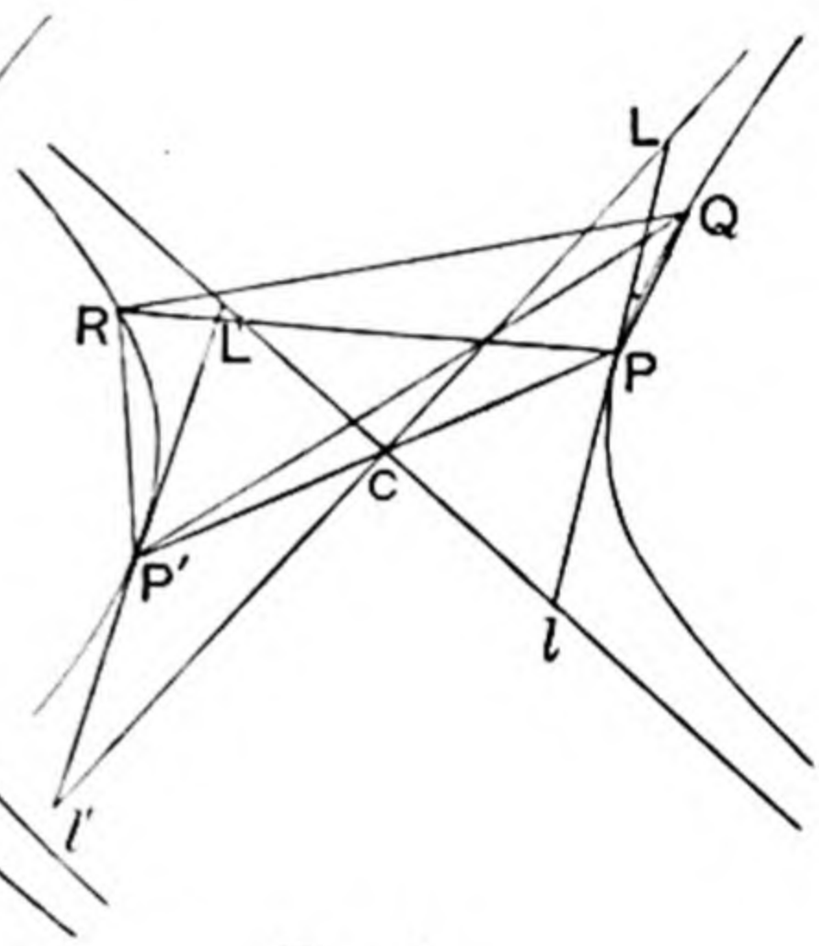



Fig. 4.

## EXERCISES

1. The portion of any tangent to a rectangular hyperbola intercepted between its asymptotes is double the distance of its point of contact from the centre.

2. If $PN$ be the ordinate of any point $P$ on a rectangular hyperbola, and $PG$ the normal at $P$, prove $CN = NG$, and the tangent from $N$ to the auxiliary circle $= PN$.

3. If $CK$ be the perpendicular from the centre on the tangent at any point $P$ of a rectangular hyperbola the triangles $PCA$, $CAK$ are similar.

4. $PQR$ is a triangle inscribed in a rectangular hyperbola, and the angle at $P$ is a right angle; prove that the tangent at $P$ is perpendicular to $QR$.

5. If $PP'$ and $QQ'$ be perpendicular chords of a rectangular hyperbola then $PQ'$, $QP'$ will be at right angles, as also $PQ$ and $P'Q'$.

6. $PP'$ is any chord of a rectangular hyperbola, and a diameter perpendicular to it meets the hyperbola in $Q$; prove that the circle $PQP'$ touches the hyperbola at $Q$.

7. If from the extremities of any diameter of a rectangular hyperbola lines be drawn to any point on the curve, they will be equally inclined to each asymptote.

8. Focal chords of a rectangular hyperbola which are at right angles to one another are equal.

[See §§ 116, 117.]

9. The distance of any point on a rectangular hyperbola from the centre is the geometric mean between its distances from the foci.

10. If $PP'$ be a double ordinate to the transverse axis of a rectangular hyperbola whose centre is $C$, then $CP'$ is perpendicular to the tangent at $P$.

11. The centre of the inscribed circle of a triangle lies on any rectangular hyperbola circumscribing the triangle whose vertices are the $e$ centres.

12. Focal chords parallel to conjugate diameters of a rectangular hyperbola are equal.

13. If the tangent at any point $P$ of a rectangular hyperbola, centre $C$, meet a pair of conjugate diameters in $E$ and $F$, $PC$ touches the circle $CEF$.

14. Two tangents are drawn to the same branch of a rectangular hyperbola. Prove that the angles which these tangents subtend at the centre are respectively equal to the angles which they make with the chord of contact.

15. A circle and a rectangular hyperbola intersect in four points and one of their common chords is a diameter of the hyperbola; shew that the other common chord is a diameter of the circle.

16. Ellipses are described in a given parallelogram; shew that their foci lie on a rectangular hyperbola.

17. If from any point $Q$ in the conjugate axis of a rectangular hyperbola $QA$ be drawn to the vertex, and $QR$ parallel to the transverse to meet the curve, $QR = AQ$.

18. The lines joining the extremities of conjugate diameters of a rectangular hyperbola are perpendicular to the asymptotes.

19. The base of a triangle and the difference of its base angles being given the locus of its vertex is a rectangular hyperbola.

20. The circles described on parallel chords of a rectangular hyperbola are coaxal.

21. If a rectangular hyperbola circumscribe a triangle, the pedal triangle is a self-conjugate one.

22. At any point $P$ of a rectangular hyperbola the radius of curvature varies as $CP^3$, and the diameter of the curve is equal to the central chord of curvature.

23. At any point of a rectangular hyperbola the normal chord is equal to the diameter of curvature.

24. $PN$ is drawn perpendicular to an asymptote of a rectangular hyperbola from any point $P$ on it, the chord of curvature along $PN$ is equal to $\frac{CP^2}{PN}$.

# CHAPTER XV

## ORTHOGONAL PROJECTION

**200.** When the vertex of projection by means of which a figure is projected from one plane $p$ on to another plane $\pi$ is at a very great distance from these planes, the lines joining corresponding points in the original figure and its projection come near to being parallel. What we may call *cylindrical projection* is the case in which points on the $p$ plane are projected on to the $\pi$ plane by lines which are all drawn parallel to each other. We regard this as the limiting case of conical projection when the vertex $V$ is at infinity.

In the particular case where the lines joining corresponding points are perpendicular to the $\pi$ plane on to which the figure on the $p$ plane is projected, the resulting figure on the $\pi$ plane is said to be the *orthogonal projection* of the original figure.

Points in space which are not necessarily in a plane can be orthogonally projected on to a plane by drawing perpendiculars from them to the plane. The foot of each perpendicular is the projection of the point from which it is drawn. Thus all points in space which lie on the same line perpendicular to the plane on to which the projection is made will have the same projection.

In the present chapter it will be shewn how certain properties of the ellipse can be obtained from those of the circle, for, as we shall see, every ellipse is the orthogonal projection of a circle. It is first necessary to establish certain properties of orthogonal projection.

**201.** It may be observed at the outset that in orthogonal projection we have no vanishing line as in conical projection.

The line at infinity in the $p$ plane projects into the line at infinity in the plane $\pi$. This is clear from the fact that the perpendiculars to the $\pi$ plane from points in it on the line at infinity meet the $p$ plane at infinity.

It follows that the orthogonal projection of a parabola will be another parabola. and of a hyperbola another hyperbola, while the orthogonal projection of an ellipse will be another ellipse or in particular cases a circle.

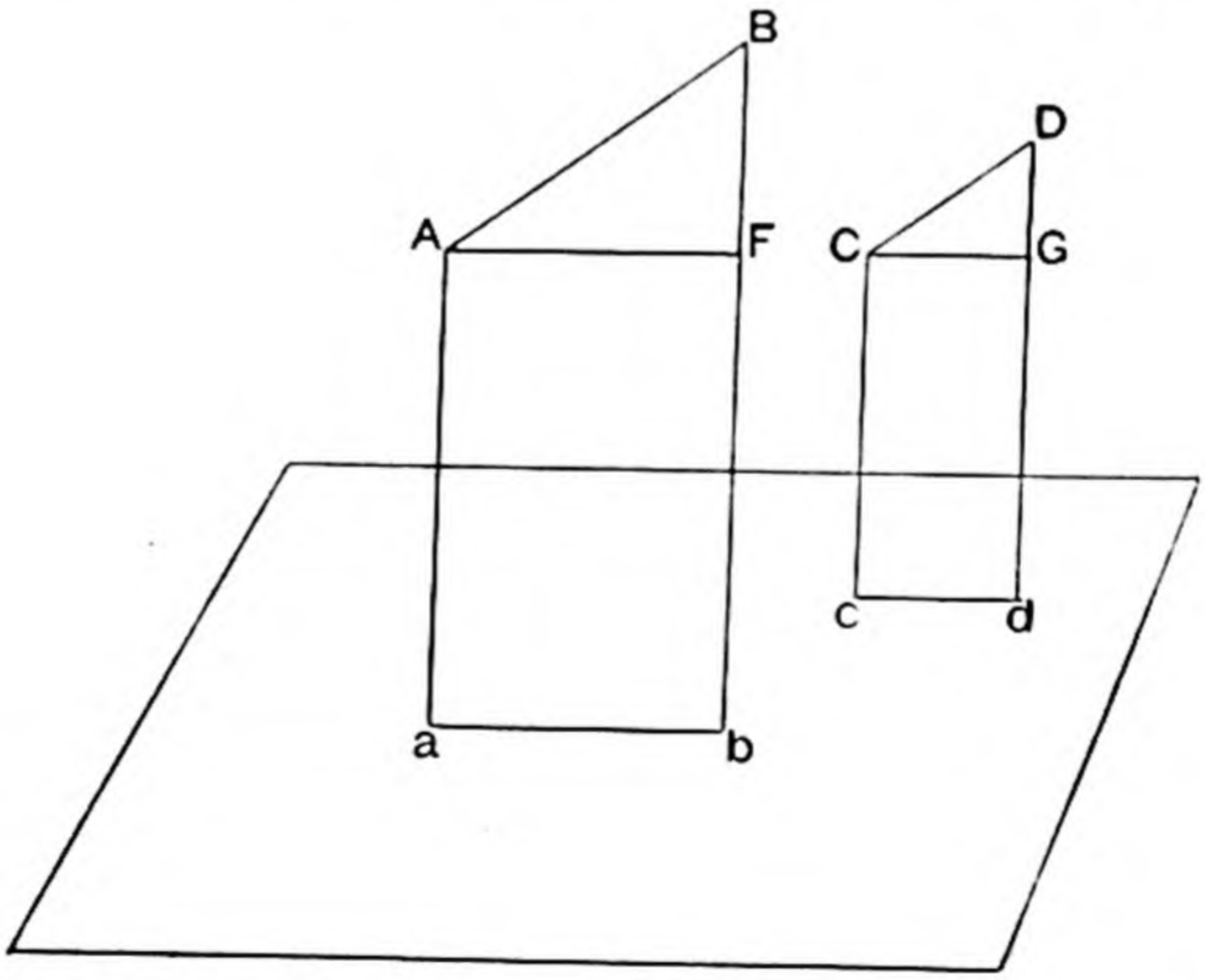
**202.** The following propositions relating to orthogonal projection are important:

**Prop.** *The projection of a straight line is another straight line.*

This is obvious from the fact that orthogonal is only a limiting case of conical projection. It is clear that the line in the $\pi$ plane which will be the projection of a line $l$ will be that in which the plane through $l$ and perpendicular to the plane $\pi$ cuts this $\pi$ plane.

**203. Prop.** *Parallel straight lines project into parallel straight lines, and in the same ratio as regards their length.*

Let $AB$ and $CD$ be two lines in space parallel to one another.




Let $ab$, $cd$ be their orthogonal projections on to the plane $\pi$.

Then $ab$ and $cd$ must be parallel, for if they were to meet in a point $p$, $p$ would be the projection of a point common to $AB$ and $CD$.

Now draw $AF$ and $CG$ parallel respectively to $ab$ and $cd$ to meet $Bb$ and $Dd$ in $F$ and $G$. Then $AabF$ is a parallelogram so that $AF = ab$, and similarly $CG = cd$.

Now since $AB$ is parallel to $CD$, and $AF$ to $CG$ (for these are respectively parallel to $ab$ and $cd$ which we have proved to be parallel), the angle $FAB$ = the angle $GCD$; and the angles at $F$ and $G$ are right angles.

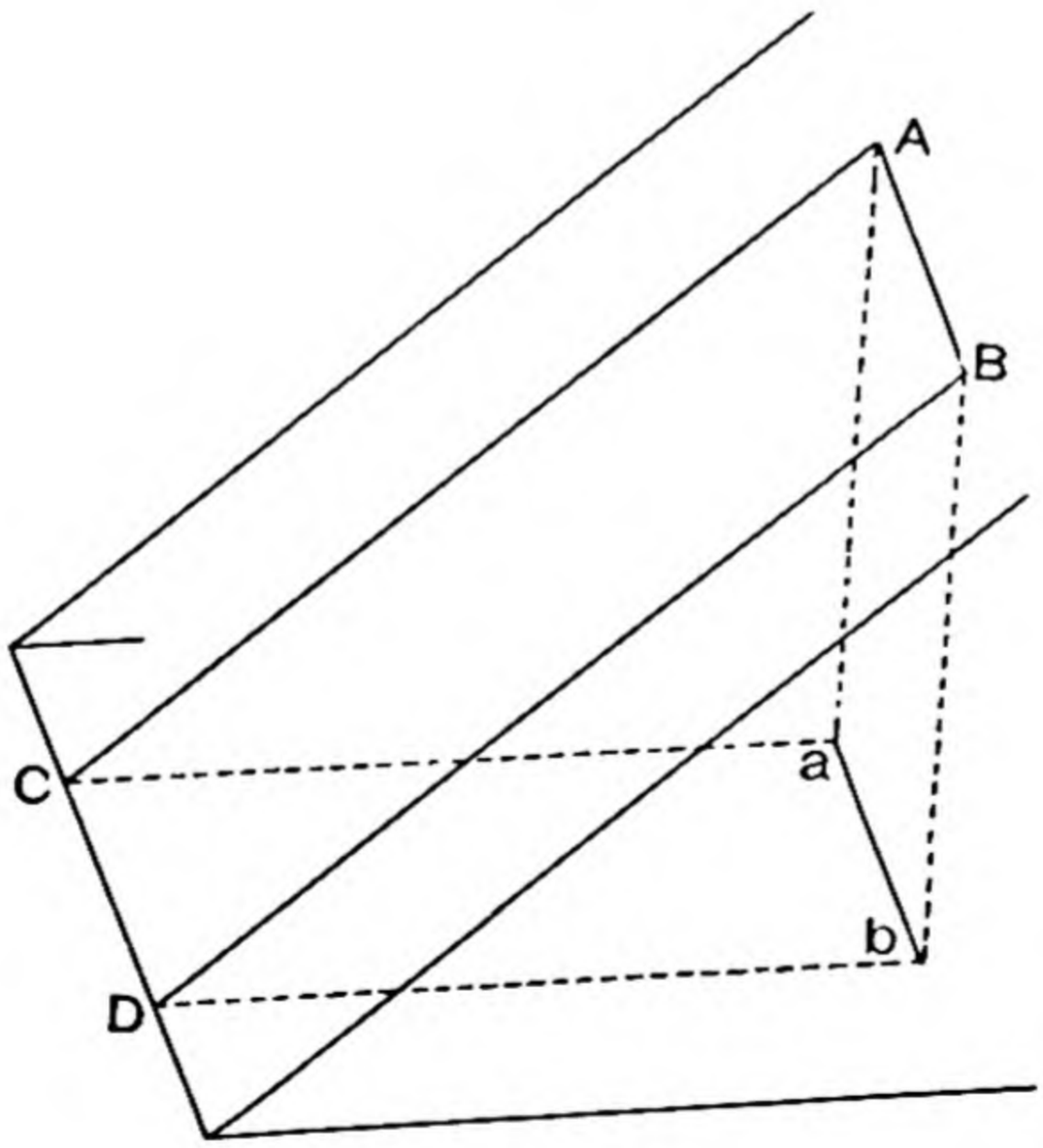
$$\therefore \triangle AFB \text{ is similar to } \triangle CGD.$$

$$\therefore AF : CG = AB : CD.$$

$$\therefore ab : cd = AB : CD.$$

COR. Lengths of line lying along the *same* line are projected in the same ratio.

**204. Prop.** *If $l$ be a limited line in the $p$ plane parallel to $p$'s intersection with the $\pi$ plane, the orthogonal projection of $l$ on $\pi$ will be a line parallel to and of the same length as $l$.*




Let $AB$ be the limited line $l$, and $ab$ its orthogonal projection.

Draw $AC$ and $BD$ perpendicular to the line of intersection of $p$ and $\pi$.

Then $ACDB$ is a parallelogram.

Also since $Aa$ and $Bb$ are perpendicular to $\pi$, $Ca$ and $Db$ are perpendicular to $CD$ and therefore they are parallel to each other.

Further $$\triangle ACa \equiv \triangle BDb$$

for $$AC = BD,\ \angle AaC = \angle BbD$$

and $\angle ACa = \angle BDb$ for $AC$ and $Ca$ are parallel to $BD$ and $Db$.

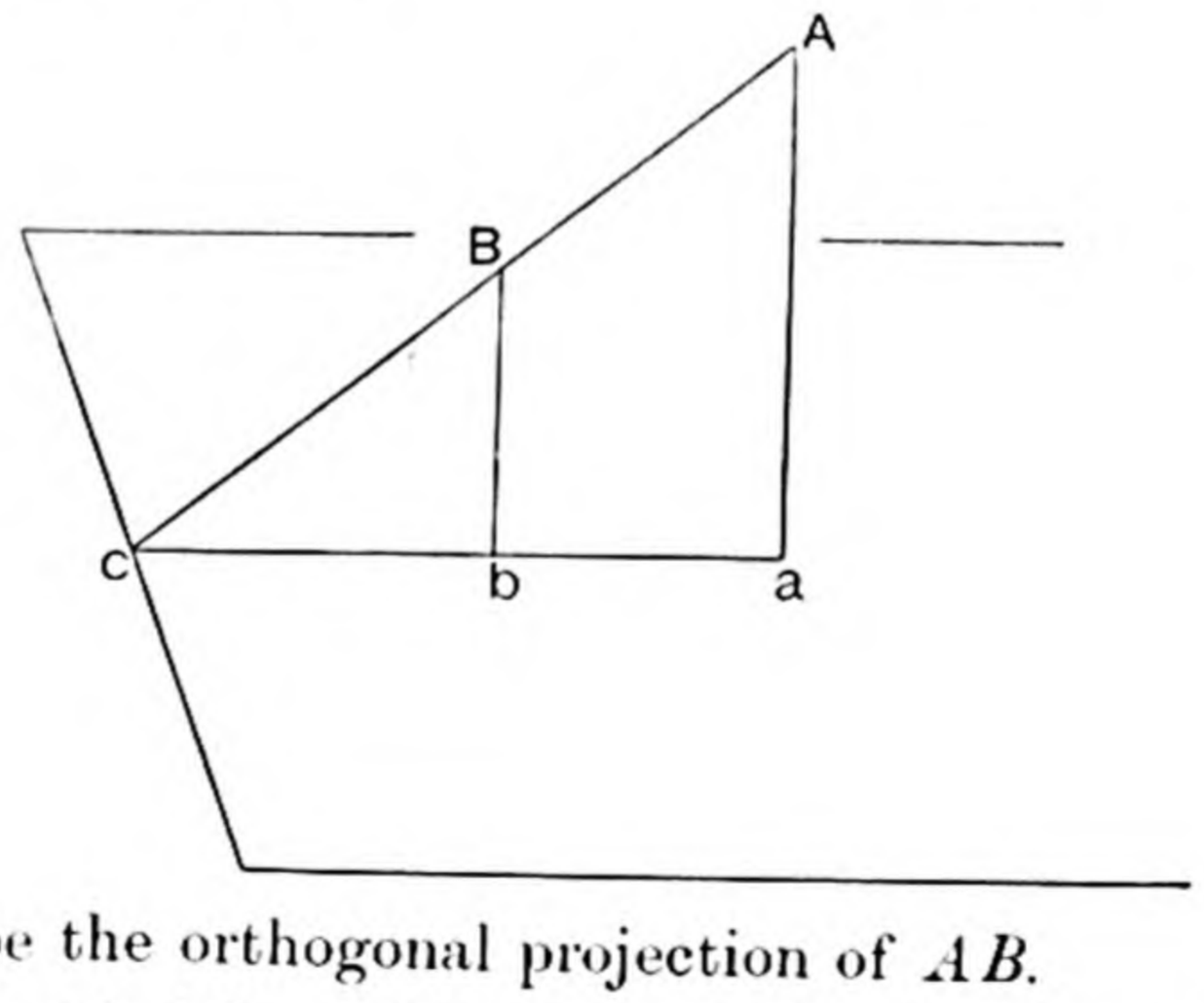
$$\therefore\ Ca = Db.$$

$\therefore$ as $Ca$ and $Db$ are parallel, $CDba$ is a parallelogram.

$$\therefore\ ab = CD = AB.$$

205. **Prop.** *A limited line in the p plane perpendicular to the line of intersection of p and $\pi$ will project into a line also perpendicular to this line of intersection and whose length will bear to the original line a ratio equal to the cosine of the angle between the planes.*

Let $AB$ be perpendicular to the intersection of $p$ and $\pi$, and let its line meet it in $C$.



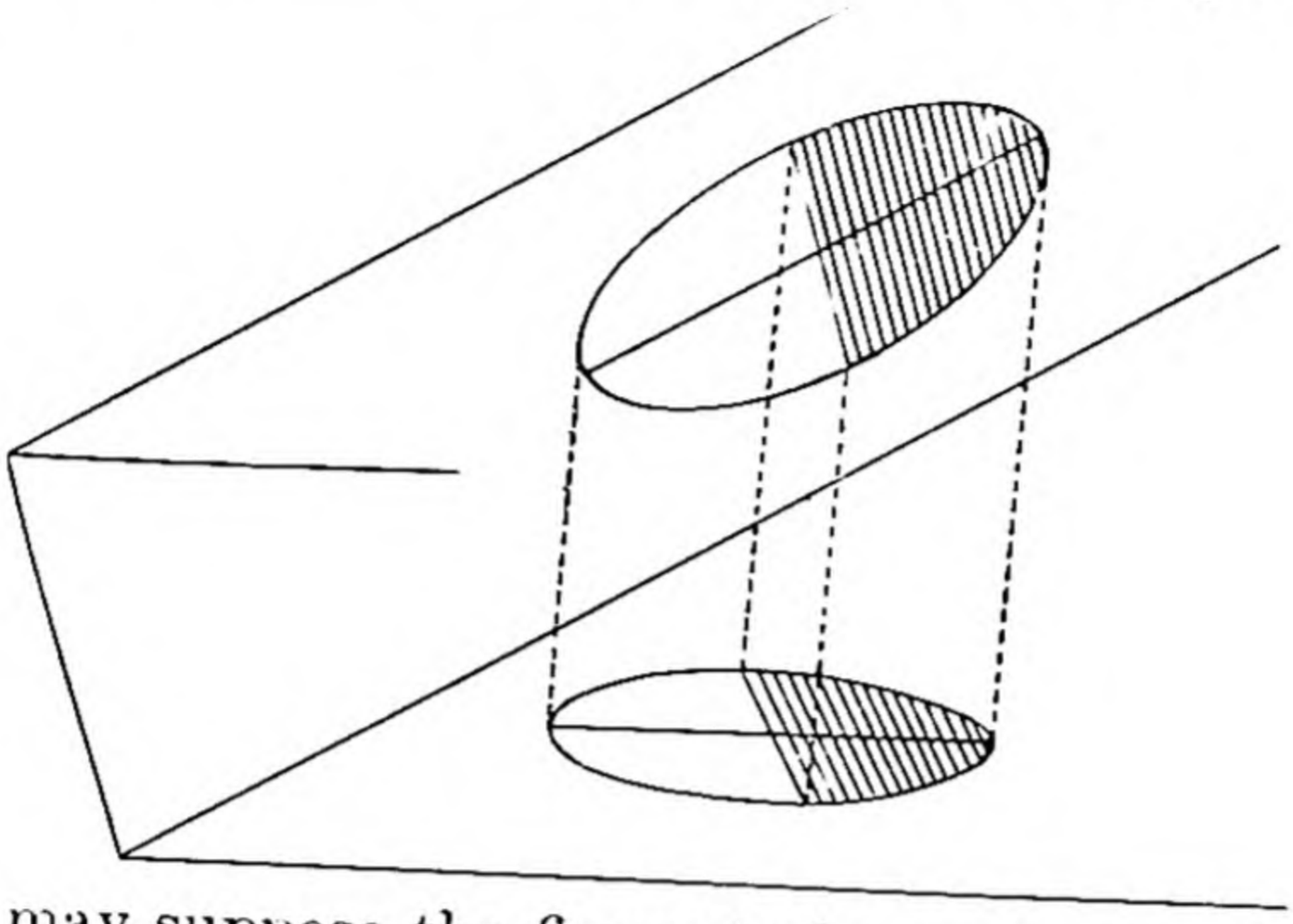

Let $ab$ be the orthogonal projection of $AB$.

Then $ab$ and $AB$ meet in $C$, and $ab : AB = ac : AC$

$= \cos aCA$

$= \cos(\angle$ between $p$ and $\pi)$.

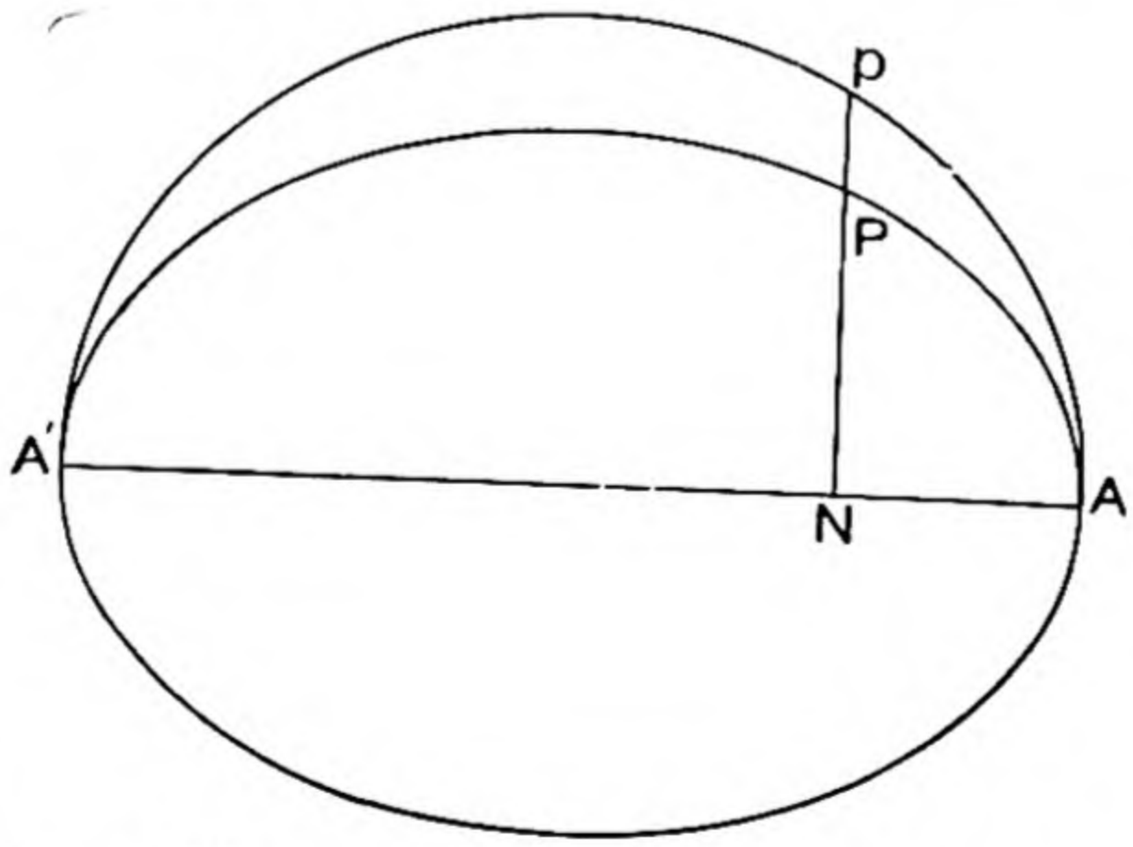
**206. Prop.** *A closed figure on the p plane will project into a closed figure whose area will bear to that of the original figure a ratio equal to the cosine of the angle between the planes.*



For we may suppose the figure to be made up of an infinite number of narrow rectangular strips the length of which runs parallel to the intersection of $p$ and $\pi$. The lengths of the slips are unaltered by projection, and the breadths are diminished in the ratio of the cosine of the angle between the planes.

**207.** *The ellipse as the orthogonal projection of a circle.*

We have seen (§ 150) that corresponding ordinates of an ellipse and its auxiliary circle bear a constant ratio to one another, viz., $BC : AC$.




Now let the auxiliary circle be turned about its major axis $AA'$ until it comes into a plane making with that of the ellipse an angle whose cosine is $BC : AC$.

It is clear that the lines joining each point on the ellipse to the new position of the point corresponding to it on the auxiliary circle will be perpendicular to the plane of the ellipse.

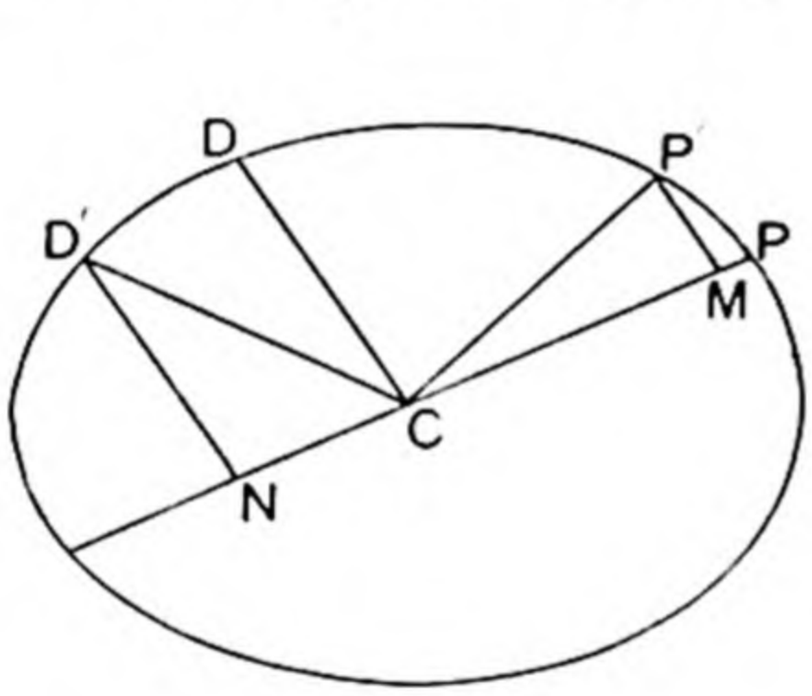
Thus the ellipse is the orthogonal projection of the circle in its new position.

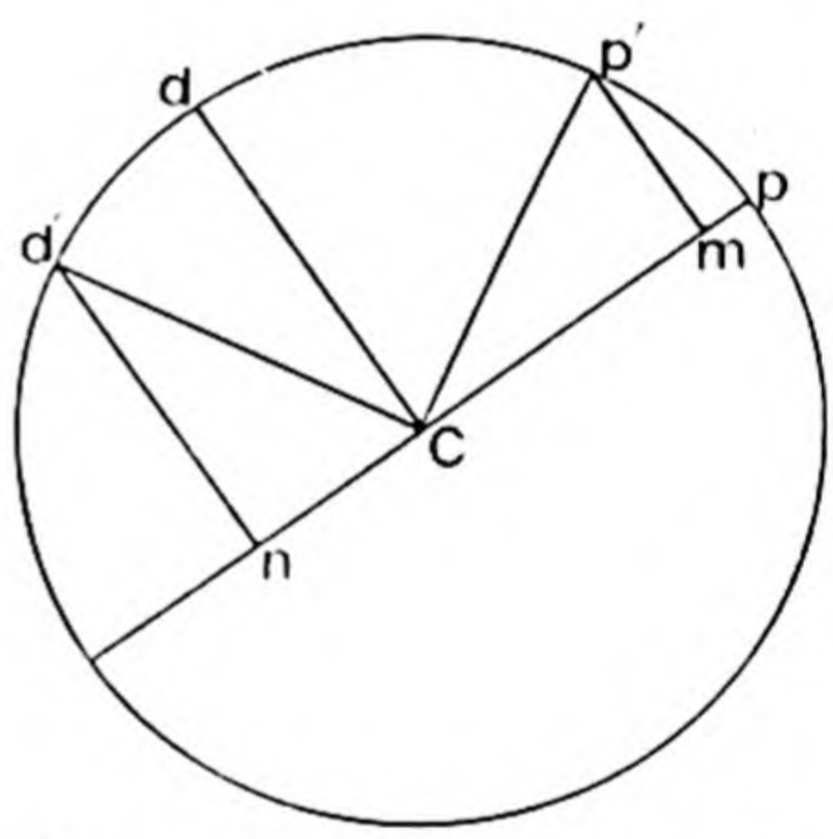
Certain properties of the ellipse then can be deduced from those of the circle by orthogonal projection. We proceed to some illustrations.

**208. Prop.** *If $CP$ and $CD$ be a pair of conjugate semi-diameters of an ellipse, and $CP'$, $CD'$ another such pair, and the ordinates $P'M$, $D'N$ be drawn to $CP$, then*

$$P'M : CN = D'N : CM = CD : CP.$$

For let the corresponding points in the auxiliary circle adjusted to make an angle $\cos^{-1}\frac{BC}{AC}$ with the plane of the ellipse, be denoted by small letters.




Then $Cp$ and $Cd$ are perpendicular radii as are also $Cp'$ and $Cd'$, and $p'm$, $d'n$ being parallel to $Cd$ will be perpendicular to $Cp$, and we have

$$\triangle Cmp' \equiv \triangle d'nC.$$

$$\therefore\ p'm : Cd = Cn : Cp$$

and
$$d'n : Cd = Cm : Cp.$$

$\therefore$ by § 203

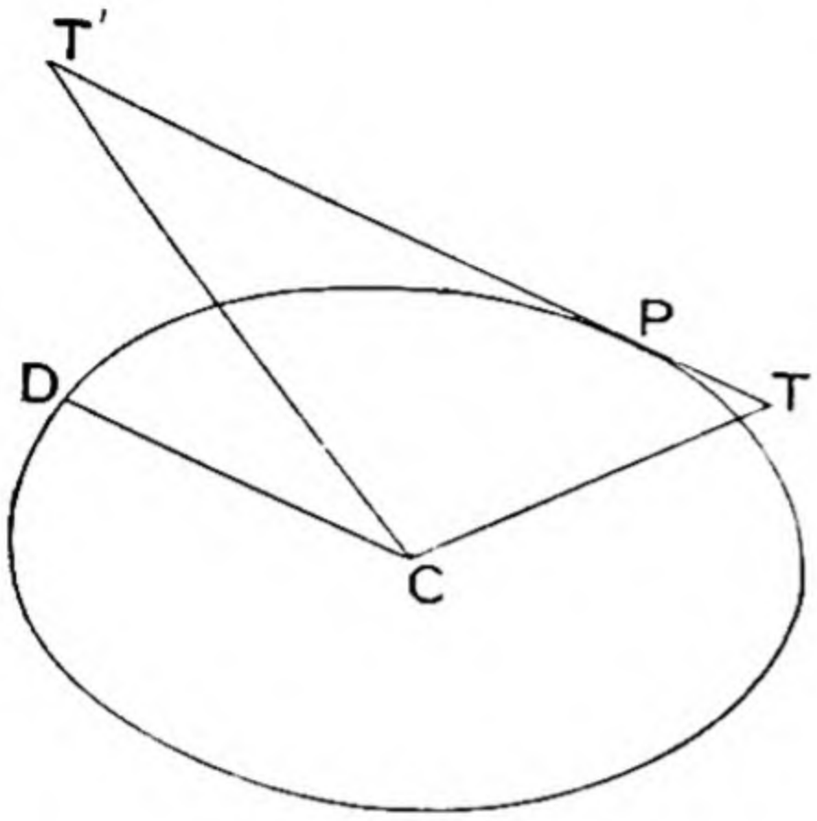
$$P'M : CD = CN : CP$$

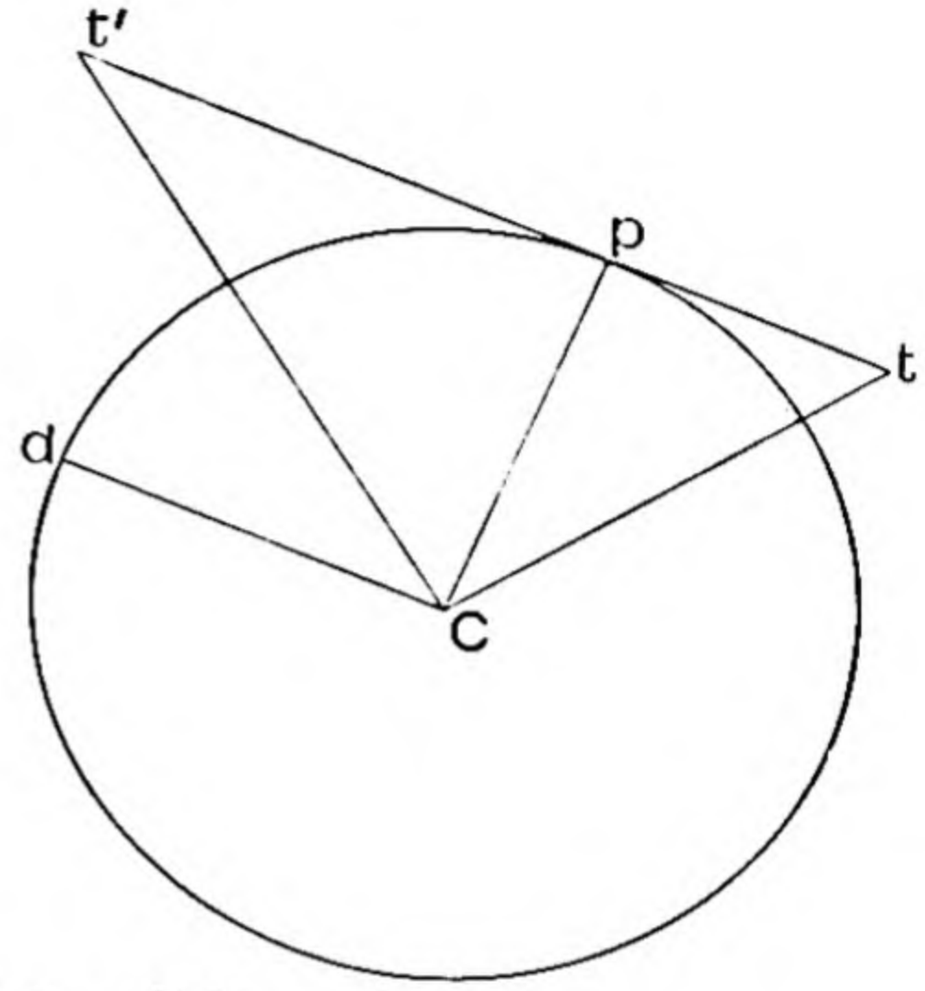
$$D'N : CD = CM : CP.$$

$$\therefore\ P'M : CN = CD : CP = D'N : CM.$$

**209. Prop.** *If the tangent at a point $P$ of an ellipse meet any pair of conjugate diameters in $T$ and $T'$ and $CD$ be conjugate to $CP$, then $TP \,.\, PT' = CD^2$.*

For in the corresponding figure of the circle $Ct$ and $Ct'$ are at right angles, and $Cp$ is perpendicular to $tt'$.




$$\therefore\ tp \,.\, pt' = Cp^2 = Cd^2.$$

$$\therefore\ tp : Cd = Cd : pt'.$$

$$\therefore\ TP : CD = CD : PT'.$$

$$\therefore\ TP \,.\, PT' = CD^2.$$

**210. Prop.** *The area of an ellipse whose semi-axes are $CA$ and $CB$ is $\pi \,.\, CA \,.\, CB$.*

For the ellipse is the orthogonal projection of its auxiliary circle tilted to make an angle $\cos^{-1} \dfrac{BC}{AC}$ with that of the ellipse.

$\therefore$ Area of ellipse : Area of auxiliary circle $= BC : AC$ (§ 206).

$\therefore$ Area of ellipse $= \pi \,.\, BC \,.\, AC$.

**211. Prop.** *The orthogonal projection of a circle from a plane $p$ on to another plane $\pi$ is an ellipse whose major axis is parallel to the intersection of $p$ and $\pi$, and equal to the diameter of the circle.*

Let $AA'$ be that diameter of the circle which is parallel to the $p$ and $\pi$ planes.

Let $AA'$ project into $aa'$ equal to it (§ 204).

Let $PN$ be an ordinate to the diameter $AA'$ and let $pn$ be its projection.

$\therefore$ $pn = PN \cos \alpha$ where $\alpha$ is the $\angle$ between $p$ and $\pi$, and $pn$ is perpendicular to $aa'$ (§ 205).

Now $pn^2 : an \,.\, na' = PN^2 \cos^2 \alpha : AN \,.\, NA'$

$= \cos^2 \alpha : 1.$

Hence the locus of $p$ is an ellipse having $aa'$ for its major axis, and its minor axis $= aa' \times \cos \alpha$.

The eccentricity is easily seen to be $\sin \alpha$.

Cor. 1. Two circles in the same plane project orthogonally into similar and similarly situated ellipses.

For their eccentricities will be equal and the major axis of the one is parallel to the major axis of the other, each being parallel to the line of intersection of the planes.

Cor. 2. Two similar and similarly situated ellipses are the simultaneous orthogonal projections of two circles.

## EXERCISES

1. The locus of the middle points of chords of an ellipse which pass through a fixed point is a similar and similarly situated ellipse.

2. If a parallelogram be inscribed in an ellipse its sides are parallel to conjugate diameters, and the greatest area of such a parallelogram is $BC \,.\, AC$.

3. If $PQ$ be any chord of an ellipse meeting the diameter conjugate to $CP$ in $T$, then $PQ \,.\, PT = 2CR^2$ where $CR$ is the semi-diameter parallel to $PQ$.

4. If a variable chord of an ellipse bear a constant ratio to the diameter parallel to it, it will touch another similar ellipse having its axes along those of the original ellipse.

5. The greatest triangle which can be inscribed in an ellipse has one of its sides bisected by a diameter of the ellipse and the others cut in points of trisection by the conjugate diameter.

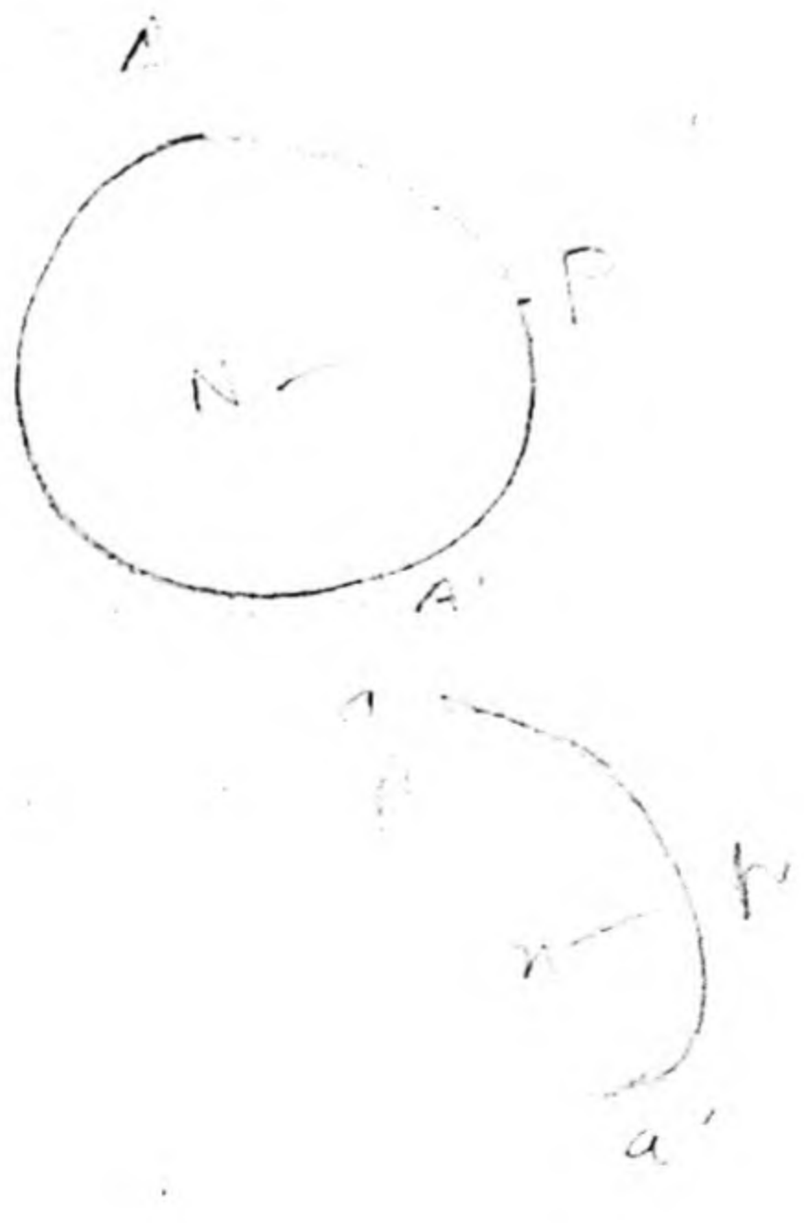
6. If a straight line meet two concentric, similar and similarly situated ellipses, the portions intercepted between the curves are equal.

7. The locus of the points of intersection of the tangents at the extremities of pairs of conjugate diameter is a concentric, similar, and similarly situated ellipse.

8. If $CP$, $CD$ be conjugate semi-diameters of an ellipse, and $BP$, $BD$ be joined, and $AD$, $A'P$ intersect in $O$, the figure $BDOP$ will be a parallelogram.

9. Two ellipses whose axes are at right angles to one another intersect in four points. Shew that any pair of common chords will make equal angles with an axis.

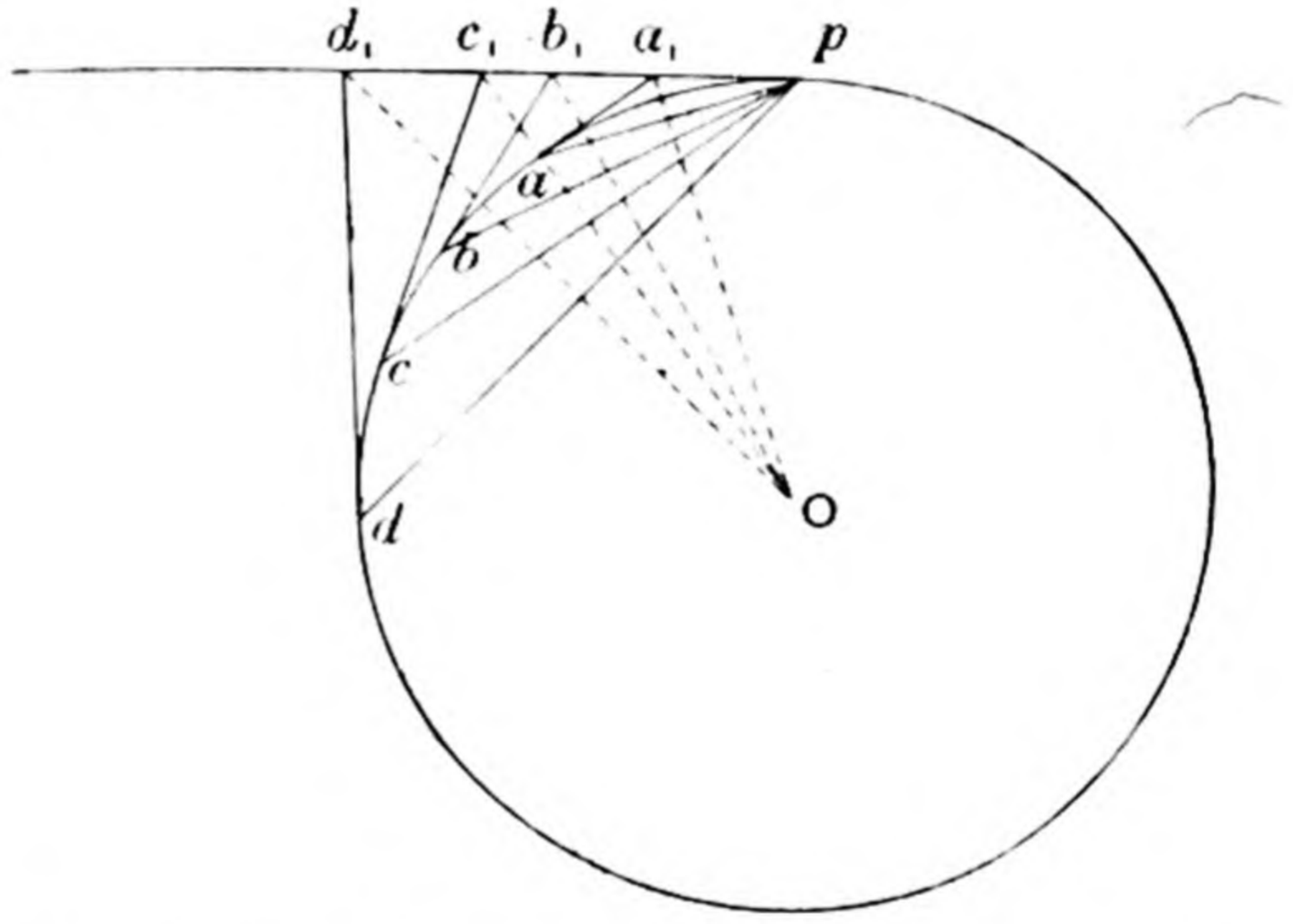
10. Shew that a circle of curvature for an ellipse and the ellipse itself can be projected orthogonally into an ellipse and one of its circles of curvature.



# CHAPTER XVI

## CROSS-RATIO PROPERTIES OF CONICS

**212. Prop.** *If $A, B, C, D$ be four fixed points on a conic, and $P$ a variable point on the conic, $P(ABCD)$ is constant and equal to the corresponding cross-ratio of the four points in which the tangents at $A, B, C, D$ meet that at $P$.*




Project the conic into a circle and use corresponding small letters in the projection.

Then $$P(ABCD) = p(abcd).$$

But $p(abcd)$ is constant since the angles $apb$, $bpc$, $cpd$ are constant or change to their supplements as $p$ moves on the circle; therefore $P(ABCD)$ is constant.

Let the tangents at $a, b, c, d$ cut that in $p$ in $a_1, b_1, c_1, d_1$ and let $O$ be the centre of the circle.

Then $Oa_1$, $Ob_1$, $Oc_1$, $Od_1$ are perpendicular to $pa$, $pb$, $pc$, $pd$.

$$\therefore p(abcd) = O(a_1b_1c_1d_1) = (a_1b_1c_1d_1).$$

$$\therefore P(ABCD) = (A_1B_1C_1D_1).$$

COR. If $A'$ be a point on the conic near to $A$, we have

$$A'(ABCD) = P(ABCD).$$

$\therefore$ if $AT$ be the tangent at $A$,

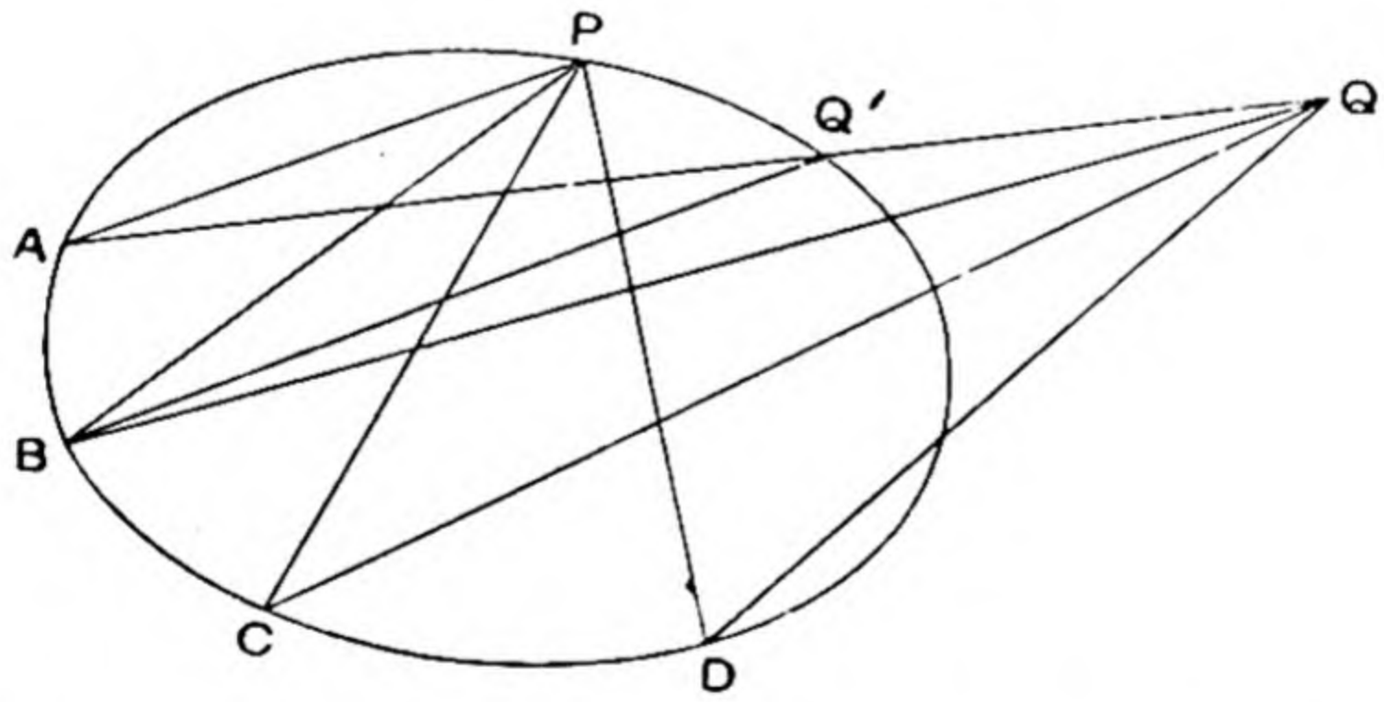
$$A(TBCD) = P(ABCD).$$

NOTE. In the special case where the pencil formed by joining any point $P$ on the conic to the four fixed points $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$ is harmonic, we speak of the points on the conic as harmonic. Thus if $P(ABCD) = -1$, we say that $A$ and $C$ are harmonic conjugates to $B$ and $D$.

**213. Prop.** *If $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$ be four fixed non-collinear points in a plane and $P$ a point such that $P(ABCD)$ is constant, the locus of $P$ is a conic.*

Let $Q$ be a point such that

$$Q(ABCD) = P(ABCD).$$




Then if the conic through the points $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$, $P$ does not pass through $Q$, let it cut $QA$ in $Q'$.

$$\therefore P(ABCD) = Q'(ABCD) \text{ by } \S\ 212.$$

$$\therefore Q'(ABCD) = Q(ABCD).$$

Thus the pencils $Q$ $(A, B, C, D)$ and $Q'$ $(A, B, C, D)$ are homographic and have a common ray $QQ'$.

Therefore (§ 64) they are coaxally in perspective; that is, $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$ are collinear.

But this is contrary to hypothesis.

Therefore the conic through $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$, $P$ goes through $Q$.

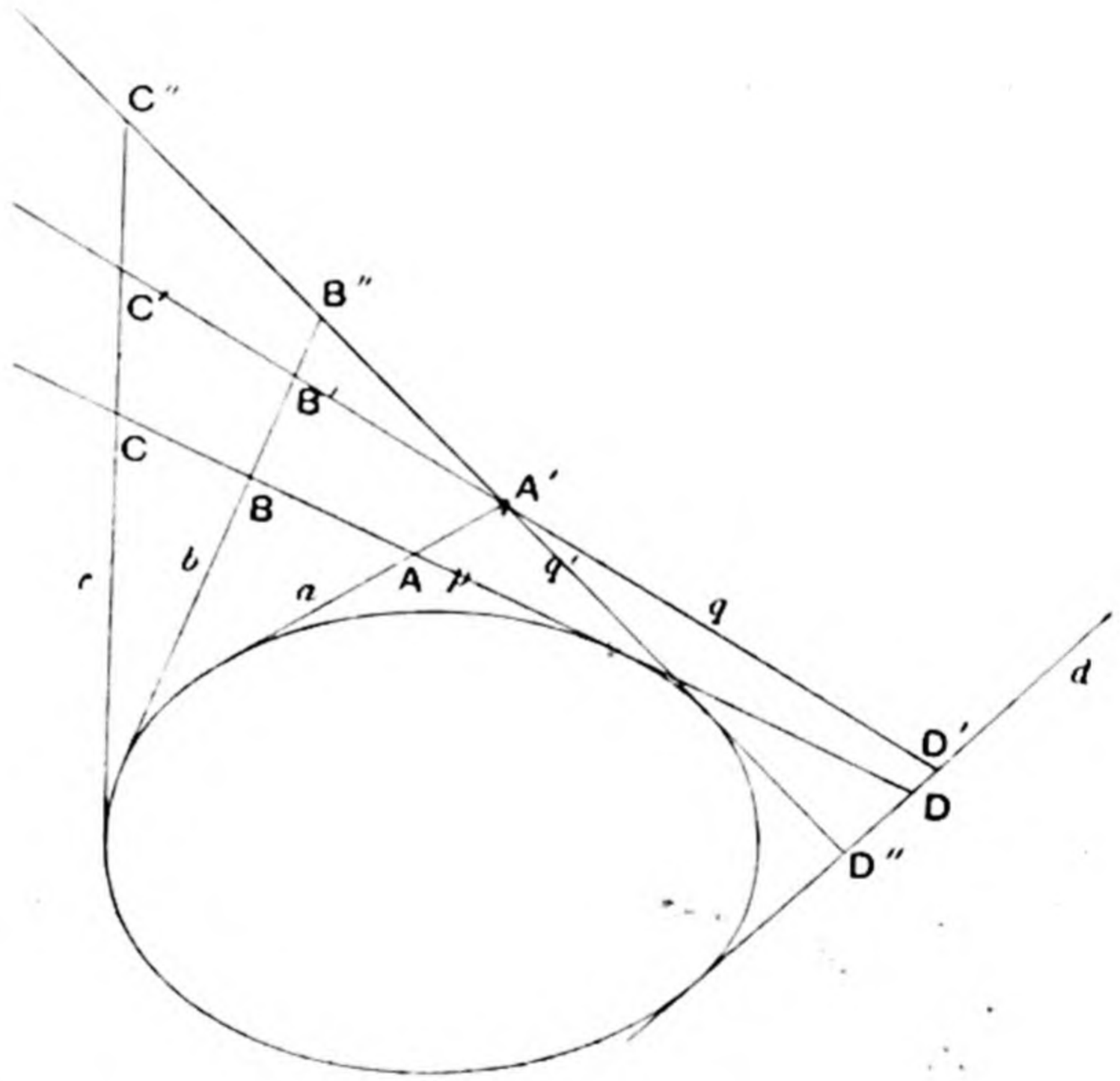
Thus our proposition is proved.

We see from the above that we may regard a conic through the five points $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$, $E$ as the locus of a point $P$ such that

$$P(ABCD) = E(ABCD).$$

**214. Prop.** *The envelope of a line which cuts four non-concurrent coplanar fixed straight lines in four points forming a range of constant cross-ratio is a conic touching the four lines.*

This proposition will be seen, when we come to the next chapter, to follow by Reciprocation directly from the proposition of the last paragraph.




The following is an independent proof.

Let the line $p$ cut the four non-concurrent lines $a$, $b$, $c$, $d$ in the points $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$ such that $(ABCD)$ = the given constant.

Let the line $q$ cut the same four lines in $A'$, $B'$, $C'$, $D'$ such that $(A'B'C'D') = (ABCD)$.

Then if $q$ be not a tangent to the conic touching $a, b, c, d, p$, from $A'$ in $q$ draw $q'$ a tangent to the conic.

Let $b, c, d$ cut $q'$ in $B''$, $C''$, $D''$.

$$\therefore (A'B''C''D'') = (ABCD) \text{ by } \S\ 212$$
$$= (A'B'C'D').$$

The ranges $A'B''C''D''$ and $A'B'C'D'$ are therefore homographic and they have a common corresponding point.

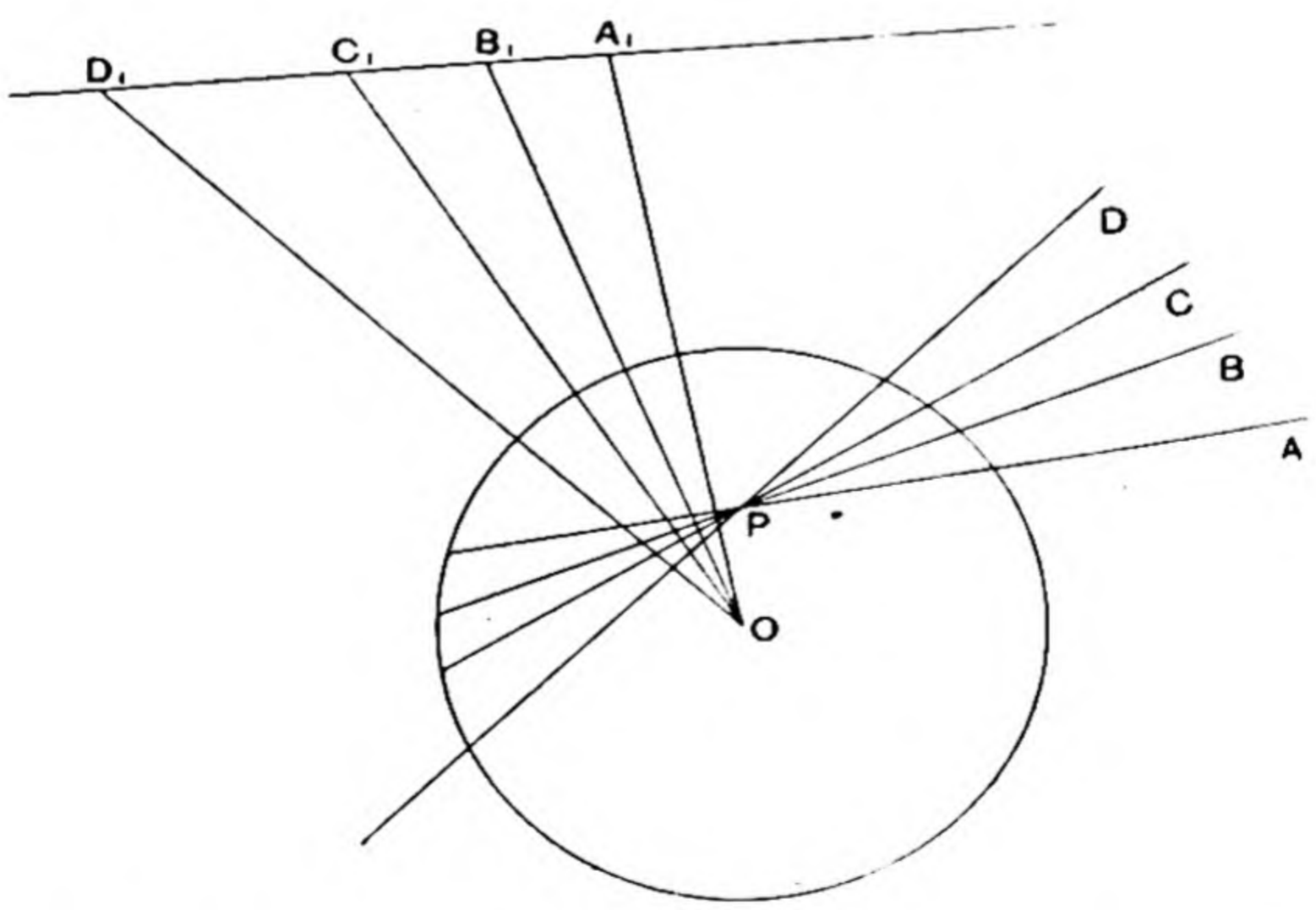
Therefore they are in perspective (§ 60), which is contrary to our hypothesis that $a, b, c, d$ are non-concurrent.

Thus $q$ touches the same conic as that which touches $a, b, c, d, p$.

And our proposition is established.

**215. Prop.** *If $P(A, B, C, D)$ be a pencil in the plane of a conic $S$, and $A_1$, $B_1$, $C_1$, $D_1$ the poles of $PA$, $PB$, $PC$, $PD$ with respect to $S$, then*

$$P(ABCD) = (A_1B_1C_1D_1).$$




We need only prove this in the case of a circle, into which as we have seen, a conic can be projected.

Let $O$ be the centre of the circle.

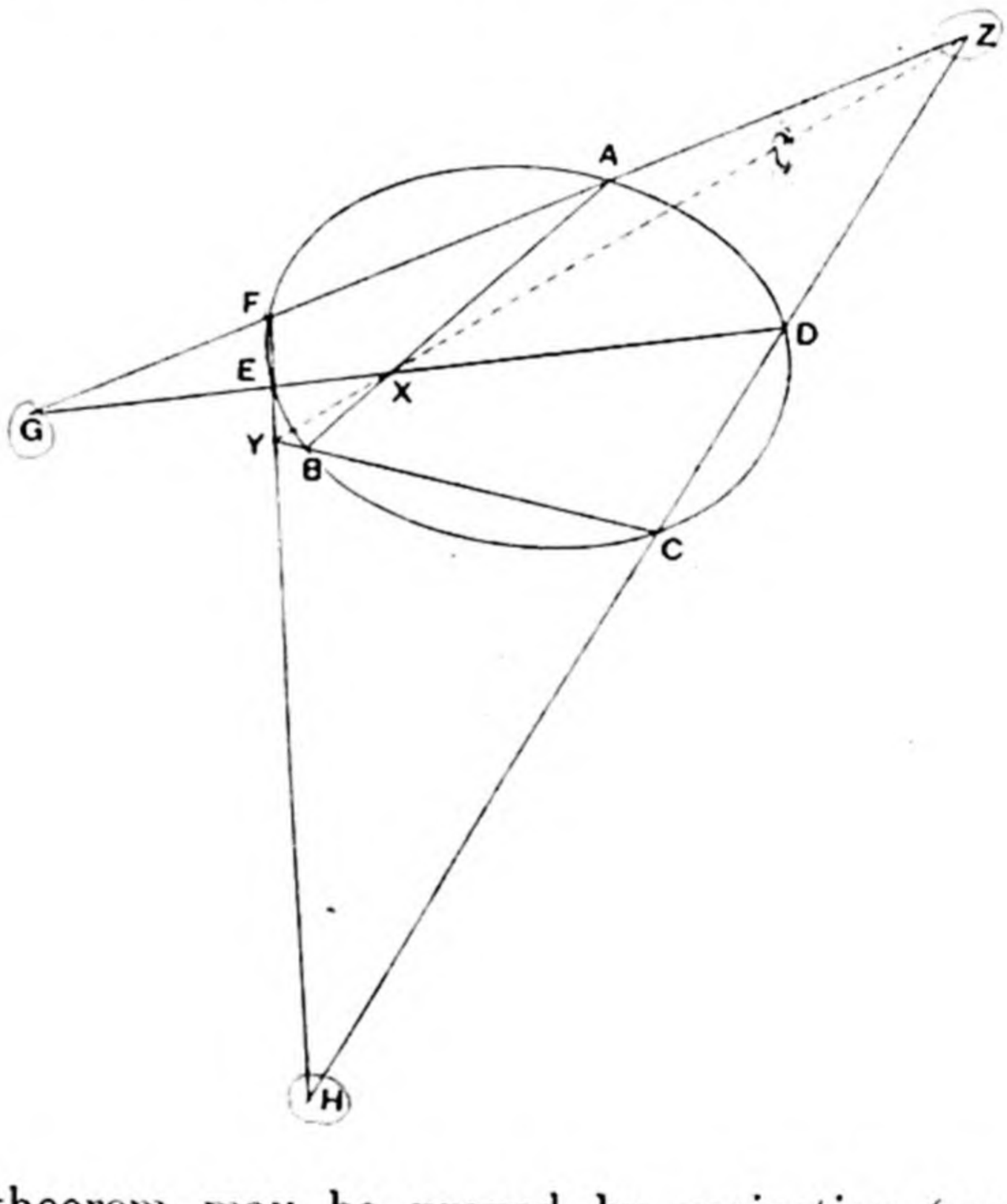
Then $OA_1$, $OB_1$, $OC_1$, $OD_1$ are perpendicular respectively to $PA$, $PB$, $PC$, $PD$.

$$\therefore P(ABCD) = O(A_1B_1C_1D_1) = (A_1B_1C_1D_1).$$

This proposition is of the greatest importance for the purposes of Reciprocation.

We had already seen that the polars of a range of points form a pencil; we now see that the pencil is homographic with the range.

**216. Pascal's theorem.** *If a conic pass through six points $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$, $E$, $F$ the opposite pairs of sides of each of the sixty different hexagons (six-sided figures) that can be formed with these points intersect in collinear points.*




This theorem may be proved by projection (see Ex. 25, Chap. X). Or we may proceed thus:

Consider the hexagon or six-sided figure formed with the sides $AB$, $BC$, $CD$, $DE$, $EF$, $FA$.

The pairs of sides which are called opposite are $AB$ and $DE$; $BC$ and $EF$; $CD$ and $FA$.

Let these meet in $X$, $Y$, $Z$ respectively.

Let $CD$ meet $EF$ in $H$, and $DE$ meet $FA$ in $G$.

Then since $$A(BDEF) = C(BDEF),$$

$$\therefore (XDEG) = (YHEF).$$

These homographic ranges $XDEG$ and $YHEF$ have a common corresponding point $E$.

$\therefore XY$, $DH$ and $FG$ are concurrent (§ 60),

that is, $Z$, the intersection of $DH$ and $FG$, lies on $XY$.

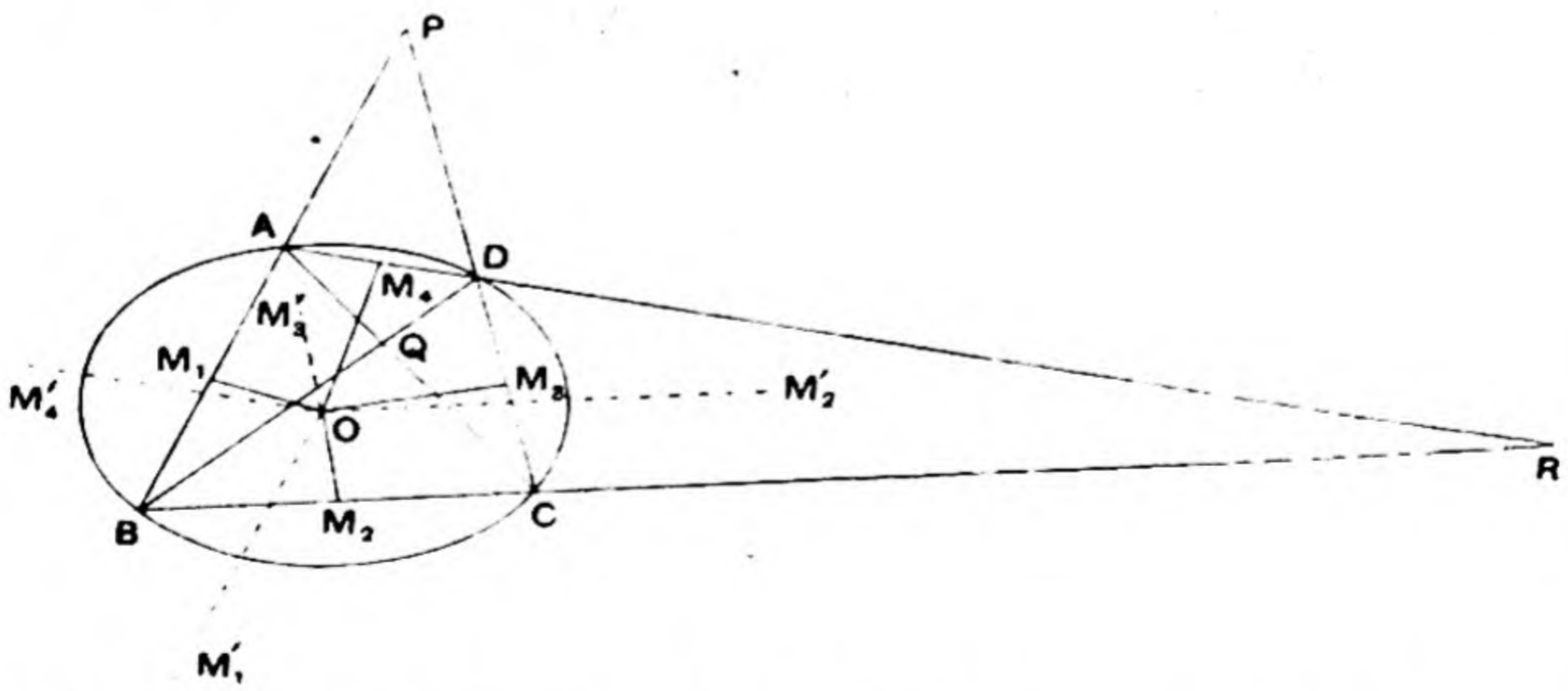
Thus the proposition is proved.

The student should satisfy himself that there are sixty different hexagons that can be formed with the six given vertices.

**217. Brianchon's theorem.** *If a conic be inscribed in a hexagon the lines joining opposite vertices are concurrent.*

This can be proved after a similar method to that of § 216, and may be left as an exercise to the student. We shall content ourselves with deriving this theorem from Pascal's by Reciprocation. To the principles of this important development of modern Geometry we shall come in the chapter immediately following this.

**218. Prop.** *The locus of the centres of conics through four fixed points is a conic.*




Let $O$ be the centre of one of the conics passing through the four points $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$.

Let $M_1$, $M_2$, $M_3$, $M_4$ be the middle points of $AB$, $BC$, $CD$, $DA$ respectively.

Draw $OM_1'$, $OM_2'$, $OM_3'$, $OM_4'$ parallel to $AB$, $BC$, $CD$, $DA$ respectively.

Then $OM_1$, $OM_1'$; $OM_2$, $OM_2'$; $OM_3$, $OM_3'$; $OM_4$, $OM_4'$ are pairs of conjugate diameters.

Therefore they form an involution pencil.

$$\therefore O(M_1M_2M_3M_4) = O(M_1'M_2'M_3'M_4').$$

But the right-hand side is constant since $OM_1'$, $OM_2'$ &c. are in fixed directions.

$$\therefore O(M_1M_2M_3M_4) \text{ is constant.}$$

$\therefore$ the locus of $O$ is a conic through $M_1$, $M_2$, $M_3$, $M_4$.

Cor. 1. The conic on which $O$ lies passes through $M_5$, $M_6$ the middle points of the other two sides of the quadrangle.

For if $O_1$, $O_2$, $O_3$, $O_4$, $O_5$ be five positions of $O$, these five points lie on a conic through $M_1$, $M_2$, $M_3$, $M_4$ and also on a conic through $M_1$, $M_2$, $M_5$, $M_6$.

But only one conic can be drawn through five points.

Therefore $M_1$, $M_2$, $M_3$, $M_4$, $M_5$, $M_6$ all lie on one conic, which is the locus of $O$.

Cor. 2. The locus of $O$ also passes through $P$, $Q$, $R$ the diagonal points of the quadrangle.

For one of the conics through the four points is the pair of lines $AB$, $CD$; and the centre of this conic is $P$.

So for $Q$ and $R$.

**219. Prop.** *If $O\{AA', BB', CC'\}$ be an involution pencil and if a conic be drawn through $O$ to cut the rays in $A$, $A'$, $B$, $B'$, $C$, $C'$, then the chords $AA'$, $BB'$, $CC'$ are concurrent.*

Let $AA'$ and $BB'$ intersect in $P$.

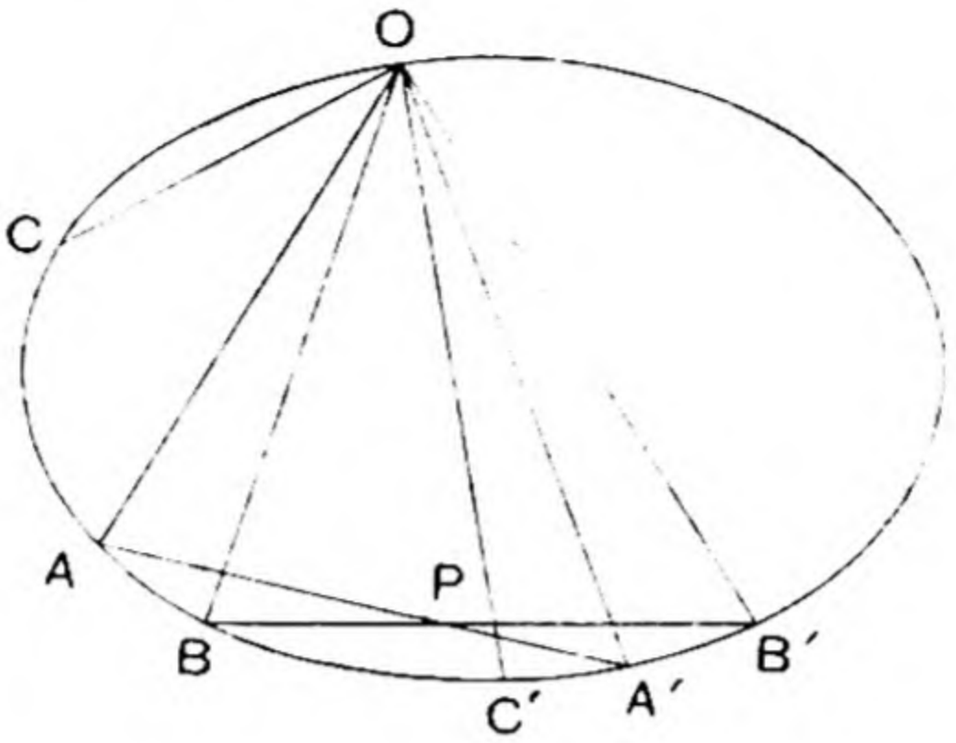
Project the conic into a circle with the projection of $P$ for its centre.

Using small letters in the projection, we see that $aoa'$, $bob'$ are right angles, being in a semicircle.

Hence they determine an orthogonal involution.

$\therefore$ $coc'$ is a right angle; that is, $cc'$ goes through $p$.

$\therefore$ $CC'$ goes through $P$.




It will be understood that the points $AA'$, $BB'$, $CC'$ when joined to any other point on the conic give an involution pencil; for this follows at once by the application of § 212.

A system of points such as these on a conic is called *an involution range on the conic.*

The point $P$ where the corresponding chords intersect is called *the pole of the involution.*

## EXERCISES

1. If $(P, P')$, $(Q, Q')$ be pairs of harmonic points on a conic (see Note on § 212), prove that the tangent at $P$ and $PP'$ are harmonic conjugates to $PQ$ and $PQ'$. Hence shew that if $PP'$ be normal at $P$, $PQ$ and $PQ'$ make equal angles with $PP'$.

2. The straight line $PP'$ cuts a conic at $P$ and $P'$ and is normal at $P$. The straight lines $PQ$ and $PQ'$ are equally inclined to $PP'$ and cut the conic again in $Q$ and $Q'$. Prove that $P'Q$ and $P'Q'$ are harmonic conjugates to $P'P$ and the tangent at $P'$.

3. Shew that if the pencil formed by joining any point on a conic to four fixed points on the same be harmonic, two sides of the quadrangle formed by the four fixed points are conjugate to each other with respect to the conic.

4. The tangent at any point $P$ of a hyperbola intersects the asymptotes in $M_1$ and $M_2$ and the tangents at the vertices in $L_1$ and $L_2$, prove that

$$PM_1^2 = PL_1 \,.\, PL_2.$$

5. Deduce from Pascal's theorem that if a conic pass through the vertices of a triangle the tangents at these points meet the opposite sides in collinear points.

[Take a hexagon $AA'BB'CC'$ in the conic so that $A'$, $B'$, $C'$ are near to $A$, $B$, $C$.]

6. Given three points of a hyperbola and the directions of both asymptotes, find the point of intersection of the curve with a given straight line drawn parallel to one of the asymptotes.

7. Through a fixed point on a conic a line is drawn cutting the conic again in $P$, and the sides of a given inscribed triangle in $A'$, $B'$, $C'$. Shew that $(PA'B'C')$ is constant.

8. $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$ are any four points on a hyperbola; $CK$ parallel to one asymptote meets $AD$ in $K$, and $DL$ parallel to the other asymptote meets $CB$ in $L$. Prove that $KL$ is parallel to $AB$.

9. The sixty Pascal lines corresponding to six points on a conic intersect three by three.

10. Any two points $D$ and $E$ are taken on a hyperbola of which the asymptotes are $CA$ and $CB$; the parallels to $CA$ and $CB$ through $D$ and $E$ respectively meet in $Q$; the tangent at $D$ meets $CB$ in $R$, and the tangent at $E$ meets $CA$ in $T$. Prove that $T$, $Q$, $R$ are collinear, lying on a line parallel to $DE$.

11. The lines $CA$ and $CB$ are tangents to a conic at $A$ and $B$, and $D$ and $E$ are two other points on the conic. The line $CD$ cuts $AB$ in $G$, $AE$ in $H$, and $BE$ in $K$. Prove that

$$CD^2 : GD^2 = CH \,.\, CK : GH \,.\, GK.$$

12. Through a fixed point $A$ on a conic two fixed straight lines $AI$, $AI'$ are drawn, $S$ and $S'$ are two fixed points and $P$ a variable point on the conic; $PS$, $PS'$ meet $AI$, $AI'$ in $Q$, $Q'$ respectively, shew that $QQ'$ passes through a fixed point.

13. If two triangles be in perspective, the six points of intersection of their non-corresponding sides lie on a conic, and the axis of perspective is one of the Pascal lines of the six points.

14. If two chords $PQ$, $PQ'$ of a conic through a fixed point $P$ are equally inclined to the tangent at $P$, the chord $QQ'$ passes through a fixed point.

15. If the lines $AB$, $BC$, $CD$, $DA$ touch a conic at $P$, $Q$, $R$, $S$ respectively, shew that conics can be inscribed in the hexagons $APQCRS$ and $BQRDSP$.

16. The tangent at $P$ to an ellipse meets the auxiliary circle in $Y$ and $Y'$. $ASS'A'$ is the major axis and $SY$, $S'Y'$ the perpendiculars from the foci. Prove that the points $A$, $Y$, $Y'$, $A'$ subtend at any point on the circle a pencil whose cross-ratio is independent of the position of $P$.

17. If $A$, $B$ be given points on a circle, and $CD$ be a given diameter, shew how to find a point $P$ on the circle such that $PA$ and $PB$ shall cut $CD$ in points equidistant from the centre.

# CHAPTER XVII

## RECIPROCATION

**220**. If we have a number of points $P$, $Q$, $R$, &c. in a plane and take the polars $p$, $q$, $r$, &c. of these points with respect to a conic $\Gamma$ in the plane, then the line joining any two of the points $P$ and $Q$ is, as we have already seen, the polar with respect to $\Gamma$ of the intersection of the corresponding lines $p$ and $q$.

It will be convenient to represent the intersection of the lines $p$ and $q$ by the symbol $(pq)$, and the line joining the points $P$ and $Q$ by $(PQ)$.

The point $P$ corresponds with the line $p$, in the sense that $P$ is the pole of $p$, and the line $(PQ)$ corresponds with the point $(pq)$ in the sense that $(PQ)$ is the polar of $(pq)$.

Thus if we have a figure $F$ consisting of an aggregate of points and lines, then, corresponding to it, we have a figure $F'$ consisting of lines and points. Two such figures $F$ and $F'$ are called in relation to one another *Reciprocal figures.* The medium of their Reciprocity is the conic $\Gamma$.

Using § 215 we see that a range of points in $F$ corresponds to a pencil of lines, homographic with the range, in $F'$.

**221.** By means of the principle of correspondence enunciated in the last paragraph we are able from a known property of a figure consisting of points and lines to infer another property of a figure consisting of lines and points.

The one property is called the *Reciprocal* of the other, and the process of passing from the one to the other is known as *Reciprocation*.

We will now give examples.

**222.** We know that if the vertices of two triangles $ABC$, $A'B'C'$ .be in perspective, the pairs of corresponding sides $(BC)$ $(B'C')$, $(CA)$ $(C'A')$, $(AB)$ $(A'B')$ intersect in collinear points $X$, $Y$, $Z$.

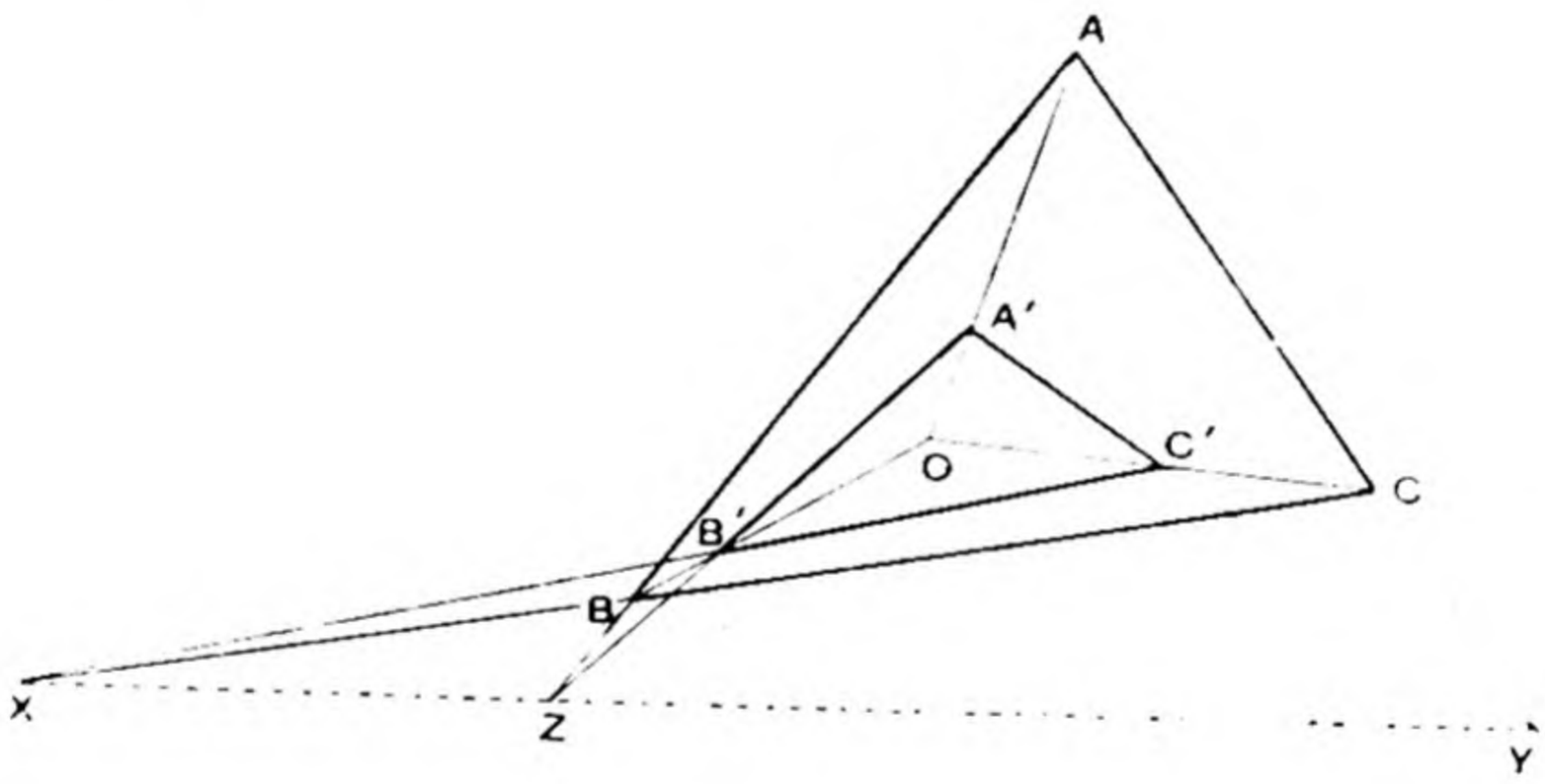



Fig. *F*.

Now if we draw the reciprocal figure, corresponding to the vertices of the triangle $ABC$, we have three lines $a$, $b$, $c$ forming a triangle whose vertices will be $(bc)$, $(ca)$, $(ab)$. And similarly for $A'B'C'$.

Corresponding to the concurrency of $(AA')$, $(BB')$, $(CC')$ in the figure $F$, we have the collinearity of $(aa')$, $(bb')$, $(cc')$ in the figure $F'$.

Corresponding to the collinearity of the intersections of $(BC)$ $(B'C')$, $(CA)$ $(C'A')$, $(AB)$ $(A'B')$ in figure $F$, we have the concurrency of the lines formed by joining the pairs of points $(bc)$ $(b'c')$, $(ca)$ $(c'a')$, $(ab)$ $(a'b')$ in the figure $F'$.

Thus the theorem of the figure $F$ reciprocates into the following:

If two triangles whose sides are $abc$, $a'b'c'$ respectively be such that the three intersections of the corresponding sides are collinear, then the lines joining corresponding vertices, viz. $(ab)$ and $(a'b')$, $(bc)$ and $(b'c')$, $(ca)$ and $(c'a')$, are concurrent.

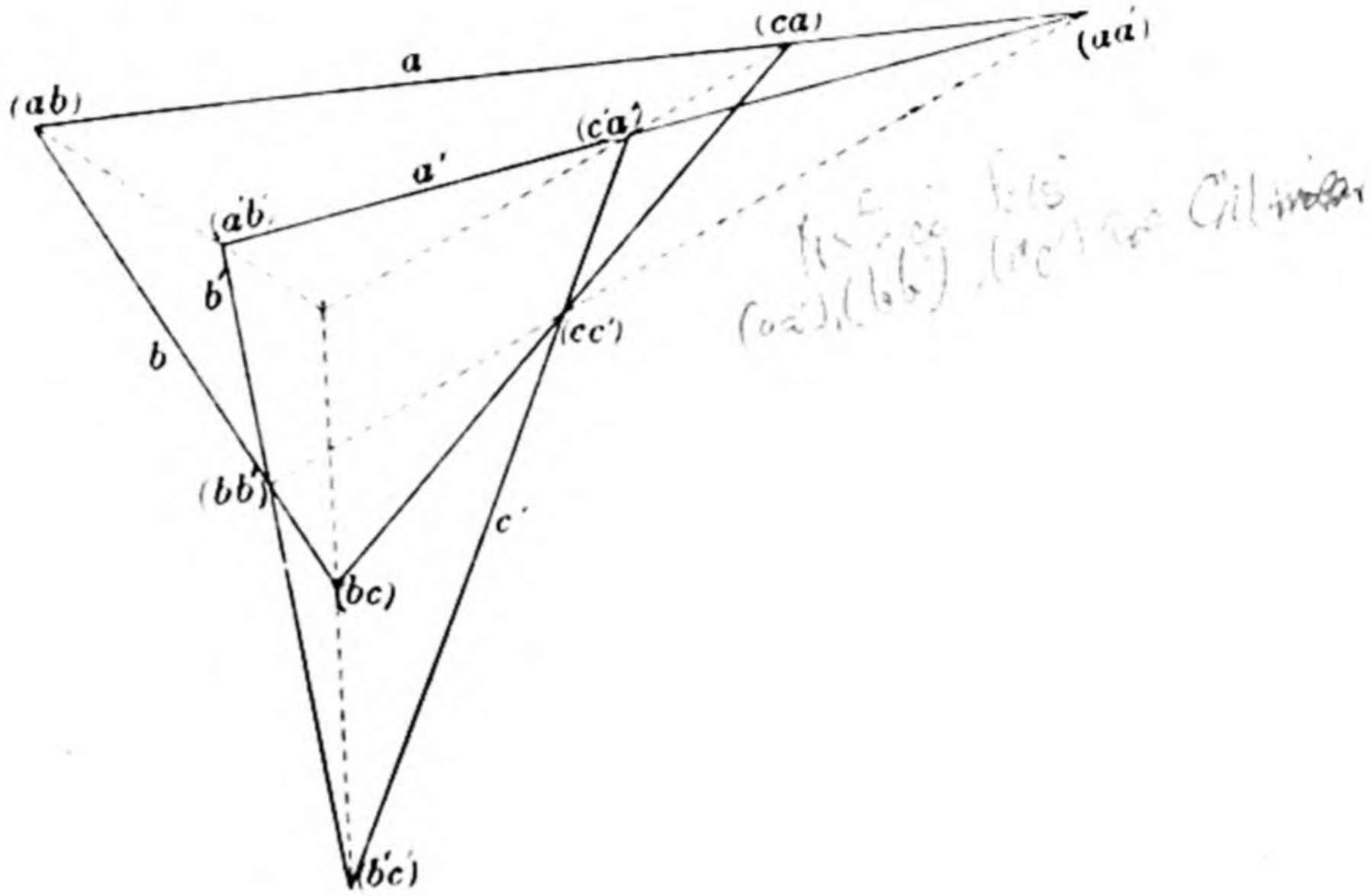



Fig. $F'$.

The two reciprocal theorems placed side by side may be stated thus:

| | |
|---|---|
| *Triangles in perspective are coaxal.* | *Coaxal triangles are in perspective.* |

The student will of course have realised that a triangle regarded as three lines does not reciprocate into another triangle regarded as three lines, but into one regarded as three points; and *vice versa*.

**223.** Let us now connect together by reciprocation the harmonic property of the quadrilateral and that of the quadrangle.

Let $a, b, c, d$ be the lines of the quadrilateral; $A, B, C, D$ the corresponding points of the quadrangle.

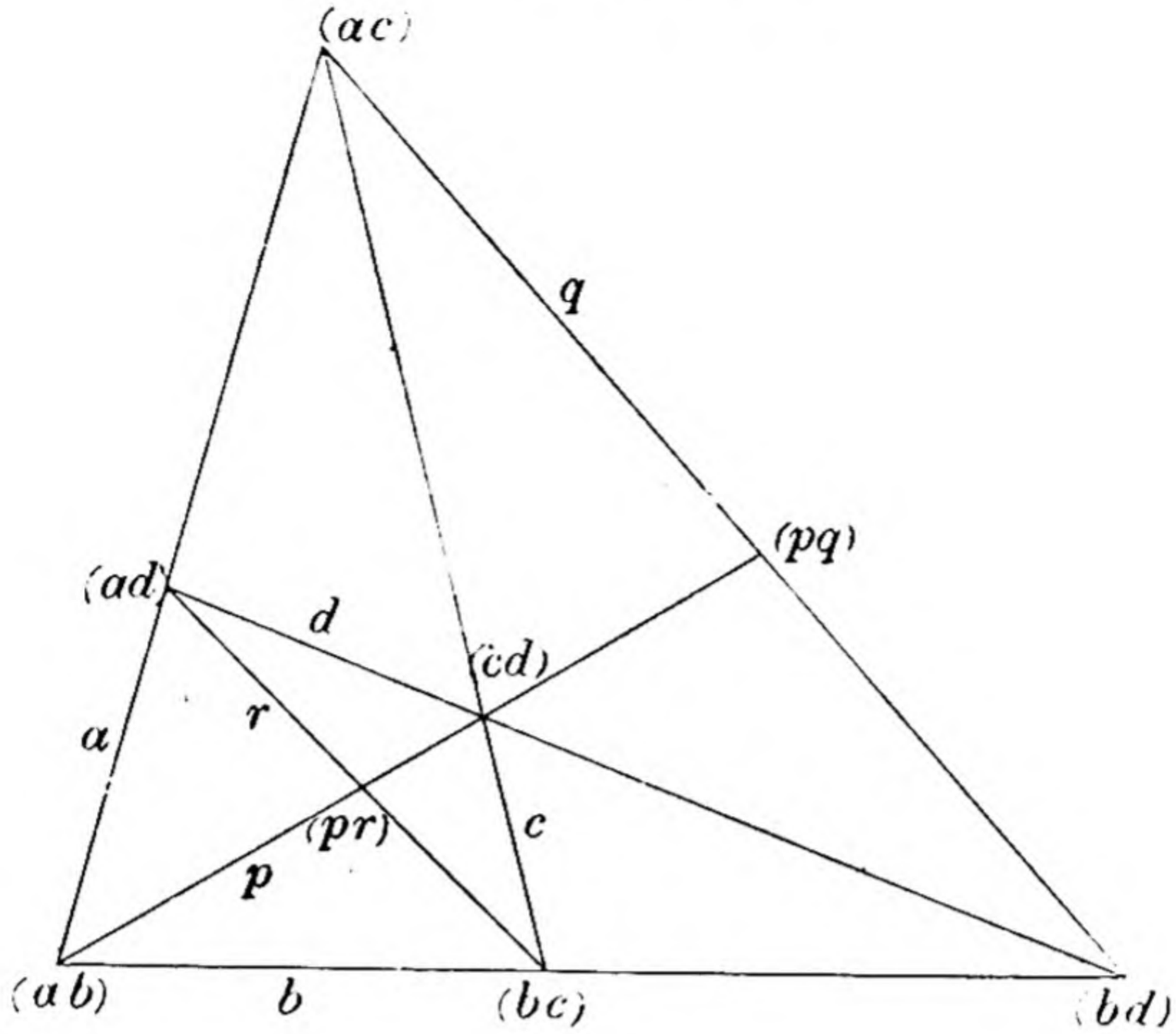



Fig. *F*.

Let the line joining $(ab)$ and $(cd)$ be $p$,
" " " $(ac)$ and $(bd)$ be $q$,
" " " $(ad)$ and $(bc)$ be $r$.

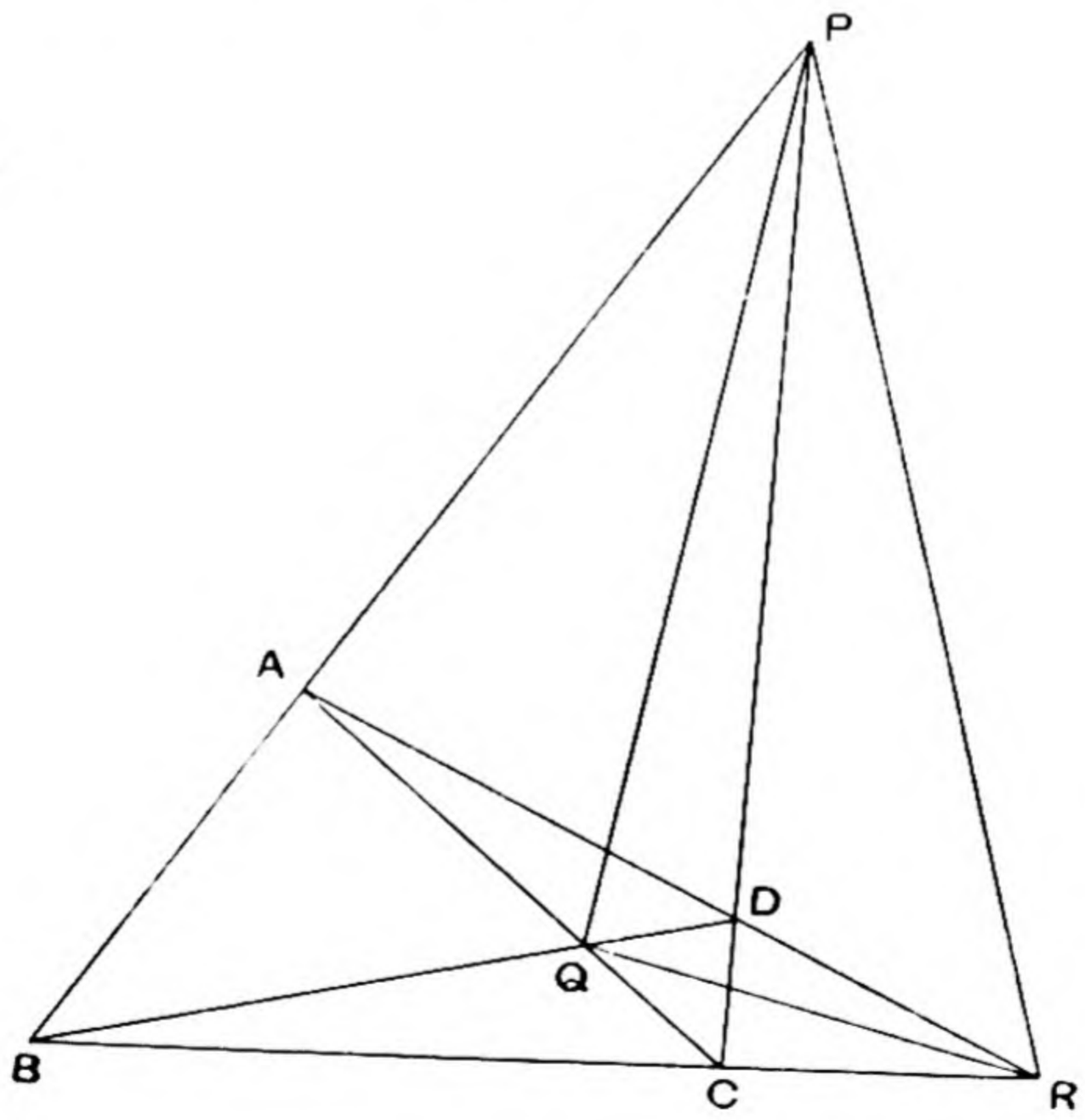



Fig. *F'*.

The harmonic property of the quadrilateral is expressed symbolically thus:

$$\{(ab)(cd),\ (pr)(pq)\} = -1,$$
$$\{(ad)(bc),\ (pr)(qr)\} = -1,$$
$$\{(ac)(bd),\ (pq)(qr)\} = -1.$$

The reciprocation gives

$$\{(AB)(CD),\ (PR)(PQ)\} = -1,$$
$$\{(AD)(BC),\ (PR)(QR)\} = -1,$$
$$\{(AC)(BD),\ (PQ)(QR)\} = -1.$$

If these be interpreted on the figure we have the harmonic property of the quadrangle, viz. that the two sides of the diagonal triangle at each vertex are harmonic conjugates with the two sides of the quadrangle which pass through that vertex.

The student sees now that the 'diagonal points' of a quadrangle are the reciprocals of the diagonal lines of the quadrilateral from which it is derived Hence the term 'diagonal points.'

224. **Prop.** *An involution range reciprocates with respect to a conic into an involution pencil.*

For let the involution range be

$$A,\ A_1;\ B,\ B_1;\ C,\ C_1 \text{ \&c.}$$

on a line $p$.

The pencil obtained by reciprocation will be $a,\ a_1;\ b,\ b_1;\ c,\ c_1$ &c. through a point $P$.

Also $$(abca_1) = (ABCA_1)$$

and $$(a_1b_1c_1a) = (A_1B_1C_1A) \text{ by § 215.}$$

But $$(ABCA_1) = (A_1B_1C_1A) \text{ by § 78.}$$

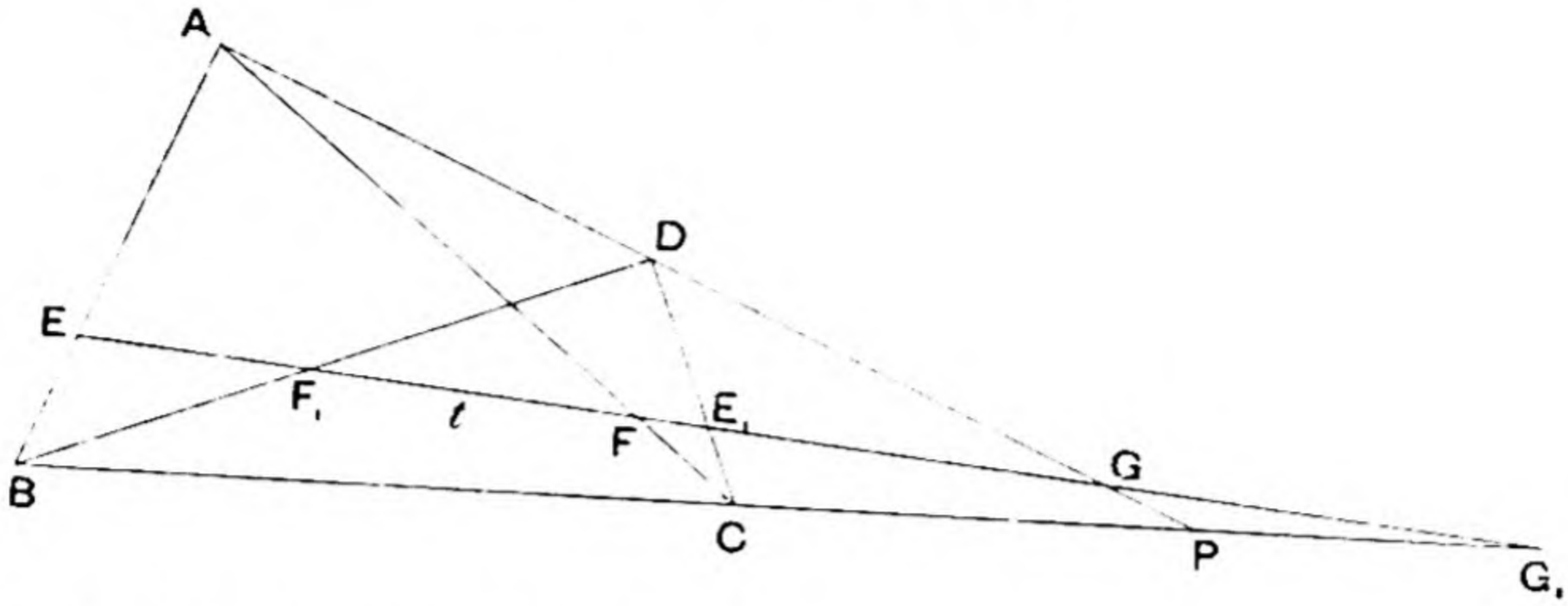
$$\therefore (abca_1) = (a_1b_1c_1a).$$

Thus the pencil is in involution.

## 225. Involution property of the quadrangle and quadrilateral.

**Prop.** *Any transversal cuts the pairs of opposite sides of a quadrangle in pairs of points which are in involution.*

Let $A\,BCD$ be the quadrangle (§ 76).

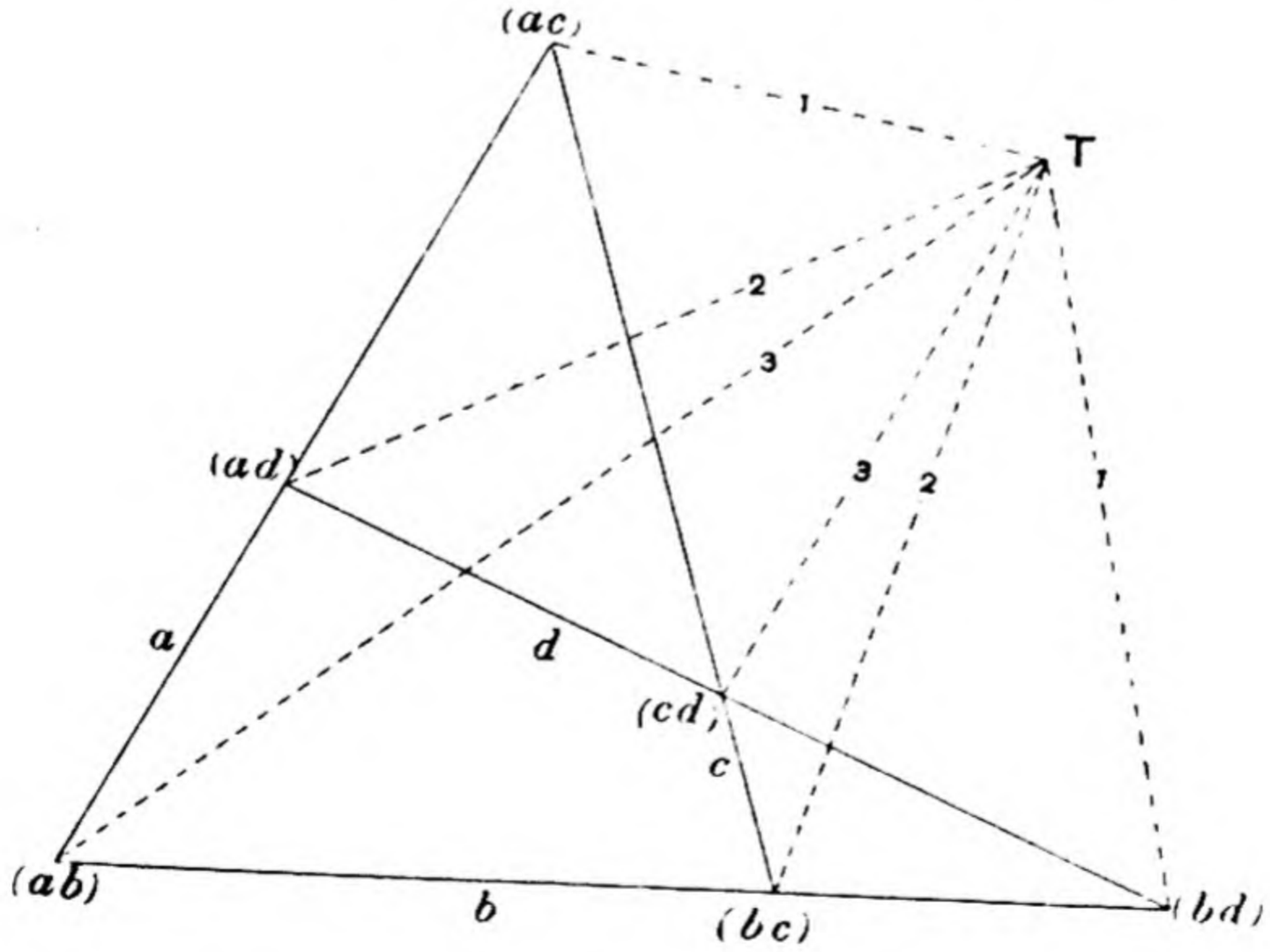



Let a transversal $t$ cut

the opposite pairs of sides $AB$, $CD$ in $E$, $E_1$,
" " " " $AC$, $BD$ in $F$, $F_1$,
" " " " $AD$, $BC$ in $G$, $G_1$.

Let $AD$ and $BC$ meet in $P$.

Then
$$\begin{aligned}(GEFG_1) &= A\,(GEFG_1)\\ &= (PBCG_1)\\ &= D\,(PBCG_1)\\ &= (GF_1E_1G_1)\\ &= (G_1E_1F_1G) \text{ by interchanging the letters in pairs.}\end{aligned}$$




Hence $E$, $E_1$; $F$, $F_1$; $G$, $G_1$ belong to the same involution.

We have only to reciprocate the above theorem to obtain this other:

*The lines joining any point to the pairs of opposite vertices of a complete quadrilateral form a pencil in involution.*

Thus in our figure $T$, which corresponds to the transversal $t$, joined to the opposite pairs of vertices $(ac)$, $(bd)$; $(ad)$, $(bc)$; $(ab)$, $(cd)$ gives an involution pencil.

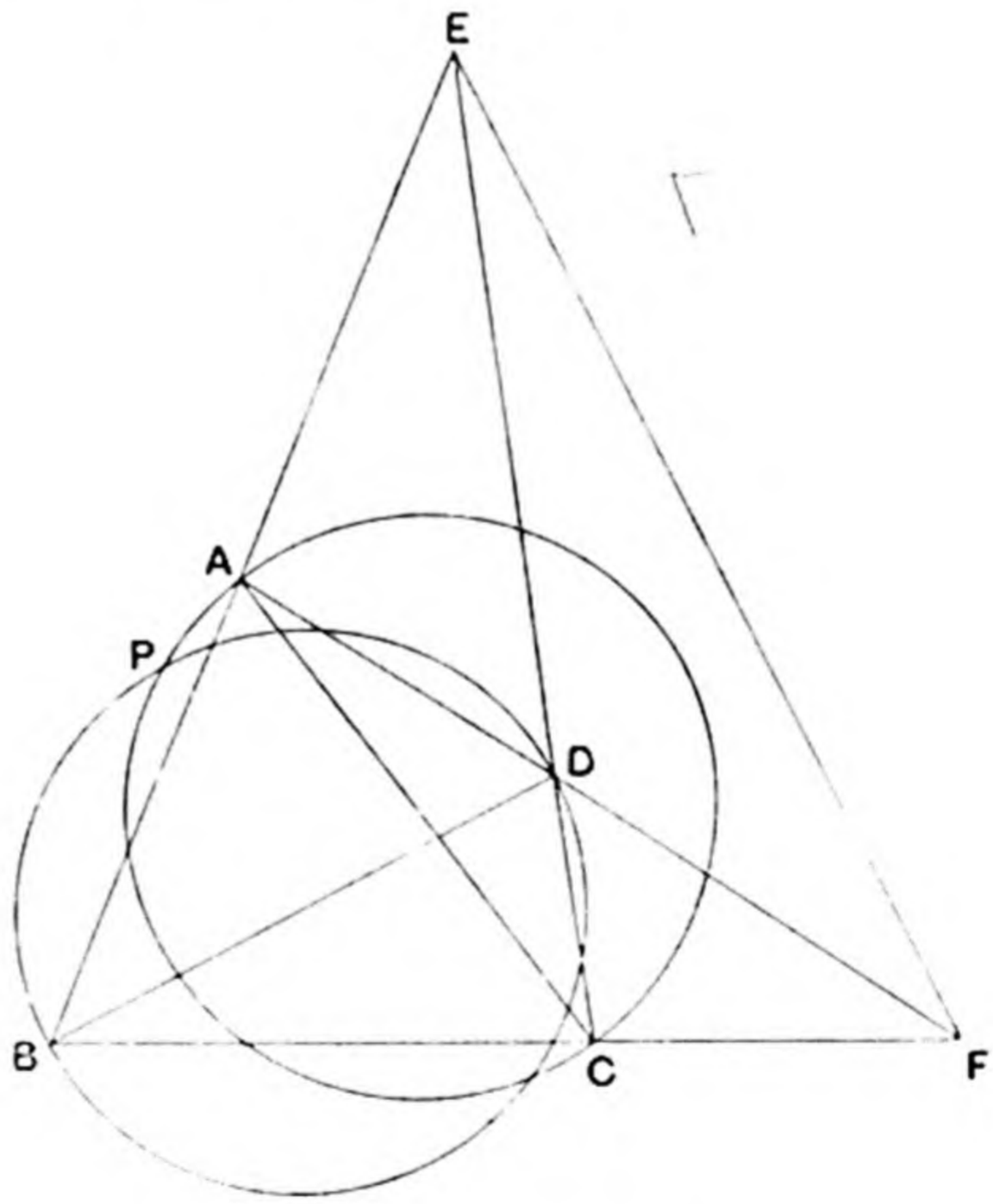
**226. Prop.** *The circles described on the three diagonals of a complete quadrilateral are coaxal.*

Let $AB$, $BC$, $CD$, $DA$ be the four sides of the quadrilateral.

The diagonals are $AC$, $BD$, $EF$.

Let $P$ be a point of intersection of the circles on $AC$ and $BD$ as diameters.

$\therefore$ $APC$ and $BPD$ are right angles.




But $PA$, $PC$; $PB$, $PD$; $PE$, $PF$ are in involution (§ 225).

$\therefore$ by § 86 $\angle EPF$ is a right angle.

$\therefore$ the circle on $EF$ as diameter goes through $P$.

Similarly the circle on $EF$ goes through the other point of intersection of the circles on $BD$ and $AC$.

That is, the three circles are coaxal.

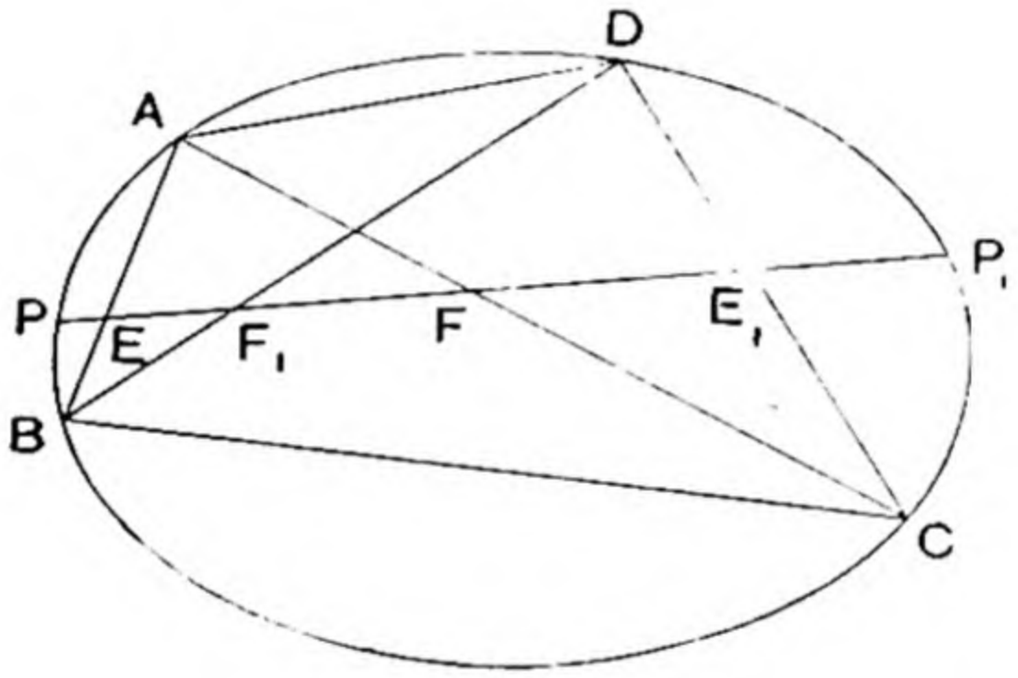
Cor. The middle points of the three diagonals of a quadrilateral are collinear.

This important and well-known property follows at once, since these middle points are the centres of three coaxal circles.

The line containing these middle points is sometimes called the *diameter of the quadrilateral.*

## 227. Desargues' theorem.

*Conics through four given points are cut by any transversal in pairs of points belonging to the same involution.*




Let a transversal $t$ cut a conic through the four points $A, B, C, D$ in $P$ and $P_1$.

Let the same transversal cut the two pairs of opposite sides $AB, CD$; $AC, BD$ of the quadrangle in $E, E_1$; $F, F_1$.

We now have

$$\begin{aligned}(PEFP_1) &= A\,(PEFP_1)\\ &= A\,(PBCP_1)\\ &= D\,(PBCP_1) \text{ by } \S 212\\ &= (PF_1E_1P_1)\\ &= (P_1E_1F_1P) \text{ by interchanging the letters in pairs.}\end{aligned}$$

$\therefore P, P_1$ belong to the involution determined by $E, E_1$; $F, F_1$.

Thus all the conics through $ABCD$ will cut the transversal $t$ in pairs of points belonging to the same involution.

Note that the proposition of § 225 is only a special case of Desargues' theorem, if the two lines $AD$, $BC$ be regarded as one of the conics through the four points.

**228.** As we shall presently see, the reciprocal of Desargues' theorem is the following:

*If conics touch four given lines the pairs of tangents to them from any point in their plane belong to the same involution pencil, namely that determined by the lines joining the point to the pairs of opposite vertices of the quadrilateral formed by the four lines.*

## Reciprocation applied to conics.

**229.** We are now going on to explain how the principle of Reciprocation is applied to conics.

Suppose the point $P$ describes a curve $S$ in the plane of the conic $\Gamma$, the line $p$, which is the polar of $P$ with regard to $\Gamma$, will envelope some curve which we will denote by $S'$.

Tangents to $S'$ then correspond to points on $S$; but we must observe further that tangents to $S$ correspond to points on $S'$.

For let $P$ and $P'$ be two near points on $S$, and let $p$ and $p'$ be the corresponding lines.

Then the point $(pp')$ corresponds to the line $(PP')$.

Now as $P'$ moves up to $P$, $(PP')$ becomes the tangent to $S$ at $P$ and at the same time $(pp')$ becomes the point of contact of $p$ with its envelope.

Hence to tangents of $S$ correspond points on $S'$.

*Each of the curves $S$ and $S'$ is called the polar reciprocal of the other with respect to the conic $\Gamma$.*

**230. Prop.** *If $S$ be a conic then $S'$ is another conic.*

Let $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$ be four fixed points on $S$, and $P$ any other point on $S$.

Then $P(ABCD)$ is constant.

But $P(ABCD) = \{(pa)(pb)(pc)(pd)\}$ by § 215.

$\therefore$ $\{(pa)(pb)(pc)(pd)\}$ is constant.

$\therefore$ the envelope of $p$ is a conic touching the lines $a, b, c, d$ (§ 214).

Hence $S'$ is a conic.

This important proposition might have been proved as follows.

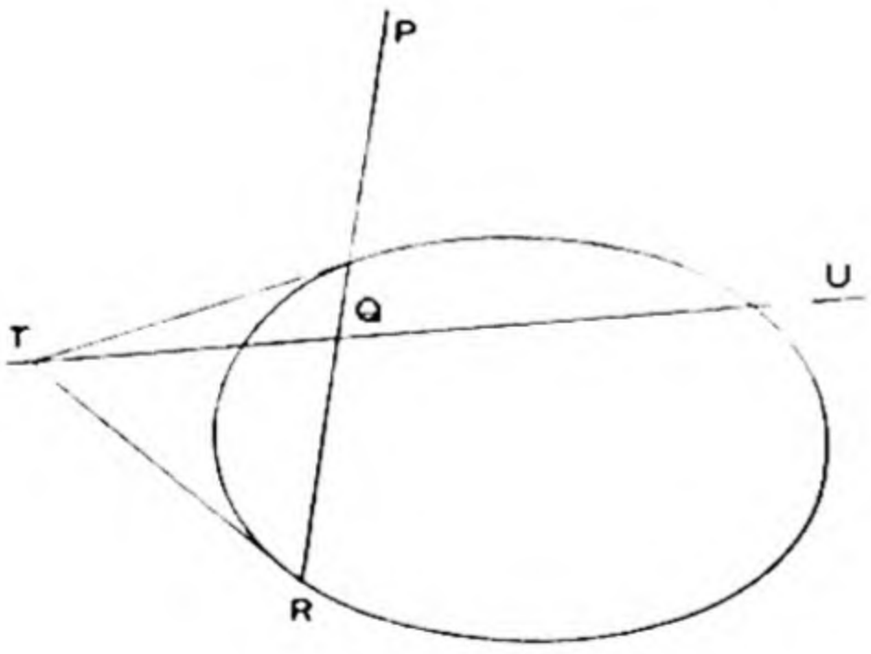
$S$, being a conic, is a curve of the second *order*, that is, straight lines in its plane cut it in two and only two points, real or imaginary.

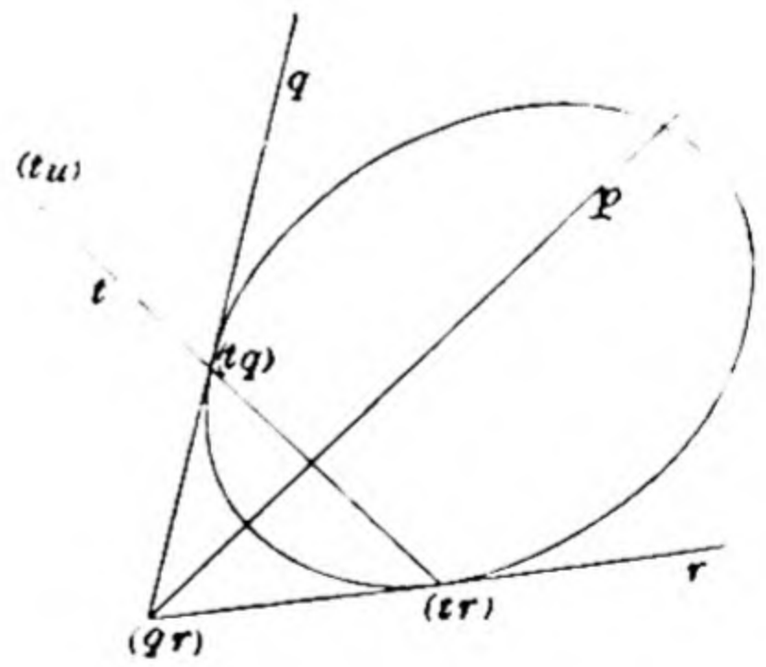
Therefore $S'$ must be a curve of the second *class*, that is a curve such that from each point in its plane two and only two tangents can be drawn to it; that is, $S'$ is a conic.

**231. Prop.** *If $S$ and $S'$ be two conics reciprocal to each other with respect to a conic $\Gamma$, then pole and polar of $S$ correspond to polar and pole of $S'$ and vice versa.*

Let $P$ and $TU$ be pole and polar of $S$.

[It is most important that the student should understand that $TU$ is the polar of $P$ with respect to $S$, not to $\Gamma$. The polar of $P$ with respect to $\Gamma$ is the line we denote by $p$.]




Let $QR$ be any chord of $S$ which passes through $P$; then the tangents at $Q$ and $R$ meet in the line $TU$, at $T$ say.

Therefore in the reciprocal figure $p$ and $(tu)$ are so related that if any point $(qr)$ be taken on $p$, the chord of contact $t$ of tangents from it to $S'$ passes through $(tu)$.

$\therefore$ $p$ and $(tu)$ are polar and pole with respect to $S'$.

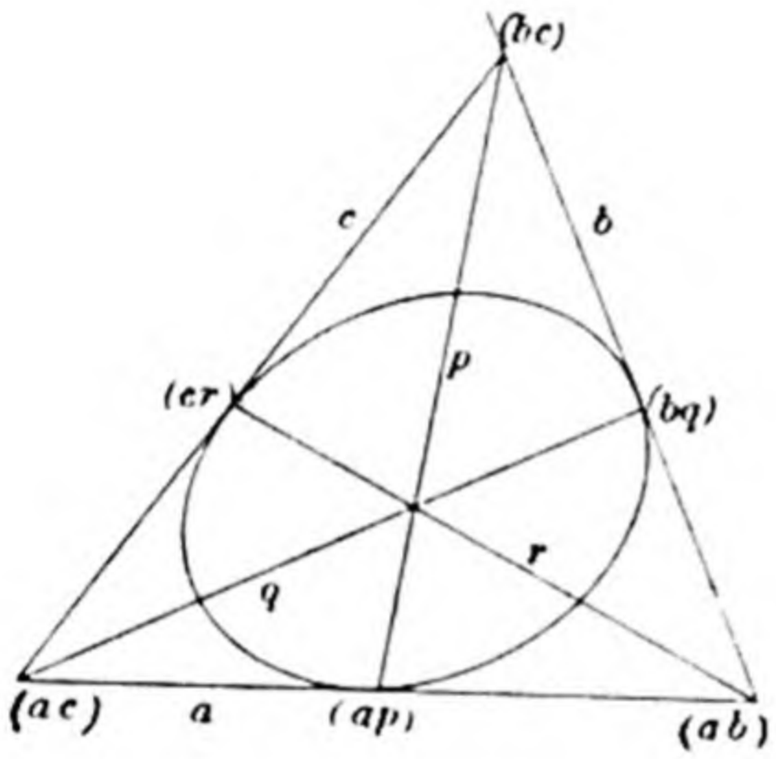
Cor. 1. Conjugate points of $S$ reciprocate into conjugate lines of $S'$ and *vice versa*.

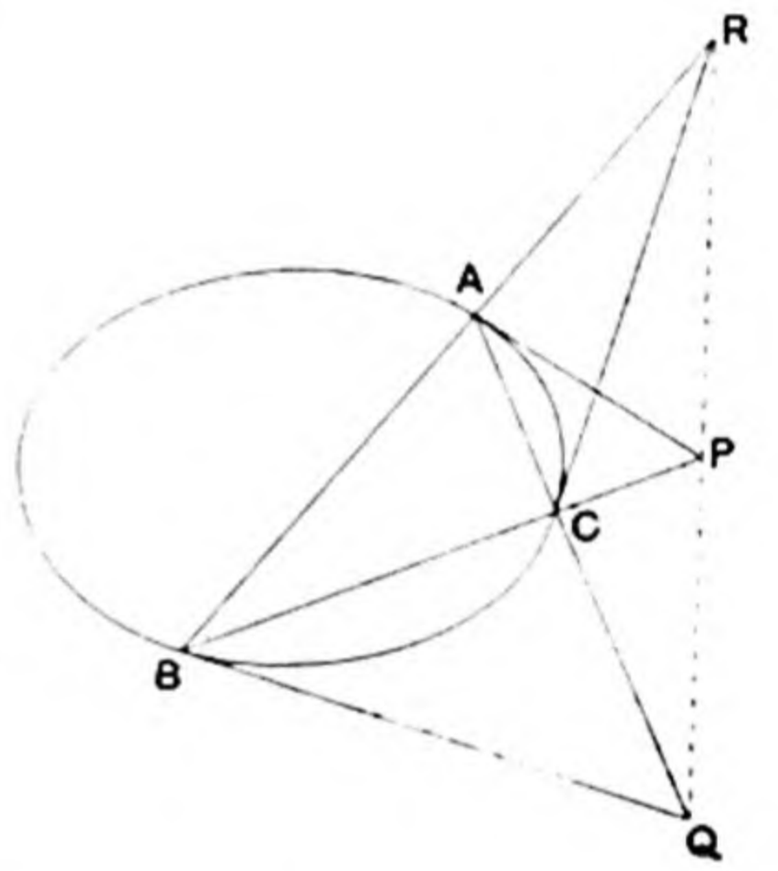
Cor. 2. A self-conjugate triangle of $S$ will reciprocate into a self-conjugate triangle of $S'$.

**232.** We will now set forth some reciprocal theorems in parallel columns.

1. If a conic be inscribed in a triangle (i.e. a three-side figure), the joining lines of the vertices of the triangle and the points of contact of the conic with the opposite sides are concurrent.

If a conic be circumscribed to a triangle (a three-point figure), the intersections of the sides of the triangle with the tangents at the opposite vertices are collinear.




2. The six points of intersection with the sides of a triangle of the lines joining the opposite vertices to two fixed points lie on a conic.

The six lines joining the vertices of a triangle to the points of intersection of the opposite sides and two fixed lines envelope a conic.

3. The three points of intersection of the opposite sides of each of the six-side figures formed by joining six points on a conic are collinear.—*Pascal's theorem.*

The three lines joining the opposite vertices of each of the six-point figures formed by the intersections of lines touching a conic are concurrent.—*Brianchon's theorem.*

4. If a conic circumscribe a quadrangle, the triangle formed by its diagonal points is self-conjugate for the conic.

If a conic be inscribed in a quadrilateral, the triangle formed by its diagonals is self-conjugate for the conic.

**233. Prop.** *The conic $S'$ is an ellipse, parabola or hyperbola, according as the centre of $\Gamma$ is within, on, or without $S$.*

For the centre of $\Gamma$ reciprocates into the line at infinity, and lines through the centre of $\Gamma$ into points on the line at infinity.

Hence tangents to $S$ from the centre of $\Gamma$ will reciprocate into points at infinity on $S'$, and the points of contact of these tangents to $S$ will reciprocate into the asymptotes of $S'$.

Hence if the centre of $\Gamma$ be outside $S$, $S'$ has two real asymptotes and therefore is a hyperbola.

If the centre of $\Gamma$ be on $S$, $S'$ has one asymptote, viz. the line at infinity, that is, $S'$ is a parabola.

If the centre of $\Gamma$ be within $S$, $S'$ has no real asymptote and is therefore an ellipse.

**234. Case where $\Gamma$ is a circle.**

If the auxiliary or base conic $\Gamma$ be a circle (in which case we will denote it by $C$ and its centre by $O$) a further relation exists between the two figures $F$ and $F'$ which does not otherwise obtain.

The polar of a point $P$ with respect to $C$ being perpendicular to $OP$, we see that all the lines of the figure $F$ or $F'$ are perpendicular to the lines joining $O$ to the corresponding points of the figure $F'$ or $F$.

And thus the angle between any two lines in the one figure is equal to the angle subtended at $O$ by the line joining the corresponding points in the other.

In particular it may be noticed that if the tangents from $O$ to $S$ are at right angles, then $S'$ is a rectangular hyperbola.

For if $OP$ and $OQ$ are the tangents to $S$, the asymptotes of $S'$ are the polars of $P$ and $Q$ with respect to $C$, and these are at right angles since $POQ$ is a right angle.

If then a parabola be reciprocated with respect to a circle whose centre is on the directrix, or a central conic be reciprocated with respect to a circle with its centre on the director circle, a rectangular hyperbola is always obtained.

Further let it be noticed that a triangle whose orthocentre

is at $O$ will reciprocate into another triangle also having its orthocentre at $O$. This the student can easily verify for himself.

**235.** It can now be seen that the two following propositions are connected by reciprocation:

1. *The orthocentre of a triangle circumscribing a parabola lies on the directrix.*

2. *The orthocentre of a triangle inscribed in a rectangular hyperbola lies on the curve.*

These two propositions have been proved independently (§§ 95, 130).

Let us now see how the second can be derived from the first by reciprocation.

Let the truth of (1) be assumed.

Reciprocate with respect to a circle $C$ having its centre $O$ at the orthocentre of the triangle.

Now the parabola touches the line at infinity, therefore the pole of the line at infinity with respect to $C$, viz. $O$, lies on the reciprocal curve.

And the reciprocal curve is a rectangular hyperbola because $O$ is on the directrix of the parabola.

Further $O$ is also the orthocentre of the reciprocal of the triangle circumscribing the parabola.

Thus we see that if a rectangular hyperbola be circumscribed to a triangle, the orthocentre lies on the curve.

It is also clear that *no conics but rectangular hyperbolas can pass through the vertices of a triangle and its orthocentre.*

**236. Prop.** *If $S$ be a circle and we reciprocate with respect to a circle $C$ whose centre is $O$, $S'$ will be a conic having $O$ for a focus.*

Let $A$ be the centre of $S$.

Let $p$ be any tangent to $S$, $Q$ its point of contact.

Let $P$ be the pole of $p$, and $a$ the polar of $A$ with respect to $C$.

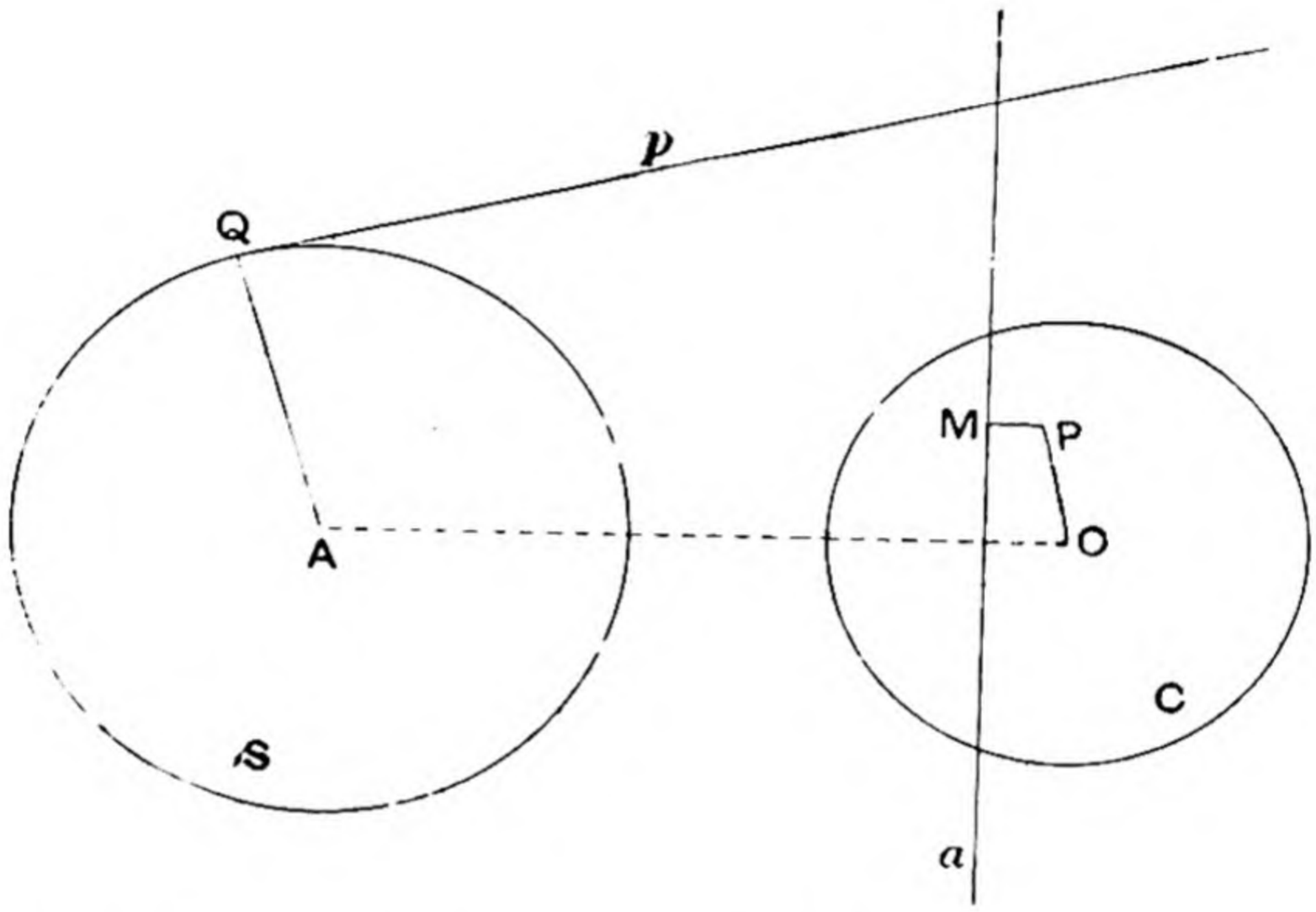
Draw $PM$ perpendicular to $a$.

Then since $AQ$ is perpendicular to $p$, we have by Salmon's theorem (§ 17)

$$\frac{OP}{OA} = \frac{PM}{AQ}.$$

$$\therefore \frac{OP}{PM} = \text{the constant } \frac{OA}{AQ}.$$

Thus the locus of $P$ which is a point on the reciprocal curve is a conic whose focus is $O$, and corresponding directrix the polar of the centre of $S$.




Since the eccentricity of $S'$ is $\frac{OA}{AQ}$ we see that $S'$ is an ellipse, parabola, or hyperbola according as $O$ is within, on, or without $S$. This is in agreement with § 233.

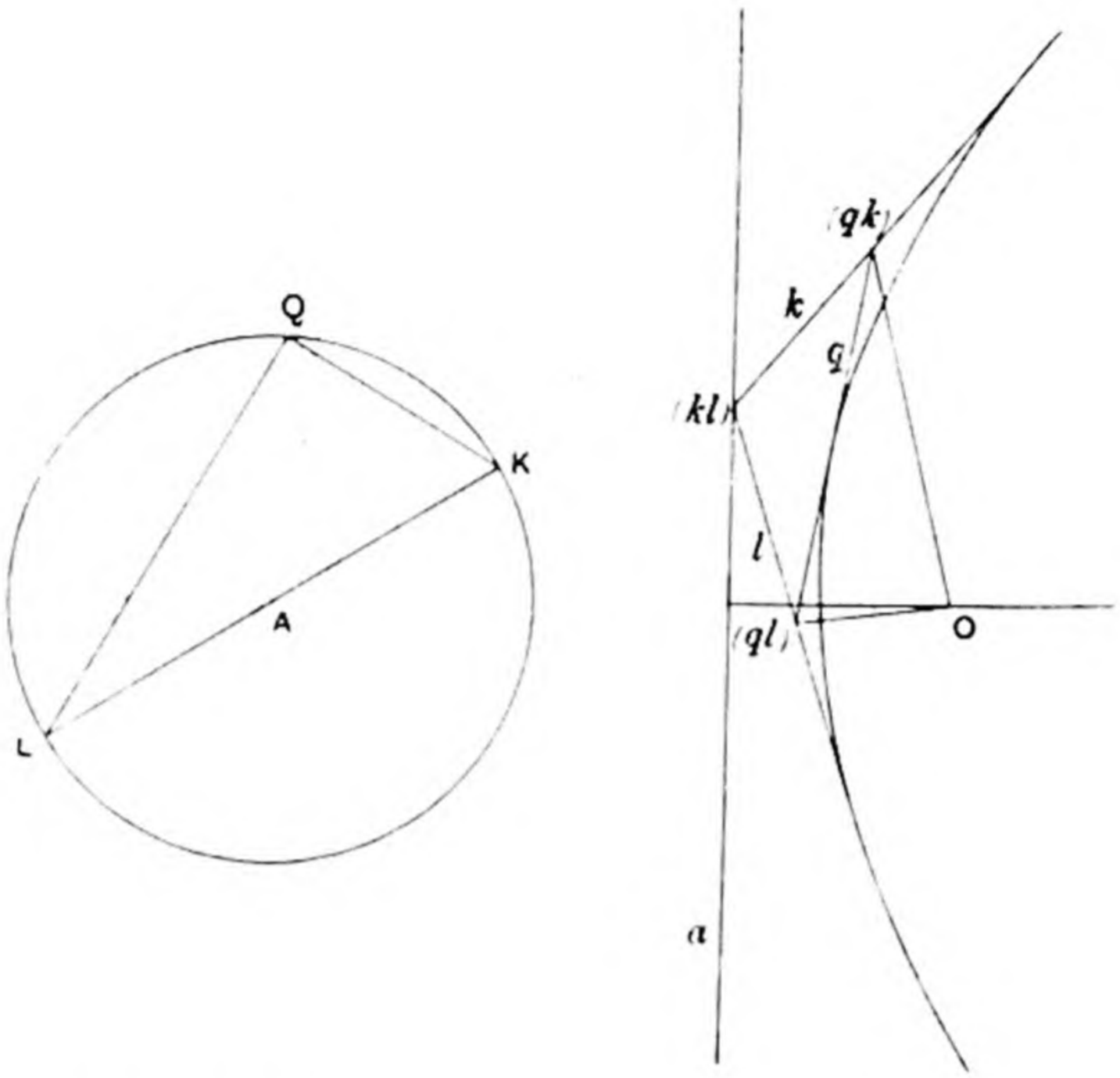
Cor. The polar reciprocal of a conic with respect to a circle having its centre at a focus of the conic is a circle, whose centre is the reciprocal of the corresponding directrix.

**237.** Let us now reciprocate with respect to a circle the theorem that the angle in a semicircle is a right angle.

Let $A$ be the centre of $S$, $KL$ any diameter, $Q$ any point on the circumference.

In the reciprocal figure we have corresponding to $A$ the directrix $a$, and a point $(kl)$ on it corresponds to $(KL)$.

$k$ and $l$ are tangents from $(kl)$ to $S'$ which correspond to $K$ and $L$, and $q$ is the tangent to $S'$ corresponding to $Q$.




Now $(QK)$ and $(QL)$ are at right angles.

Therefore the line joining $(qk)$ and $(ql)$ subtends a right angle at $O$ the focus of $S'$.

Hence the reciprocal theorem is that *the intercept on any tangent to a conic between two tangents which intersect in the directrix subtends a right angle at the focus.*

**238. Prop.** *A system of non-intersecting coaxal circles can be reciprocated into confocal conics.*

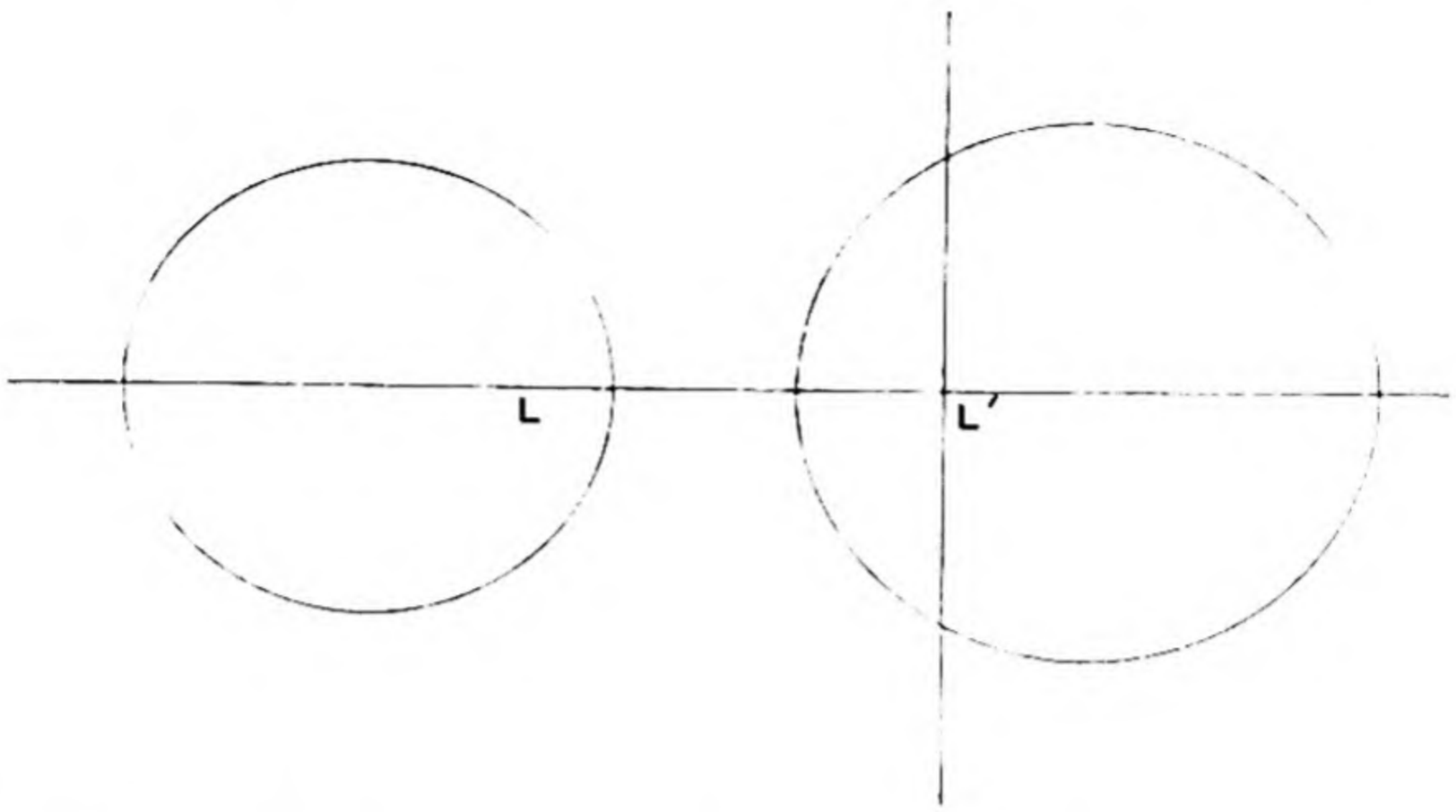
Let $L$ and $L'$ be the limiting points of the system of circles.

Reciprocate with respect to a circle $C$ whose centre is at $L$.

Then all the circles will reciprocate into conics having $L$ for one focus.

Moreover the centre of the reciprocal conic of any one of the circles is the reciprocal of the polar of $L$ with respect to that circle.

But the polar of $L$ for all the circles is the same, viz. the line through $L'$ perpendicular to the line of centres (§ 22).




Therefore all the reciprocal conics have a common centre as well as a common focus.

Therefore they all have a second common focus, that is, they are confocal.

**239.** We know that if $t$ be a common tangent to two circles of the coaxal system touching them at $P$ and $Q$, $PQ$ subtends a right angle at $L$.

Now reciprocate this with regard to a circle with its centre $L$. The two circles of the system reciprocate into confocal conics, the common tangent $t$ reciprocates into a common point of the confocals, and the points $P$ and $Q$ into the tangents to the confocals at the common point.

Hence confocal conics cut at right angles.

This fact is of course known and easily proved otherwise. We are here merely illustrating the principles of reciprocation.

**240.** Again it is known (see Ex. 40 of Chap. XIII) that if $S_1$ and $S_2$ be two circles, $L$ one of the limiting points, and $P$ and $Q$ points on $S_1$ and $S_2$ respectively such that $PLQ$ is a right angle, the envelope of $PQ$ is a conic having a focus at $L$.

Now reciprocate this property with respect to a circle having its centre at $L$. $S_1$ and $S_2$ reciprocate into confocals with

$L$ as one focus: the points $P$ and $Q$ reciprocate into tangents to $S_1'$ and $S_2'$, viz. $p$ and $q$, which will be at right angles; and the line $(PQ)$ reciprocates into the point $(pq)$.

As the envelope of $(PQ)$ is a conic with a focus at $L$, it follows that the locus of $(pq)$ is a circle.

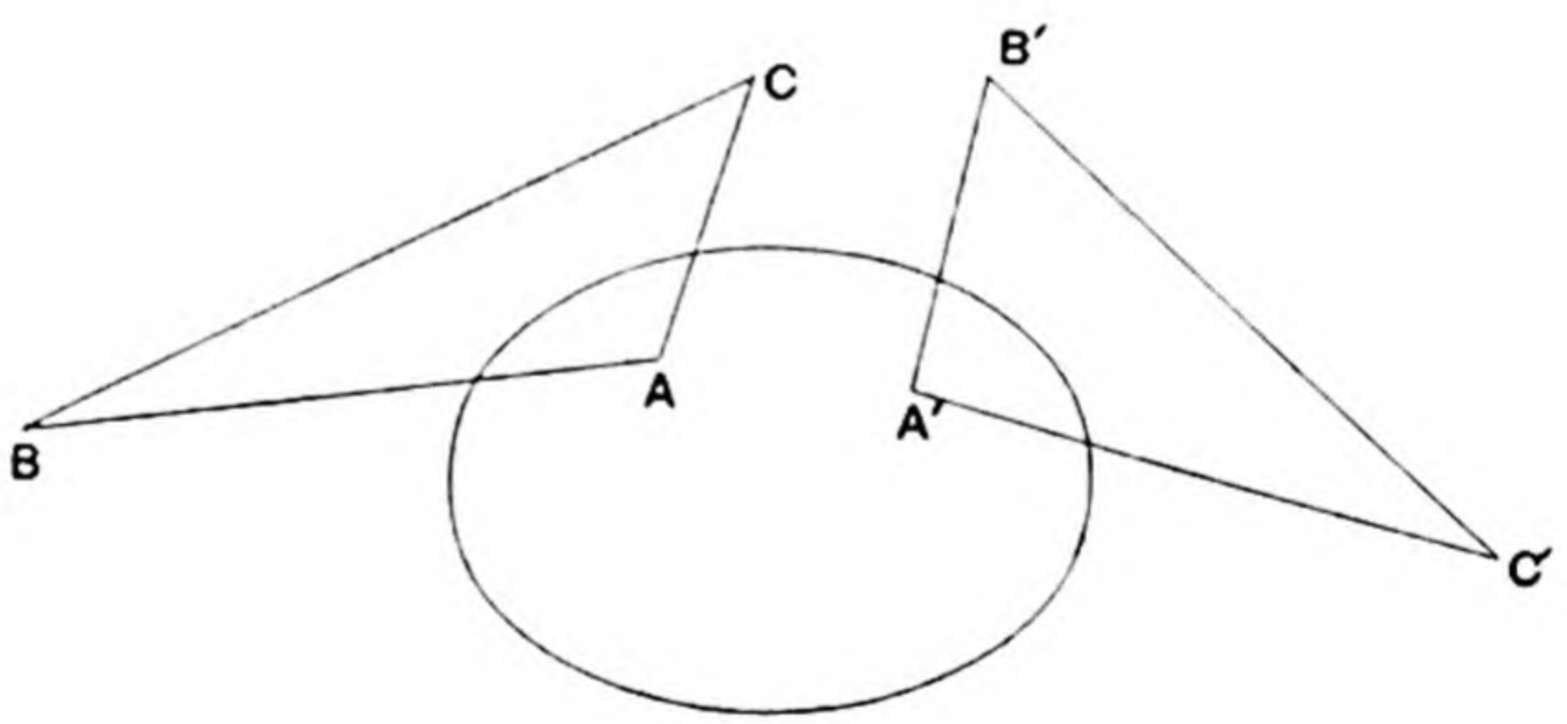
Hence we have the theorem:

*If two tangents from a point $T$, one to each of two confocals, be at right angles, the locus of $T$ is a circle.*

This also is a well-known property of confocals.

**241.** We will conclude this chapter by proving two theorems, the one having reference to two triangles which are self-conjugate for a conic, the other to two triangles reciprocal for a conic.

**Prop.** *If two triangles be self-conjugate to the same conic their six vertices lie on a conic and their six sides touch a conic.*




Let $ABC$, $A'B'C'$ be the two triangles self-conjugate with respect to a conic $S$.

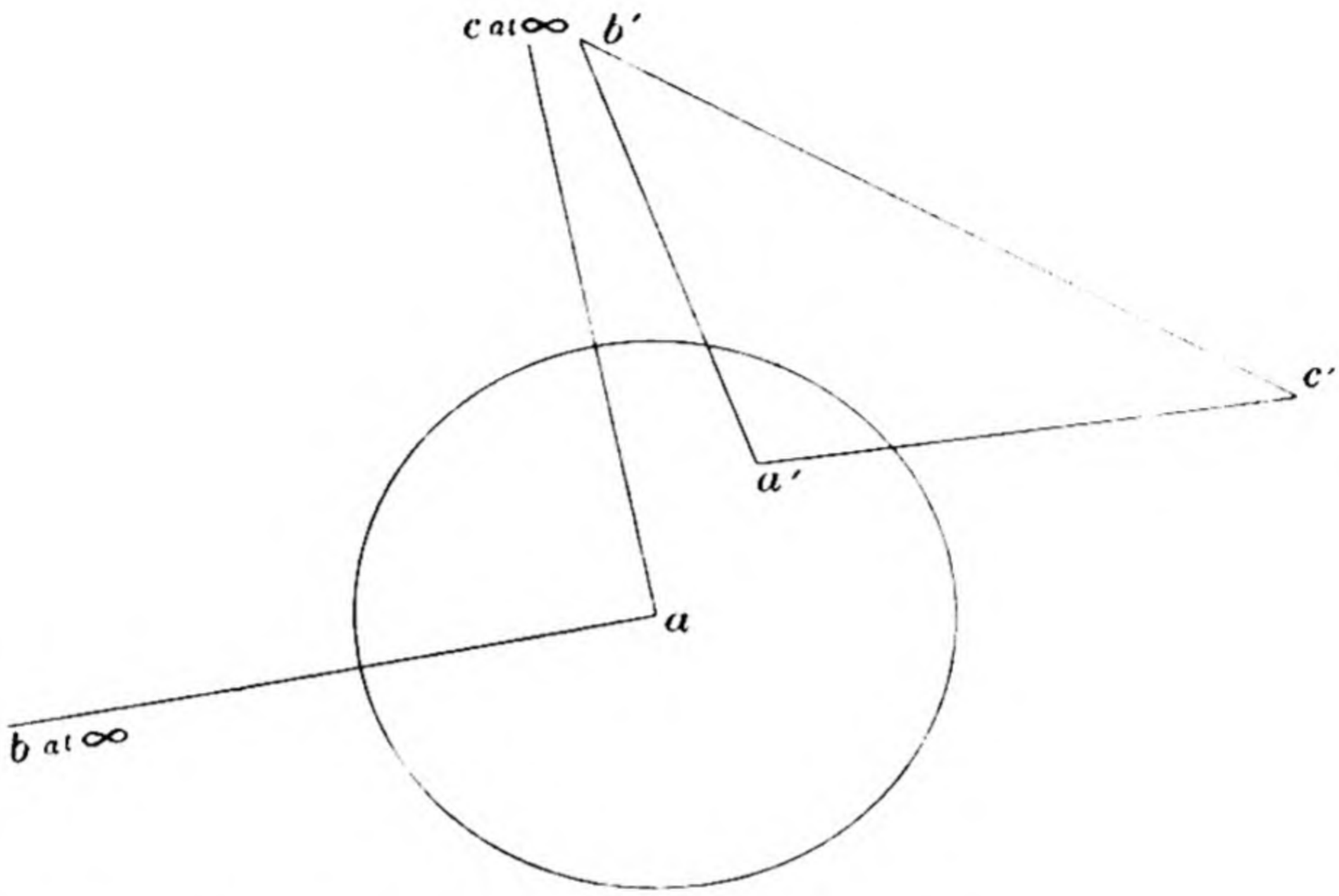
Project $S$ into a circle with $A$ projected into the centre; then (using small letters for the projections) $ab$, $ac$ are conjugate diameters and are therefore at right angles, and $b$ and $c$ lie on the line at infinity.

Further $a'b'c'$ is a triangle self-conjugate for the circle.

$\therefore$ $a$ the centre of the circle is the orthocentre of this triangle.

Let a conic be placed through the five points $a'$, $b'$, $c'$, $a$ and $b$.

This must be a rectangular hyperbola, since as we have seen no conics but rectangular hyperbolas can pass through the vertices of a triangle and its orthocentre.




$\therefore$ $c$ also lies on the conic through the five points named above, since the line joining the two points at infinity on a rectangular hyperbola must subtend a right angle at any point.

Hence the six points $a$, $b$, $c$, $a'$, $b'$, $c'$ all lie on a conic.

$\therefore$ the six points $A$, $B$, $C$, $A'$, $B'$, $C'$ also lie on a conic.

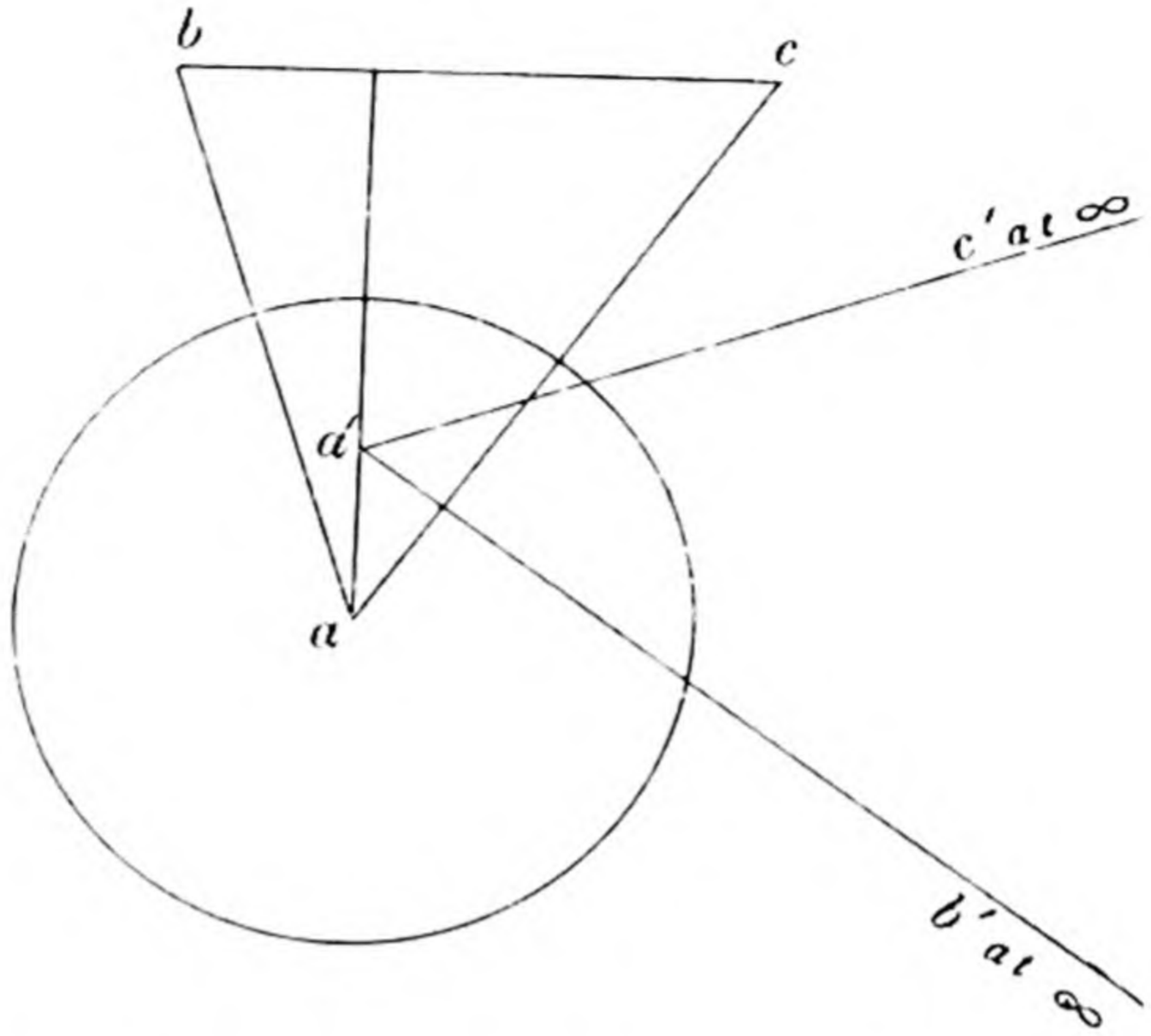
The second part of the proposition follows at once by reciprocating this which we have just proved.

**242. Prop.** *If two triangles are reciprocal for a conic, they are in perspective.*

Let $ABC$, $A'B'C'$ be two triangles which are reciprocal for the conic $S$; that is to say, $A$ is the pole of $B'C'$, $B$ the pole of $C'A'$, $C$ the pole of $A'B'$; and consequently also $A'$ is the pole of $BC$, $B'$ of $CA$, and $C'$ of $AB$.

Project $S$ into a circle with the projection of $A$ for its centre.
$\therefore$ $B'$ and $C'$ are projected to infinity.

Using small letters for the projection, we see that, since $a'$ is the pole of $bc$, $aa'$ is perpendicular to $bc$.




Also since $b'$ is the pole of $ac$, $ab'$ is perpendicular to $ac$;
$\therefore$ $bb'$ which is parallel to $ab'$ is perpendicular to $ac$.
Similarly $cc'$ is perpendicular to $ab$.
$\therefore$ $aa'$, $bb'$, $cc'$ meet in the orthocentre of the triangle $abc$.
$\therefore$ $AA'$, $BB'$, $CC'$ are concurrent.

## EXERCISES

1. If the conics $S$ and $S'$ be reciprocal polars with respect to the conic $\Gamma$, the centre of $S'$ corresponds to the polar of the centre of $\Gamma$ with respect to $S$.

2. Parallel lines reciprocate into points collinear with the centre of the base conic $\Gamma$.

3. Shew that a quadrangle can be reciprocated into a parallelogram.

4. Reciprocate with respect to any conic the theorem : The locus of the poles of a given line with respect to conics passing through four fixed points is a conic.

Reciprocate with respect to a circle the theorems contained in Exx. 5—12 inclusive.

5. The perpendiculars from the vertices of a triangle on the opposite sides are concurrent.

6. The tangent to a circle is perpendicular to the radius through the point of contact.

7. Angles in the same segment of a circle are equal.

8. The opposite angles of a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle are together equal to two right angles.

9. The angle between the tangent at any point of a circle and a chord through that point is equal to the angle in the alternate segment of the circle.

10. The polar of a point with respect to a circle is perpendicular to the line joining the point to the centre of the circle.

11. The locus of the intersection of tangents to a circle which cut at a given angle is a concentric circle.

12. Chords of a circle which subtend a constant angle at the centre envelope a concentric circle.

13. Two conics having double contact will reciprocate into conics having double contact.

14. A circle $S$ is reciprocated by means of a circle $C$ into a conic $S'$. Prove that the radius of $C$ is the geometric mean between the radius of $S$ and the semi-latus rectum of $S'$.

15. Prove that with a given point as focus four conics can be drawn circumscribing a given triangle, and that the sum of the latera recta of three of them will equal the latus rectum of the fourth.

16. Conics have a focus and a pair of tangents common ; prove that the corresponding directrices will pass through a fixed point, and all the centres lie on the same straight line.

17. Prove, by reciprocating with respect to a circle with its centre at $S$, the theorem : If a triangle $ABC$ circumscribe a parabola

whose focus is $S$, the lines through $A$, $B$, $C$ perpendicular respectively to $SA$, $SB$, $SC$ are concurrent.

18. Conics are described with one of their foci at a fixed point $S$, so that each of the four tangents from two fixed points subtends the same angle of given magnitude at $S$. Prove that the directrices corresponding to the focus $S$ pass through a fixed point.

19. If $O$ be any point on the common tangent to two parabolas with a common focus, prove that the angle between the other tangents from $O$ to the parabolas is equal to the angle between the axes of the parabolas.

20. A conic circumscribes the triangle $ABC$, and has one focus at $O$, the orthocentre; shew that the corresponding directrix is perpendicular to $IO$ and meets it in a point $X$ such that $IO \,.\, OX = AO \,.\, OD$, where $I$ is the centre of the inscribed circle of the triangle, and $D$ is the foot of the perpendicular from $A$ on $BC$. Shew also how to find the centre of the conic.

21. Prove that chords of a conic which subtend a constant angle at a given point on the conic will envelope a conic.

[Reciprocate into a parabola by means of a circle having its centre at the fixed point.]

22. If a triangle be reciprocated with respect to a circle having its centre $O$ on the circumcircle of the triangle, the point $O$ will also lie on the circumcircle of the reciprocal triangle.

23. Prove the following and obtain from it by reciprocation a theorem applicable to coaxal circles: If from any point pairs of tangents $p$, $p'$; $q$, $q'$, be drawn to two confocals $S_1$ and $S_2$, the angle between $p$ and $q$ is equal to the angle between $p'$ and $q'$.

24. Prove and reciprocate with respect to any conic the following: If $ABC$ be a triangle, and if the polars of $A$, $B$, $C$ with respect to any conic meet the opposite sides in $P$, $Q$, $R$, then $P$, $Q$, $R$ are collinear.

25. A fixed point $O$ in the plane of a given circle is joined to the extremities $A$ and $B$ of any diameter, and $OA$, $OB$ meet the circle again in $P$ and $Q$. Shew that the tangents at $P$ and $Q$ intersect on a fixed line parallel to the polar of $O$.

26. All conics through four fixed points can be projected into rectangular hyperbolas.

27. If two triangles be reciprocal for a conic (§ 242) their centre of perspective is the pole of the axis of perspective with regard to the conic.

28. Prove that the envelope of chords of an ellipse which subtend a right angle at the centre is a concentric circle.

[Reciprocate with respect to a circle having its centre at the centre of the ellipse.]

29. $ABC$ is a triangle, $I$ its incentre; $A_1$, $B_1$, $C_1$ the points of contact of the incircle with the sides. Prove that the line joining $I$ to the point of concurrency of $AA_1$, $BB_1$, $CC_1$ is perpendicular to the line of collinearity of the intersections of $B_1C_1$, $BC$; $C_1A_1$, $CA$; $A_1B_1$, $AB$.

[Use Ex. 27.]

Changes in wording suggested by
Prof. C. N. Dodd

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Point | —— | Line |
| 2. Concurrent | —— | Collinear |
| 3 Quadrangle | —— | Quadrilateral |
| 4 Range | —— | Pencil |
| 5. Base of range | —— | Vertex of |
| 6 Join of five points | — | Pass |
| 7. Six on | —— | Pass |
| 8 Locus | —— | Envelope |
| 9 Degree | —— | Class |
| 10 Point On Conic | — | Tangent |
| 11 Meets of line with conic | — | [illegible] |
| 12. Pole | — | Polar. |

# CHAPTER XVIII

## CIRCULAR POINTS. FOCI OF CONICS

**243.** We have seen that pairs of concurrent lines which are conjugate for a conic form an involution, of which the tangents from the point of concurrency are the double lines. [Salmon Part II

Thus conjugate diameters of a conic are in involution, and the double lines of the involution are its asymptotes.

Now the conjugate diameters of a circle are orthogonal.

Thus the asymptotes of a circle are the imaginary double lines of the orthogonal involution at its centre.

But clearly the double lines of the orthogonal involution at one point must be parallel to the double lines of the orthogonal involution at another, seeing that we may *by a motion of translation, without rotation*, move one into the position of the other.

Hence the asymptotes of one circle are, each to each, parallel to the asymptotes of any other circle in its plane.

Let $a$, $b$ be the asymptotes of one circle $C$, $a'$, $b'$ of another $C'$, then $a$, $a'$ being parallel meet on the line at infinity, and $b$, $b'$ being parallel meet on the line at infinity.

But $a$ and $a'$ meet $C$ and $C'$ on the line at infinity,
and $b$ and $b'$ „ $C$ and $C'$ „ „ „

Therefore $C$ and $C'$ go through the same two imaginary points on the line at infinity.

Our conclusion then is that all circles in a plane go through the same two imaginary points on the line at infinity. These two points are called *the circular points at infinity* or, simply, the *circular points*.

The *circular lines* at any point are the lines joining that point to the circular points at infinity; and they are the imaginary double lines of the orthogonal involution at that point.

### 244. Analytical point of view.

It may help the student to think of the circular lines at any point if we digress for a moment to touch upon the Analytical aspect of them.

The equation of a circle referred to its centre is of the form

$$x^2 + y^2 = a^2.$$

The asymptotes of this circle are

$$x^2 + y^2 = 0,$$

that is the pair of imaginary lines

$$y = ix \text{ and } y = -ix.$$

These two lines are the circular lines at the centre of the circle.

The points where they meet the line at infinity are the circular points.

If we rotate the axes of coordinates at the centre of a circle through any angle, keeping them still rectangular, the equation of the circle does not alter in form, so that the asymptotes will make angles $\tan^{-1}(i)$ and $\tan^{-1}(-i)$ with the new axis of $x$ as well as with the old.

This at first sight is paradoxical. But the paradox is explained by the fact that the line $y = ix$ makes the same angle $\tan^{-1}(i)$ with every line in the plane.

For let $y = mx$ be any other line through the origin.

Then the angle that $y = ix$ makes with this, measured in the positive sense from $y = mx$, is

$$\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{i-m}{1+im}\right) = \tan^{-1}\left\{\frac{i(1+im)}{1+im}\right\} = \tan^{-1} i.$$

**245. Prop.** *If $AOB$ be an angle of constant magnitude and $\Omega, \Omega'$ be the circular points, the cross-ratios of the pencil $O(\Omega, \Omega', A, B)$ are constant.*

For $$O(\Omega\Omega' AB) = \frac{\sin \Omega O\Omega' \sin AOB}{\sin \Omega OB \sin AO\Omega'},$$

but the angles $\Omega O\Omega'$, $\Omega OB$, $AO\Omega'$ are all constant since the circular lines make the same angle with every line in the plane, and $\angle AOB$ is constant by hypothesis.

$\therefore$ $O(\Omega\Omega' AB)$ is constant.

**246. Prop.** *All conics passing through the circular points are circles.*

Let $C$ be the centre of a conic $S$ passing through the circular points, which we will denote by $\Omega$ and $\Omega'$.

Then $C\Omega$, $C\Omega'$ are the asymptotes of $S$.

But the asymptotes are the double lines of the involution formed by pairs of conjugate diameters.

And the double lines completely determine an involution, that is to say there can be only one involution with the same double lines.

Thus the conjugate diameters of $S$ are all orthogonal.

Hence $S$ is a circle.

*The circular points may be utilised for establishing properties of conics passing through two or more fixed points.*

For a system of conics all passing through the same two points can be projected into circles simultaneously.

This is effected by projecting two points into the circular points on the plane of projection. The projections of the conics will now go through the circular points in the new plane and so they are all circles.

The student of course understands that such a projection is an imaginary one.

**247.** We will now proceed to an illustration of the use of the circular points.

It can be seen at once that any transversal is cut by a system of coaxal circles in pairs of points in involution (the centre of this involution being the point of intersection of the line with the axis of the system).

From this follows at once Desargues' theorem (§ 227), namely that conics through four points cut any transversal in pairs of points in involution.

For if we project two of the points into the circular points the conics all become circles. Moreover the circles form a coaxal system, for they have two other points in common.

Hence Desargues' theorem is seen to follow from the involution property of coaxal circles.

The involution property of coaxal circles again is a particular case of Desargues' theorem, for coaxal circles have four points in common, two being the circular points, and two the points in which all the circles are cut by the axis of the system.

**248.** We will now make use of the circular points to prove the theorem: *If a triangle be self-conjugate to a rectangular hyperbola its circumcircle passes through the centre of the hyperbola.*

Let $O$ be the centre of the rectangular hyperbola, $ABC$ the self-conjugate triangle, $\Omega$, $\Omega'$ the circular points.

Now observe first that $O\Omega\Omega'$ is a self-conjugate triangle for the rectangular hyperbola. For $O\Omega$, $O\Omega'$ are the double lines of the orthogonal involution at $O$ to which the asymptotes, being at right angles, belong. Therefore $O\Omega$, $O\Omega'$ belong to the involution whose double lines are the asymptotes (§ 82), that is the involution formed by pairs of conjugate lines through $O$.

$\therefore$ $O\Omega$, $O\Omega'$ are conjugate lines, and $O$ is the pole of $\Omega\Omega'$ which is the line at infinity.

$\therefore$ $O\Omega\Omega'$ is a self-conjugate triangle.

Also $ABC$ is a self-conjugate triangle.

$\therefore$ the six points $A$, $B$, $C$, $O$, $\Omega$, $\Omega'$ all lie on a conic (§ 241); and this conic must be a circle as it passes through $\Omega$ and $\Omega'$.

$\therefore$ $A$, $B$, $C$, $O$ are concyclic.

Cor. If a rectangular hyperbola circumscribe a triangle, its centre lies on the nine-points circle.

This well-known theorem is a particular case of the above proposition, for the pedal triangle is self-conjugate for the rectangular hyperbola. **(Ex. 21, Chapter XIV.)**

**249. Prop.** *Concentric circles have double contact at infinity.*

For if $O$ be the centre of the circles, $\Omega$, $\Omega'$ the circular points at infinity, all the circles touch $O\Omega$ and $O\Omega'$ at the points $\Omega$ and $\Omega'$.

That is, all the circles touch one another at the points $\Omega$ and $\Omega'$.

## 250. Foci of Conics.

**Prop.** *Every conic has four foci, two of which lie on one axis of the conic and are real, and two on the other axis and are imaginary.*

Since conjugate lines at a focus form an orthogonal involution, and since the tangents from any point are the double lines of the involution formed by the conjugate lines there, it follows that the circular lines through a focus are the tangents to the conic from that point.

But the circular lines at any point go through $\Omega$ and $\Omega'$ the circular points.

Thus the foci of the conic will be obtained by drawing tangents from $\Omega$ and $\Omega'$ to the conic, and taking their four points of intersection.

Hence there are four foci.

To help the imagination, construct a figure as if $\Omega$ and $\Omega'$ were real points.

Draw tangents from these points to the conic and let $S$, $S'$, $F$, $F'$ be their points of intersection as in the figure; $S$, $S'$ being opposite vertices as also $F$ and $F'$.

Let $FF'$ and $SS'$ intersect in $O$.

Now the triangle formed by the diagonals $FF'$, $SS'$ and $\Omega\Omega'$ is self-conjugate for the conic, because it touches the sides of the quadrilateral. (Reciprocal of § 119 a.)

$\therefore$ $O$ is the pole of $\Omega\Omega'$, i.e. of the line at infinity.

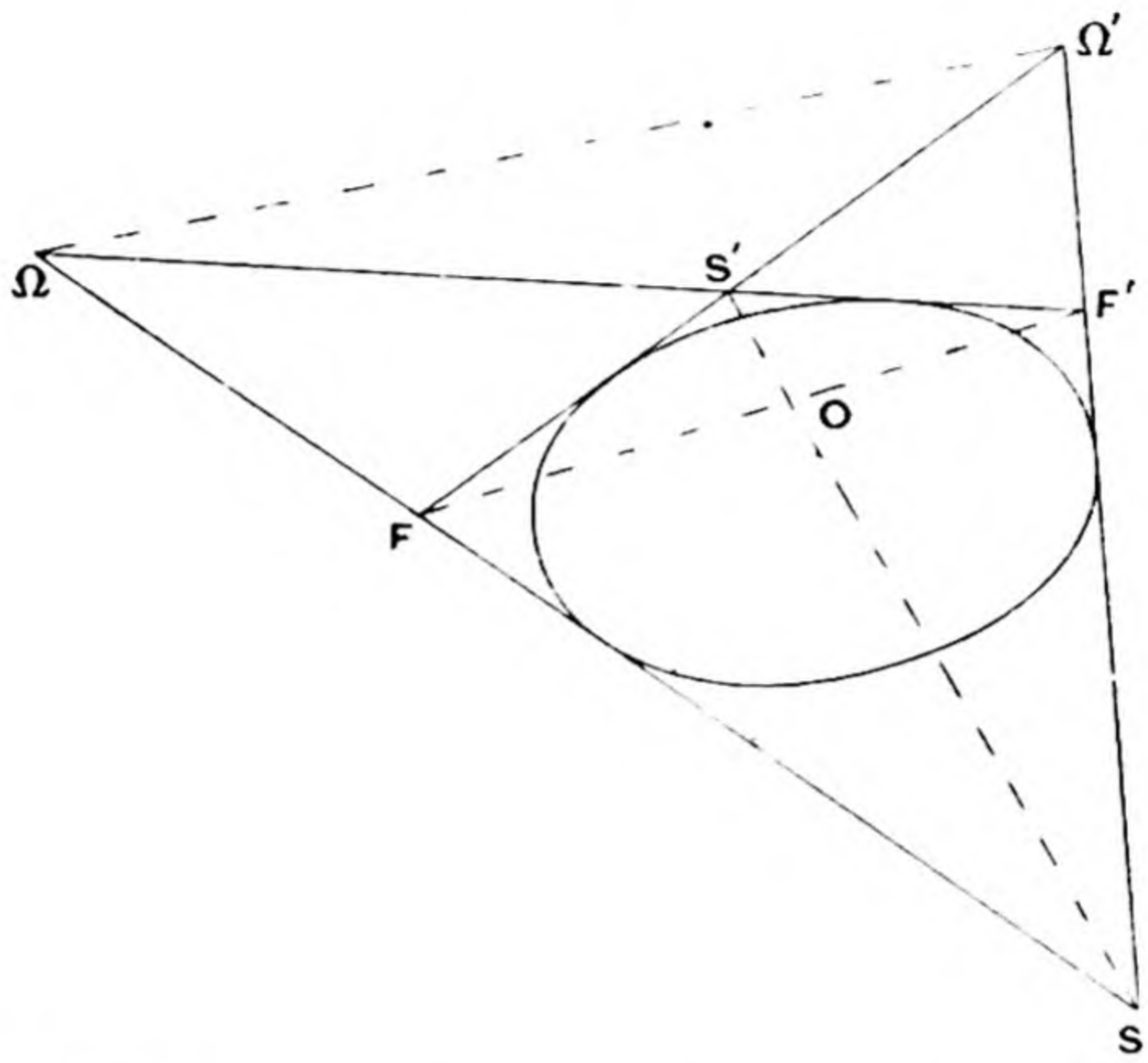
$\therefore$ $O$ is the centre of the conic:

Further $O\Omega\Omega'$ is the diagonal, or harmonic, triangle of the quadr*angle* $SS'FF'$.

$$\therefore\ O\ (\Omega\Omega',\ FS) = -1. \quad (\S\ 76)$$

$\therefore$ $OF$ and $OS$ are conjugate lines in the involution of which $O\Omega$ and $O\Omega'$ are the double lines.

$\therefore$ $OF$ and $OS$ are at right angles.




And $OF$ and $OS$ are conjugate lines for the conic since the triangle formed by the diagonals $FF'$, $SS'$, $\Omega\Omega'$ is self-conjugate for the conic; and $O$ is, as we have seen, the centre.

$\therefore$ $OF$ and $OS$, being orthogonal conjugate diameters, are the axes.

Thus we have two pairs of foci, one on one axis and the other on the other axis.

Now we know that two of the foci, say $S$ and $S'$, are real.

It follows that the other two, $F$ and $F'$, are imaginary. For if $F$ were real, the line $FS$ would meet the line at infinity in a real point, which is not the case.

$\therefore$ $F$ and $F'$ must be imaginary.

**Cor. The lines joining non-corresponding foci are tangents to the conic and the points of contact of these tangents are concyclic.**

**251. Prop.** *A system of conics touching the sides of a quadrilateral can be projected into confocal conics.*

Let $ABCD$ be the quadrilateral, the pairs of opposite vertices being $A, C$; $B, D$; $E, F$.

Project $E$ and $F$ into the circular points at infinity on the plane of projection.

$\therefore$ $A, C$ and $B, D$ project into the foci of the conics in the projection, by § 250.

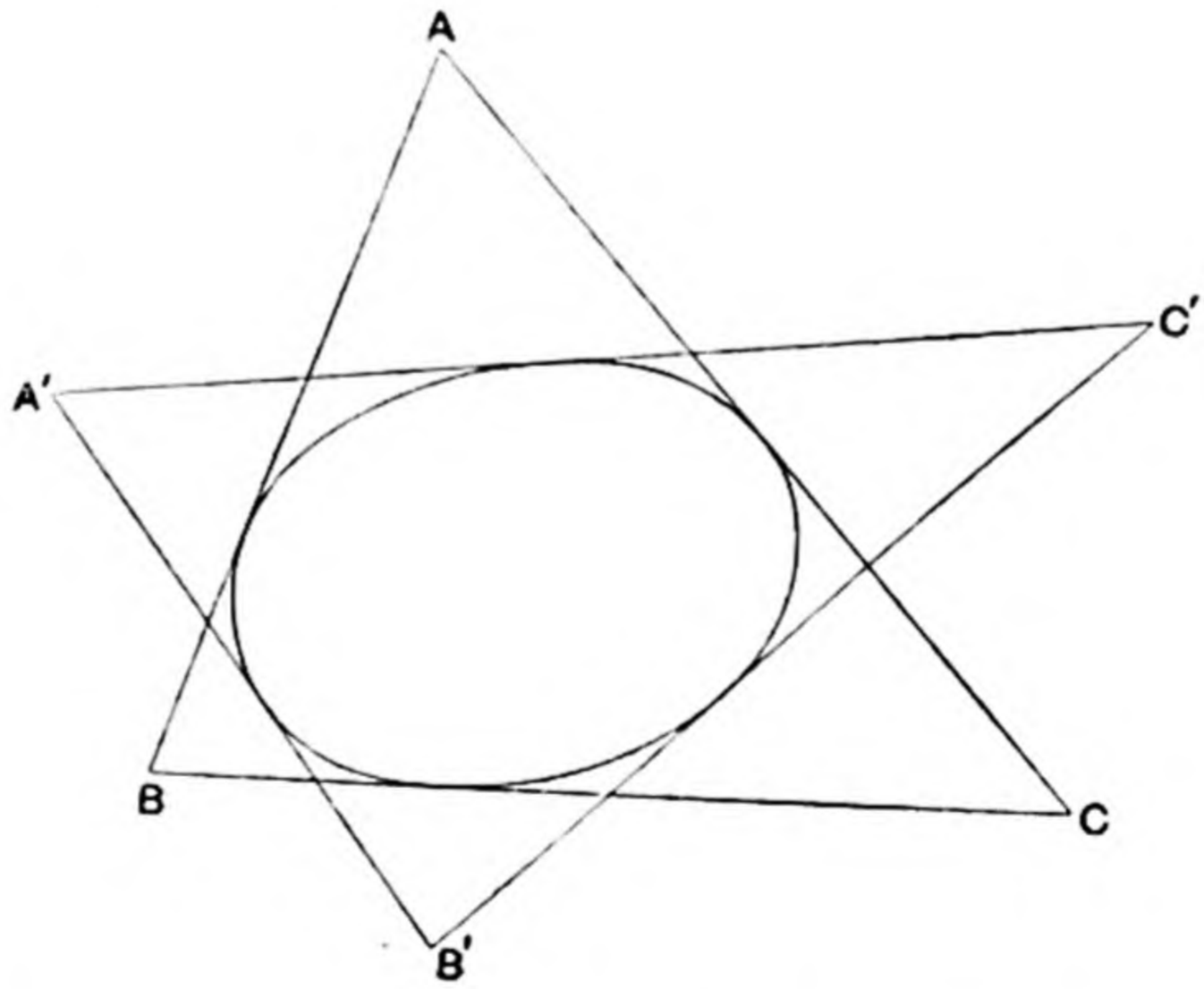
Cor. Confocal conics form a system of conics touching four lines.

**252.** We will now make use of the notions of this chapter to prove the following theorem, which is not unimportant.

*If the sides of two triangles all touch the same conic, the six vertices of the triangles all lie on a conic.*

Let $ABC, A'B'C'$ be the two triangles the sides of which all touch the same conic $S$.

Denote the circular points on the $\pi$ plane or plane of projection by $\omega, \omega'$.




Project $B$ and $C$ into $\omega$ and $\omega'$; $\therefore$ $S$ projects into a parabola, since the projection of $S$ touches the line at infinity.

Further $A$ will project into the focus of the parabola, since the tangents from the focus go through the circular points.

Using corresponding small letters in the projection, we see that, since the circumcircle of a triangle whose sides touch a parabola goes through the focus, $a$, $a'$, $b'$, $c'$ are concyclic.

$\therefore$ $a$, $a'$, $b'$, $c'$, $\omega$, $\omega'$ lie on a circle.

$\therefore$ $A$, $B$, $C$, $A'$, $B'$, $C'$ lie on a conic.

The converse of the above proposition follows at once by reciprocation.

**253**. We have in the preceding article obtained a proof of the general proposition that if the sides of two triangles touch a conic, their six vertices lie on another conic by the projection of what is a particular case of this proposition, viz. that the circumcircle of a triangle whose sides touch a parabola passes through the focus.

This process is known as *generalising by projection*. We will proceed to give further illustrations of it.

**254**. Let us denote the circular points in the $p$ plane by $\Omega$, $\Omega'$, and their projections on the $\pi$ plane by $\omega$, $\omega'$. Then of course $\omega$ and $\omega'$ are not the circular points in the $\pi$ plane. But by a proper choice of the $\pi$ plane and the vertex of projection $\omega$ and $\omega'$ may be any two points we choose, real or imaginary. For if we wish to project $\Omega$ and $\Omega'$ into the points $\omega$ and $\omega'$ in space, we have only to take as our vertex of projection the point of intersection of the lines $\omega\Omega$ and $\omega'\Omega'$, and as the plane $\pi$ some plane passing through $\omega$ and $\omega'$.

**255**. The following are the principal properties connecting figures in the $p$ and $\pi$ planes when $\Omega$ and $\Omega'$ are projected into $\omega$ and $\omega'$:

1. Circles in the $p$ plane project into conics through the points $\omega$ and $\omega'$ in the $\pi$ plane.

2. Parabolas in the $p$ plane project into conics touching the line $\omega\omega'$ in the $\pi$ plane.

3. Rectangular hyperbolas in the $p$ plane, for which, as we have seen, $\Omega$ and $\Omega'$ are conjugate points, project into conics having $\omega$ and $\omega'$ for conjugate points.

4. The centre of a conic in the $p$ plane, since it is the pole of $\Omega\Omega'$, projects into the pole of the line $\omega\omega'$.

5. Concentric circles in the $p$ plane project into conics having double contact at $\omega$ and $\omega'$ in the $\pi$ plane.

6. A pair of lines $OA$, $OB$ at right angles in the $p$ plane project into a pair of lines $oa$, $ob$ harmonically conjugate with $o\omega$, $o\omega'$. This follows from the fact that $O\Omega$, $O\Omega'$ are the double lines of the involution to which $OA$, $OB$ belong, and therefore $O(AB, \Omega\Omega') = -1$ (§ 82): from which it follows that $o(ab, \omega\omega') = -1$.

7 A conic with $S$ as focus in the $p$ plane will project into a conic touching the lines $s\omega$, $s\omega'$ in the $\pi$ plane.

And the two foci $S$ and $S'$ of a conic in the $p$ plane will project into the vertices of the quadrilateral formed by drawing tangents from $\omega$ and $\omega'$ to the projection of the conic in the $\pi$ plane.

**256.** It is of importance that the student should realise that $\omega$ and $\omega'$ are not the circular points in the $\pi$ plane when they are the projections of $\Omega$ and $\Omega'$.

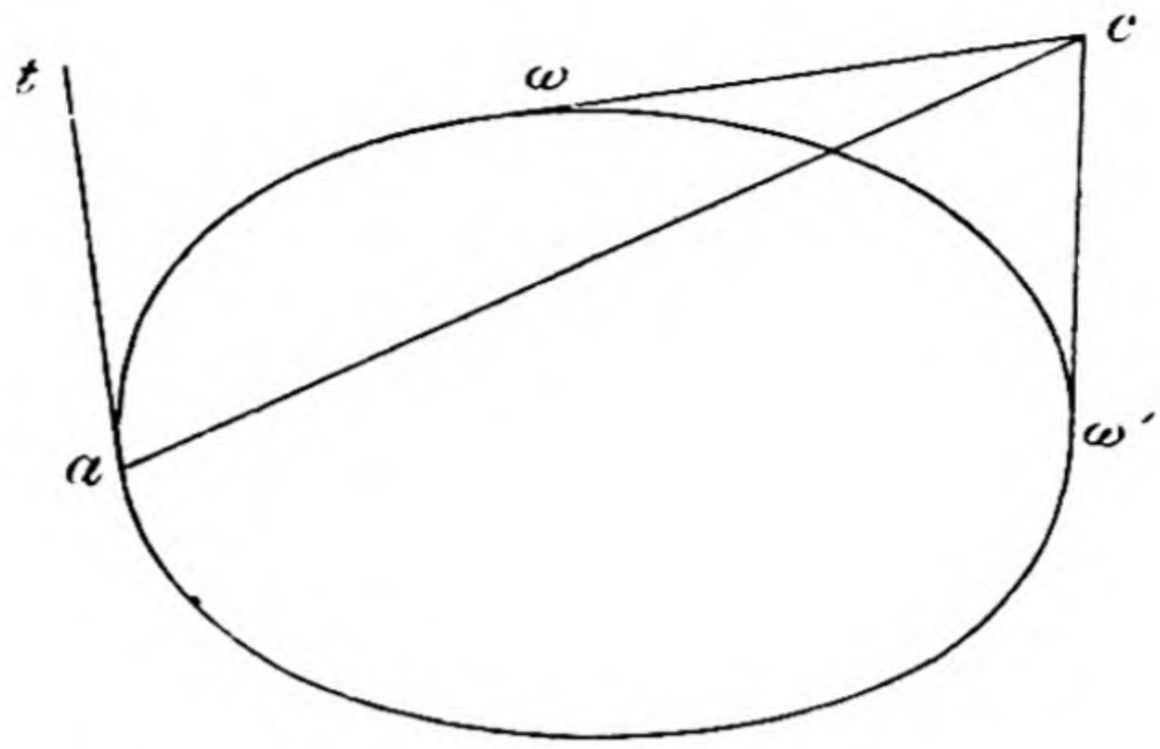
In § 252 we have denoted the circular points in the $\pi$ plane by $\omega$ and $\omega'$, but they are not there the projections of the circular points in the $p$ plane.

Our practice has been to use small letters to represent the projections of the corresponding capitals. So then we use $\omega$ and $\omega'$ for the projection of $\Omega$ and $\Omega'$ respectively. If $\Omega$ and $\Omega'$ are the circular points in the $p$ plane, $\omega$ and $\omega'$ are not the circular points in the $\pi$ plane; and if $\omega$ and $\omega'$ are the circular points in the $\pi$ plane, $\Omega$ and $\Omega'$ are not the circular points in the $p$ plane. That is to say, only one of the pairs can be circular points at the same time.

**257.** We will now proceed to some examples of generalisation by projection.

Consider the theorem that the radius of a circle to any point $A$ is perpendicular to the tangent at $A$.

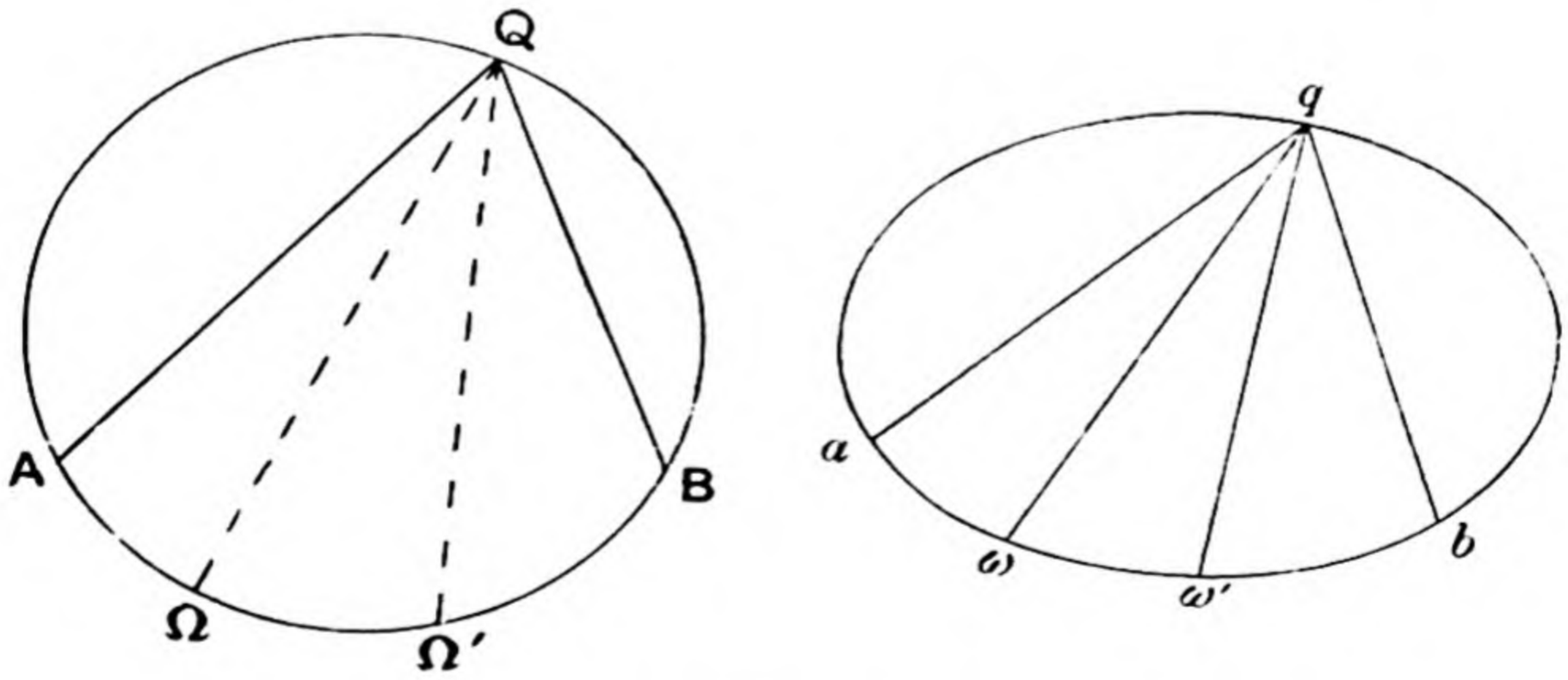
Project the circle into a conic through $\omega$ and $\omega'$; the centre $C$ of the circle projects into the pole of $\omega\omega'$.




The generalised theorem is that *if the tangents at two points* $\omega$, $\omega'$ *of a conic meet in* $c$, *and* $a$ *be any point on the conic and* $a$ $t$ *the tangent there*

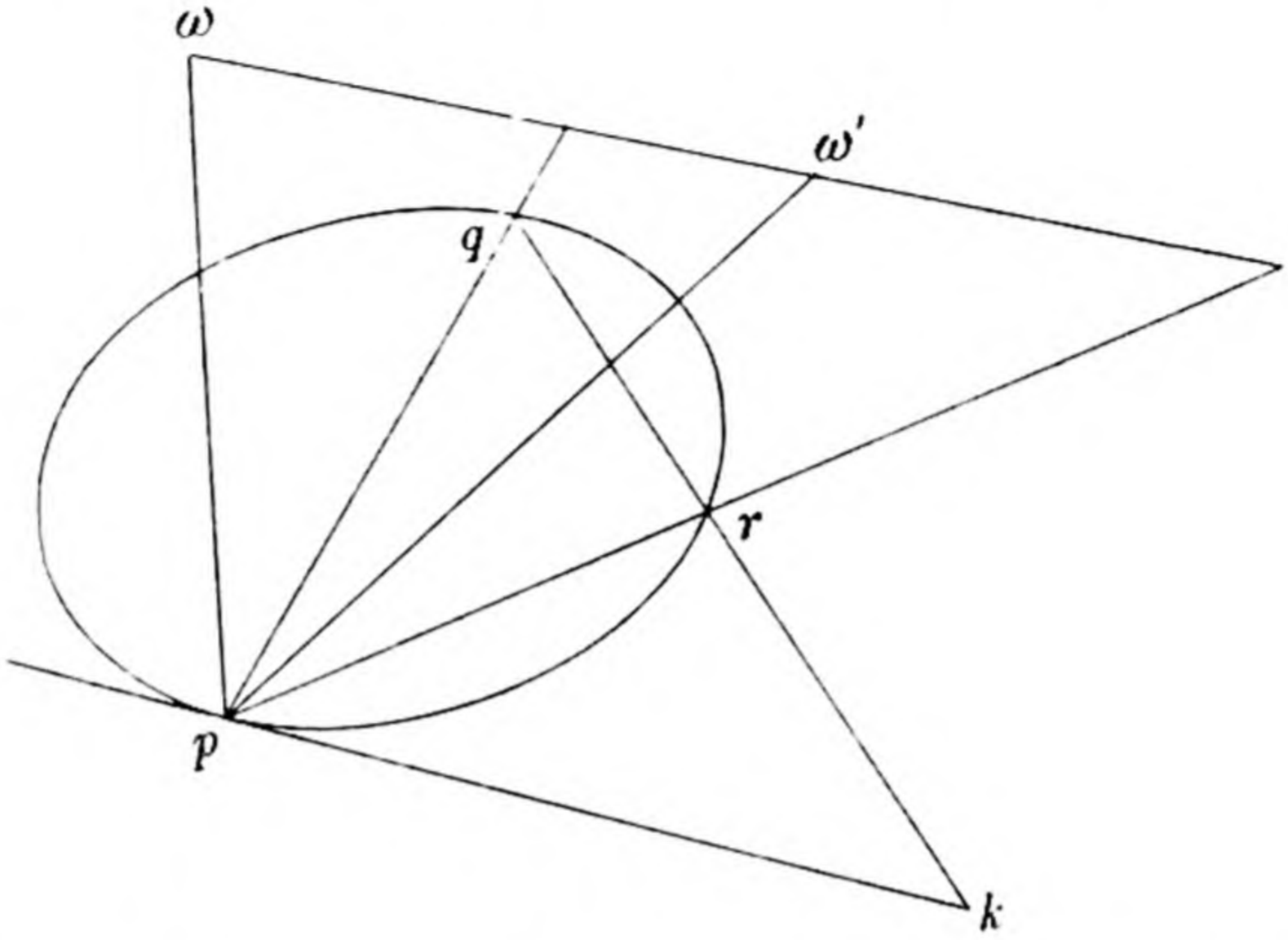
$$a\,(tc,\ \omega\omega') = -1.$$

**258.** Next consider the theorem that angles in the same segment of a circle are equal. Let $AQB$ be an angle in the segment of which $AB$ is the base. Project the circle into a conic through $\omega$ and $\omega'$ and we get the theorem that if $q$ be any point on a fixed conic through the four points $a$, $b$, $\omega$, $\omega'$, $q\ (ab\omega\omega')$ is constant (§ 245).




Thus *the property of the equality of angles in the same segment of a circle generalises into the constant cross-ratio property of conics.*

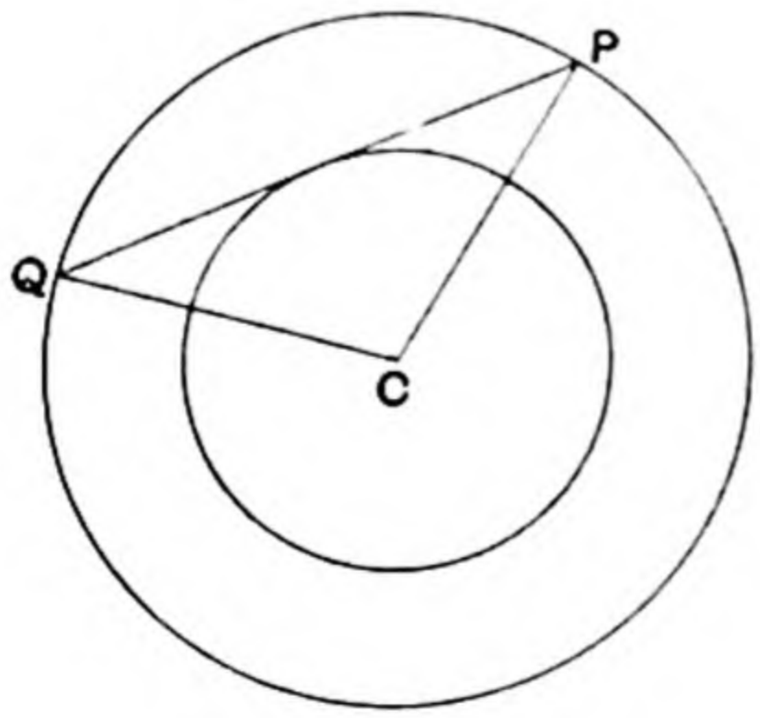
**259.** Again we have the property of the rectangular hyperbola that if $PQR$ be a triangle inscribed in it and having a right angle at $P$, the tangent at $P$ is at right angles to $QR$.

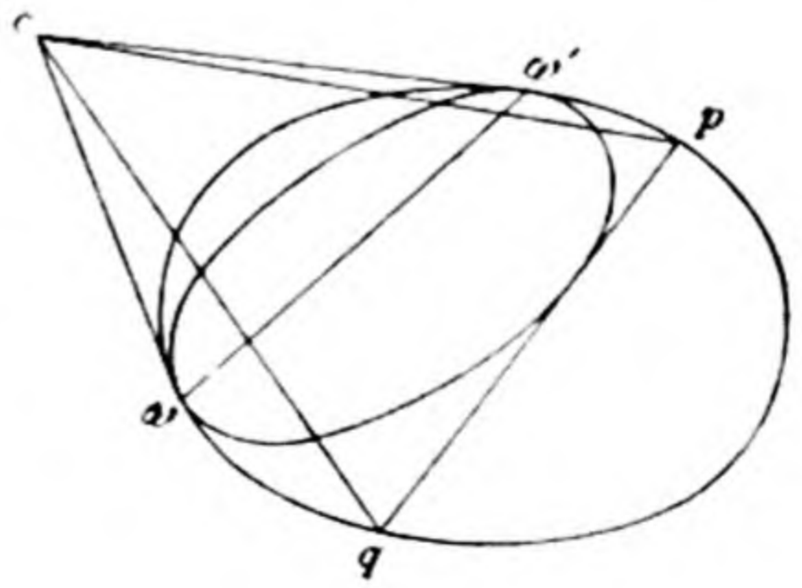



Project the rectangular hyperbola into a conic having $\omega$ and $\omega'$ for conjugate points and we get the following property.

*If $p$ be any point on a conic for which $\omega$ and $\omega'$ are conjugate points and $q$, $r$ two other points on the conic such that $p\,(qr,\ \omega\omega') = -1$ and if the tangent at $p$ meet $qr$ in $k$ then $k\,(pq,\ \omega\omega') = -1$.*

**260.** Lastly we will generalise by projection the theorem that chords of a circle which touch a concentric circle subtend a constant angle at the centre.



Let $PQ$ be a chord of the outer circle touching the inner and subtending a constant angle at $C$ the centre.

The concentric circles have double contact at the circular points $\Omega$ and $\Omega'$ and so project into two conics having double contact at $\omega$ and $\omega'$.

The centre $C$ is the pole of $\Omega\Omega'$ and so $c$, the projection of $C$, is the pole of $\omega\omega'$.

The property we obtain by projection is then:

*If two conics have double contact at two points $\omega$ and $\omega'$ and if the tangents at these points meet in $c$, and if $pq$ be any chord of the outer conic touching the inner conic, then $c\,(pq\omega\omega')$ is constant.*

## EXERCISES

1. If $O$ be the centre of a conic, $\Omega$, $\Omega'$ the circular points at infinity, and if $O\Omega\Omega'$ be a self-conjugate triangle for the conic, the conic must be a rectangular hyperbola.

2. If a variable conic pass through two given points $P$ and $P'$, and touch two given straight lines, shew that the chord which joins the points of contact of these two straight lines will always meet $PP'$ in a fixed point.

3. If three conics have two points in common, the opposite common chords of the conics taken in pairs are concurrent.

4. Two conics $S_1$ and $S_2$ circumscribe the quadrangle $ABCD$. Through $A$ and $B$ lines $AEF$, $BGH$ are drawn cutting $S_2$ in $E$ and $G$, and $S_1$ in $F$ and $H$. Prove that $CD$, $EG$, $FH$ are concurrent.

5. If a conic pass through two given points, and touch a given conic at a given point, its chord of intersection with the given conic passes through a fixed point.

6. If $\Omega$, $\Omega'$ be the circular points at infinity, the two imaginary foci of a parabola coincide with $\Omega$ and $\Omega'$, and the centre and second real focus of the parabola coincide with the point of contact of $\Omega\Omega'$ with the parabola.

7. If a conic be drawn through the four points of intersection of two given conics, and through the intersection of one pair of common tangents, it also passes through the intersection of the other pair of common tangents.

8. Prove that, if three conics pass through the same four points, a common tangent to any two of the conics is cut harmonically by the third.

9. Reciprocate the theorem of Ex. 8.

10. If from two points $P$, $P'$ tangents be drawn to a conic, the four points of contact of the tangents with the conic, and the points $P$ and $P'$ all lie on a conic.

[Project $P$ and $P'$ into the circular points.]

11. If out of four pairs of points every combination of three pairs gives six points on a conic, either the four conics thus determined coincide or the four lines determined by the four pairs of points are concurrent.

12. Generalise by projection the theorem that the locus of the centre of a rectangular hyperbola circumscribing a triangle is the nine-points circle of the triangle.

13. Generalise by projection the theorem that the locus of the centre of a rectangular hyperbola with respect to which a given triangle is self-conjugate is the circumcircle.

14. Given that two lines at right angles and the lines to the circular points form a harmonic pencil, find the reciprocals of the circular points with regard to any circle.

Deduce that the polar reciprocal of any circle with regard to any point $O$ has the lines from $O$ to the circular points as tangents, and the reciprocal of the centre of the circle for the corresponding chord of contact.

15. Prove and generalise by projection the following theorem: The centre of the circle circumscribing a triangle which is self-conjugate with regard to a parabola lies on the directrix.

16. $P$ and $P'$ are two points in the plane of a triangle $ABC$. $D$ is taken in $BC$ such that $BC$ and $DA$ are harmonically conjugate with $DP$ and $DP'$; $E$ and $F$ are similarly taken in $CA$ and $AB$ respectively. Prove that $AD$, $BE$, $CF$ are concurrent.

17. Generalise by projection the following theorem: The lines perpendicular to the sides of a triangle through the middle points of the sides are concurrent in the circumcentre of the triangle.

18. Generalise: The feet of the perpendiculars on to the sides of a triangle from any point on the circumcircle are collinear.

19. If two conics have double contact at $A$ and $B$, and if $PQ$ a chord of one of them touch the other in $R$ and meet $AB$ in $T$, then

$$(PQ,\ RT') = -1.$$

20. Generalise by projection the theorem that confocal conics cut at right angles.

21. Prove and generalise that the envelope of the polar of a given point for a system of confocals is a parabola touching the axes of the confocals and having the given point on its directrix.

22. If a system of conics pass through the four points $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$, the poles of the line $AB$ with respect to them will lie on a line $l$. Moreover if this line $l$ meet $CD$ in $P$, $PA$ and $PB$ are harmonic conjugates of $CD$ and $l$.

23. A pair of tangents from a fixed point $T'$ to a conic meet a third fixed tangent to the conic in $L$ and $L'$. $P$ is any point on the conic, and on the tangent at $P$ a point $X$ is taken such that $X\,(PT',\ LL') = -1$; prove that the locus of $X$ is a straight line.

24. Defining a focus of a conic as a point at which each pair of conjugate lines is orthogonal, prove that the polar reciprocal of a circle with respect to another circle is a conic having the centre of the second circle for a focus.

# CHAPTER XIX

## INVERSION

**261.** We have already in § 13 explained what is meant by two 'inverse points' with respect to a circle. $O$ being the centre of a circle, $P$ and $P'$ are inverse points if they lie on the same radius and $OP \,.\, OP' =$ the square of the radius. $P$ and $P'$ are on the same side of the centre, unless the circle have an imaginary radius, $= ik$, where $k$ is real.

As $P$ describes a curve $S$, the point $P'$ will describe another curve $S'$. $S$ and $S'$ are called *inverse curves*. $O$ is called the *centre of inversion*, and the radius of the circle is called the *radius of inversion*.

If $P$ describe a curve in space, not necessarily a plane curve, then we must consider $P'$ as the inverse of $P$ with respect to a *sphere* round $O$. That is, whether $P$ be confined to a plane or not, if $O$ be a fixed point in space and $P'$ be taken on $OP$ such that $OP \,.\, OP' =$ a constant $k^2$, $P'$ is called the inverse of $P$, and the curve or surface described by $P$ is called the inverse of that described by $P'$, and *vice versa*.

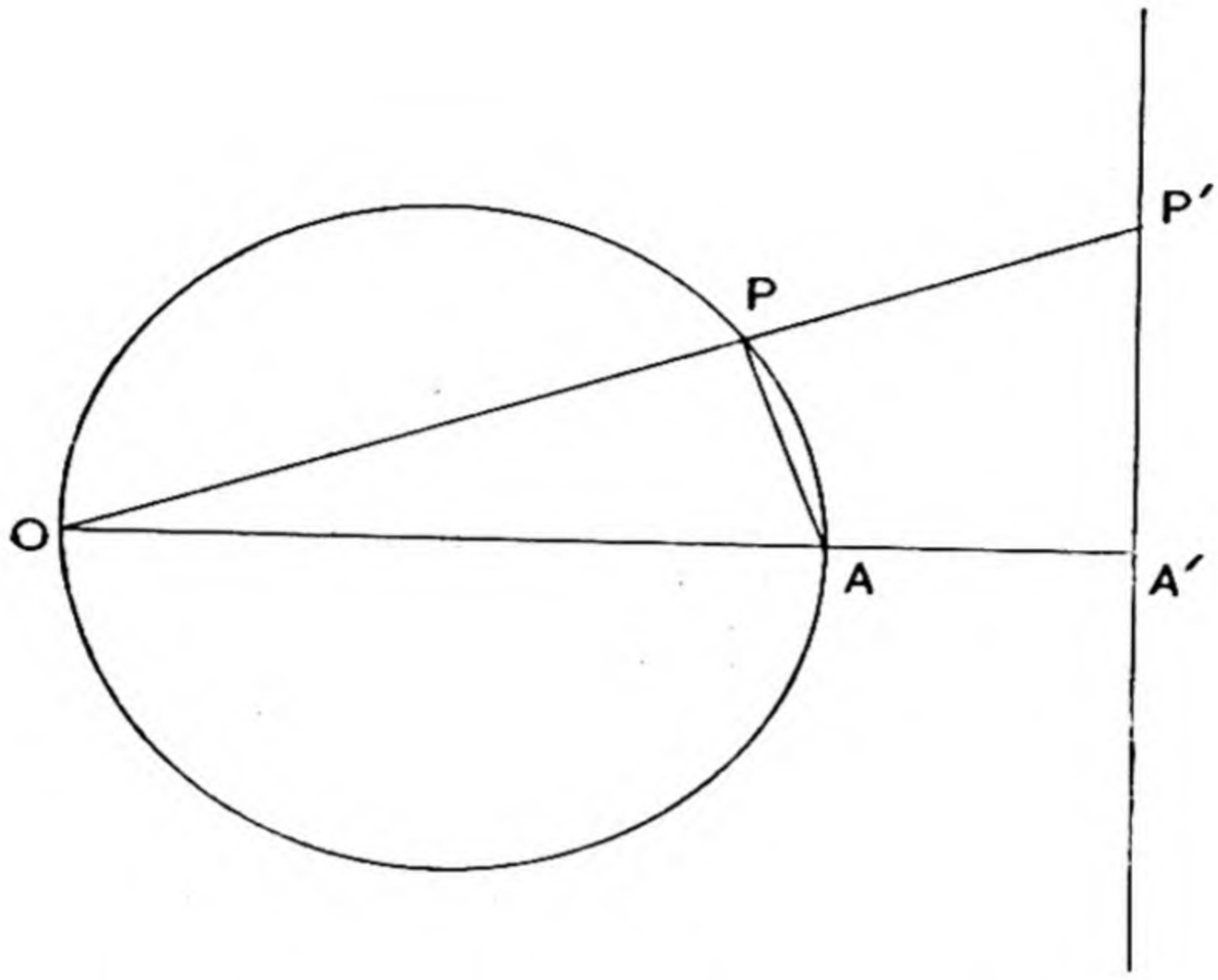
It is convenient sometimes to speak of a point $P'$ as inverse to another point $P$ *with respect to a point* $O$. By this is meant that $O$ is the centre of the circle or sphere with respect to which the points are inverse.

**262. Prop.** *The inverse of a circle with respect to a point in its plane is a circle or straight line.*

First let $O$, the centre of inversion, lie on the circle.

Let $k$ be the radius of inversion.

Draw the diameter $OA$, let $A'$ be the inverse of $A$.
Let $P$ be any point on the circle, $P'$ its inverse.
Then $$OP \,.\, OP' = k^2 = OA \,.\, OA'.$$
$\therefore$ $PAA'P'$ is cyclic.




$\therefore$ the angle $AA'P'$ is the supplement of $APP'$, which is a right angle.

$\therefore$ $A'P'$ is at right angles to $AA'$.

$\therefore$ the locus of $P'$ is a straight line perpendicular to the diameter $OA$, and passing through the inverse of $A$.

Next let $O$ not be on the circumference of the circle.
Let $P$ be any point on the circle, $P'$ its inverse.
Let $OP$ cut the circle again in $Q$.
Let $A$ be the centre of the circle.
Then $OP \,.\, OP' = k^2$,
and $OP \,.\, OQ =$ sq. of tangent from $O$ to the circle $= t^2$ (say).

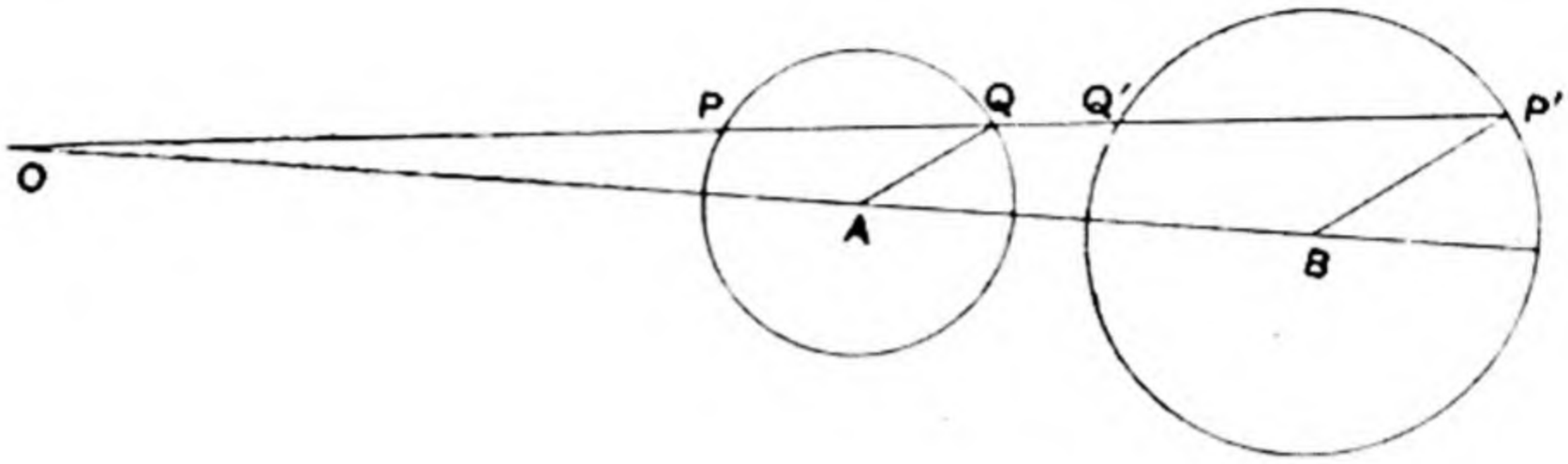
$$\therefore \frac{OP'}{OQ} = \frac{k^2}{t^2}.$$

Take $B$ on $OA$ such that $\frac{OB}{OA} = \frac{k^2}{t^2}$. $\therefore$ $B$ is a fixed point and $BP'$ is parallel to $AQ$.

And $$\frac{BP'}{AQ} = \frac{OB}{OA} = \frac{k^2}{t^2},$$ a constant.

$\therefore$ $P'$ describes a circle round $B$.

Thus the inverse of the circle is another circle.




Cor. 1. The inverse of a straight line is a circle passing through the centre of inversion.

Cor. 2. If two circles be inverse each to the other, the centre of inversion is a centre of similitude (§ 25); and the radii of the circles are to one another in the ratio of the distances of their centres from $O$.

The student should observe that, if we call the two circles $S$ and $S'$, and if $OPQ$ meet $S'$ again in $Q'$, $Q'$ will be the inverse of $Q$.

Note. The part of the circle $S$ which is convex to $O$ corresponds to the part of the circle $S'$ which is concave to $O$, and *vice versa*.

Two of the common tangents of $S$ and $S'$ go through $O$, and the points of contact with the circles of each of these tangents will be inverse points.

**263. Prop.** *The inverse of a sphere with respect to any point is a sphere or a plane.*

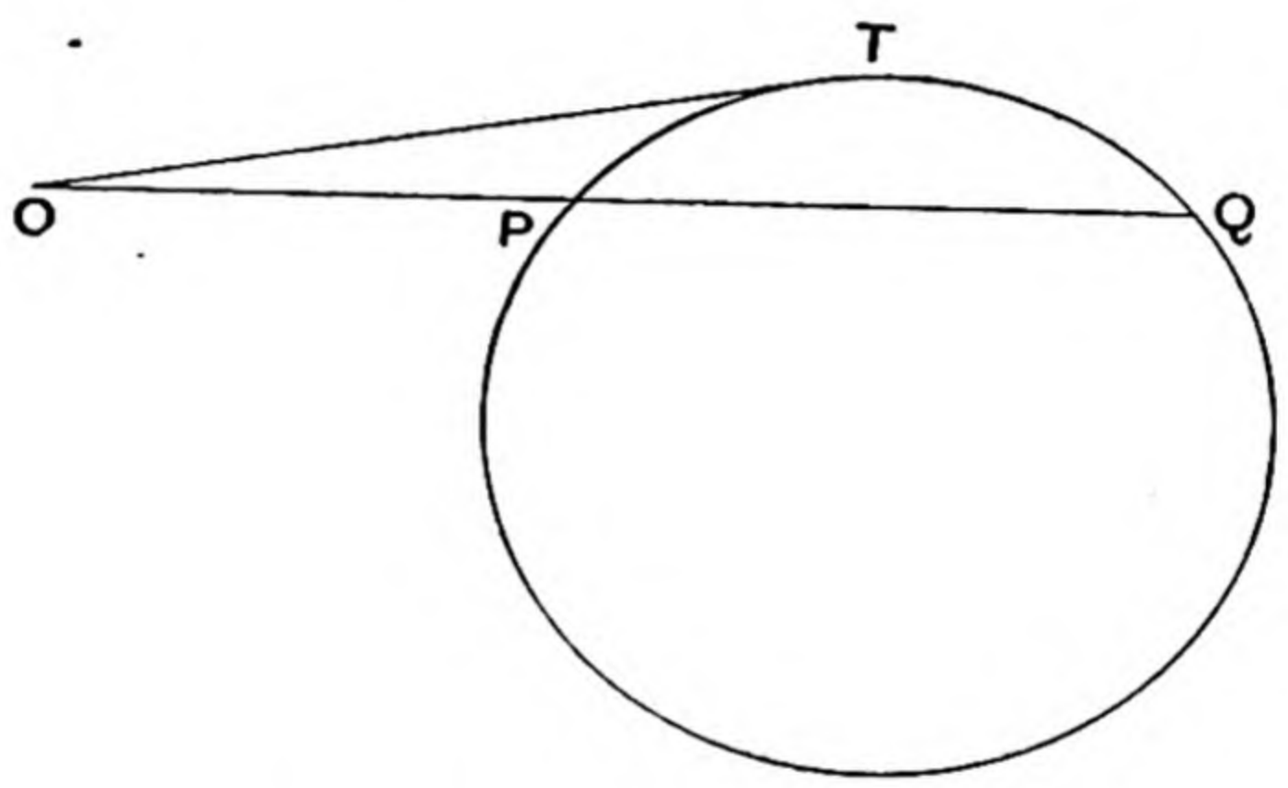
This proposition follows at once from the last by rotating the figures round $OA$ as axis; in the first figure the circle and line will generate a sphere and plane each of which is the inverse of the other; and in the second figure the two circles will generate spheres each of which will be the inverse of the other.

**264. Prop.** *The inverse of a circle with respect to a point* $O$, **not in its plane,** *is a circle.*

For the circle may be regarded as the intersection of two spheres, neither of which need pass through $O$.

These spheres will invert into spheres, and their intersection, which is the inverse of the intersection of the other two spheres, that is of the original circle, will be a circle.

**265. Prop.** *A circle will invert into itself with respect to a point* $O$ *in its plane if the radius of inversion be the length of the tangent to the circle from the centre of inversion.*




This is obvious at once, for if $OT$ be the tangent from $O$ and $OPQ$ cut the circle in $P$ and $Q$, since $OP \cdot OQ = OT^2$ it follows that $P$ and $Q$ are inverse points.

That is, the part of the circle concave to $O$ inverts into the part which is convex and *vice versa*.

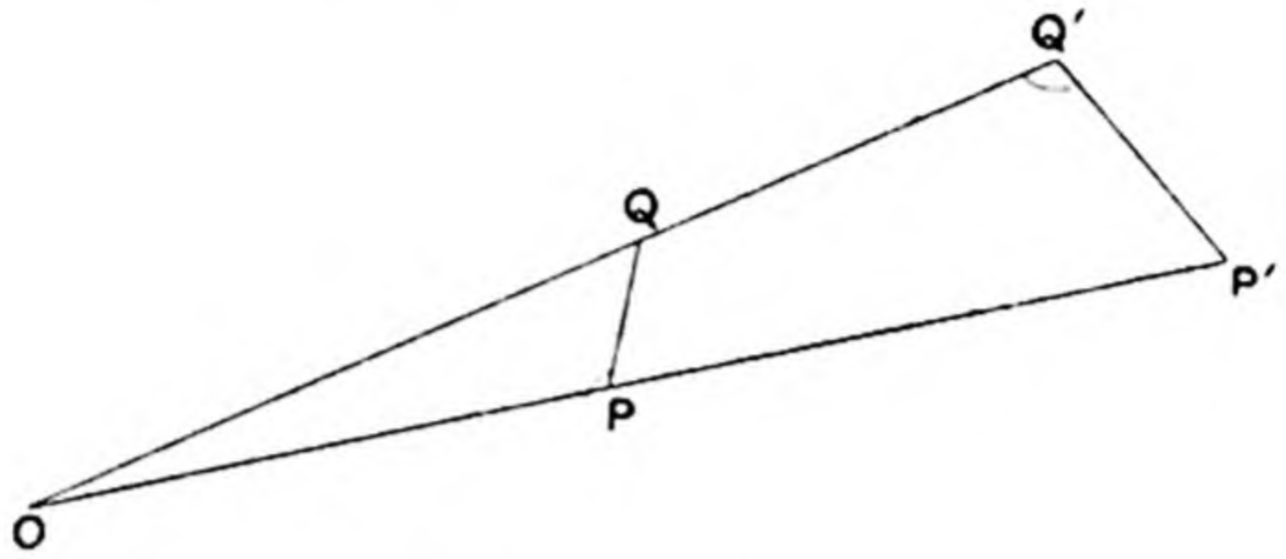
Cor. 1. Any system of coaxal circles can be simultaneously inverted into themselves if the centre of inversion be any point on the axis of the system.

Cor. 2. Any three coplanar circles can be simultaneously inverted into themselves.

For we have only to take the radical centre of the three circles as the centre of inversion, and the tangent from it as the radius.

**266. Prop.** *Two coplanar curves cut at the same angle as their inverses with respect to any point in their plane.*

Let $P$ and $Q$ be two near points on a curve $S$, $P'$ and $Q'$ their inverses with respect to $O$.



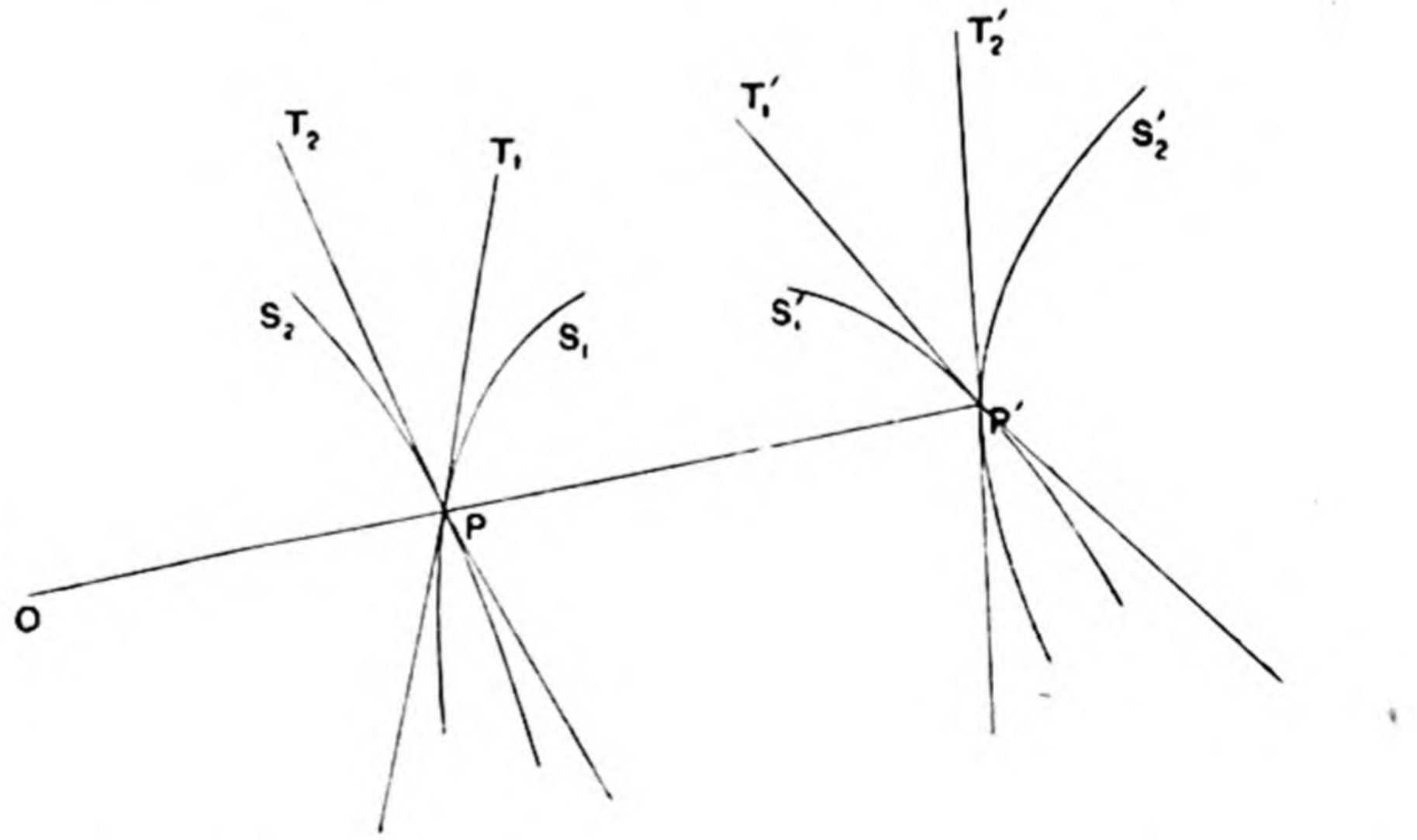

Then since $OP \cdot OP' = k^2 = OQ \cdot OQ'$.

$\therefore$ $QPP'Q'$ is cyclic.

$\therefore$ $\angle OPQ = \angle OQ'P'$.

Now let $Q$ move up to $P$ so that $PQ$ becomes the tangent to $S$ at $P$; then $Q'$ moves up at the same time to $P'$ and $P'Q'$ becomes the tangent at $P'$ to the inverse curve $S'$.

$\therefore$ the tangents at $P$ and $P'$ make equal angles with $OPP'$.
The tangents however are antiparallel, not parallel.




Now if we have two curves $S_1$ and $S_2$ intersecting at $P$, and $PT_1$, $PT_2$ be their tangents there, and if the inverse curves be

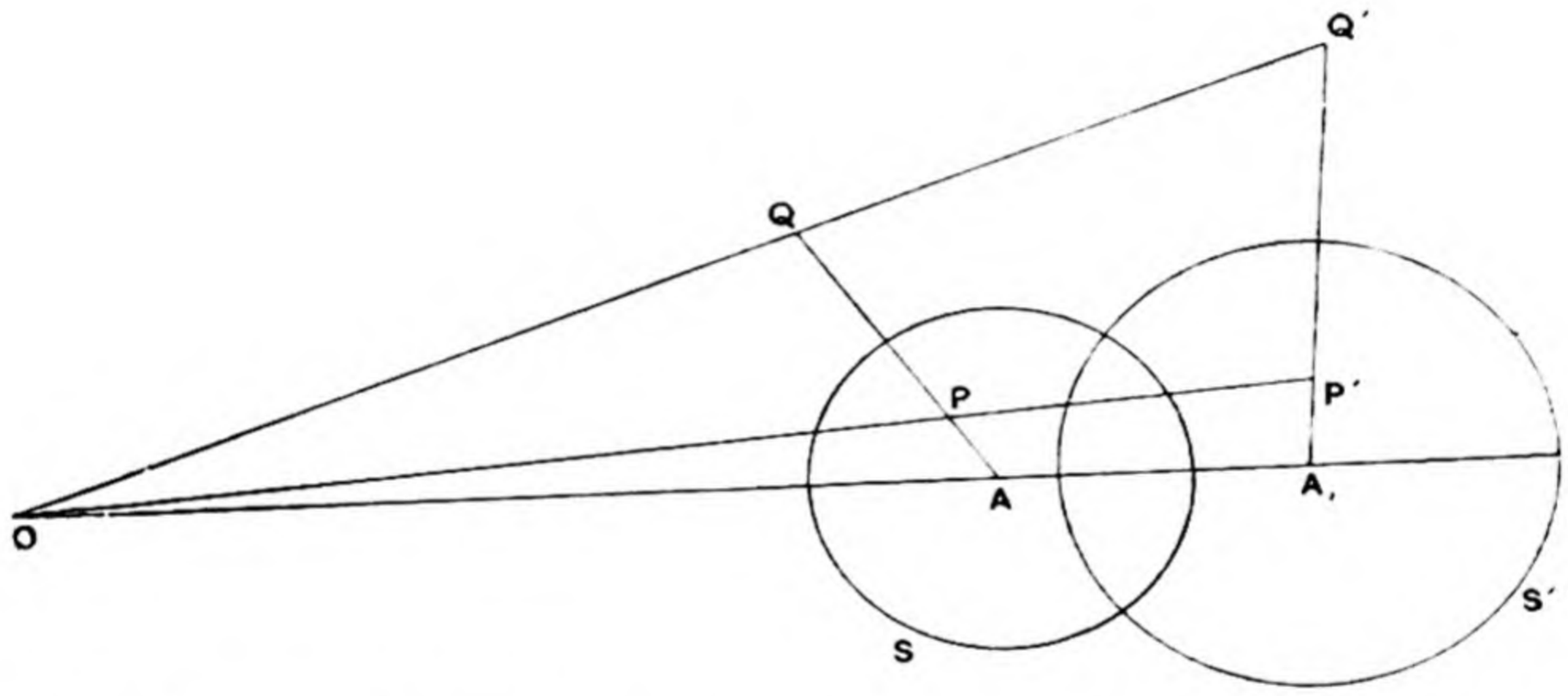
$S_1'$, $S_2'$ intersecting at $P'$, the inverse of $P$, and $P'T_1'$, $P'T_2'$ be their tangents, it follows at once from the above reasoning that $\angle T_2PT_1 = \angle T_1'P'T_2'$.

Thus $S_1$ and $S_2$ intersect at the same angle as their inverses.

Cor. If two curves touch at a point $P$ their inverses touch at the inverse of $P$.

**267. Prop.** *If a circle $S$ be inverted into a circle $S'$, and $P$, $Q$ be inverse points with respect to $S$, then $P'$ and $Q'$, the inverses of $P$ and $Q$ respectively, will be inverse points with respect to $S'$.*

Let $O$ be the centre of inversion.




Since $P$ and $Q$ are inverse points for $S$, therefore $S$ cuts orthogonally every circle through $P$ and $Q$, and in particular the circle through $O$, $P$, $Q$.

Therefore the inverse of the circle $OPQ$ will cut $S'$ orthogonally.

But the inverse of the circle $OPQ$ is a line; since $O$, the centre of inversion, lies on the circumference.

Therefore $P'Q'$ is the inverse of the circle $OPQ$.

Therefore $P'Q'$ cuts $S'$ orthogonally, that is, passes through the centre of $S'$.

Again, since every circle through $P$ and $Q$ cuts $S$ orthogonally, it follows that every circle through $P'$ and $Q'$ cuts $S'$ orthogonally (§ 266).

Therefore, if $A_1$ be the centre of $S'$,

$$A_1P' \,.\, A_1Q' = \text{square of radius of } S'.$$

Hence $P'$ and $Q'$ are inverse points for the circle $S'$.

**268. Prop.** *A system of non-intersecting coaxal circles can be inverted into concentric circles.*

The system being non-intersecting, the limiting points $L$ and $L'$ are real.

Invert the system with respect to $L$.

Now $L$ and $L'$ being inverse points with respect to each circle of the system, their inverses will be inverse points for each circle in the inversion.

But $L$ being the centre of the circle of inversion, its inverse is at infinity. Therefore $L'$ must invert into the centre of each of the circles.

**269. Feuerbach's Theorem.**

The principles of inversion may be illustrated by their application to prove Feuerbach's famous theorem, viz. *that the nine-points circle of a triangle touches the inscribed and the three escribed circles.*

Let $ABC$ be a triangle, $I$ its incentre and $I_1$ its ecentre opposite to $A$.

Let $M$ and $M_1$ be the points of contact of the incircle and this ecircle with $BC$.

Let the line $AII_1$ which bisects the angle $A$ cut $BC$ in $R$.

Draw $AL$ perpendicular to $BC$. Let $O$, $P$, $U$ be the circum-centre, orthocentre and nine-points centre respectively.

Draw $OD$ perpendicular to $BC$ and let it meet the circum-circle in $K$.

Now since $BI$ and $BI_1$ are the internal and external bisectors of angle $B$,

$$\therefore\ (AR,\ II_1) = -1,$$

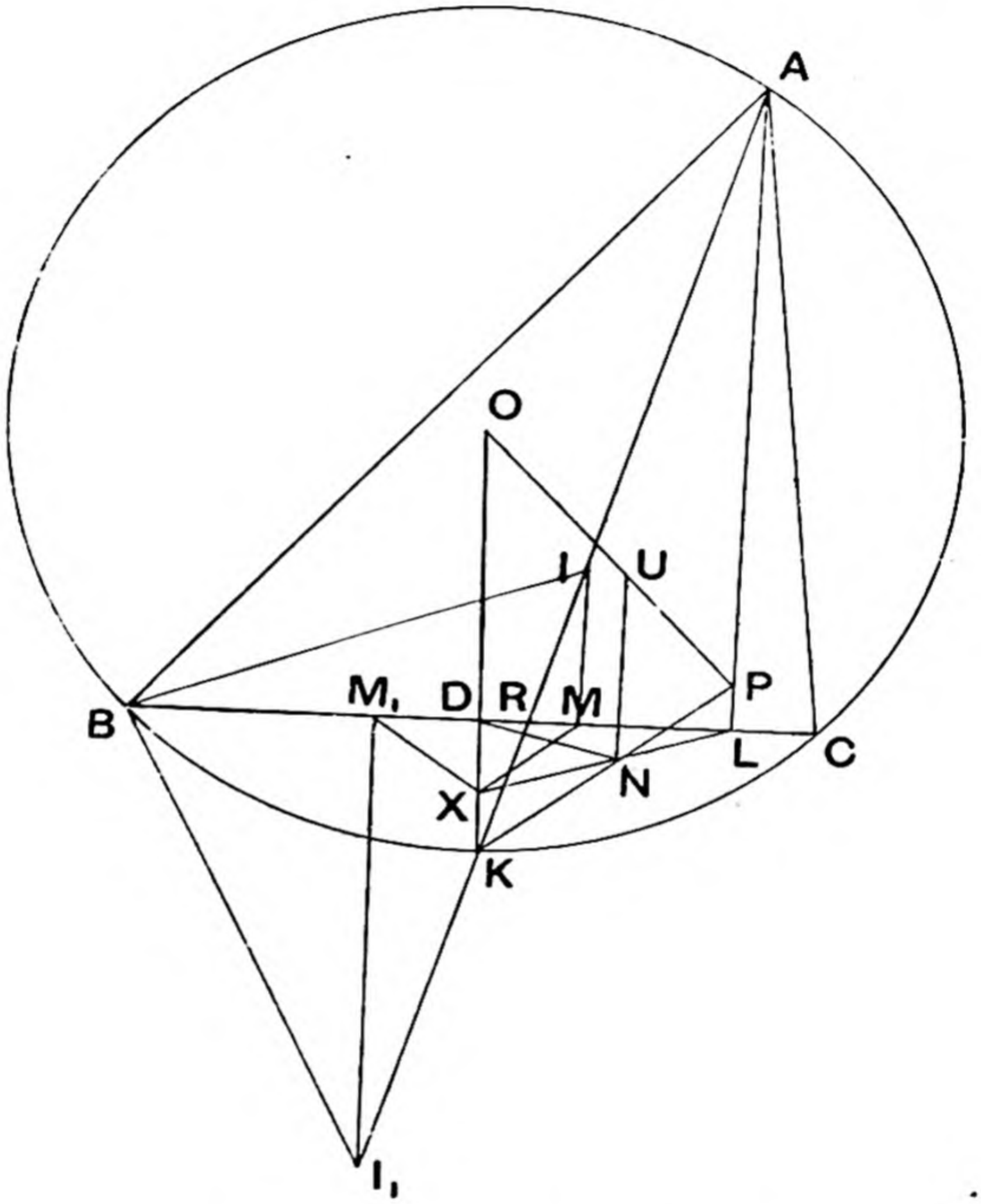
$$\therefore\ L(AR,\ II_1) = -1.$$

$\therefore$ since $RLA$ is a right angle, $LI$ and $LI_1$ are equally inclined to $BC$ (§ 27, Cor. 2). $\because$ $LR$ is the internal bisector of $\angle ILI'$ and $LA$ is the external bisector of the same $\angle$.

$\therefore$ the polars of $L$ with regard to the incircle and the ecircle will be equally inclined to $BC$.

Now the polar of $L$ for the incircle goes through $M$ and that for the ecircle through $M_1$.

Let $MX$ be the polar of $L$ for the incircle cutting $OD$ in $X$.




Then since $D$ is the middle point of $MM_1$ (§ 12, Cor.)

$$\triangle XM_1D \equiv \triangle XMD.$$

$$\therefore \angle XM_1D = \angle XMD.$$

$\triangle M_1X$ is the polar of $L$ for the ecircle, i.e. $L$ and $X$ are conjugate points for both circles.

Let $N$ be the middle point of $XL$, then the square of the tangent from $N$ to both circles $= NX^2 = ND^2$.

$\therefore$ $N$ is on the radical axis of the two circles; but so also is $D$ since $DM = DM_1$.

$\therefore$ $ND$ is the radical axis, and this is perpendicular to $II_1$.

Now the pedal line of $K$ goes through $D$, and clearly also, since $K$ is on the bisector of the angle $A$, the pedal line must be perpendicular to $AK$.

$\therefore$ $DN$ is the pedal line of $K$.

But the pedal line of $K$ bisects $KP$.

$\therefore$ $KNP$ is a straight line and $N$ its middle point.

And since $U$ is the middle point of $OP$, $UN = \frac{1}{2}OK$.

$\therefore$ $N$ is a point on the nine-points circle.

Now invert the nine-points circle, the incircle and ecircle with respect to the circle whose centre is $N$ and radius $ND$ or $NL$.

The two latter circles will invert into themselves; and the nine-points circle will invert into the line $BC$; for $N$ being on the nine-points circle the inverse of that circle must be a line, and $D$ and $L$, points on the circle, invert into themselves, $\therefore$ $DL$ is the inverse of the nine-points circle.

But this line touches both the incircle and ecircle.

$\therefore$ the nine-points circle touches both the incircle and ecircle.

Similarly it touches the other two ecircles.

Cor. The point of contact of the nine-points circle with the incircle will be the inverse of $M$, and with the ecircle the inverse of $M_1$.

## EXERCISES

1. Prove that a system of intersecting coaxal circles can be inverted into concurrent straight lines.

2. A sphere is inverted from a point on its surface; shew that to a system of meridians and parallels on the surface will correspond two systems of coaxal circles in the inverse figure.

[See Ex. 16 of Chap. II.]

3. If $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$ be four collinear points, and $A'$, $B'$, $C'$, $D$, the four points inverse to them, then

$$\frac{AC \,.\, BD}{AB \,.\, CD} = \frac{A'C' \,.\, B'D'}{A'B' \,.\, C'D'}.$$

4. If $P$ be a point in the plane of a system of coaxal circles, and $P_1$, $P_2$, $P_3$ &c. be its inverses with respect to the different circles of the system, $P_1$, $P_2$, $P_3$ &c. are concyclic.

5. If $P$ be a fixed point in the plane of a system of coaxal circles, $P'$ the inverse of $P$ with respect to a circle of the system, $P''$ the inverse of $P'$ with respect to another circle, $P'''$ of $P''$ with respect to another and so on, then $P'$, $P''$, $P'''$ &c. are concyclic.

6. $POP'$, $QOQ'$ are two chords of a circle and $O$ is a fixed point. Prove that the locus of the other intersection of the circles $POQ$, $P'OQ'$ is a second fixed circle.

7. Shew that the result of inverting at any odd number of circles of a coaxal system is equivalent to a single inversion at one circle of the system; and determine the circle which is so equivalent to three given ones in a given order.

8. Shew that if the circles inverse to two given circles $ACD$, $BCD$ with respect to a given point $P$ be equal, the circle $PCD$ bisects (internally and externally) the angles of intersection of the two given circles.

9. Three circles cut one another orthogonally at the three pairs of points $AA'$, $BB'$, $CC'$; prove that the circles through $ABC$, $AB'C'$ touch at $A$.

10. Prove that if the nine-points circle and one of the angular points of a triangle be given, the locus of the orthocentre is a circle.

11. Prove that the nine-points circle of a triangle touches the inscribed and escribed circles of the three triangles formed by joining the orthocentre to the vertices of the triangle.

12. The figures inverse to a given figure with regard to two circles $C_1$ and $C_2$ are denoted by $S_1$ and $S_2$ respectively; shew that if $C_1$ and $C_2$ cut orthogonally, the inverse of $S_1$ with regard to $C_2$ is also the inverse of $S_2$ with regard to $C_1$.

13. If $A$, $B$, $C$ be three collinear points and $O$ any other point, shew that the centres $P$, $Q$, $R$ of the three circles circumscribing the triangles $OBC$, $OCA$, $OAB$ are concyclic with $O$.

Also that if three other circles are drawn through $O$, $A$; $O$, $B$; $O$, $C$ to cut the circles $OBC$, $OCA$, $OAB$ respectively, at right angles, then these circles will meet in a point which lies on the circumcircle of the quadrilateral $OPQR$.

14. Shew that if the circle $PAB$ cut orthogonally the circle $PCD$; and the circle $PAC$ cut orthogonally the circle $PBD$; then the circle $PAD$ must cut the circle $PBC$ orthogonally.

15. Prove the following construction for obtaining the point of contact of the nine-points circle of a triangle $ABC$ with the incircle:

The bisector of the angle $A$ meets $BC$ in $H$. From $H$ the other tangent $HY$ is drawn to the incircle. The line joining the point of contact $Y$ of this tangent and $D$ the middle point of $BC$ cuts the incircle again in the point required.

16. Given the circumcircle and incircle of a triangle, shew that the locus of the centroid is a circle.

17. $A$, $B$, $C$ are three circles and $a$, $b$, $c$ their inverses with respect to any other circle. Shew that if $A$ and $B$ are inverses with respect to $C$, then $a$ and $b$ are inverses with respect to $c$.

18. A circle $S$ is inverted into a line, prove that this line is the radical axis of $S$ and the circle of inversion.

19. Shew that the angle between a circle and its inverse is bisected by the circle of inversion.

20. The perpendiculars, $AL$, $BM$, $CN$ to the sides of a triangle $ABC$ meet in the orthocentre $K$. Prove that each of the four circles which can be described to touch the three circles about $KMAN$, $KNBL$, $KLCM$ touches the circumcircle of the triangle $ABC$.

[Invert the three circles into the sides of the triangle by means of centre $K$, and the circumcircle into the nine-points circle.]

21. Invert two spheres, one of which lies wholly within the other, into concentric spheres.

22. Examine the particular case of the proposition of § 151, where $O$ the centre of inversion lies on $S$.

23. If $A$, $P$, $Q$ be three collinear points, and if $P'$, $Q'$ be the inverses of $P$, $Q$ with respect to $O$, and if $P'Q'$ meet $OA$ in $A_1$, then

$$\frac{AP \cdot AQ}{A_1P' \cdot A_1Q'} = \frac{OA^2}{OA_1^2}.$$

24. A circle is drawn to touch the sides $AB$, $AC$ of a triangle $ABC$ and to touch the circumcircle internally at $E$. Shew that $AE$ and the line joining $A$ to the point of contact with $BC$ of the ecircle opposite to $A$ are equally inclined to the bisectors of the angles between $AB$ and $AC$.

[Invert with $A$ as centre so that $C$ inverts into itself.]

# CHAPTER XX

## SIMILARITY OF FIGURES

### 270. Homothetic Figures.

If $F$ be a plane figure, which we may regard as an assemblage of points typified by $P$, and if $O$ be a fixed point in the plane, and if on each radius vector $OP$, produced if necessary, a point $P'$ be taken on the same side of $O$ as $P$ such that $OP : OP'$ is constant ($= k$), then $P'$ will determine another figure $F'$ which is said to be similar and similarly situated to $F$.

Two such figures are conveniently called, in one word, *homothetic*, and the point $O$ is called their *homothetic centre*.

We see that two homothetic figures are in perspective, the centre of perspective being the homothetic centre.

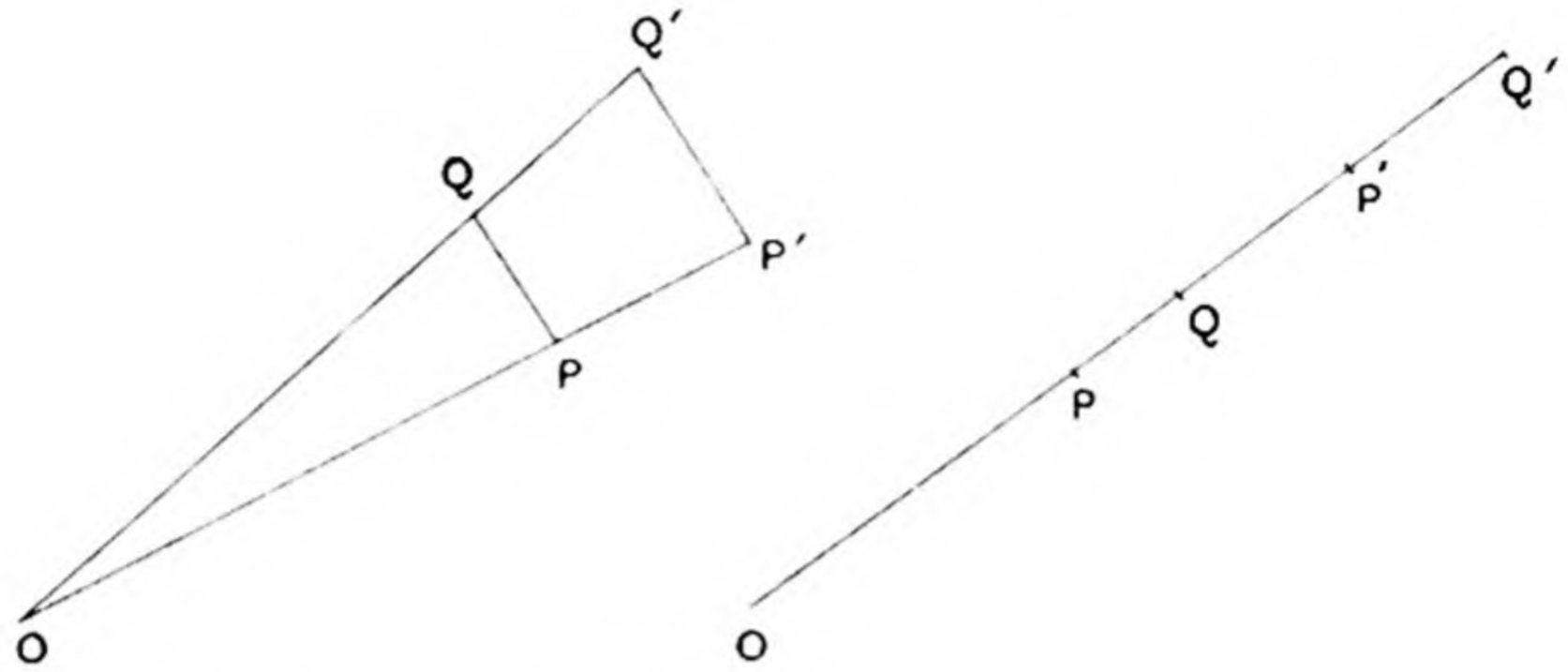
**271. Prop.** *The line joining two points in the figure $F$ is parallel to the line joining the corresponding points in the figure $F'$ which is homothetic with it, and these lines are in a constant ratio.*

For if $P$ and $Q$ be two points in $F$, and $P'$, $Q'$ the corresponding points in $F'$, since $OP : OP' = OQ : OQ'$ it follows that $PQ$ and $P'Q'$ are parallel, and that $PQ : P'Q' = OP : OP'$ the constant ratio.

In the case where $Q$ is in the line $OP$ it is still true that $PQ : P'Q' =$ the constant ratio, for since $OP : OQ = OP' : OQ'$

$$\therefore\ OP : OQ - OP = OP' : OQ' - OP'$$

$$\therefore\ OP : PQ = OP' : P'Q'.$$
$$\therefore\ PQ : P'Q' = OP : OP'.$$




Cor. If the figures $F$ and $F'$ be curves $S$ and $S'$ the tangents to them at corresponding points $P$ and $P'$ will be parallel. For the tangent at $P$ is the limiting position of the line through $P$ and a near point $Q$ on $S$, and the tangent at $P'$ the limiting position of the line through the corresponding points $P'$ and $Q'$.

**272. Prop.** *The homothetic centre of two homothetic figures is determined by two pairs of corresponding points.*

For if two pairs of corresponding points $P$, $P'$; $Q$, $Q'$ be given $O$ is the intersection of $PP'$ and $QQ'$.

Or in the case where $Q$ is in the line $PP'$, $O$ is determined in this line by the equation $OP : OP' = PQ : P'Q'$.

The point $O$ is thus uniquely determined, for $OP$ and $OP'$ have to have the same sign, that is, have to be in the same direction.

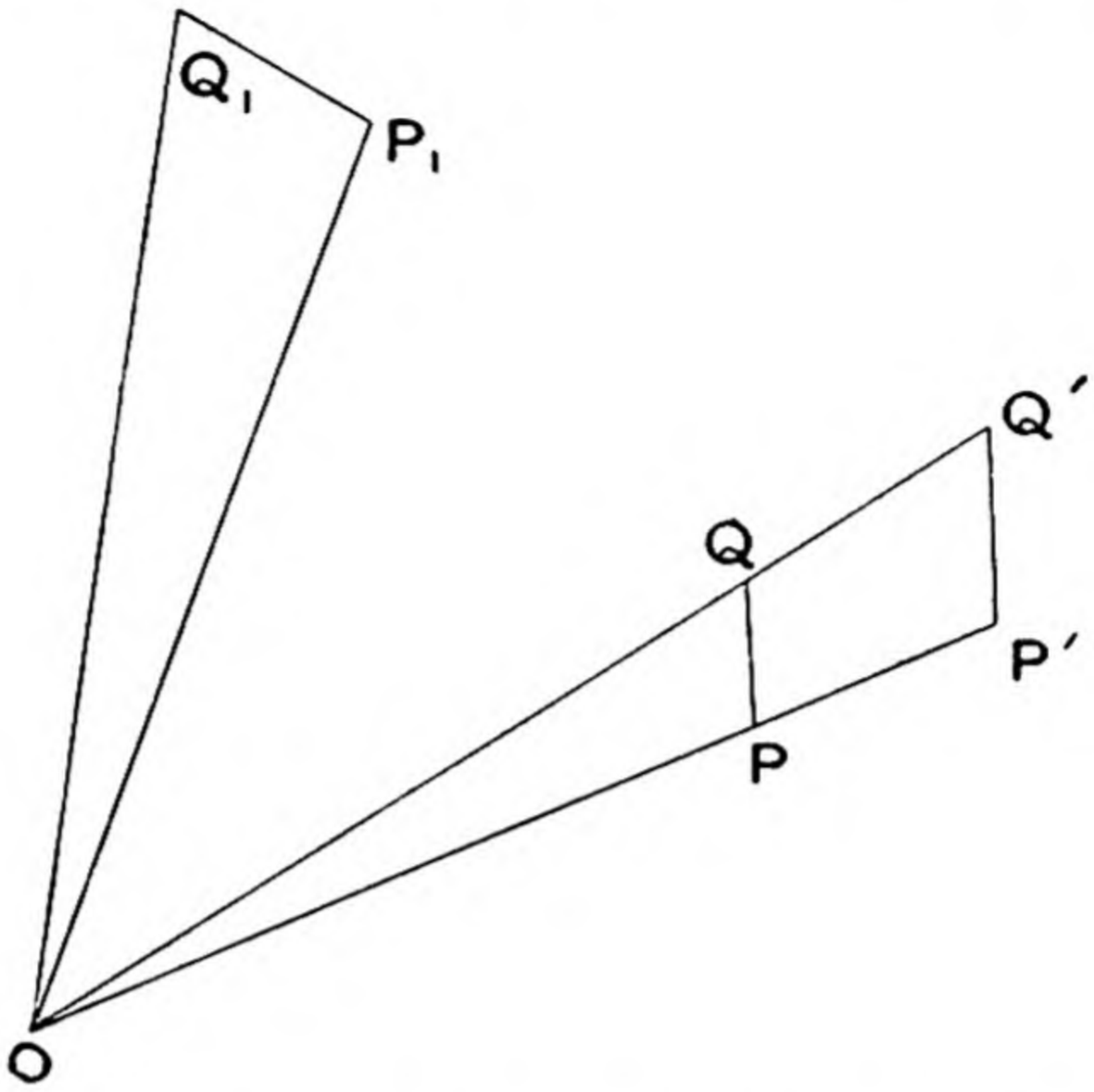
**273. Figures directly similar.**

If now two figures $F$ and $F'$ be homothetic, centre $O$, and the figure $F'$ be turned in its plane round $O$ through any angle, we shall have a new figure $F_1$ which is similar to $F$ but not now similarly situated.

Two such figures $F$ and $F_1$ are said to be *directly similar* and $O$ is called their *centre of similitude.*

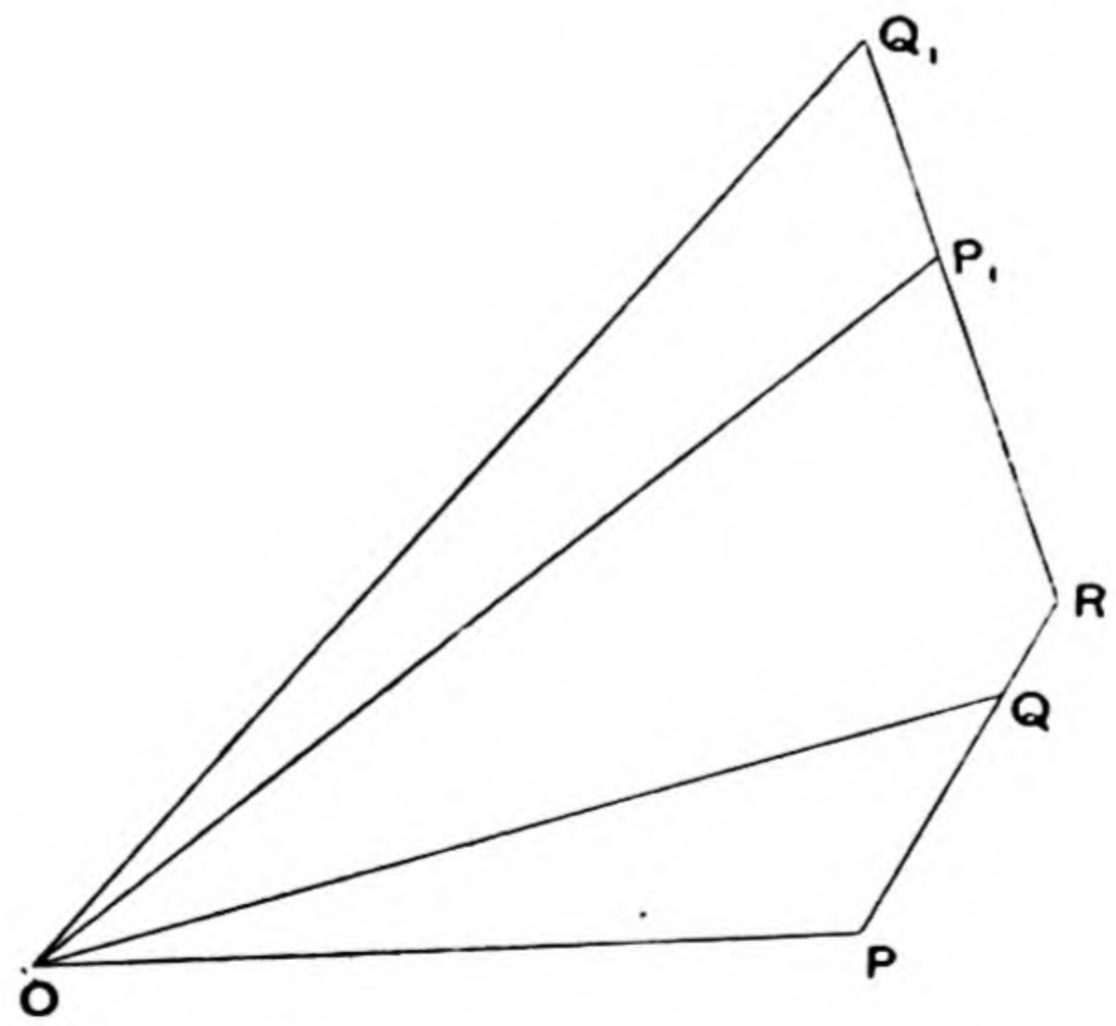
Two directly similar figures possess the property that the

$\angle POP_1$ between the lines joining $O$ to two corresponding points $P$ and $P_1$ is constant. Also $OP : OP_1$ is constant, and




$PQ : P_1Q_1 =$ the same constant, and the triangles $OPQ$, $OP_1Q_1$ are similar.

**274. Prop.** *If $P$, $P_1$; $Q$, $Q_1$ be two pairs of corresponding points of two figures directly similar, and if $PQ$, $P_1Q_1$ intersect in $R$, $O$ is the other intersection of the circles $PRP_1$, $QRQ_1$.*




**For since** $\angle OPQ = \angle OP_1Q_1$

$\therefore$ $\angle OPR$ and $\angle OP_1R$ are supplementary.

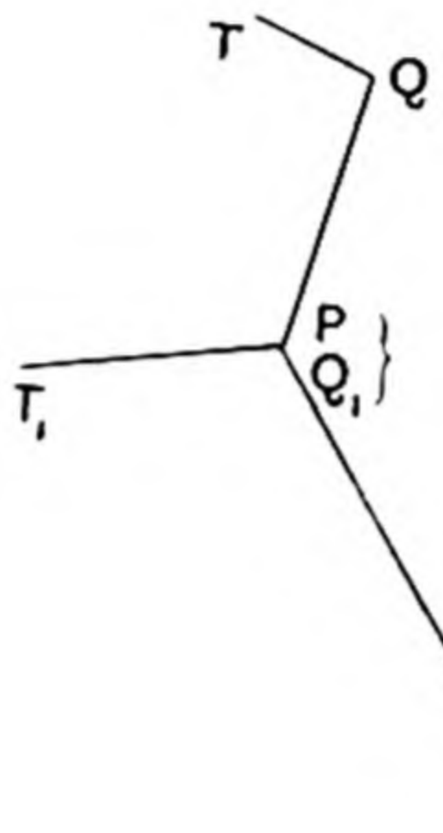
$\therefore$ $POP_1R$ is cyclic.

Similarly $Q_1OQR$ is cyclic.

Thus the proposition is proved.

Cor. The centre of similitude of two directly similar figures is determined by two pairs of corresponding points.

It has been assumed thus far that $P$ does not coincide with $P_1$ nor with $Q_1$.




If $P$ coincide with $P_1$, then this point is itself the centre of similitude.

If $P$ coincide with $Q_1$ we can draw $QT$ and $Q_1T_1$ through $Q$ and $Q_1$ such that

$$\angle P_1Q_1T_1 = \angle PQT \text{ and } Q_1T_1 : QT = P_1Q_1 : PQ;$$

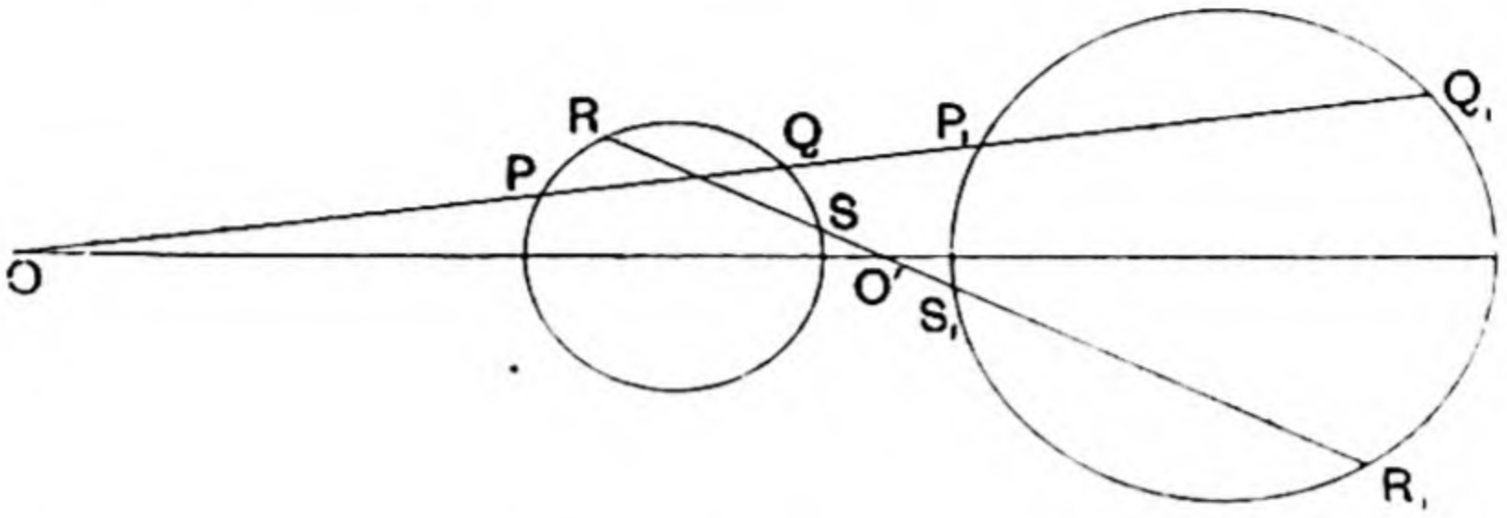
then $T$ and $T_1$ are corresponding points in the two figures.

**275.** When two figures are directly similar, and the two members of each pair of corresponding points are on opposite sides of $O$, and collinear with it, the figures may be called *antihomothetic*, and the centre of similitude is called the *antihomothetic centre*.

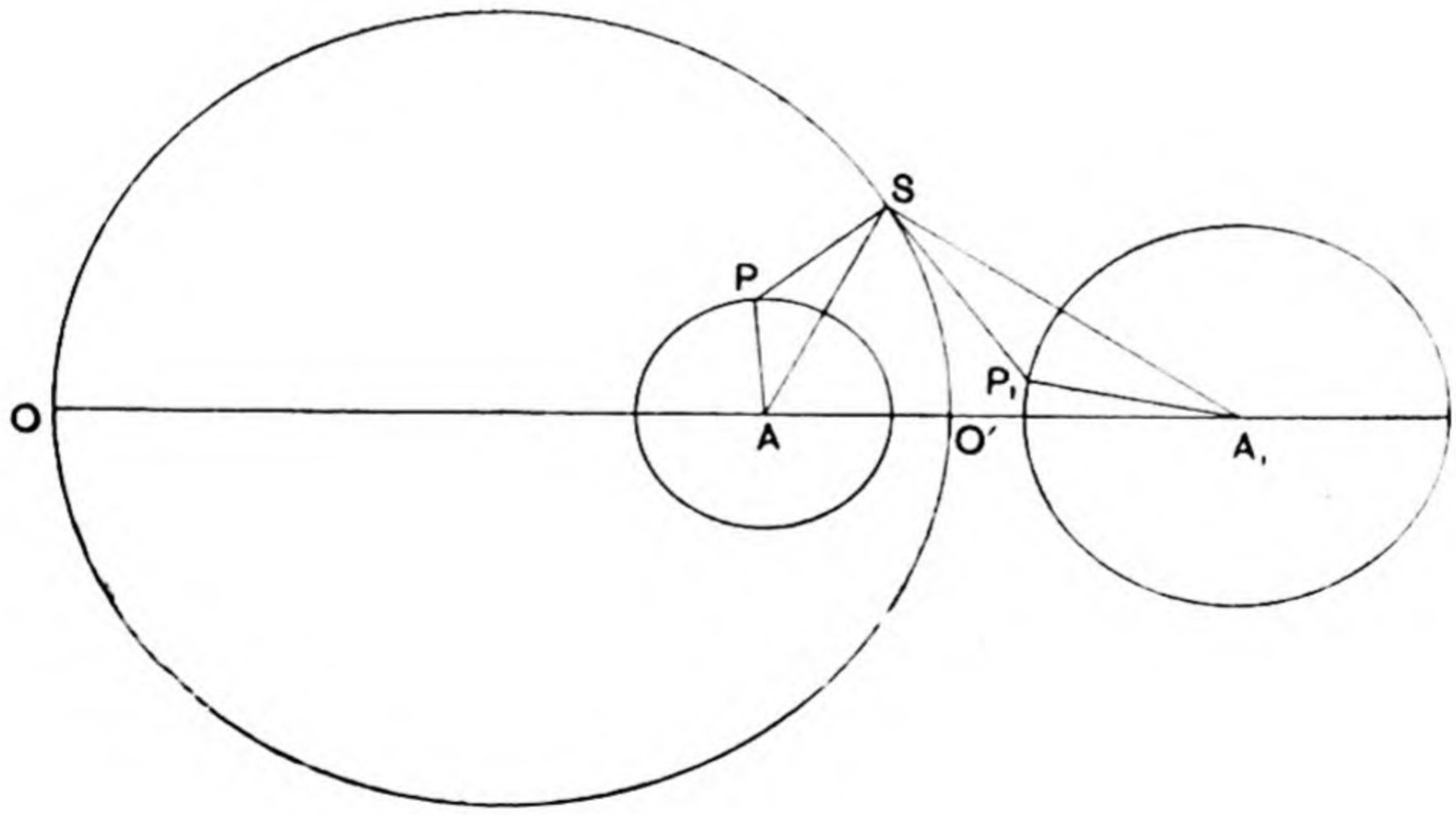
When two figures are antihomothetic the line joining any two points $P$ and $Q$ of the one is parallel to the line joining the corresponding points $P'$ and $Q'$ of the other; *but $PQ$ and $P'Q'$ are in opposite directions.*

### 276. Case of two coplanar circles.

If we divide the line joining the centres of two given circles externally at $O$, and internally at $O'$ in the ratio of the radii, it is clear from § 25 that $O$ is the homothetic centre and $O'$ the antihomothetic centre for the two circles.




We spoke of these points as 'centres of similitude' before, but we now see that they are only particular centres of similitude, and it is clear that there are other centres of similitude not lying in the line of these. For taking the centre $A$ of one circle to correspond with the centre $A_1$ of the other, we may then take any point $P$ of the one to correspond with any point $P_1$ of the other.




Let $S$ be the centre of similitude for this correspondence.

The triangles $PSA$, $P_1SA_1$ are similar, and

$$SA : SA_1 = AP : A_1P_1 = \text{ratio of the radii.}$$

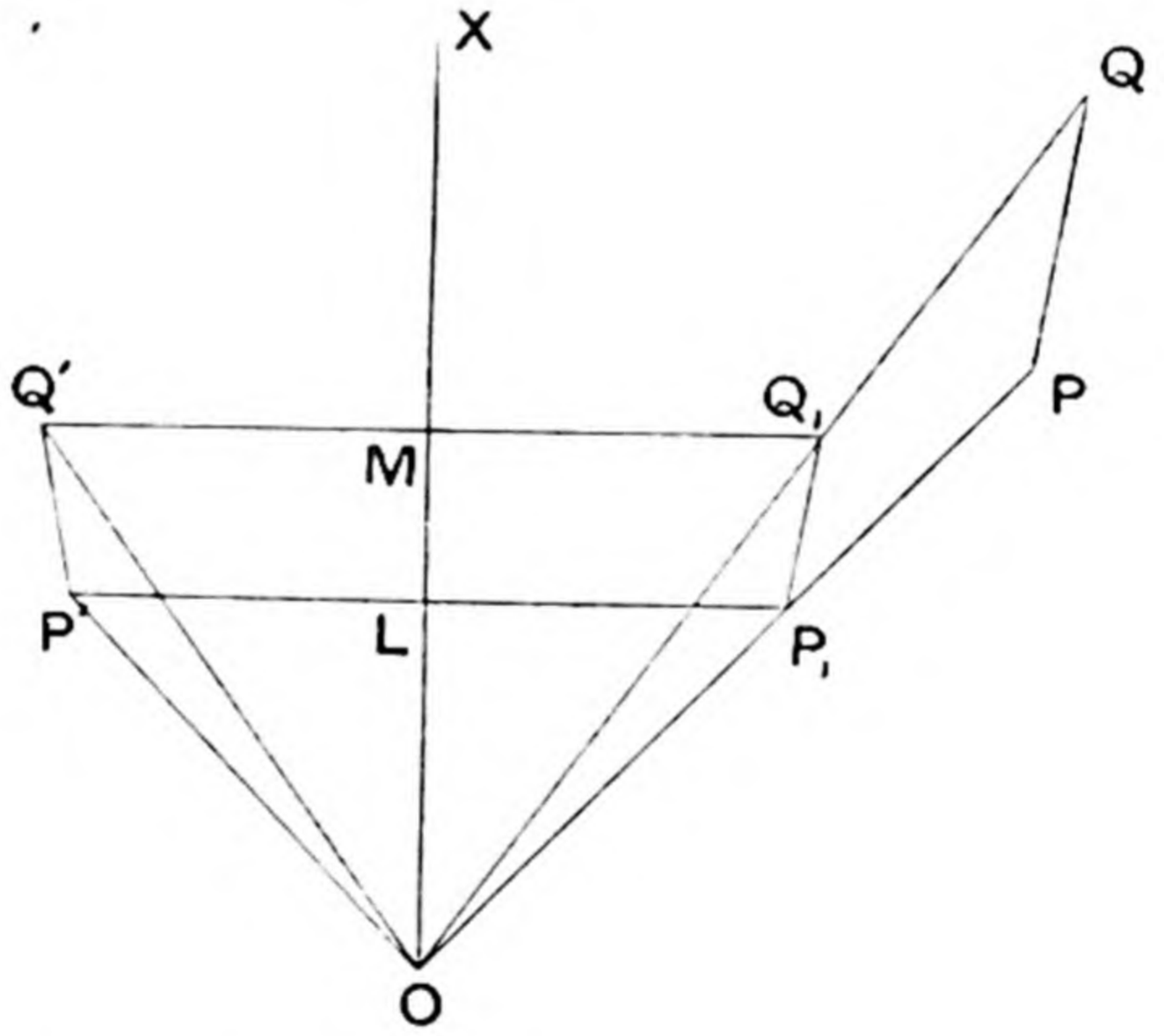
Thus $S$ lies on the circle on $OO'$ as diameter (§ 27).

Thus the locus of centres of similitude for two coplanar circles is the circle on the line joining the homothetic and antihomothetic centres.

This circle we have already called the *circle of similitude* and the student now understands the reason of the name

### 277. Figures inversely similar.

If $F$ be a figure in a plane, $O$ a fixed point in the plane, and if another figure $F'$ be obtained by taking points $P'$ in the plane to correspond with the points $P$ of $F$ in such a way that $OP : OP'$ is constant, and all the angles $POP'$ have the same bisecting line $OX$, the two figures $F$ and $F'$ are said to be *inversely similar*: $O$ is then called *the centre* and $OX$ *the axis of inverse similitude.*




Draw $P'L$ perpendicular to the axis $OX$ and let it meet $OP$ in $P_1$.

Then plainly, since $OX$ bisects $\angle POP'$

$$\triangle OLP' \equiv \triangle OLP_1,$$

and

$$OP_1 = OP'.$$

$$\therefore\ OP_1 : OP \text{ is constant.}$$

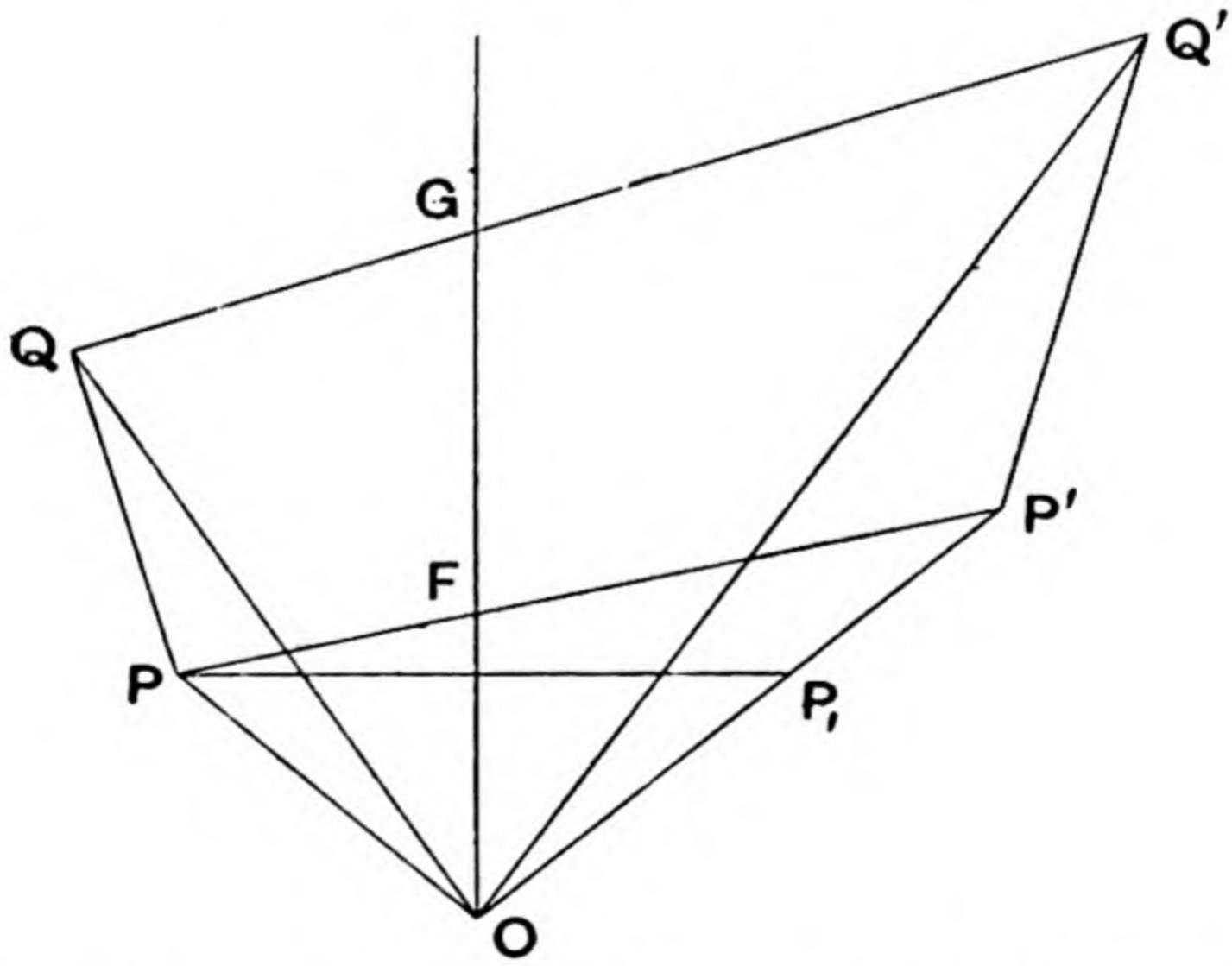
Thus the figure formed by the points $P_1$ will be homothetic with $F$.

Indeed the figure $F'$ may be regarded as formed from a figure $F_1$ homothetic with $F$ by turning $F_1$ round the axis $OX$ through two right angles.

The student will have no difficulty in proving for himself that if any line $OY$ be taken through $O$ in the plane of $F$ and $F'$, and if $P'K$ be drawn perpendicular to $OY$ and produced to $P_2$ so that $P'K = KP_2$ then the figure formed with the points typified by $P_2$ will be similar to $F$; but the two will not be similarly situated except in the case where $OY$ coincides with $OX$.

**278.** If $P$ and $Q$ be two points in the figure $F$, and $P'$, $Q$ the corresponding points in the figure $F'$, inversely similar to it we easily obtain that $P'Q' : PQ =$ the constant ratio of $OP : OP'$, and we see that the angle $POQ =$ angle $Q'OP'$ (*not* $P'OQ'$). In regard to this last point we see the distinction between figures directly similar and figures inversely similar.

**279.** *Given two pairs of corresponding points in two inversely similar figures. to find the centre and axis of similitude.*




To solve this problem we observe that if $PP'$ cut the axis

$OX$ in $F$, then $PF : FP' = OP : OP'$ since the axis bisects the angle $POP'$.

$$\therefore\ PF : FP' = PQ : P'Q'.$$

Hence if $P$, $P'$; $Q$, $Q'$ be given, join $PP'$ and $QQ'$ and divide these lines at $F$ and $G$ in the ratio $PQ : P'Q'$, then the line $FG$ is the axis.

Take the point $P_1$ symmetrical with $P$ on the other side of the axis, then $O$ is determined by the intersection of $P'P_1$ with the axis.

NOTE. The student who wishes for a fuller discussion on the subject of similar figures than seems necessary or desirable here, should consult Lachlan's *Modern Pure Geometry*, Chapter IX.

## EXERCISES

1. Prove that homothetic figures will, if *orthogonally* projected, be projected into homothetic figures.

2. If $P$, $P'$; $Q$, $Q'$; $R$, $R'$ be three corresponding pairs of points in two figures either directly or inversely similar, the triangles $PQR$, $P'Q'R'$ are similar in the Euclidean sense.

3. If $S$ and $S'$ be two curves directly similar, prove that if $S$ be turned in the plane about any point, the locus of the centre of similitude of $S$ and $S'$ in the different positions of $S$ will be a circle.

4. If two triangles, directly similar, be inscribed in the same circle, shew that the centre of the circle is their centre of similitude.

Shew also that the pairs of corresponding sides of the triangles intersect in points forming a triangle directly similar to them.

5. If two triangles be inscribed in the same circle so as to be inversely similar, shew that they are in perspective, and that the axis of perspective passes through the centre of the circle.

6. If on the sides $BC$, $CA$, $AB$ of a triangle $ABC$ points $X$, $Y$, $Z$ be taken such that the triangle $XYZ$ is of constant shape, construct the centre of similitude of the system of triangles so formed; and prove that the locus of the orthocentre of the triangle $XYZ$ is a straight line.

7. If three points $X$, $Y$, $Z$ be taken on the sides of a triangle $ABC$ opposite to $A$, $B$, $C$ respectively, and if three similar and similarly situated ellipses be described round $AYZ$, $BZX$ and $CXY$, they will have a common point.

8. The circle of similitude of two given circles belongs to the coaxal system whose limiting points are the centres of the two given circles.

9. If two coplanar circles be regarded as inversely similar, the locus of the centre of similitude is still the 'circle of similitude,' and the axis of similitude passes through a fixed point.

10. $P$ and $P'$ are corresponding points on two coplanar circles regarded as inversely similar and $S$ is the centre of similitude in this case. $Q$ is the other extremity of the diameter through $P$, and when $Q$ and $P'$ are corresponding points in the two circles for inverse similarity, $S'$ is the centre of similitude. Prove that $SS'$ is a diameter of the circle of similitude.

11. $ABCD$ is a cyclic quadrilateral; $AC$ and $BD$ intersect in $E$, $AD$ and $BC$ in $F$; prove that $EF$ is a diameter of the circle of similitude for the circles on $AB$, $CD$ as diameters.

12. Generalise by projection the theorem that the circle of similitude of two circles is coaxal with them.

## MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES

1. Prove that when four points $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$ lie on a circle, the orthocentres of the triangles $BCD$, $CDA$, $DAB$, $ABC$ lie on an equal circle, and that the line which joins the centres of these circles is divided in the ratio of three to one by the centre of mean position of the points $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$.

2. $ABC$ is a triangle, $O$ the centre of its inscribed circle, and $A_1$, $B_1$, $C_1$ the centres of the circles escribed to the sides $BC$, $CA$, $AB$ respectively; $L$, $M$, $N$ the points where these sides are cut by the bisectors of the angles $A$, $B$, $C$. Shew that the orthocentres of the three triangles $LB_1C_1$, $MC_1A_1$, $NA_1B_1$ form a triangle similar and similarly situated to $A_1B_1C_1$, and having its orthocentre at $O$.

3. $ABC$ is a triangle, $L_1$, $M_1$, $N_1$ are the points of contact of the incircle with the sides opposite to $A$, $B$, $C$ respectively; $L_2$ is taken as the harmonic conjugate of $L_1$ with respect to $B$ and $C$; $M_2$ and $N_2$ are similarly taken; $P$, $Q$, $R$ are the middle points of $L_1L_2$, $M_1M_2$, $N_1N_2$. Again $AA_1$ is the bisector of the angle $A$ cutting $BC$ in $A_1$, and $A_2$ is the harmonic conjugate of $A_1$ with respect to $B$ and $C$; $B_2$ and $C_2$ are similarly taken. Prove that the line $A_2B_2C_2$ is parallel to the line $PQR$.

4. $ABC$ is a triangle the centres of whose inscribed and circumscribed circles are $O$, $O'$; $O_1$, $O_2$, $O_3$ are the centres of its escribed circles, and $O_1O_2$, $O_2O_3$ meet $AB$, $BC$ respectively in $L$ and $M$; shew that $OO'$ is perpendicular to $LM$.

5. If circles be described on the sides of a given triangle as diameters, and quadrilaterals be inscribed in them having the intersections of their diagonals at the orthocentre, and one side of each passing through the middle point of the upper segment of the corresponding perpendicular, prove that the sides of the quadrilaterals opposite to these form a triangle equiangular with the given one.

6. Two circles are such that a quadrilateral can be inscribed in one so that its sides touch the other. Shew that if the points of contact of the sides be $P$, $Q$, $R$, $S$, then the diagonals of $PQRS$ are at right angles; and prove that $PQ$, $RS$ and $QR$, $SP$ have their points of intersection on the same fixed line.

7. A straight line drawn through the vertex $A$ of the triangle $ABC$ meets the lines $DE$, $DF$ which join the middle point of the base to the middle points $E$ and $F$ of the sides $CA$, $AB$ in $X$, $Y$; shew that $BY$ is parallel to $CX$.

8. Four intersecting straight lines are drawn in a plane. Reciprocate with regard to any point in this plane the theorem that the circumcircles of the triangle formed by the four lines are concurrent at a point which is concyclic with their four centres.

9. $E$ and $F$ are two fixed points, $P$ a moving point, on a hyperbola, and $PE$ meets an asymptote in $Q$. Prove that the line through $E$ parallel to the other asymptote meets in a fixed point the line through $Q$ parallel to $PF$.

10. Any parabola is described to touch two fixed straight lines and with its directrix passing through a fixed point $P$. Prove that the envelope of the polar of $P$ with respect to the parabola is a conic.

11. Shew how to construct a triangle of given shape whose sides shall pass through three given points.

12. Construct a hyperbola having two sides of a given triangle as asymptotes and having the base of the triangle as a normal.

13. A tangent is drawn to an ellipse so that the portion intercepted by the equiconjugate diameters is a minimum; shew that it is bisected at the point of contact.

14. A parallelogram, a point and a straight line in the same plane being given, obtain a construction depending on the ruler only for a straight line through the point parallel to the given line.

15. Prove that the problem of constructing a triangle whose sides each pass through one of three fixed points and whose vertices lie one on each of three fixed straight lines is poristic, when the three given points are collinear and the three given lines are concurrent.

16. $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$ are four points in a plane no three of which are collinear and a projective transformation interchanges $A$ and $B$, and

also $C$ and $D$. Give a pencil and ruler construction for the point into which any arbitrary point $P$ is changed; and shew that any conic through $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$ is transformed into itself.

17. Three hyperbolas are described with $B, C$; $C, A$; and $A, B$ for foci passing respectively through $A$, $B$, $C$. Shew that they have two common points $P$ and $Q$; and that there is a conic circumscribing $ABC$ with $P$ and $Q$ for foci.

18. Three triangles have their bases on one given line and their vertices on another given line. Six lines are formed by joining the point of intersection of two sides, one from each of a pair of the triangles, with a point of intersection of the other two sides of those triangles, choosing the pairs of triangles and the pairs of sides in every possible way. Prove that the six lines form a complete quadrangle.

19. Shew that in general there are four distinct solutions of the problem: To draw two conics which have a given point as focus and intersect at right angles at two other given points. Determine in each case the tangents at the two given points.

20. An equilateral triangle $ABC$ is inscribed in a circle of which $O$ is the centre: two hyperbolas are drawn, the first has $C$ as a focus, $OA$ as directrix and passes through $B$; the second has $C$ as a focus, $OB$ as directrix and passes through $A$. Shew that these hyperbolas meet the circle in eight points, which with $C$ form the angular points of a regular polygon of nine sides.

21. An ellipse, centre $O$, touches the sides of a triangle $ABC$, and the diameters conjugate to $OA$, $OB$, $OC$ meet any tangent in $D$, $E$, $F$ respectively; prove that $AD$, $BE$, $CF$ meet in a point.

22. A parabola touches a fixed straight line at a given point, and its axis passes through a second given point. Shew that the envelope of the tangent at the vertex is a parabola and determine its focus and directrix.

23. Three parabolas have a given common tangent and touch one another at $P$, $Q$, $R$. Shew that the points $P$, $Q$, $R$ are collinear. Prove also that the parabola which touches the given line and the tangents at $P$, $Q$, $R$ has its axis parallel to $PQR$.

24. Prove that the locus of the middle point of the common chord of a parabola and its circle of curvature is another parabola whose latus rectum is one-fifth that of the given parabola.

25. Three circles pass through a given point $O$ and their other intersections are $A$, $B$, $C$. A point $D$ is taken on the circle $OBC$, $E$ on the circle $OCA$, $F$ on the circle $OAB$. Prove that $O$, $D$, $E$, $F$ are concyclic if $AF \cdot BD \cdot CE = -FB \cdot DC \cdot EA$, where $AF$ stands for the chord $AF$, and so on. Also explain the convention of signs which must be taken.

26. Shew that a common tangent to two confocal parabolas subtends an angle at the focus equal to the angle between the axes of the parabolas.

27. The vertices $A$, $B$ of a triangle $ABC$ are fixed, and the foot of the bisector of the angle $A$ lies on a fixed straight line; determine the locus of $C$.

28. A straight line $ABCD$ cuts two fixed circles $X$ and $Y$, so that the chord $AB$ of $X$ is equal to the chord $CD$ of $Y$. The tangents to $X$ at $A$ and $B$ meet the tangents to $Y$ at $C$ and $D$ in four points $P$, $Q$, $R$, $S$. Shew that $P$, $Q$, $R$, $S$ lie on a fixed circle.

29. On a fixed straight line $AB$, two points $P$ and $Q$ are taken such that $PQ$ is of constant length. $X$ and $Y$ are two fixed points and $XP$, $YQ$ meet in a point $R$. Shew that as $P$ moves along the line $AB$, the locus of $R$ is a hyperbola of which $AB$ is an asymptote.

30. A parabola touches the sides $BC$, $CA$, $AB$ of a triangle $ABC$ in $D$, $E$, $F$ respectively. Prove that the straight lines $AD$, $BE$, $CF$ meet in a point which lies on the polar of the centre of gravity of the triangle $ABC$.

31. If two conics be inscribed in the same quadrilateral, the two tangents at any of their points of intersection cut any diagonal of the quadrilateral harmonically.

32. A circle, centre $O$, is inscribed in a triangle $ABC$. The tangent at any point $P$ on the circle meets $BC$ in $D$. The line through $O$ perpendicular to $OD$ meets $PD$ in $D'$. The corresponding points $E'$, $F'$ are constructed. Shew that $AD'$, $BE'$, $CF'$ are parallel.

33. Two points are taken on a circle in such a manner that the sum of the squares of their distances from a fixed point is constant. Shew that the envelope of the chord joining them is a parabola.

34. A variable line $PQ$ intersects two fixed lines in points $P$ and $Q$ such that the orthogonal projection of $PQ$ on a third fixed line is of constant length. Shew that the envelope of $PQ$ is a parabola, and find the direction of its axis.

35. With a focus of a given ellipse ($A$) as focus, and the tangent at any point $P$ as directrix, a second ellipse ($B$) is described similar to ($A$). Shew that ($B$) touches the minor axis of ($A$) at the point where the normal at $P$ meets it.

36. A parabola touches two fixed lines which intersect in $T$, and its axis passes through a fixed point $D$. Prove that, if $S$ be the focus, the bisector of the angle $TSD$ is fixed in direction. Shew further that the locus of $S$ is a rectangular hyperbola of which $D$ and $T$ are ends of a diameter. What are the directions of its asymptotes?

37. If an ellipse has a given focus and touches two fixed straight lines, then the director circle passes through two fixed points.

38. $O$ is any point in the plane of a triangle $ABC$, and $X$, $Y$, $Z$ are points in the sides $BC$, $CA$, $AB$ respectively, such that $AOX$, $BOY$, $COZ$ are right angles. If the points of intersection of $CZ$ and $AX$, $AX$ and $BY$ be respectively $Q$ and $R$, shew that $OQ$ and $OR$ are equally inclined to $OA$.

39. The line of collinearity of the middle points of the diagonals of a quadrilateral is drawn, and the middle point of the intercept on it between any two sides is joined to the point in which they intersect. Shew that the six lines so constructed together with the line of collinearity and the three diagonals themselves touch a parabola.

40. The triangles $A_1B_1C_1$, $A_2B_2C_2$ are reciprocal with respect to a given circle; $B_2C_2$, $C_1A_1$ intersect in $P_1$, and $B_1C_1$, $C_2A_2$ in $P_2$. Shew that the radical axis of the circles which circumscribe the triangles $P_1A_1B_2$, $P_2A_2B_1$ passes through the centre of the given circle.

41. A transversal cuts the three sides $BC$, $CA$, $AB$ of a triangle in $P$, $Q$, $R$; and also cuts three concurrent lines through $A$, $B$ and $C$ respectively in $P'$, $Q'$, $R'$. Prove that

$$PQ' \cdot QR' \cdot RP' = -P'Q \cdot Q'R \cdot R'P.$$

42. Through any point $O$ in the plane of a triangle $ABC$ is drawn a transversal cutting the sides in $P$, $Q$, $R$. The lines $OA$, $OB$, $OC$ are bisected in $A'$, $B'$, $C'$; and the segments $QR$, $RP$, $PQ$ of the transversal are bisected in $P'$, $Q'$, $R'$. Shew that the three lines $A'P'$, $B'Q'$, $C'R'$ are concurrent.

43. From any point $P$ on a given circle tangents $PQ$, $PQ'$ are drawn to a given circle whose centre is on the circumference of the

first: shew that the chord joining the points where these tangents cut the first circle is fixed in direction and intersects $QQ'$ on the line of centres.

44. If any parabola be described touching the sides of a fixed triangle, the chords of contact will pass each through a fixed point.

45. $A$ and $B$ lie on opposite branches of a hyperbola; from $D$, the middle point of $AB$, the tangent $DP$ is drawn. Shew that if $CQ$, $CR$ are the semidiameters parallel to $AB$ and $DP$,

$$AB : CQ = 2DP : CR.$$

46. The side $BC$ of a triangle $ABC$ is trisected at $M$, $N$. Circles are described within the triangle, one to touch $BC$ at $M$ and $AB$ at $H$, the other to touch $BC$ at $N$ and $AC$ at $K$. If the circles touch one another at $L$, prove that $CH$, $BK$ pass through $L$.

47. $ABC$ is a triangle and the perpendiculars from $A$, $B$, $C$ on the opposite sides meet them in $L$, $M$, $N$ respectively. Three conics are described; one touching $BM$, $CN$ at $M$, $N$ and passing through $A$; a second touching $CN$, $AL$ at $N$, $L$ and passing through $B$; a third touching $AL$, $BM$ at $L$, $M$ and passing through $C$. Prove that at $A$, $B$, $C$ they all touch the same conic.

48. A parabola touches two fixed lines meeting in $T'$ and the chord of contact passes through a fixed point $A$; shew that the directrix passes through a fixed point $O$, and that the ratio $T'O$ to $OA$ is the same for all positions of $A$. Also that if $A$ move on a circle whose centre is $T'$, then $AO$ is always normal to an ellipse the sum of whose semi-axes is the radius of this circle.

49. Triangles which have a given centroid are inscribed in a given circle, and conics are inscribed in the triangles so as to have the common centroid for centre, prove that they all have the same fixed director circle.

50. A circle is inscribed in a right-angled triangle and another is escribed to one of the sides containing the right angle; prove that the lines joining the points of contact of each circle with the hypothenuse and that side intersect one another at right angles, and being produced pass each through the point of contact of the other circle with the remaining side. Also shew that the polars of any point on either of these lines with respect to the two circles meet on the other, and deduce that the four tangents drawn from any point on either of these lines to the circles form a harmonic pencil.

51. If a triangle $PQR$ circumscribe a conic, centre $C$, and ordinates be drawn from $Q$, $R$ to the diameters $CR$, $CQ$ respectively,

the line joining the feet of the ordinates will pass through the points of contact of $PQ$, $PR$.

52. Prove that the common chord of a conic and its circle of curvature at any point and their common tangent at this point divide their own common tangent harmonically.

53. Shew that the point of intersection of the two common tangents of a conic and an osculating circle lies on the confocal conic which passes through the point of osculation.

54. In a triangle $ABC$, $AL$, $BM$, $CN$ are the perpendiculars on the sides and $MN$, $NL$, $LM$ when produced meet $BC$, $CA$, $AB$ in $P$, $Q$, $R$. Shew that $P$, $Q$, $R$ lie on the radical axis of the nine-points circle and the circumcircle of $ABC$, and that the centres of the circumcircles of $ALP$, $BMQ$, $CNR$ lie on one straight line.

55. A circle through the foci of a rectangular hyperbola is reciprocated with respect to the hyperbola; shew that the reciprocal is an ellipse with a focus at the centre of the hyperbola; and its minor axis is equal to the distance between the directrices of the hyperbola.

56. A circle can be drawn to cut three given circles orthogonally. If any point be taken on this circle its polars with regard to the three circles are concurrent.

57. From any point $O$ tangents $OP$, $OP'$, $OQ$, $OQ'$ are drawn to two confocal conics; $OP$, $OP'$ touch one conic, $OQ$, $OQ'$ the other. Prove that the four lines $PQ$, $P'Q'$, $PQ'$, $P'Q$ all touch a third confocal.

58. $P$, $P'$ and $Q$, $Q'$ are four collinear points on two conics $U$ and $V$ respectively. Prove that the corners of the quadrangle whose pairs of opposite sides are the tangents at $P$, $P'$ and $Q$, $Q'$ lie on a conic which passes through the four points of intersection of $U$ and $V$.

59. If two parabolas have a real common self-conjugate triangle they cannot have a common focus.

60. The tangents to a conic at two points $A$ and $B$ meet in $T$, those at $A'$, $B'$ in $T''$; prove that

$$T(A'AB'B) = T''(A'AB'B).$$

61. A circle moving in a plane always touches a fixed circle, and the tangent to the moving circle from a fixed point is always of constant length. Prove that the moving circle always touches another fixed circle.

62. A system of triangles is formed by the radical axis and each pair of tangents from a fixed point $P$ to a coaxal system of circles. Shew that if $P$ lies on the polar of a limiting point with respect to the coaxal system, then the circumcircles of the triangles form another coaxal system.

63. Two given circles $S$, $S'$ intersect in $A$, $B$; through $A$ any straight line is drawn cutting the circles again in $P$, $P'$ respectively. Shew that the locus of the other point of intersection of the circles, one of which passes through $B$, $P$ and cuts $S$ orthogonally, and the other of which passes through $B$, $P'$ and cuts $S'$ orthogonally, is the straight line through $B$ perpendicular to $AB$.

64. Four points lie on a circle: the pedal line of each of these with respect to the triangle formed by the other three is drawn; shew that the four lines so drawn meet in a point.

65. $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$ are four points on a conic; $EF$ cuts the lines $BC$, $CA$, $AB$ in $a$, $b$, $c$ respectively and the conic in $E$ and $F$; $a'$, $b'$, $c'$ are harmonically conjugate to $a$, $b$, $c$ with respect to $E$, $F$. The lines $Da'$, $Db'$, $Dc'$ meet $BC$, $CA$, $AB$ in $\alpha$, $\beta$, $\gamma$ respectively. Shew that $\alpha$, $\beta$, $\gamma$ are collinear.

66. Three circles intersect at $O$ so that their respective diameters $DO$, $EO$, $FO$ pass through their other points of intersection $A$, $B$, $C$; and the circle passing through $D$, $E$, $F$ intersects the circles again in $G$, $H$, $I$ respectively. Prove that the circles $AOG$, $BOH$, $COI$ are coaxal.

67. A conic passes through four fixed points on a circle, prove that the polar of the centre of the circle with regard to the conic is parallel to a fixed straight line.

68. The triangles $PQR$, $P'Q'R'$ are such that $PQ$, $PR$, $P'Q'$, $P'R'$ are tangents at $Q$, $R$, $Q'$, $R'$ respectively to a conic. Prove that

$$P\,(QR'Q'R) = P'\,(QR'Q'R)$$

and $P$, $Q$, $R$, $P'$, $Q'$, $R'$ lie on a conic.

69. If $A'$, $B'$, $C'$, $D'$ be the points conjugate to $A$, $B$, $C$, $D$ in an involution, and $P$, $Q$, $R$, $S$ be the middle points of $AA'$, $BB'$, $CC'$, $DD'$,

$$(PQRS) = (ABCD)\,.\,(AB'CD').$$

70. $ABC$ is a triangle. If $BDCX$, $CEAY$, $AFBZ$ be three ranges such that $(XBCD)\,.\,(AYCE)\,.\,(ABZF) = 1$, and $AD$, $BE$, $CF$ be concurrent, then $X$, $Y$, $Z$ will be collinear.

71. If $ABC$ be a triangle and $D$ any point on $BC$, then (i) the line joining the circumcentres of $ABD$, $ACD$ touches a parabola:

(ii) the line joining the incentres touches a conic touching the bisectors of the angles $ABC$, $ACB$.

Find the envelope of the line joining the centres of the circles escribed to the sides $BD$, $CD$ respectively.

72. Two variable circles $S$ and $S'$ touch two fixed circles, find the locus of the points which have the same polars with regard to $S$ and $S'$.

73. $QP$, $QP'$ are tangents to an ellipse, $QM$ is the perpendicular on the chord of contact $PP'$ and $K$ is the pole of $QM$. If $H$ is the orthocentre of the triangle $PQP'$, prove that $HK$ is perpendicular to $QC$.

74. Two circles touch one another at $O$. Prove that the locus of the points inverse to $O$ with respect to circles which touch the two given circles is another circle touching the given circles in $O$, and find its radius in terms of the radii of the given circles.

75. Prove that the tangents at $A$ and $C$ to a parabola and the chord $AC$ meet the diameter through $B$, a third point on the parabola in $a$, $c$, $b$, such that $aB : Bb = Ab : bC = Bb : cB$. Hence draw through a given point a chord of a parabola that shall be divided in a given ratio at that point. How many different solutions are there of this problem?

76. If $A$, $B$, $C$ be three points on a hyperbola and the directions of both asymptotes be given, then the tangent at $B$ may be constructed by drawing through $B$ a parallel to the line joining the intersection of $BC$ and the parallel through $A$ to one asymptote with the intersection of $AB$ and the parallel through $C$ to the other.

77. A circle cuts three given circles at right angles; calling these circles $\Omega$, $A$, $B$, $C$, shew that the points where $C$ cuts $\Omega$ are the points where circles coaxal with $A$ and $B$ touch $C$.

78. If $ABC$, $DEF$ be two coplanar triangles, and $S$ be a point such that $SD$, $SE$, $SF$ cuts the sides $BC$, $CA$, $AB$ respectively in three collinear points, then $SA$, $SB$, $SC$ cut the sides $EF$, $FD$, $DE$ in three collinear points.

79. $ABC$ is a triangle, $D$ is a point of contact with $BC$ of the circle escribed to $BC$; $E$ and $F$ are found on $CA$, $AB$ in the same way. Lines are drawn through the middle points of $BC$, $CA$, $AB$ parallel to $AD$, $BE$, $CF$ respectively; shew that these lines meet at the incentre.

# INDEX

The references are to pages.


Antiparallel 37
Asymptotes 103, 171
Auxiliary circle 147, 153, 165, 205
Axes 101, 104, 107, 166
Axis of perspective 61, 62
Brianchon's theorem 215
Carnot's theorem 116
Ceva's theorem 33
Circle of curvature 120, 138, 158, 187
Circular points 242
Circumcircle 1, 5, 133, 245
Coaxal circles 20, 226, 234
Collinearity 31, 63, 214
Concurrence 33
Confocal conics 165, 235, 236, 248
Conjugate points and lines 15, 74
Conjugate diameters 151, 155, 174, 192
Conjugate hyperbola 170
Desargues' theorem 227
Diameters 106, 132
Director circle 150, 169
Double contact 246, 253
Ecircles 10, 262
Envelopes 130, 147, 212
Equiconjugates 156
Feuerbach's theorem 262
Focus and directrix 91, 94, 96, 108, 233, 246
Generalisation by projection 249
Harmonic properties 74, 75, 92
Homographic ranges and pencils 54, 59, 60, 62
Homothetic figures 267
Incircle 10, 262
Inverse points 13, 256, 261
Involution criterion 81
Involution properties 84, 93, 216, 224, 227
Isogonal conjugates 36
Latus rectum 114, 126
Limiting points 21
Loci 24, 127, 137, 153, 179
Medians 8
Menelaus' theorem 31
Newton's theorem 117, 126, 136, 152, 177, 178, 179, 180
Nine points circle 3, 195, 262
Normals 113, 127, 145, 149, 164, 186
Ordinates 107
Orthocentre 2, 133, 194, 232
Orthogonal circles 22, 73
Orthogonal involution 85, 94
Pair of tangents 111, 130, 147, 156, 168
Parallel chords 95
Parameter 136
Pascal's theorem 214
Pedal line 5, 133
Pole and polar 13, 92, 229
Projective properties 45, 50, 53, 92
Quadrangle 76, 222, 224
Quadrilateral 75, 222, 224, 226, 248
Radical axis 17
Reciprocal figures 220, 237
Salmon's theorem 17
Self-conjugate triangles 16, 121, 236, 245
Signs 28, 119, 180
Similar figures 268
Similitude, centres of 24
Similitude, circle of 25, 271
Simson line 6
Subnormal 128
Symmedians 37
Tangents 108, 127, 145, 164
Triangles in perspective 64

CAMBRIDGE: PRINTED BY
J. B. PEACE, M.A.,
AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS